



ECS2100-10T/PE/P  
ECS2100-28T/P/PP  
10/28-Port Web-Smart Pro  
Gigabit Ethernet Switch

Software Release v1.2.2.15

Web Management Guide

# Web Management Guide

---

## **ECS2100-10T Gigabit Ethernet Switch**

Web-smart Pro Gigabit Ethernet Switch  
with 8 10/100/1000BASE-T (RJ-45) Ports  
and 2 Gigabit SFP Ports

## **ECS2100-10PE Gigabit Ethernet Switch**

Web-smart Pro Gigabit Ethernet Switch  
with 8 10/100/1000BASE-T (RJ-45) 802.3 af/at PoE Ports  
with 2 Gigabit SFP Ports (PoE Power Budget: 65W)

## **ECS2100-10P Gigabit Ethernet Switch**

Web-smart Pro Gigabit Ethernet Switch  
with 8 10/100/1000BASE-T (RJ-45) 802.3 af/at PoE Ports  
and 2 Gigabit SFP Ports  
(PoE Power Budget: 125 W)

## **ECS2100-28T Gigabit Ethernet Switch**

Web-smart Pro Gigabit Ethernet Switch  
with 24 10/100/1000BASE-T (RJ-45) Ports  
and 4 Gigabit SFP Ports

## **ECS2100-28P Gigabit Ethernet Switch**

Web-smart Pro Gigabit Ethernet Switch  
with 24 10/100/1000BASE-T (RJ-45) 802.3 af/at PoE Ports  
and 4 Gigabit SFP Ports  
(PoE Power Budget: 200 W)

## **ECS2100-28PP Gigabit Ethernet Switch**

Web-smart Pro Gigabit Ethernet Switch  
with 24 10/100/1000BASE-T (RJ-45) 802.3 af/at PoE Ports  
and 4 Gigabit SFP Ports  
(PoE Power Budget: 370 W, can extend to 740 W)

---

# How to Use This Guide

This guide includes detailed information on the switch software, including how to operate and use the management functions of the switch. To deploy this switch effectively and ensure trouble-free operation, you should first read the relevant sections in this guide so that you are familiar with all of its software features.

**Who Should Read this Guide?** This guide is for network administrators who are responsible for operating and maintaining network equipment. The guide assumes a basic working knowledge of LANs (Local Area Networks), the Internet Protocol (IP), and Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).

**How this Guide is Organized** This guide provides detailed information about the switch's key features. It also describes the switch's web browser interface. For information on the command line interface refer to the *CLI Reference Guide*.

The guide includes these sections:

- ◆ Section I **"Getting Started"** — Includes an introduction to switch management, and the basic settings required to access the management interface.
- ◆ Section II **"Web Configuration"** — Includes all management options available through the web browser interface.
- ◆ Section III **"Appendices"** — Includes information on troubleshooting switch management access.

**Related Documentation** This guide focuses on switch software configuration through the web browser.

For information on how to manage the switch through the command line interface, see the following guide:

*CLI Reference Guide*



**Note:** For a description of how to initialize the switch for management access via the CLI, web interface or SNMP, refer to "Initial Switch Configuration" in the *CLI Reference Guide*.

---

For information on how to install the switch, see the following guide:

*Installation Guide*

For all safety information and regulatory statements, see the following documents:

*Quick Start Guide*

*Safety and Regulatory Information*

**Conventions** The following conventions are used throughout this guide to show information:



**Note:** Emphasizes important information or calls your attention to related features or instructions.

**Revision History** This section summarizes the changes in each revision of this guide.

Revision	Date	Change Description
v1.2.2.15	07/2018	<b>Updated:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◆ <a href="#">"Configuring a Dynamic Trunk" on page 124</a></li><li>◆ <a href="#">"Adding Static Members to VLANs" on page 152</a></li></ul> <b>Added</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◆ <a href="#">"Configuring DHCP Relay Agent Mode" on page 528</a></li><li>◆ <a href="#">"Configuring DHCP L2 Relay Service" on page 529</a></li><li>◆ <a href="#">"Configuring DHCP L3 Relay Service" on page 533</a></li><li>◆ <a href="#">"Configuring DHCPv6 Relay Service" on page 535</a></li></ul>
v1.2.2.9	06/2018	Multiple inaccuracies and parameter descriptions added and removed per internal audit.
v1.2.2.9	05/2018	<b>Document Corrections</b> <b>Updated:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◆ Command Usage - updated bullet text and ACL limits <a href="#">"Access Control Lists" on page 272</a></li><li>◆ <a href="#">"Configuring Static Routes" on page 496</a></li></ul> <b>Removed:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◆ Egress option setting from <a href="#">"Showing ACL Hardware Counters" on page 289</a></li><li>◆ Unsupported "dot1agCfm" traps from table <a href="#">"Supported Notification Messages" on page 369</a></li></ul>
v1.2.2.9	09/2017	<b>New:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◆ <a href="#">"Configuring the Routing Information Protocol" on page 500</a></li></ul> <b>Removed:</b> Ethernet Ring Protection Switching (ERPS)

Revision	Date	Change Description
v1.2.2.0	01/2017	<p><b>New:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ "Automatic Operation Code Upgrade" on page 77</li> <li>◆ "Saving Power" on page 131</li> <li>◆ "Sampling Traffic Flows" on page 139</li> <li>◆ "Mapping CoS Priorities to Per-hop Behavior" on page 211</li> <li>◆ "Mapping DSCP Priorities to Per-hop Behavior" on page 212</li> <li>◆ "Setting the Switch's Overall PoE Power Budget" on page 355</li> <li>◆ "Switch Clustering" on page 398</li> <li>◆ "LBD Configuration" on page 406</li> <li>◆ "Displaying MLD Snooping Statistics" on page 448</li> <li>◆ "IP Tools" on page 463</li> </ul> <p><b>Updated:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Table 3, "Web Page Configuration Buttons," on page 48</li> <li>◆ Table 4, "Switch Main Menu," on page 50</li> <li>◆ "Displaying Hardware/Software Versions" on page 69</li> <li>◆ "Managing System Files" on page 72 – SFTP</li> <li>◆ "Sampling Traffic Flows" on page 139</li> <li>◆ "Configuring VLAN Groups" on page 149</li> <li>◆ "Storm Control" on page 202</li> <li>◆ "Mapping CoS Priorities to Per-hop Behavior" on page 211</li> <li>◆ "Mapping DSCP Priorities to Per-hop Behavior" on page 212</li> <li>◆ "Creating QoS Policies" on page 219</li> <li>◆ "Configuring Global Settings for Network Access" on page 255</li> <li>◆ "Web Authentication" on page 250</li> <li>◆ "Configuring Network Access for Ports" on page 256</li> <li>◆ "DoS Protection" on page 304</li> <li>◆ "DHCP Snooping Global Configuration" on page 309</li> <li>◆ "Configuring Ports for DHCP Snooping" on page 312</li> <li>◆ Table 26, "Supported Notification Messages," on page 369</li> <li>◆ "Setting the Port PoE Power Budget" on page 357</li> <li>◆ "Setting the Switch's IP Address (IP Version 4)" on page 471</li> <li>◆ "Configuring the IPv6 Default Gateway" on page 476</li> <li>◆ "Configuring IPv6 Interface Settings" on page 476</li> <li>◆ "Displaying the Routing Table" on page 497</li> <li>◆ "Multicast Domain Name Service" on page 525</li> <li>◆ "Configuring DHCP L3 Relay Service" on page 533</li> </ul> <p><b>Removed:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Mapping Ingress DSCP Values to Internal DSCP Values</li> <li>◆ Mapping CoS Priorities to Internal DSCP Values</li> <li>◆ Application Filter</li> </ul>
v1.1.2.0	1/2016	Initial release



---

# Contents

<b>How to Use This Guide</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Contents</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Figures</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>Tables</b>	<b>29</b>

---

<b>Section I</b>	<b>Getting Started</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>33</b>
	Key Features	33
	Description of Software Features	34
	Configuration Backup and Restore	34
	Authentication	34
	Access Control Lists	35
	Port Configuration	35
	Rate Limiting	35
	Port Mirroring	35
	Port Trunking	35
	Storm Control	35
	Static MAC Addresses	36
	IP Address Filtering	36
	IEEE 802.1D Bridge	36
	Store-and-Forward Switching	36
	Spanning Tree Algorithm	36
	Virtual LANs	37
	IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling (QinQ)	37
	Traffic Prioritization	37
	Quality of Service	38
	IP Routing	38

Address Resolution Protocol	38
Multicast Filtering	38
Link Layer Discovery Protocol	39
System Defaults	39

---

<b>Section II</b>	<b>Web Configuration</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Using the Web Interface</b>	<b>45</b>
	Connecting to the Web Interface	45
	Navigating the Web Browser Interface	46
	Dashboard	46
	Configuration Options	48
	Panel Display	49
	Main Menu	50
<b>3</b>	<b>Basic Management Tasks</b>	<b>67</b>
	Displaying System Information	68
	Displaying Hardware/Software Versions	69
	Configuring Support for Jumbo Frames	70
	Displaying Bridge Extension Capabilities	71
	Managing System Files	72
	Copying Files via FTP/SFTP/TFTP or HTTP	72
	Saving the Running Configuration to a Local File	75
	Setting the Start-up File	76
	Showing System Files	76
	Automatic Operation Code Upgrade	77
	Setting the System Clock	81
	Setting the Time Manually	81
	Setting the SNTP Polling Interval	82
	Configuring NTP	83
	Configuring Time Servers	84
	Setting the Time Zone	88
	Configuring Summer Time	89
	Configuring the Console Port	91
	Configuring Telnet Settings	93



Displaying CPU Utilization	94
Configuring CPU Guard	95
Displaying Memory Utilization	96
Resetting the System	97
<b>4 Interface Configuration</b>	<b>101</b>
Port Configuration	102
Configuring by Port List	102
Configuring by Port Range	104
Displaying Connection Status	105
Showing Port or Trunk Statistics	106
Displaying Statistical History	110
Displaying Transceiver Data	114
Configuring Transceiver Thresholds	115
Performing Cable Diagnostics	118
Trunk Configuration	119
Configuring a Static Trunk	121
Configuring a Dynamic Trunk	124
Configuring Load Balancing	129
Saving Power	131
Configuring Local Port Mirroring	133
Configuring Remote Port Mirroring	134
Sampling Traffic Flows	139
Configuring sFlow Receiver Settings	139
Configuring an sFlow Polling Instance	141
Traffic Segmentation	143
Enabling Traffic Segmentation	143
Configuring Uplink and Downlink Ports	144
<b>5 VLAN Configuration</b>	<b>147</b>
IEEE 802.1Q VLANs	147
Configuring VLAN Groups	149
Adding Static Members to VLANs	152
IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling	156
Enabling QinQ Tunneling on the Switch	160
Adding an Interface to a QinQ Tunnel	161

Protocol VLANs	162
Configuring Protocol VLAN Groups	163
Configuring MAC-based VLANs	164
<b>6 Address Table Settings</b>	<b>167</b>
Displaying the Dynamic Address Table	167
Clearing the Dynamic Address Table	168
Changing the Aging Time	169
Configuring MAC Address Learning	170
Setting Static Addresses	172
Issuing MAC Address Traps	174
<b>7 Spanning Tree Algorithm</b>	<b>177</b>
Overview	177
Configuring Loopback Detection	179
Configuring Global Settings for STA	181
Displaying Global Settings for STA	186
Configuring Interface Settings for STA	187
Displaying Interface Settings for STA	192
Configuring Multiple Spanning Trees	195
Configuring Interface Settings for MSTP	199
<b>8 Congestion Control</b>	<b>201</b>
Rate Limiting	201
Storm Control	202
<b>9 Class of Service</b>	<b>205</b>
Layer 2 Queue Settings	205
Setting the Default Priority for Interfaces	205
Selecting the Queue Mode	206
Layer 3/4 Priority Settings	209
Setting Priority Processing to DSCP or CoS	210
Mapping CoS Priorities to Per-hop Behavior	211
Mapping DSCP Priorities to Per-hop Behavior	212
<b>10 Quality of Service</b>	<b>215</b>
Overview	215

Configuring a Class Map	216
Creating QoS Policies	219
Attaching a Policy Map to a Port	222
<b>11 VoIP Traffic Configuration</b>	<b>225</b>
Overview	225
Configuring VoIP Traffic	226
Configuring Telephony OUI	227
Configuring VoIP Traffic Ports	228
<b>12 Security Measures</b>	<b>231</b>
AAA (Authentication, Authorization and Accounting)	232
Configuring Local/Remote Logon Authentication	<b>233</b>
Configuring Remote Logon Authentication Servers	234
Configuring AAA Accounting	239
Configuring AAA Authorization	245
Configuring User Accounts	248
Web Authentication	250
Configuring Global Settings for Web Authentication	251
Configuring Interface Settings for Web Authentication	252
Network Access (MAC Address Authentication)	253
Configuring Global Settings for Network Access	255
Configuring Network Access for Ports	256
Configuring a MAC Address Filter	258
Displaying Secure MAC Address Information	260
Configuring HTTPS	262
Configuring Global Settings for HTTPS	262
Replacing the Default Secure-site Certificate	263
Configuring the Secure Shell	265
Configuring the SSH Server	267
Generating the Host Key Pair	269
Importing User Public Keys	270
Access Control Lists	272
Showing TCAM Utilization	273
Setting the ACL Name and Type	275
Configuring a Standard IPv4 ACL	277

Configuring an Extended IPv4 ACL	278
Configuring a Standard IPv6 ACL	281
Configuring an Extended IPv6 ACL	282
Configuring a MAC ACL	284
Configuring an ARP ACL	286
Binding a Port to an Access Control List	288
Showing ACL Hardware Counters	289
Filtering IP Addresses for Management Access	292
Configuring Port Security	294
Configuring 802.1X Port Authentication	296
Configuring 802.1X Global Settings	298
Configuring Port Authenticator Settings for 802.1X	299
Displaying 802.1X Statistics	303
DoS Protection	304
DHCP Snooping	306
DHCP Snooping Global Configuration	309
DHCP Snooping VLAN Configuration	311
Configuring Ports for DHCP Snooping	312
Displaying DHCP Snooping Binding Information	313
IPv4 Source Guard	314
Configuring Ports for IPv4 Source Guard	314
Configuring Static Bindings for IPv4 Source Guard	316
Displaying Information for Dynamic IPv4 Source Guard Bindings	319
ARP Inspection	320
Configuring Global Settings for ARP Inspection	321
Configuring VLAN Settings for ARP Inspection	323
Configuring Interface Settings for ARP Inspection	325
Displaying ARP Inspection Statistics	326
Displaying the ARP Inspection Log	327
<b>13 Basic Administration Protocols</b>	<b>329</b>
Configuring Event Logging	330
System Log Configuration	330
Remote Log Configuration	332
Sending Simple Mail Transfer Protocol Alerts	333

Link Layer Discovery Protocol	335
Setting LLDP Timing Attributes	335
Configuring LLDP Interface Attributes	337
Configuring LLDP Interface Civic-Address	341
Displaying LLDP Local Device Information	343
Displaying LLDP Remote Device Information	347
Displaying Device Statistics	353
Power over Ethernet	355
Setting the Switch's Overall PoE Power Budget	355
Setting the Port PoE Power Budget	357
Simple Network Management Protocol	360
Configuring Global Settings for SNMP	362
Setting the Local Engine ID	363
Specifying a Remote Engine ID	364
Setting SNMPv3 Views	365
Configuring SNMPv3 Groups	368
Setting Community Access Strings	373
Configuring Local SNMPv3 Users	374
Configuring Remote SNMPv3 Users	377
Specifying Trap Managers	380
Creating SNMP Notification Logs	384
Showing SNMP Statistics	386
Remote Monitoring	388
Configuring RMON Alarms	388
Configuring RMON Events	391
Configuring RMON History Samples	393
Configuring RMON Statistical Samples	396
Switch Clustering	398
Configuring General Settings for Clusters	399
Cluster Member Configuration	400
Managing Cluster Members	402
Setting a Time Range	403
LBD Configuration	406
Configuring Global Settings for LBD	406
Configuring Interface Settings for LBD	408

<b>14 Multicast Filtering</b>	<b>411</b>
Overview	411
Layer 2 IGMP (Snooping and Query for IPv4)	412
Configuring IGMP Snooping and Query Parameters	414
Specifying Static Interfaces for a Multicast Router	418
Assigning Interfaces to Multicast Services	420
Setting IGMP Snooping Status per Interface	422
Filtering IGMP Query Packets and Multicast Data	428
Displaying Multicast Groups Discovered by IGMP Snooping	429
Displaying IGMP Snooping Statistics	430
Filtering and Throttling IGMP Groups	434
Enabling IGMP Filtering and Throttling	435
Configuring IGMP Filter Profiles	435
Configuring IGMP Filtering and Throttling for Interfaces	438
MLD Snooping (Snooping and Query for IPv6)	439
Configuring MLD Snooping and Query Parameters	440
Setting Immediate Leave Status for MLD Snooping per Interface	442
Specifying Static Interfaces for an IPv6 Multicast Router	443
Assigning Interfaces to IPv6 Multicast Services	445
Showing MLD Snooping Groups and Source List	447
Displaying MLD Snooping Statistics	448
Filtering and Throttling MLD Groups	456
Enabling MLD Filtering and Throttling	457
Configuring MLD Filter Profiles	457
Configuring MLD Filtering and Throttling for Interfaces	460
Filtering MLD Query Packets on an Interface	462
<b>15 IP Tools</b>	<b>463</b>
Using the Ping Function	463
Using the Trace Route Function	464
Address Resolution Protocol	466
Basic ARP Configuration	467
Displaying Dynamic or Local ARP Entries	468
Displaying ARP Statistics	469

<b>16 IP Configuration</b>	<b>471</b>
Setting the Switch's IP Address (IP Version 4)	471
Configuring IPv4 Interface Settings	471
Setting the Switch's IP Address (IP Version 6)	475
Configuring the IPv6 Default Gateway	476
Configuring IPv6 Interface Settings	476
Configuring an IPv6 Address	481
Showing IPv6 Addresses	483
Showing the IPv6 Neighbor Cache	485
Showing IPv6 Statistics	486
Showing the MTU for Responding Destinations	492
<b>17 General IP Routing</b>	<b>493</b>
Overview	493
Initial Configuration	493
IP Routing and Switching	494
Routing Path Management	495
Routing Protocols	495
Configuring Static Routes	496
Displaying the Routing Table	497
<b>18 Unicast Routing</b>	<b>499</b>
Overview	499
Configuring the Routing Information Protocol	500
Configuring General Protocol Settings	501
Clearing Entries from the Routing Table	504
Specifying Network Interfaces	505
Specifying Passive Interfaces	507
Specifying Static Neighbors	508
Configuring Route Redistribution	509
Specifying an Administrative Distance	511
Configuring Network Interfaces for RIP	512
Displaying RIP Interface Settings	516
Displaying Peer Router Information	516
Resetting RIP Statistics	517

<b>19 IP Services</b>	<b>519</b>
Domain Name Service	519
Configuring General DNS Service Parameters	519
Configuring a List of Domain Names	520
Configuring a List of Name Servers	522
Configuring Static DNS Host to Address Entries	523
Displaying the DNS Cache	524
Multicast Domain Name Service	525
Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol	526
Specifying a DHCP Client Identifier	526
Configuring DHCP Relay Agent Mode	528
Configuring DHCP L2 Relay Service	529
Configuring DHCP L3 Relay Service	533
Enabling DHCP Dynamic Provision	534
Configuring DHCPv6 Relay Service	535

---

<b>Section III</b>	<b>Appendices</b>	<b>539</b>
	<b>A Software Specifications</b>	<b>541</b>
	Software Features	541
	Management Features	542
	Standards	543
	Management Information Bases	544
	<b>B Troubleshooting</b>	<b>547</b>
	Problems Accessing the Management Interface	547
	Using System Logs	548
	<b>C License Information</b>	<b>549</b>
	The GNU General Public License	549
	<b>Glossary</b>	<b>553</b>



---

# Figures

Figure 1: Dashboard	47
Figure 2: Front Panel Indicators	49
Figure 3: System Information	68
Figure 4: General Switch Information	69
Figure 5: Configuring Support for Jumbo Frames	70
Figure 6: Displaying Bridge Extension Configuration	72
Figure 7: Copy Firmware	74
Figure 8: Saving the Running Configuration	75
Figure 9: Setting Start-Up Files	76
Figure 10: Displaying System Files	77
Figure 11: Configuring Automatic Code Upgrade	80
Figure 12: Manually Setting the System Clock	82
Figure 13: Setting the Polling Interval for SNTP	83
Figure 14: Configuring NTP	84
Figure 15: Specifying SNTP Time Servers	85
Figure 16: Adding an NTP Time Server	86
Figure 17: Showing the NTP Time Server List	86
Figure 18: Adding an NTP Authentication Key	87
Figure 19: Showing the NTP Authentication Key List	87
Figure 20: Setting the Time Zone	89
Figure 21: Configuring Summer Time	91
Figure 22: Console Port Settings	92
Figure 23: Telnet Connection Settings	94
Figure 24: Displaying CPU Utilization	95
Figure 25: Configuring CPU Guard	96
Figure 26: Displaying Memory Utilization	97
Figure 27: Restarting the Switch (Immediately)	99
Figure 28: Restarting the Switch (In)	99
Figure 29: Restarting the Switch (At)	100

Figure 30: Restarting the Switch (Regularly)	100
Figure 31: Configuring Connections by Port List	104
Figure 32: Configuring Connections by Port Range	105
Figure 33: Displaying Port Information	106
Figure 34: Showing Port Statistics (Table)	109
Figure 35: Showing Port Statistics (Chart)	110
Figure 36: Configuring a History Sample	112
Figure 37: Showing Entries for History Sampling	112
Figure 38: Showing Status of Statistical History Sample	113
Figure 39: Showing Current Statistics for a History Sample	113
Figure 40: Showing Ingress Statistics for a History Sample	114
Figure 41: Displaying Transceiver Data	115
Figure 42: Configuring Transceiver Thresholds	117
Figure 43: Performing Cable Tests	119
Figure 44: Configuring Static Trunks	121
Figure 45: Creating Static Trunks	122
Figure 46: Adding Static Trunks Members	122
Figure 47: Configuring Connection Parameters for a Static Trunk	123
Figure 48: Showing Information for Static Trunks	123
Figure 49: Configuring Dynamic Trunks	124
Figure 50: Configuring the LACP Aggregator Admin Key	127
Figure 51: Enabling LACP on a Port	128
Figure 52: Configuring LACP Parameters on a Port	128
Figure 53: Configuring Connection Settings for a Dynamic Trunk	129
Figure 54: Showing Connection Parameters for Dynamic Trunks	129
Figure 55: Configuring Load Balancing	131
Figure 56: Enabling Power Savings	132
Figure 57: Configuring Local Port Mirroring	133
Figure 58: Configuring Local Port Mirroring	134
Figure 59: Displaying Local Port Mirror Sessions	134
Figure 60: Configuring Remote Port Mirroring	135
Figure 61: Configuring Remote Port Mirroring (Source)	138
Figure 62: Configuring Remote Port Mirroring (Intermediate)	138
Figure 63: Configuring Remote Port Mirroring (Destination)	138
Figure 64: Configuring an sFlow Receiver	141

Figure 65: Showing sFlow Receivers	141
Figure 66: Configuring an sFlow Instance	142
Figure 67: Showing sFlow Instances	143
Figure 68: Enabling Traffic Segmentation	144
Figure 69: Configuring Members for Traffic Segmentation	146
Figure 70: Showing Traffic Segmentation Members	146
Figure 71: VLAN Compliant and VLAN Non-compliant Devices	148
Figure 72: Creating Static VLANs	151
Figure 73: Modifying Settings for Static VLANs	151
Figure 74: Showing Static VLANs	152
Figure 75: Configuring Static Members by VLAN Index	154
Figure 76: Configuring Static VLAN Members by Interface	155
Figure 77: Configuring Static VLAN Members by Interface Range	156
Figure 78: QinQ Operational Concept	157
Figure 79: Enabling QinQ Tunneling	161
Figure 80: Adding an Interface to a QinQ Tunnel	162
Figure 81: Configuring Protocol VLANs	164
Figure 82: Displaying Protocol VLANs	164
Figure 83: Configuring MAC-Based VLANs	166
Figure 84: Showing MAC-Based VLANs	166
Figure 85: Displaying the Dynamic MAC Address Table	168
Figure 86: Clearing Entries in the Dynamic MAC Address Table	169
Figure 87: Setting the Address Aging Time	170
Figure 88: Configuring MAC Address Learning	171
Figure 89: Configuring Static MAC Addresses	173
Figure 90: Displaying Static MAC Addresses	173
Figure 91: Issuing MAC Address Traps (Global Configuration)	174
Figure 92: Issuing MAC Address Traps (Interface Configuration)	175
Figure 93: STP Root Ports and Designated Ports	178
Figure 94: MSTP Region, Internal Spanning Tree, Multiple Spanning Tree	178
Figure 95: Spanning Tree – Common Internal, Common, Internal	179
Figure 96: Configuring Port Loopback Detection	181
Figure 97: Configuring Global Settings for STA (STP)	185
Figure 98: Configuring Global Settings for STA (RSTP)	185
Figure 99: Configuring Global Settings for STA (MSTP)	186

Figure 100: Displaying Global Settings for STA	187
Figure 101: Determining the Root Port	189
Figure 102: Configuring Interface Settings for STA	192
Figure 103: STA Port Roles	193
Figure 104: Displaying Interface Settings for STA	194
Figure 105: Creating an MST Instance	196
Figure 106: Displaying MST Instances	196
Figure 107: Modifying the Priority for an MST Instance	197
Figure 108: Displaying Global Settings for an MST Instance	197
Figure 109: Adding a VLAN to an MST Instance	198
Figure 110: Displaying Members of an MST Instance	198
Figure 111: Configuring MSTP Interface Settings	200
Figure 112: Displaying MSTP Interface Settings	200
Figure 113: Configuring Rate Limits	202
Figure 114: Configuring Storm Control	204
Figure 115: Setting the Default Port Priority	206
Figure 116: Setting the Queue Mode (Strict)	208
Figure 117: Setting the Queue Mode (WRR)	208
Figure 118: Setting the Queue Mode (Strict and WRR)	209
Figure 119: Setting the Trust Mode	211
Figure 120: Configuring CoS to Queue Mapping	212
Figure 121: Configuring DSCP to Queue Mapping	214
Figure 122: Configuring a Class Map	217
Figure 123: Showing Class Maps	218
Figure 124: Adding Rules to a Class Map	218
Figure 125: Showing the Rules for a Class Map	219
Figure 126: Configuring a Policy Map	221
Figure 127: Showing Policy Maps	221
Figure 128: Adding Rules to a Policy Map	222
Figure 129: Showing the Rules for a Policy Map	222
Figure 130: Attaching a Policy Map to a Port	223
Figure 131: Configuring a Voice VLAN	227
Figure 132: Configuring an OUI Telephony List	228
Figure 133: Showing an OUI Telephony List	228
Figure 134: Configuring Port Settings for a Voice VLAN	230

Figure 135: Configuring the Authentication Sequence	234
Figure 136: Authentication Server Operation	234
Figure 137: Configuring Remote Authentication Server (RADIUS)	237
Figure 138: Configuring Remote Authentication Server (TACACS+)	238
Figure 139: Configuring AAA Server Groups	238
Figure 140: Showing AAA Server Groups	239
Figure 141: Configuring Global Settings for AAA Accounting	241
Figure 142: Configuring AAA Accounting Methods	242
Figure 143: Showing AAA Accounting Methods	243
Figure 144: Configuring AAA Accounting Service for 802.1X Service	243
Figure 145: Configuring AAA Accounting Service for Exec Service	244
Figure 146: Displaying a Summary of Applied AAA Accounting Methods	244
Figure 147: Displaying Statistics for AAA Accounting Sessions	245
Figure 148: Configuring AAA Authorization Methods	246
Figure 149: Showing AAA Authorization Methods	247
Figure 150: Configuring AAA Authorization Methods for Exec Service	247
Figure 151: Displaying the Applied AAA Authorization Method	248
Figure 152: Configuring User Accounts	250
Figure 153: Showing User Accounts	250
Figure 154: Configuring Global Settings for Web Authentication	252
Figure 155: Configuring Interface Settings for Web Authentication	253
Figure 156: Configuring Global Settings for Network Access	256
Figure 157: Configuring Interface Settings for Network Access	258
Figure 158: Configuring a MAC Address Filter for Network Access	259
Figure 159: Showing the MAC Address Filter Table for Network Access	260
Figure 160: Showing Addresses Authenticated for Network Access	261
Figure 161: Configuring HTTPS	263
Figure 162: Downloading the Secure-Site Certificate	265
Figure 163: Configuring the SSH Server	268
Figure 164: Generating the SSH Host Key Pair	269
Figure 165: Showing the SSH Host Key Pair	270
Figure 166: Copying the SSH User's Public Key	271
Figure 167: Showing the SSH User's Public Key	272
Figure 168: Showing TCAM Utilization	275
Figure 169: Creating an ACL	276

Figure 170: Showing a List of ACLs	277
Figure 171: Configuring a Standard IPv4 ACL	278
Figure 172: Configuring an Extended IPv4 ACL	281
Figure 173: Configuring a Standard IPv6 ACL	282
Figure 174: Configuring an Extended IPv6 ACL	284
Figure 175: Configuring a MAC ACL	286
Figure 176: Configuring a ARP ACL	288
Figure 177: Binding a Port to an ACL	289
Figure 178: Showing ACL Statistics	292
Figure 179: Creating an IP Address Filter for Management Access	293
Figure 180: Showing IP Addresses Authorized for Management Access	294
Figure 181: Configuring Port Security	296
Figure 182: Configuring Port Authentication	297
Figure 183: Configuring Global Settings for 802.1X Port Authentication	298
Figure 184: Configuring Interface Settings for 802.1X Port Authenticator	302
Figure 185: Showing Statistics for 802.1X Port Authenticator	304
Figure 186: Protecting Against DoS Attacks	306
Figure 187: Configuring Global Settings for DHCP Snooping	310
Figure 188: Configuring DHCP Snooping on a VLAN	311
Figure 189: Configuring the Port Mode for DHCP Snooping	313
Figure 190: Displaying the Binding Table for DHCP Snooping	314
Figure 191: Setting the Filter Type for IPv4 Source Guard	316
Figure 192: Configuring Static Bindings for IPv4 Source Guard	318
Figure 193: Displaying Static Bindings for IPv4 Source Guard	319
Figure 194: Showing the IPv4 Source Guard Binding Table	320
Figure 195: Configuring Global Settings for ARP Inspection	323
Figure 196: Configuring VLAN Settings for ARP Inspection	324
Figure 197: Configuring Interface Settings for ARP Inspection	325
Figure 198: Displaying Statistics for ARP Inspection	327
Figure 199: Displaying the ARP Inspection Log	328
Figure 200: Configuring Settings for System Memory Logs	331
Figure 201: Showing Error Messages Logged to System Memory	332
Figure 202: Configuring Settings for Remote Logging of Error Messages	333
Figure 203: Configuring SMTP Alert Messages	334
Figure 204: Configuring LLDP Timing Attributes	337

Figure 205: Configuring LLDP Interface Attributes	341
Figure 206: Configuring the Civic Address for an LLDP Interface	342
Figure 207: Showing the Civic Address for an LLDP Interface	343
Figure 208: Displaying Local Device Information for LLDP (General)	346
Figure 209: Displaying Local Device Information for LLDP (Port)	346
Figure 210: Displaying Local Device Information for LLDP (Port Details)	346
Figure 211: Displaying Remote Device Information for LLDP (Port)	350
Figure 212: Displaying Remote Device Information for LLDP (Port Details)	352
Figure 213: Displaying LLDP Device Statistics (General)	354
Figure 214: Displaying LLDP Device Statistics (Port)	354
Figure 215: Setting the Switch's PoE Budget	357
Figure 216: Setting a Port's PoE Budget	359
Figure 217: Configuring Global Settings for SNMP	362
Figure 218: Configuring the Local Engine ID for SNMP	363
Figure 219: Configuring a Remote Engine ID for SNMP	364
Figure 220: Showing Remote Engine IDs for SNMP	365
Figure 221: Creating an SNMP View	366
Figure 222: Showing SNMP Views	366
Figure 223: Adding an OID Subtree to an SNMP View	367
Figure 224: Showing the OID Subtree Configured for SNMP Views	367
Figure 225: Creating an SNMP Group	372
Figure 226: Showing SNMP Groups	372
Figure 227: Setting Community Access Strings	373
Figure 228: Showing Community Access Strings	374
Figure 229: Configuring Local SNMPv3 Users	376
Figure 230: Showing Local SNMPv3 Users	376
Figure 231: Changing a Local SNMPv3 User Group	377
Figure 232: Configuring Remote SNMPv3 Users	379
Figure 233: Showing Remote SNMPv3 Users	379
Figure 234: Configuring Trap Managers (SNMPv1)	383
Figure 235: Configuring Trap Managers (SNMPv2c)	383
Figure 236: Configuring Trap Managers (SNMPv3)	383
Figure 237: Showing Trap Managers	384
Figure 238: Creating SNMP Notification Logs	385
Figure 239: Showing SNMP Notification Logs	386

Figure 240: Showing SNMP Statistics	387
Figure 241: Configuring an RMON Alarm	390
Figure 242: Showing Configured RMON Alarms	391
Figure 243: Configuring an RMON Event	392
Figure 244: Showing Configured RMON Events	393
Figure 245: Configuring an RMON History Sample	394
Figure 246: Showing Configured RMON History Samples	395
Figure 247: Showing Collected RMON History Samples	395
Figure 248: Configuring an RMON Statistical Sample	397
Figure 249: Showing Configured RMON Statistical Samples	397
Figure 250: Showing Collected RMON Statistical Samples	398
Figure 251: Configuring a Switch Cluster	400
Figure 252: Configuring a Cluster Members	401
Figure 253: Showing Cluster Members	401
Figure 254: Showing Cluster Candidates	402
Figure 255: Managing a Cluster Member	403
Figure 256: Setting the Name of a Time Range	404
Figure 257: Showing a List of Time Ranges	404
Figure 258: Add a Rule to a Time Range	405
Figure 259: Showing the Rules Configured for a Time Range	405
Figure 260: Configuring Global Settings for LBD	408
Figure 261: Configuring Interface Settings for LBD	409
Figure 262: Multicast Filtering Concept	411
Figure 263: Configuring General Settings for IGMP Snooping	417
Figure 264: Configuring a Static Interface for a Multicast Router	419
Figure 265: Showing Static Interfaces Attached a Multicast Router	419
Figure 266: Showing Current Interfaces Attached a Multicast Router	420
Figure 267: Assigning an Interface to a Multicast Service	421
Figure 268: Showing Static Interfaces Assigned to a Multicast Service	422
Figure 269: Configuring IGMP Snooping on a VLAN	427
Figure 270: Showing Interface Settings for IGMP Snooping	427
Figure 271: Dropping IGMP Query or Multicast Data Packets	428
Figure 272: Showing Multicast Groups Learned by IGMP Snooping	429
Figure 273: Displaying IGMP Snooping Statistics – Query	432
Figure 274: Displaying IGMP Snooping Statistics – VLAN	433



Figure 275: Displaying IGMP Snooping Statistics – Port	433
Figure 276: Displaying IGMP Snooping Statistics – Port	434
Figure 277: Enabling IGMP Filtering and Throttling	435
Figure 278: Creating an IGMP Filtering Profile	436
Figure 279: Showing the IGMP Filtering Profiles Created	437
Figure 280: Adding Multicast Groups to an IGMP Filtering Profile	437
Figure 281: Showing the Groups Assigned to an IGMP Filtering Profile	438
Figure 282: Configuring IGMP Filtering and Throttling Interface Settings	439
Figure 283: Configuring General Settings for MLD Snooping	442
Figure 284: Configuring Immediate Leave for MLD Snooping	443
Figure 285: Configuring a Static Interface for an IPv6 Multicast Router	444
Figure 286: Showing Static Interfaces Attached an IPv6 Multicast Router	444
Figure 287: Showing Current Interfaces Attached an IPv6 Multicast Router	444
Figure 288: Assigning an Interface to an IPv6 Multicast Service	446
Figure 289: Showing Static Interfaces Assigned to an IPv6 Multicast Service	446
Figure 290: Showing Current Interfaces Assigned to an IPv6 Multicast Service	447
Figure 291: Showing IPv6 Multicast Services and Corresponding Sources	448
Figure 292: Displaying MLD Snooping Statistics – Input	452
Figure 293: Displaying MLD Snooping Statistics – Output	453
Figure 294: Displaying MLD Snooping Statistics – Query	453
Figure 295: Displaying MLD Snooping Statistics – Summary (Port/Trunk)	454
Figure 296: Displaying MLD Snooping Statistics – Summary (VLAN)	455
Figure 297: Clearing MLD Snooping Statistics	456
Figure 298: Enabling MLD Filtering and Throttling	457
Figure 299: Creating an MLD Filtering Profile	458
Figure 300: Showing the MLD Filtering Profiles Created	459
Figure 301: Adding Multicast Groups to an MLD Filtering Profile	459
Figure 302: Showing the Groups Assigned to an MLD Filtering Profile	460
Figure 303: Configuring MLD Filtering and Throttling Interface Settings	461
Figure 304: Dropping MLD Query Packets	462
Figure 305: Pinging a Network Device	464
Figure 306: Tracing the Route to a Network Device	466
Figure 307: Proxy ARP	467
Figure 308: Configuring General Settings for ARP	468
Figure 309: Displaying ARP Entries	469

Figure 310: Displaying ARP Statistics	469
Figure 311: Configuring a Static IPv4 Address	473
Figure 312: Configuring a Dynamic IPv4 Address	474
Figure 313: Showing the Configured IPv4 Address for an Interface	475
Figure 314: Configuring the IPv6 Default Gateway	476
Figure 315: Configuring General Settings for an IPv6 Interface	480
Figure 316: Configuring an IPv6 Address	483
Figure 317: Showing Configured IPv6 Addresses	484
Figure 318: Showing IPv6 Neighbors	486
Figure 319: Showing IPv6 Statistics (IPv6)	490
Figure 320: Showing IPv6 Statistics (ICMPv6)	491
Figure 321: Showing IPv6 Statistics (UDP)	491
Figure 322: Showing Reported MTU Values	492
Figure 323: Virtual Interfaces and Layer 3 Routing	494
Figure 324: Configuring Static Routes	497
Figure 325: Displaying Static Routes	497
Figure 326: Displaying the Routing Table	498
Figure 327: Configuring RIP	500
Figure 328: Configuring General Settings for RIP	504
Figure 329: Clearing Entries from the Routing Table	505
Figure 330: Adding Network Interfaces to RIP	506
Figure 331: Showing Network Interfaces Using RIP	507
Figure 332: Specifying a Passive RIP Interface	508
Figure 333: Showing Passive RIP Interfaces	508
Figure 334: Specifying a Static RIP Neighbor	509
Figure 335: Showing Static RIP Neighbors	509
Figure 336: Redistributing External Routes into RIP	510
Figure 337: Showing External Routes Redistributed into RIP	510
Figure 338: Setting the Distance Assigned to External Routes	511
Figure 339: Showing the Distance Assigned to External Routes	512
Figure 340: Configuring a Network Interface for RIP	515
Figure 341: Showing RIP Network Interface Settings	515
Figure 342: Showing RIP Interface Settings	516
Figure 343: Showing RIP Peer Information	517
Figure 344: Resetting RIP Statistics	517

Figure 345: Configuring General Settings for DNS	520
Figure 346: Configuring a List of Domain Names for DNS	521
Figure 347: Showing the List of Domain Names for DNS	521
Figure 348: Configuring a List of Name Servers for DNS	522
Figure 349: Showing the List of Name Servers for DNS	523
Figure 350: Configuring Static Entries in the DNS Table	524
Figure 351: Showing Static Entries in the DNS Table	524
Figure 352: Showing Entries in the DNS Cache	525
Figure 353: Configuring Multicast DNS	526
Figure 354: Specifying a DHCP Client Identifier	528
Figure 355: Configuring the DHCP Relay Agent mode	529
Figure 356: Configuring DHCP L2 Relay	533
Figure 357: Layer 3 DHCP Relay Service	533
Figure 358: Configuring DHCP L3 Relay Service	534
Figure 359: Enabling Dynamic Provisioning via DHCP	535
Figure 360: Enabling DHCPv6 Relay Agent for Unicast mode.	537
Figure 361: Enabling DHCPv6 Relay Agent for Multicast mode.	537
Figure 362: Enabling DHCPv6 Relay Agent for Multicast mode.	538



---

# Tables

Table 1: Key Features	33
Table 2: System Defaults	39
Table 3: Web Page Configuration Buttons	48
Table 4: Switch Main Menu	50
Table 5: Predefined Summer-Time Parameters	90
Table 6: Port Statistics	106
Table 7: Traffic Segmentation Forwarding	144
Table 8: Recommended STA Path Cost Range	188
Table 9: Default STA Path Costs	189
Table 10: Default Mapping of CoS/CFI Values to Queue/CFI	211
Table 11: Default Mapping of DSCP Values to Queue/CFI	213
Table 12: Dynamic QoS Profiles	254
Table 13: HTTPS System Support	262
Table 14: 802.1X Statistics	303
Table 15: ARP Inspection Statistics	326
Table 16: ARP Inspection Log	327
Table 17: Logging Levels	330
Table 18: LLDP MED Location CA Types	341
Table 19: Chassis ID Subtype	343
Table 20: System Capabilities	344
Table 21: Port ID Subtype	345
Table 22: Remote Port Auto-Negotiation Advertised Capability	348
Table 23: Maximum PoE Based on PD Classification	356
Table 24: Maximum Number of Ports Providing Simultaneous Power	358
Table 25: SNMPv3 Security Models and Levels	361
Table 26: Supported Notification Messages	369
Table 27: Address Resolution Protocol	466
Table 28: ARP Statistics	469
Table 29: Show IPv6 Neighbors - display description	485

Table 30: Show IPv6 Statistics - display description	487
Table 31: Show MTU - display description	492
Table 32: Options 60, 66 and 67 Statements	527
Table 33: Options 55 and 124 Statements	527
Table 34: Troubleshooting Chart	547

# Section I

## Getting Started

This section provides an overview of the switch, and introduces some basic concepts about network switches. It also describes the basic settings required to access the management interface.

This section includes these chapters:

- ◆ ["Introduction" on page 33](#)





# 1

## Introduction

This switch provides a broad range of features for Layer 2 switching and Layer 3 routing. It includes a management agent that allows you to configure the features listed in this manual. The default configuration can be used for most of the features provided by this switch. However, there are many options that you should configure to maximize the switch's performance for your particular network environment.

### Key Features

**Table 1: Key Features**

<b>Feature</b>	<b>Description</b>
Configuration Backup and Restore	Using management station or FTP/SFTP/TFTP server
Authentication	Console, Telnet, web – user name/password, RADIUS, TACACS+ Port – IEEE 802.1X, MAC address filtering SNMP v1/2c - Community strings SNMP version 3 – MD5 or SHA password Telnet – SSH Web – HTTPS
General Security Measures	AAA ARP Inspection DHCP Snooping (with Option 82 relay information) DoS Protection IP Source Guard Port Authentication – IEEE 802.1X Port Security – MAC address filtering
Access Control Lists	Supports up to 256 ACLs, 128 rules per ACL, and 512 rules per system
DHCP/DHCPv6	Client, Relay, Relay Option 82
Port Configuration	Speed, duplex mode, and flow control
Port Trunking	Supports up to 8 trunks – static or dynamic trunking (LACP)
Port Mirroring	3 sessions, one or more source ports to an analysis port
Congestion Control	Rate Limiting Throttling for broadcast, multicast, unknown unicast storms
Address Table	Address Table 8K MAC addresses in the forwarding table (shared with L2 unicast, L2 multicast, IPv4 multicast, IPv6 multicast); 1K static MAC addresses; 511 L2 IPv4 multicast groups (shared with MAC address table)
IP Version 4 and 6	Supports IPv4 and IPv6 addressing and management

**Table 1: Key Features** (Continued)

Feature	Description
IEEE 802.1D Bridge	Supports dynamic data switching and addresses learning
Store-and-Forward Switching	Supported to ensure wire-speed switching while eliminating bad frames
Spanning Tree Algorithm	Supports standard STP, Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP), and Multiple Spanning Trees (MSTP)
Virtual LANs	Up to 4094 using IEEE 802.1Q, port-based, protocol-based, voice VLANs, and QinQ tunnel
Traffic Prioritization	Default port priority, traffic class map, queue scheduling, IP Precedence, or Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP)
Qualify of Service	Supports Differentiated Services (DiffServ)
Link Layer Discovery Protocol	Used to discover basic information about neighboring devices
Switch Clustering	Supports up to 36 member switches in a cluster
ARP	Static and dynamic address configuration, proxy ARP
IP Routing	Routing Information Protocol (RIPv2), static routes
Multicast Filtering	Supports IGMP snooping and query for Layer 2

---

## Description of Software Features

The switch provides a wide range of advanced performance enhancing features. Flow control eliminates the loss of packets due to bottlenecks caused by port saturation. Storm suppression prevents broadcast, multicast, and unknown unicast traffic storms from engulfing the network. Untagged (port-based), tagged, and protocol-based VLANs, plus support for automatic GVRP VLAN registration provide traffic security and efficient use of network bandwidth. CoS priority queueing ensures the minimum delay for moving real-time multimedia data across the network. While multicast filtering provides support for real-time network applications.

Some of the management features are briefly described below.

**Configuration Backup and Restore** You can save the current configuration settings to a file on the management station (using the web interface) or an FTP/SFTP/TFTP server (using the web or console interface), and later download this file to restore the switch configuration settings.

**Authentication** This switch authenticates management access via the console port, Telnet, or a web browser. User names and passwords can be configured locally or can be verified via a remote authentication server (i.e., RADIUS or TACACS+). Port-based authentication is also supported via the IEEE 802.1X protocol. This protocol uses Extensible Authentication Protocol over LANs (EAPOL) to request user credentials

from the 802.1X client, and then uses the EAP between the switch and the authentication server to verify the client's right to access the network via an authentication server (i.e., RADIUS or TACACS+ server).

Other authentication options include HTTPS for secure management access via the web, SSH for secure management access over a Telnet-equivalent connection, SNMP Version 3, IP address filtering for SNMP/Telnet/web management access. MAC address filtering and IP source guard also provide authenticated port access. While DHCP snooping is provided to prevent malicious attacks from insecure ports.

**Access Control Lists** ACLs provide packet filtering for IP frames (based on address, protocol, TCP/UDP port number or TCP control code) or any frames (based on MAC address or Ethernet type). ACLs can be used to improve performance by blocking unnecessary network traffic or to implement security controls by restricting access to specific network resources or protocols.

**Port Configuration** You can manually configure the speed, duplex mode, and flow control used on specific ports, or use auto-negotiation to detect the connection settings used by the attached device. Use full-duplex mode on ports whenever possible to double the throughput of switch connections. Flow control should also be enabled to control network traffic during periods of congestion and prevent the loss of packets when port buffer thresholds are exceeded. The switch supports flow control based on the IEEE 802.3x standard (now incorporated in IEEE 802.3-2002).

**Rate Limiting** This feature controls the maximum rate for traffic transmitted or received on an interface. Rate limiting is configured on interfaces at the edge of a network to limit traffic into or out of the network. Packets that exceed the acceptable amount of traffic are dropped.

**Port Mirroring** The switch can unobtrusively mirror traffic from any port to a monitor port. You can then attach a protocol analyzer or RMON probe to this port to perform traffic analysis and verify connection integrity.

**Port Trunking** Ports can be combined into an aggregate connection. Trunks can be manually set up or dynamically configured using Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP – IEEE 802.3-2005). The additional ports dramatically increase the throughput across any connection, and provide redundancy by taking over the load if a port in the trunk should fail. The switch supports up to 8 trunks.

**Storm Control** Broadcast, multicast and unknown unicast storm suppression prevents traffic from overwhelming the network. When enabled on a port, the level of traffic passing through the port is restricted. If traffic rises above a pre-defined threshold, it will be throttled until the level falls back beneath the threshold.

**Static MAC Addresses** A static address can be assigned to a specific interface on this switch. Static addresses are bound to the assigned interface and will not be moved. When a static address is seen on another interface, the address will be ignored and will not be written to the address table. Static addresses can be used to provide network security by restricting access for a known host to a specific port.

**IP Address Filtering** Access to insecure ports can be controlled using DHCP Snooping which filters ingress traffic based on static IP addresses and addresses stored in the DHCP Snooping table. Traffic can also be restricted to specific source IP addresses or source IP/MAC address pairs based on static entries or entries stored in the DHCP Snooping table.

**IEEE 802.1D Bridge** The switch supports IEEE 802.1D transparent bridging. The address table facilitates data switching by learning addresses, and then filtering or forwarding traffic based on this information. The address table supports up to 16K addresses.

**Store-and-Forward Switching** The switch copies each frame into its memory before forwarding them to another port. This ensures that all frames are a standard Ethernet size and have been verified for accuracy with the cyclic redundancy check (CRC). This prevents bad frames from entering the network and wasting bandwidth.

To avoid dropping frames on congested ports, the switch provides 12 Mbits for frame buffering. This buffer can queue packets awaiting transmission on congested networks.

**Spanning Tree Algorithm** The switch supports these spanning tree protocols:

- ◆ Spanning Tree Protocol (STP, IEEE 802.1D) – This protocol provides loop detection. When there are multiple physical paths between segments, this protocol will choose a single path and disable all others to ensure that only one route exists between any two stations on the network. This prevents the creation of network loops. However, if the chosen path should fail for any reason, an alternate path will be activated to maintain the connection.
- ◆ Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP, IEEE 802.1w) – This protocol reduces the convergence time for network topology changes to about 3 to 5 seconds, compared to 30 seconds or more for the older IEEE 802.1D STP standard. It is intended as a complete replacement for STP, but can still interoperate with switches running the older standard by automatically reconfiguring ports to STP-compliant mode if they detect STP protocol messages from attached devices.
- ◆ Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP, IEEE 802.1s) – This protocol is a direct extension of RSTP. It can provide an independent spanning tree for different VLANs. It simplifies network management, provides for even faster convergence than RSTP by limiting the size of each region, and prevents VLAN

members from being segmented from the rest of the group (as sometimes occurs with IEEE 802.1D STP).

**Virtual LANs** The switch supports up to 4094 VLANs. A Virtual LAN is a collection of network nodes that share the same collision domain regardless of their physical location or connection point in the network. The switch supports tagged VLANs based on the IEEE 802.1Q standard. Members of VLAN groups can be dynamically learned via GVRP, or ports can be manually assigned to a specific set of VLANs. This allows the switch to restrict traffic to the VLAN groups to which a user has been assigned. By segmenting your network into VLANs, you can:

- ◆ Eliminate broadcast storms which severely degrade performance in a flat network.
- ◆ Simplify network management for node changes/moves by remotely configuring VLAN membership for any port, rather than having to manually change the network connection.
- ◆ Provide data security by restricting all traffic to the originating VLAN, except where a connection is explicitly defined via the switch's routing service.
- ◆ Use protocol VLANs to restrict traffic to specified interfaces based on protocol type.

**IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling (QinQ)** This feature is designed for service providers carrying traffic for multiple customers across their networks. QinQ tunneling is used to maintain customer-specific VLAN and Layer 2 protocol configurations even when different customers use the same internal VLAN IDs. This is accomplished by inserting Service Provider VLAN (SPVLAN) tags into the customer's frames when they enter the service provider's network, and then stripping the tags when the frames leave the network.

**Traffic Prioritization** This switch prioritizes each packet based on the required level of service, using eight priority queues with strict priority, Weighted Round Robin (WRR) scheduling, or a combination of strict and weighted queuing. It uses IEEE 802.1p and 802.1Q tags to prioritize incoming traffic based on input from the end-station application. These functions can be used to provide independent priorities for delay-sensitive data and best-effort data.

This switch also supports several common methods of prioritizing layer 3/4 traffic to meet application requirements. Traffic can be prioritized based on the priority bits in the IP frame's Type of Service (ToS) octet using DSCP, or IP Precedence. When these services are enabled, the priorities are mapped to a Class of Service value by the switch, and the traffic then sent to the corresponding output queue.

**Quality of Service** Differentiated Services (DiffServ) provides policy-based management mechanisms used for prioritizing network resources to meet the requirements of specific traffic types on a per-hop basis. Each packet is classified upon entry into the network based on access lists, IP Precedence or DSCP values, or VLAN lists. Using access lists allows you select traffic based on Layer 2, Layer 3, or Layer 4 information contained in each packet. Based on network policies, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different kinds of forwarding.

**IP Routing** The switch provides Layer 3 IP routing. To maintain a high rate of throughput, the switch forwards all traffic passing within the same segment, and routes only traffic that passes between different subnetworks. The wire-speed routing provided by this switch lets you easily link network segments or VLANs together without having to deal with the bottlenecks or configuration hassles normally associated with conventional routers.

Routing for unicast traffic is supported with static routing and Routing Information Protocol (RIP).

Static Routing – Traffic is automatically routed between any IP interfaces configured on the switch. Routing to statically configured hosts or subnet addresses is provided based on next-hop entries specified in the static routing table.

RIP – This protocol uses a distance-vector approach to routing. Routes are determined on the basis of minimizing the distance vector, or hop count, which serves as a rough estimate of transmission cost.

**Address Resolution Protocol** The switch uses ARP and Proxy ARP to convert between IP addresses and MAC (hardware) addresses. This switch supports conventional ARP, which locates the MAC address corresponding to a given IP address. This allows the switch to use IP addresses for routing decisions and the corresponding MAC addresses to forward packets from one hop to the next. Either static or dynamic entries can be configured in the ARP cache.

Proxy ARP allows hosts that do not support routing to determine the MAC address of a device on another network or subnet. When a host sends an ARP request for a remote network, the switch checks to see if it has the best route. If it does, it sends its own MAC address to the host. The host then sends traffic for the remote destination via the switch, which uses its own routing table to reach the destination on the other network.

**Multicast Filtering** Specific multicast traffic can be assigned to its own VLAN to ensure that it does not interfere with normal network traffic and to guarantee real-time delivery by setting the required priority level for the designated VLAN. The switch uses IGMP Snooping and Query for IPv4, and MLD Snooping and Query for IPv6 to manage multicast group registration.

**Link Layer Discovery Protocol** LLDP is used to discover basic information about neighboring devices within the local broadcast domain. LLDP is a Layer 2 protocol that advertises information about the sending device and collects information gathered from neighboring network nodes it discovers.

Advertised information is represented in Type Length Value (TLV) format according to the IEEE 802.1ab standard, and can include details such as device identification, capabilities and configuration settings. Media Endpoint Discovery (LLDP-MED) is an extension of LLDP intended for managing endpoint devices such as Voice over IP phones and network switches. The LLDP-MED TLVs advertise information such as network policy, power, inventory, and device location details. The LLDP and LLDP-MED information can be used by SNMP applications to simplify troubleshooting, enhance network management, and maintain an accurate network topology.

## System Defaults

The switch's system defaults are provided in the configuration file "Factory\_Default\_Config.cfg." To reset the switch defaults, this file should be set as the startup configuration file.

The following table lists some of the basic system defaults.

**Table 2: System Defaults**

Function	Parameter	Default
Console Port Connection	Baud Rate	115200 bps
	Data bits	8
	Stop bits	1
	Parity	none
	Local Console Timeout	600 seconds

**Table 2: System Defaults** (Continued)

Function	Parameter	Default
Authentication and Security Measures	Privileged Exec Level	Username "admin" Password "admin"
	Normal Exec Level	Username "guest" Password "guest"
	Enable Privileged Exec from Normal Exec Level	Password "super"
	RADIUS Authentication	Disabled
	TACACS+ Authentication	Disabled
	802.1X Port Authentication	Disabled
	Web Authentication	Disabled
	MAC Authentication	Disabled
	HTTPS	Enabled
	SSH	Disabled
	Port Security	Disabled
	IP Filtering	Disabled
	DHCP Snooping	Disabled
IP Source Guard	Disabled (all ports)	
Web Management	HTTP Server	Enabled
	HTTP Port Number	80
	HTTP Secure Server	Enabled
	HTTP Secure Server Port	443
SNMP	SNMP Agent	Enabled
	Community Strings	"public" (read only) "private" (read/write)
	Traps	Authentication traps: enabled Link-up-down events: enabled
	SNMP V3	View: defaultview Group: public (read only); private (read/write)
Port Configuration	Admin Status	Enabled
	Auto-negotiation	Enabled
	Flow Control	Disabled
Port Trunking	Static Trunks	None
	LACP (all ports)	Disabled



**Table 2: System Defaults** (Continued)

Function	Parameter	Default	
Congestion Control	Rate Limiting	Disabled	
	Storm Control	Broadcast: Enabled (64 kbits/sec) Multicast: Disabled Unknown Unicast: Disabled	
	Auto Traffic Control	Disabled	
Address Table	Aging Time	300 seconds	
Spanning Tree Algorithm	Status	Disabled	
	Edge Ports	Auto	
LLDP	Status	Enabled	
Virtual LANs	Default VLAN	1	
	PVID	1	
	Acceptable Frame Type	All	
	Ingress Filtering	Enabled	
	Switchport Mode (Egress Mode)	Hybrid	
	GVRP (global)	Disabled	
	GVRP (port interface)	Disabled	
	QinQ Tunneling	Disabled	
	Traffic Prioritization	Ingress Port Priority	0
		Queue Mode	WRR
Queue Weight		Queue: 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 Weight: 1 2 4 6 8 10 12 14	
Class of Service		Enabled	
IP Precedence Priority		Disabled	
IP Settings	IP DSCP Priority	Disabled	
	IPv6 DSCP Priority	Disabled	
	Management. VLAN	VLAN 1	
	IP Address	192.168.2.10	
	Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	
	Default Gateway	Not configured	
	DHCP	Client: Enabled	
	DNS	Proxy service: Disabled	
	BOOTP	Disabled	
	ARP	Enabled Cache Timeout: 20 minutes	
Unicast Routing	RIP	Disabled	

**Table 2: System Defaults** (Continued)

<b>Function</b>	<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Default</b>
Multicast Filtering	IGMP Snooping (Layer 2)	Snooping: Disabled Querier: Disabled
	MLD Snooping (Layer 2 IPv6)	Snooping: Disabled Querier: Disabled
	IGMP Proxy Reporting	Disabled
System Log	Status	Enabled
	Messages Logged to RAM	Levels 0-7 (all)
	Messages Logged to Flash	Levels 0-3
SMTP Email Alerts	Event Handler	Enabled (but no server defined)
SNTP	Clock Synchronization	Disabled
Switch Clustering	Status	Disabled
	Commander	Disabled

# Section II

## Web Configuration

This section describes the basic switch features, along with a detailed description of how to configure each feature via a web browser.

This section includes these chapters:

- ◆ ["Using the Web Interface" on page 45](#)
- ◆ ["Basic Management Tasks" on page 67](#)
- ◆ ["Interface Configuration" on page 101](#)
- ◆ ["VLAN Configuration" on page 147](#)
- ◆ ["Address Table Settings" on page 167](#)
- ◆ ["Spanning Tree Algorithm" on page 177](#)
- ◆ ["Congestion Control" on page 201](#)
- ◆ ["Class of Service" on page 205](#)
- ◆ ["Quality of Service" on page 215](#)
- ◆ ["VoIP Traffic Configuration" on page 225](#)
- ◆ ["Security Measures" on page 231](#)
- ◆ ["Basic Administration Protocols" on page 329](#)
- ◆ ["Multicast Filtering" on page 411](#)
- ◆ ["IP Tools" on page 463](#)
- ◆ ["IP Configuration" on page 471](#)
- ◆ ["General IP Routing" on page 493](#)

- ◆ "Unicast Routing" on page 499
- ◆ "IP Services" on page 519

# 2

## Using the Web Interface

This switch provides an embedded HTTP web agent. Using a web browser you can configure the switch and view statistics to monitor network activity. The web agent can be accessed by any computer on the network using a standard web browser (Internet Explorer 9, Mozilla Firefox 39, or Google Chrome 44, or more recent versions).



**Note:** You can also use the Command Line Interface (CLI) to manage the switch over a serial connection to the console port or via Telnet. For more information on using the CLI, refer to the *CLI Reference Guide*.

### Connecting to the Web Interface

Prior to accessing the switch from a web browser, be sure you have first performed the following tasks:

1. The default IP address and subnet mask for the switch is 192.168.2.10 and 255.255.255.0, with no default gateway. If this is not compatible with the subnet connected to the switch, you can configure it with a valid IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway. To configure this device as the default gateway, use the IP > Routing > Static Routes (Add) page, set the destination address to the required interface, and the next hop to null address 0.0.0.0 .
2. Set user names and passwords using an out-of-band serial connection. Access to the web agent is controlled by the same user names and passwords as the onboard configuration program. (See [“Configuring User Accounts” on page 248.](#))
3. After you enter a user name and password, you will have access to the system configuration program.



**Note:** You are allowed three attempts to enter the correct password; on the third failed attempt the current connection is terminated.

**Note:** If you log into the web interface as guest (Normal Exec level), you can view the configuration settings or change the guest password. If you log in as “admin” (Privileged Exec level), you can change the settings on any page.

**Note:** If the path between your management station and this switch does not pass through any device that uses the Spanning Tree Algorithm, then you can set the

switch port attached to your management station to fast forwarding (i.e., enable Admin Edge Port) to improve the switch's response time to management commands issued through the web interface. See ["Configuring Interface Settings for STA" on page 187](#).

**Note:** Users are automatically logged off of the HTTP server or HTTPS server if no input is detected for 600 seconds.

**Note:** Connection to the web interface is not supported for HTTPS using an IPv6 link local address.

---

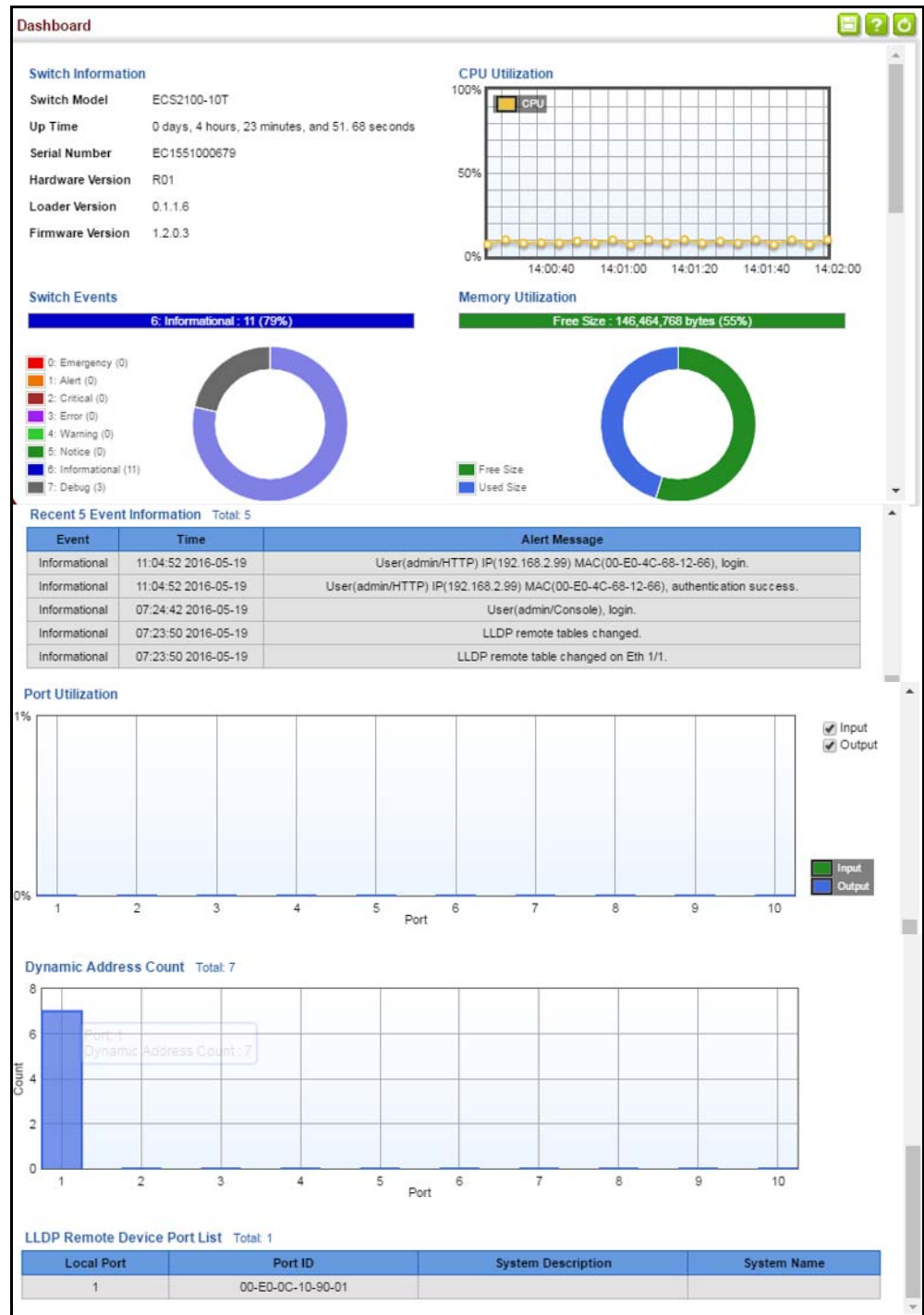
---

## Navigating the Web Browser Interface

To access the web-browser interface you must first enter a user name and password. The administrator has Read/Write access to all configuration parameters and statistics. The default user name and password for the administrator is "admin." The administrator has full access privileges to configure any parameters in the web interface. The default user name and password for guest access is "guest." The guest only has read access for most configuration parameters. Refer to ["Configuring User Accounts" on page 248](#) for more details.








**Dashboard** When your web browser connects with the switch's web agent, the Dashboard is displayed as shown below. The Dashboard displays the main menu on the left side of the screen and System Information, CPU Utilization, Temperature, and Top 5 Most Active Interfaces on the right side. The main menu links are used to navigate to other menus, and display configuration parameters and statistics.

Figure 1: Dashboard



**Configuration Options** Configurable parameters have a dialog box or a drop-down list. Once a configuration change has been made on a page, be sure to click on the Apply button to confirm the new setting. The following table summarizes the web page configuration buttons.

**Table 3: Web Page Configuration Buttons**

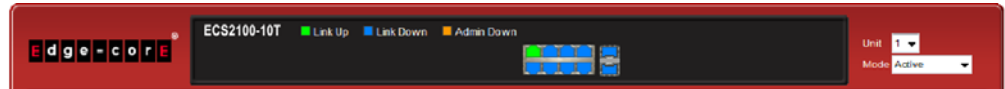
Button	Action
Apply	Sets specified values to the system.
Revert	Cancels specified values and restores current values prior to pressing "Apply."
	Saves current settings.
	Displays help for the selected page.
	Refreshes the current page.
	Displays the site map.
	Logs out of the management interface.
	Sends mail to the vendor.
	Links to the vendor's web site.



**Panel Display** The web agent displays an image of the switch's ports. The Mode can be set to display different information for the ports, including Active (i.e., up or down), Duplex (i.e., half or full duplex), or Flow Control (i.e., with or without flow control).

**Figure 2: Front Panel Indicators**

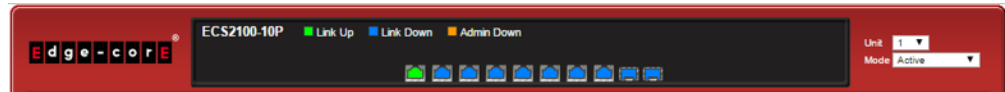
**ECS2100-10T**



**ECS2100-10PE**



**ECS2100-10P**



**ECS2100-28T**



**ECS2100-28P**



**ECS2100-28PP**



**NOTE:** This manual covers the ECS2100-10T/10PE/10P and the ECS2100-28T/28P/28PP Gigabit Ethernet switches. Other than the difference in port types, and support for PoE, there are no significant differences.

**NOTE:** You can open a connection to the vendor's web site by clicking on the Edgecore logo.

**Main Menu** Using the onboard web agent, you can define system parameters, manage and control the switch, and all its ports, or monitor network conditions. The following table briefly describes the selections available from this program.

**Table 4: Switch Main Menu**

Menu	Description	Page
Dashboard	Displays system information, CPU utilization, temperature, and top 5 most active interfaces.	46
System		
General	Provides basic system description, including contact information	68
Switch	Shows the number of ports, hardware version, power status, and firmware version numbers	69
Capability	Enables support for jumbo frames; shows the bridge extension parameters	70, 71
File		72
Copy	Allows the transfer and copying files	72
Automatic Operation Code Upgrade	Automatically upgrades operation code if a newer version is found on the server	77
Set Startup	Sets the startup file	76
Show	Shows the files stored in flash memory; allows deletion of files	76
Time		81
Configure General		
Manual	Manually sets the current time	81
SNTP	Configures SNTP polling interval	82
NTP	Configures NTP authentication parameters	83
Configure Time Server	Configures a list of SNTP servers	84
Configure SNTP Server	Sets the IP address for SNTP time servers	84
Add NTP Server	Adds NTP time server and index of authentication key	85
Show NTP Server	Shows list of configured NTP time servers	85
Add NTP Authentication Key	Adds key index and corresponding MD5 key	86
Show NTP Authentication Key	Shows list of configured authentication keys	86
Configure Time Zone	Sets the local time zone for the system clock	88
Configure Summer Time	Configures summer time settings	89
Console	Sets console port connection parameters	91
Telnet	Sets Telnet connection parameters	93
CPU Utilization	Displays information on CPU utilization	94
CPU Guard	Sets the CPU utilization watermark and threshold	95
Memory Status	Shows memory utilization parameters	96

**Table 4: Switch Main Menu (Continued)**

Menu	Description	Page
Reset	Restarts the switch immediately, at a specified time, after a specified delay, or at a periodic interval	97
Interface		101
Port		102
General		102
Configure by Port List	Configures connection settings per port	102
Configure by Port Range	Configures connection settings for a range of ports	104
Show Information	Displays port connection status	105
Statistics	Shows Interface, Etherlike, and RMON port statistics	106
Chart	Shows Interface, Etherlike, and RMON port statistics	106
History	Shows statistical history for specified interfaces	110
Transceiver	Shows identifying information and operational parameters for optical transceivers which support Digital Diagnostic Monitoring (DDM), and configures thresholds for alarm and warning messages for optical transceivers which support DDM	114 115
Cable Test	Performs cable diagnostics for selected port to diagnose any cable faults (short, open etc.) and report the cable length	118
Trunk		119
Static		121
Configure Trunk		121
Add	Creates a trunk, along with the first port member	121
Show	Shows the configured trunk identifiers	121
Add Member	Specifies ports to group into static trunks	121
Show Member	Shows the port members for the selected trunk	121
Configure General		121
Configure	Configures trunk connection settings	121
Show Information	Displays trunk connection settings	121
Dynamic		124
Configure Aggregator	Configures administration key and timeout for specific LACP groups	124
Configure Aggregation Port		124
Configure		124
General	Allows ports to dynamically join trunks	124
Actor	Configures parameters for link aggregation group members on the local side	124
Partner	Configures parameters for link aggregation group members on the remote side	124

**Table 4: Switch Main Menu** (Continued)

Menu	Description	Page
Configure Trunk		124
Configure	Configures connection settings	124
Show	Displays port connection status	124
Statistics	Shows Interface, Etherlike, and RMON port statistics	106
Chart	Shows Interface, Etherlike, and RMON port statistics	106
Load Balance	Sets the load-distribution method among ports in aggregated links	129
History	Shows statistical history for specified interfaces	110
Green Ethernet	Adjusts the power provided to ports based on the length of the cable used to connect to other devices	131
Mirror		133
Add	Sets the source and target ports for mirroring	133
Show	Shows the configured mirror sessions	133
RSPAN	Mirrors traffic from remote switches for analysis at a destination port on the local switch	134
sFlow	Configures flow sampling for receiver ports and instances	139
Configure Receiver	Creates an sFlow receiver on the switch	139
Configure Details	Enable an sFlow polling data source that polls periodically based on a specified time interval, or an sFlow data source instance that takes samples periodically based on the number of packets processed	141
Traffic Segmentation		143
Configure Global	Enables traffic segmentation globally	143
Configure Session	Configures the uplink and down-link ports for a segmented group of ports	144
VLAN	Virtual LAN	147
Static		
Add	Creates VLAN groups	149
Show	Displays configured VLAN groups	149
Modify	Configures group name and administrative status	149
Edit Member by VLAN	Specifies VLAN attributes per VLAN	152
Edit Member by Interface	Specifies VLAN attributes per interface	152
Edit Member by Interface Range	Specifies VLAN attributes per interface range	152
Tunnel	IEEE 802.1Q (QinQ) Tunneling	156
Configure Global	Sets tunnel mode for the switch	160
Configure Interface	Sets the tunnel mode for any participating interface	161
Protocol		162
Configure Protocol		163
Add	Creates a protocol group, specifying supported protocols	163

**Table 4: Switch Main Menu** (Continued)

Menu	Description	Page
Show	Shows configured protocol groups	163
MAC-Based		164
Add	Maps traffic with specified source MAC address to a VLAN	164
Show	Shows source MAC address to VLAN mapping	164
MAC Address		167
Dynamic		
Configure Aging	Sets timeout for dynamically learned entries	169
Show Dynamic MAC	Displays dynamic entries in the address table	167
Clear Dynamic MAC	Removes any learned entries from the forwarding database and clears the transmit and receive counts for any static or system configured entries	168
Learning Status	Enables MAC address learning on selected interfaces	170
Static	Configures static MAC addresses	172
MAC Notification		174
Configure Global	Issues a trap when a dynamic MAC address is added or removed	174
Configure Interface	Enables MAC authentication traps on the current interface	174
Spanning Tree		177
Loopback Detection	Configures Loopback Detection parameters	179
STA	Spanning Tree Algorithm	
Configure Global		
Configure	Configures global bridge settings for STP, RSTP and MSTP	181
Show Information	Displays STA values used for the bridge	186
Configure Interface		
Configure	Configures interface settings for STA	187
Show Information	Displays interface settings for STA	192
MSTP	Multiple Spanning Tree Algorithm	195
Configure Global		195
Add	Configures initial VLAN and priority for an MST instance	195
Modify	Configures the priority or an MST instance	195
Show	Configures global settings for an MST instance	195
Add Member	Adds VLAN members for an MST instance	195
Show Member	Adds or deletes VLAN members for an MST instance	195
Show Information	Displays MSTP values used for the bridge	
Configure Interface		199
Configure	Configures interface settings for an MST instance	199

**Table 4: Switch Main Menu** (Continued)

Menu	Description	Page
Show Information	Displays interface settings for an MST instance	199
Traffic		
Rate Limit	Sets the input and output rate limits for a port	201
Storm Control	Sets the broadcast storm threshold for each interface	202
Priority		
Default Priority	Sets the default priority for each port or trunk	205
Queue	Sets queue mode for the switch; sets the service weight for each queue that will use a weighted or hybrid mode	206
Trust Mode	Selects DSCP or CoS priority processing	210
CoS to Queue	Maps CoS/CFI values in incoming packets to per-hop behavior for priority processing	211
DSCP to Queue	Maps DSCP values in incoming packets to per-hop behavior for priority processing	212
DiffServ		
Configure Class		215
Add	Creates a class map for a type of traffic	216
Show	Shows configured class maps	216
Modify	Modifies the name of a class map	216
Add Rule	Configures the criteria used to classify ingress traffic	216
Show Rule	Shows the traffic classification rules for a class map	216
Configure Policy		219
Add	Creates a policy map to apply to multiple interfaces	219
Show	Shows configured policy maps	219
Modify	Modifies the name of a policy map	219
Add Rule	Sets the boundary parameters used for monitoring inbound traffic, and the action to take for conforming and non-conforming traffic	219
Show Rule	Shows the rules used to enforce bandwidth policing for a policy map	219
Configure Interface	Applies a policy map to an ingress port	222
VoIP		
Configure Global	Configures auto-detection of VoIP traffic, sets the Voice VLAN, and VLAN aging time	226
Configure OUI		227
Add	Maps the OUI in the source MAC address of ingress packets to the VoIP device manufacturer	227
Show	Shows the OUI telephony list	227
Configure Interface	Configures VoIP traffic settings for ports, including the way in which a port is added to the Voice VLAN, filtering of non-VoIP packets, the method of detecting VoIP traffic, and the priority assigned to the voice traffic	228

**Table 4: Switch Main Menu (Continued)**

Menu	Description	Page
Security		231
AAA	Authentication, Authorization and Accounting	232
System Authentication	Configures authentication sequence – local, RADIUS, and TACACS	233
Server		234
Configure Server	Configures RADIUS and TACACS server message exchange settings	234
Configure Group		234
Add	Specifies a group of authentication servers and sets the priority sequence	234
Show	Shows the authentication server groups and priority sequence	234
Accounting	Enables accounting of requested services for billing or security purposes	239
Configure Global	Specifies the interval at which the local accounting service updates information to the accounting server	239
Configure Method		239
Add	Configures accounting for various service types	239
Show	Shows the accounting settings used for various service types	239
Configure Service	Sets the accounting method applied to specific interfaces for 802.1X, CLI command privilege levels for the console port, and for Telnet	239
Show Information		239
Summary	Shows the configured accounting methods, and the methods applied to specific interfaces	239
Statistics	Shows basic accounting information recorded for user sessions	239
Authorization	Enables authorization of requested services	245
Configure Method		245
Add	Configures authorization for various service types	245
Show	Shows the authorization settings used for various service types	245
Configure Service	Sets the authorization method applied used for the console port, and for Telnet	245
Show Information	Shows the configured authorization methods, and the methods applied to specific interfaces	245
User Accounts		248
Add	Configures user names, passwords, and access levels	248
Show	Shows authorized users	248
Modify	Modifies user attributes	248
Web Authentication	Allows authentication and access to the network when 802.1X or Network Access authentication are infeasible or impractical	250
Configure Global	Configures general protocol settings	251
Configure Interface	Enables Web Authentication for individual ports	252

**Table 4: Switch Main Menu** (Continued)

Menu	Description	Page
Network Access	MAC address-based network access authentication	253
Configure Global	Enables aging for authenticated MAC addresses, and sets the time period after which a connected MAC address must be reauthenticated	255
Configure Interface		256
General	Enables MAC authentication on a port; sets the maximum number of address that can be authenticated, the guest VLAN, dynamic VLAN and dynamic QoS	256
Configure MAC Filter		258
Add	Specifies MAC addresses exempt from authentication	258
Show	Shows the list of exempt MAC addresses	258
Show Information	Shows the authenticated MAC address list	260
HTTPS	Secure HTTP	262
Configure Global	Enables HTTPSs, and specifies the UDP port to use	262
Copy Certificate	Replaces the default secure-site certificate	263
SSH	Secure Shell	265
Configure Global	Configures SSH server settings	267
Configure Host Key		269
Generate	Generates the host key pair (public and private)	269
Show	Displays RSA and DSA host keys; deletes host keys	269
Configure User Key		270
Copy	Imports user public keys from a TFTP server	270
Show	Displays RSA and DSA user keys; deletes user keys	270
ACL	Access Control Lists	272
Configure ACL		275
Show TCAM	Shows utilization parameters for TCAM	273
Add	Adds an ACL based on IP or MAC address filtering	275
Show	Shows the name and type of configured ACLs	275
Add Rule	Configures packet filtering based on IP or MAC addresses and other packet attributes	275
Show Rule	Shows the rules specified for an ACL	275
Configure Interface	Binds a port to the specified ACL and time range	
Configure	Binds a port to the specified ACL and time range	288
Show Hardware Counters	Shows statistics for ACL hardware counters	289
IP Filter		292
Add	Sets IP addresses of clients allowed management access via the web, SNMP, and Telnet	292
Show	Shows the addresses to be allowed management access	292



**Table 4: Switch Main Menu** (Continued)

Menu	Description	Page
Port Security	Configures per port security, including status, response for security breach, and maximum allowed MAC addresses	294
Port Authentication	IEEE 802.1X	296
Configure Global	Enables authentication and EAPOL pass-through	298
Configure Interface	Sets authentication parameters for individual ports	299
Show Statistics	Displays protocol statistics for the selected port	303
DoS Protection	Protects against Denial-of-Service attacks	304
DHCP Snooping		306
Configure Global	Enables DHCP snooping globally, MAC-address verification, information option; and sets the information policy	309
Configure VLAN	Enables DHCP snooping on a VLAN	311
Configure Interface	Sets the trust mode for an interface	312
Show Information	Displays the DHCP Snooping binding information	313
IP Source Guard	Filters IP traffic based on static entries in the IP Source Guard table, or dynamic entries in the DHCP Snooping table	314
General	Enables IP source guard and selects filter type per port	314
Static Binding		316
Configure ACL Table		316
Add	Adds static addresses to the source guard ACL binding table	316
Show	Shows static addresses in the source guard ACL binding table	316
Configure MAC Table		316
Add	Adds static addresses to the source guard MAC address binding table	316
Show	Shows static addresses in the source guard MAC address binding table	316
Dynamic Binding	Displays the source-guard binding table for a selected interface	319
ARP Inspection		320
Configure General	Enables inspection globally, configures validation of additional address components, and sets the log rate for packet inspection	321
Configure VLAN	Enables ARP inspection on specified VLANs	323
Configure Interface	Sets the trust mode for ports, and sets the rate limit for packet inspection	325
Show Information		326
Show Statistics	Displays statistics on the inspection process	326
Show Log	Shows the inspection log list	327

**Table 4: Switch Main Menu** (Continued)

<b>Menu</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Page</b>
Administration		329
Log		330
System		330
Configure Global	Stores error messages in local memory	330
Show System Logs	Shows logged error messages	330
Remote	Configures the logging of messages to a remote logging process	332
SMTP	Sends an SMTP client message to a participating server	333
LLDP		335
Configure Global	Configures global LLDP timing parameters	335
Configure Interface		337
Configure General	Sets the message transmission mode; enables SNMP notification; and sets the LLDP attributes to advertise	337
Add CA-Type	Specifies the physical location of the device attached to an interface	341
Show Local Device Information		343
General	Displays general information about the local device	343
Port/Trunk	Displays information about each interface	343
Show Remote Device Information		347
Port/Trunk	Displays information about a remote device connected to a port on this switch	347
Port/Trunk Details	Displays detailed information about a remote device connected to this switch	347
Show Device Statistics		353
General	Displays statistics for all connected remote devices	353
Port/Trunk	Displays statistics for remote devices on a selected port or trunk	353
PoE*	Power over Ethernet	355
PSE	Configures port power parameters	355
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol	360
Configure Global	Enables SNMP agent status, and sets related trap functions	362
Configure Engine		363
Set Engine ID	Sets the SNMP v3 engine ID on this switch	363
Add Remote Engine	Sets the SNMP v3 engine ID for a remote device	364
Show Remote Engine	Shows configured engine ID for remote devices	364

**Table 4: Switch Main Menu** (Continued)

Menu	Description	Page
Configure View		365
Add View	Adds an SNMP v3 view of the OID MIB	365
Show View	Shows configured SNMP v3 views	365
Add OID Subtree	Specifies a part of the subtree for the selected view	365
Show OID Subtree	Shows the subtrees assigned to each view	365
Configure Group		368
Add	Adds a group with access policies for assigned users	368
Show	Shows configured groups and access policies	368
Configure User		
Add Community	Configures community strings and access mode	373
Show Community	Shows community strings and access mode	373
Add SNMPv3 Local User	Configures SNMPv3 users on this switch	374
Show SNMPv3 Local User	Shows SNMPv3 users configured on this switch	374
Change SNMPv3 Local User Group	Assign a local user to a new group	374
Add SNMPv3 Remote User	Configures SNMPv3 users from a remote device	377
Show SNMPv3 Remote User	Shows SNMPv3 users set from a remote device	374
Configure Trap		380
Add	Configures trap managers to receive messages on key events that occur on this switch	380
Show	Shows configured trap managers	380
Configure Notify Filter		
Add	Creates an SNMP notification log	384
Show	Shows the configured notification logs	384
Show Statistics	Shows the status of SNMP communications	386
RMON	Remote Monitoring	388
Configure Global		
Add		
Alarm	Sets threshold bounds for a monitored variable	388
Event	Creates a response event for an alarm	391
Show		388
Alarm	Shows all configured alarms	388
Event	Shows all configured events	391

**Table 4: Switch Main Menu** (Continued)

Menu	Description	Page
Configure Interface		
Add		
History	Periodically samples statistics on a physical interface	393
Statistics	Enables collection of statistics on a physical interface	396
Show		
History	Shows sampling parameters for each entry in the history group	393
Statistics	Shows sampling parameters for each entry in the statistics group	396
Show Details		
History	Shows sampled data for each entry in the history group	393
Statistics	Shows sampled data for each entry in the history group	396
Cluster	Configures the time to apply an ACL	398
Configure Global	Specifies the name of a time range	398
Configure Member	Shows the name of configured time ranges	400
Add	Sets exact time or time range	400
Show	Sets exact time or time range	400
Show Candidate		400
Show Member	Shows the name of configured time ranges	402
Time Range	Configures the time to apply an ACL	403
Add	Specifies the name of a time range	403
Show	Shows the name of configured time ranges	403
Add Rule		403
Absolute	Sets exact time or time range	403
Periodic	Sets a recurrent time	403
Show Rule	Shows the time specified by a rule	403
LDB	Loopback Detection	406
Configure Global	Enables loopback detection globally, specifies the interval at which to transmit control frames, specifies the interval to wait before releasing an interface from shutdown state, specifies response to detect loopback, and traps to send	406
Configure Interface	Enables loopback detection per interface	408
Tools		
Ping	Sends ICMP echo request packets to another node on the network	463
Trace Route	Shows the route packets take to the specified destination	464
ARP	Shows entries in the Address Resolution Protocol cache	466

**Table 4: Switch Main Menu** (Continued)

Menu	Description	Page
IP		471
General		
Routing Interface		
Add Address	Configures an IP interface for a VLAN	471
Show Address	Shows the IP interfaces assigned to a VLAN	471
Routing		
Static Routes		496
Add	Configures static routing entries	496
Show	Shows static routing entries	496
Routing Table	Shows all routing entries, including local, static and dynamic routes	497
IPv6 Configuration		475
Configure Global	Sets an IPv6 default gateway for traffic with no known next hop	476
Configure Interface	Configures IPv6 interface address using auto-configuration or link-local address, and sets related protocol settings	476
Add IPv6 Address	Adds an global unicast, EUI-64, or link-local IPv6 address to an interface	481
Show IPv6 Address	Show the IPv6 addresses assigned to an interface	483
Show IPv6 Neighbor Cache	Displays information in the IPv6 neighbor discovery cache	485
Show Statistics		486
IPv6	Shows statistics about IPv6 traffic	486
ICMPv6	Shows statistics about ICMPv6 messages	486
UDP	Shows statistics about UDP messages	486
Show MTU	Shows the maximum transmission unit (MTU) cache for destinations that have returned an ICMP packet-too-big message along with an acceptable MTU to this switch	492
IP Service		519
DNS	Domain Name Service	
General		519
Configure Global	Enables DNS lookup; defines the default domain name appended to incomplete host names	519
Add Domain Name	Defines a list of domain names that can be appended to incomplete host names	520
Show Domain Names	Shows the configured domain name list	520
Add Name Server	Specifies IP address of name servers for dynamic lookup	522
Show Name Servers	Shows the name server address list	522
Static Host Table		523
Add	Configures static entries for domain name to address mapping	523

**Table 4: Switch Main Menu** (Continued)

Menu	Description	Page
Show	Shows the list of static mapping entries	523
Modify	Modifies the static address mapped to the selected host name	523
Cache	Displays cache entries discovered by designated name servers	524
Multicast DNS	Configures multicast DNS lookup on the local network without the need for a dedicated server	519
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol	526
Client	Specifies the DHCP client identifier for an interface	526
Relay	Specifies the DHCP relay mode	533
L3 Relay	Specifies Layer 2 mode DHCP relay servers	533
L2 Relay	Specifies Layer 3 mode DHCP relay servers	529
Dynamic Provision	Enables dynamic provisioning via DHCP	534
DHCPv6	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol	535
Relay	Specifies DHCPv6 relay servers	535
Multicast		411
IGMP Snooping		412
General	Enables multicast filtering; configures parameters for multicast snooping	414
Multicast Router		418
Add Static Multicast Router	Assigns ports that are attached to a neighboring multicast router	418
Show Static Multicast Router	Displays ports statically configured as attached to a neighboring multicast router	418
Show Current Multicast Router	Displays ports attached to a neighboring multicast router, either through static or dynamic configuration	418
IGMP Member		420
Add Static Member	Statically assigns multicast addresses to the selected VLAN	420
Show Static Member	Shows multicast addresses statically configured on the selected VLAN	420
Interface		422
Configure VLAN	Configures IGMP snooping per VLAN interface	422
Show VLAN Information	Shows IGMP snooping settings per VLAN interface	422
Configure Port	Configures the interface to drop IGMP query packets or all multicast data packets	428
Configure Trunk	Configures the interface to drop IGMP query packets or all multicast data packets	428
Forwarding Entry	Displays the current multicast groups learned through IGMP Snooping	429
Filter		434
Configure General	Enables IGMP filtering for the switch	435

**Table 4: Switch Main Menu** (Continued)

Menu	Description	Page
Configure Profile		435
Add	Adds IGMP filter profile; and sets access mode	435
Show	Shows configured IGMP filter profiles	435
Add Multicast Group Range	Assigns multicast groups to selected profile	435
Show Multicast Group Range	Shows multicast groups assigned to a profile	435
Configure Interface	Assigns IGMP filter profiles to port interfaces and sets throttling action	438
Statistics		430
Show Query Statistics	Shows statistics for query-related messages	430
Show VLAN Statistics	Shows statistics for protocol messages, number of active groups	430
Show Port Statistics	Shows statistics for protocol messages, number of active groups	430
Show Trunk Statistics	Shows statistics for protocol messages, number of active groups	430
MLD Snooping		439
General	Enables multicast filtering; configures parameters for IPv6 multicast snooping	440
Interface	Configures Immediate Leave status for a VLAN	442
Multicast Router		443
Add Static Multicast Router	Assigns ports that are attached to a neighboring multicast router	443
Show Static Multicast Router	Displays ports statically configured as attached to a neighboring multicast router	443
Show Current Multicast Router	Displays ports attached to a neighboring multicast router, either through static or dynamic configuration	443
MLD Member		445
Add Static Member	Statically assigns multicast addresses to the selected VLAN	445
Show Static Member	Shows multicast addresses statically configured on the selected VLAN	445
Show Current Member	Shows multicast addresses associated with the selected VLAN, either through static or dynamic configuration	445
Filter		456
Configure General	Enables MLD filtering for the switch	457
Configure Profile		457
Add	Adds MLD filter profile; and sets access mode	457
Show	Shows configured MLD filter profiles	457
Add Multicast Group Range	Assigns multicast groups to selected profile	457
Show Multicast Group Range	Shows multicast groups assigned to a profile	457
Query Drop	Configures the interface to drop MLD query packets	462
Group Information	Displays known multicast groups, member ports, the means by which each group was learned, and the corresponding source list	447
Statistics		448

**Table 4: Switch Main Menu** (Continued)

Menu	Description	Page
Input	Shows statistics for MLD ingress traffic	445
Output	Shows statistics for MLD egress traffic	445
Query	Shows statistics for query-related messages	445
Summary	Shows summary statistics for querier and report/leave messages	445
Clear	Clears all MLD statics or statistics for specified VLAN/port	445
Routing Protocol		
RIP		500
General		501
Configure	Enables or disables RIP, sets the global RIP attributes and timer values	501
Clear Route	Clears the specified route type or network interface from the routing table	504
Network		505
Add	Sets the network interfaces that will use RIP	505
Show	Shows the network interfaces that will use RIP	505
Passive Interface		507
Add	Stops RIP broadcast and multicast messages from being sent on specified network interfaces	507
Show	Shows the configured passive interfaces	507
Neighbor Address		508
Add	Configures the router to directly exchange routing information with a static neighbor	508
Show	Shows adjacent hosts or interfaces configured as a neighboring router	508
Redistribute		509
Add	Imports external routing information from other routing domains (that is, protocols) into the autonomous system	509
Show	Shows the external routing information to be imported from other routing domains	509
Distance		511
Add	Defines an administrative distance for external routes learned from other routing protocols	511
Show	Shows the administrative distances assigned to external routes learned from other routing protocols	511
Interface		512
Add	Configures RIP parameters for each interface, including send and receive versions, authentication, and method of loopback prevention	512
Show	Shows the RIP parameters set for each interface	512
Modify	Modifies RIP parameters for an interface	512
Statistics		516



**Table 4: Switch Main Menu** (Continued)

Menu	Description	Page
Show Interface Information	Shows RIP settings, and statistics on RIP protocol messages	<a href="#">516</a>
Show Peer Information	Displays information on neighboring RIP routers	<a href="#">516</a>
Reset Statistics	Clears statistics for RIP protocol messages	<a href="#">517</a>

\* ECS2100-10PE/10P/28P/28PP



# 3

## Basic Management Tasks

This chapter describes the following topics:

- ◆ [Displaying System Information](#) – Provides basic system description, including contact information.
- ◆ [Displaying Hardware/Software Versions](#) – Shows the hardware version, power status, and firmware versions
- ◆ [Configuring Support for Jumbo Frames](#) – Enables support for jumbo frames.
- ◆ [Displaying Bridge Extension Capabilities](#) – Shows the bridge extension parameters.
- ◆ [Managing System Files](#) – Describes how to upgrade operating software or configuration files, and set the system start-up files.
- ◆ [Setting the System Clock](#) – Sets the current time manually or through specified NTP or SNTP servers.
- ◆ [Configuring the Console Port](#) – Sets console port connection parameters.
- ◆ [Configuring Telnet Settings](#) – Sets Telnet connection parameters.
- ◆ [Displaying CPU Utilization](#) – Displays information on CPU utilization.
- ◆ [Configuring CPU Guard](#) – Sets thresholds in terms of CPU usage time and number of packets processed per second.
- ◆ [Displaying Memory Utilization](#) – Shows memory utilization parameters.
- ◆ [Resetting the System](#) – Restarts the switch immediately, at a specified time, after a specified delay, or at a periodic interval.

## Displaying System Information

Use the System > General page to identify the system by displaying information such as the device name, location and contact information.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

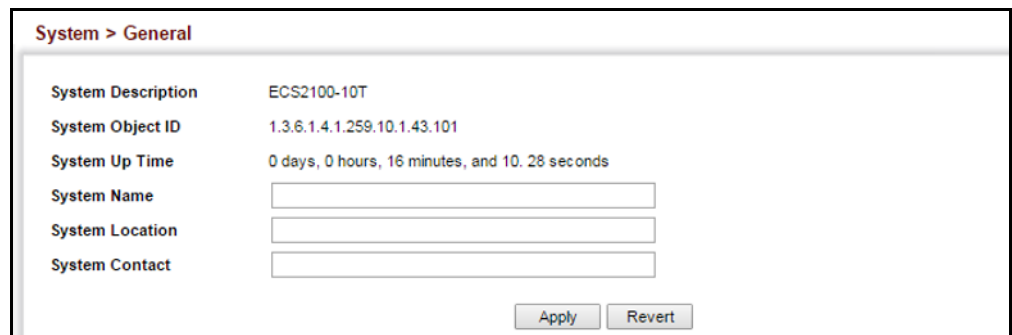
- ◆ **System Description** – Brief description of device type.
- ◆ **System Object ID** – MIB II object ID for switch's network management subsystem.
- ◆ **System Up Time** – Length of time the management agent has been up.
- ◆ **System Name** – Name assigned to the switch system.
- ◆ **System Location** – Specifies the system location.
- ◆ **System Contact** – Administrator responsible for the system.

### Web Interface

To configure general system information:

1. Click System, General.
2. Specify the system name, location, and contact information for the system administrator.
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 3: System Information**



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "System > General". It displays the following parameters and their values or input fields:

System Description	ECS2100-10T
System Object ID	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.101
System Up Time	0 days, 0 hours, 16 minutes, and 10.28 seconds
System Name	<input type="text"/>
System Location	<input type="text"/>
System Contact	<input type="text"/>

At the bottom right of the form, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

## Displaying Hardware/Software Versions

Use the System > Switch page to display hardware/firmware version numbers for the main board and management software, as well as the power status of the system.

### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

#### *Main Board Information*

- ◆ **Serial Number** – The serial number of the switch.
- ◆ **Number of Ports** – Number of built-in ports.
- ◆ **Hardware Version** – Hardware version of the main board.
- ◆ **Main Power Status** – Displays the status of the internal power supply.

#### *Management Software Information*

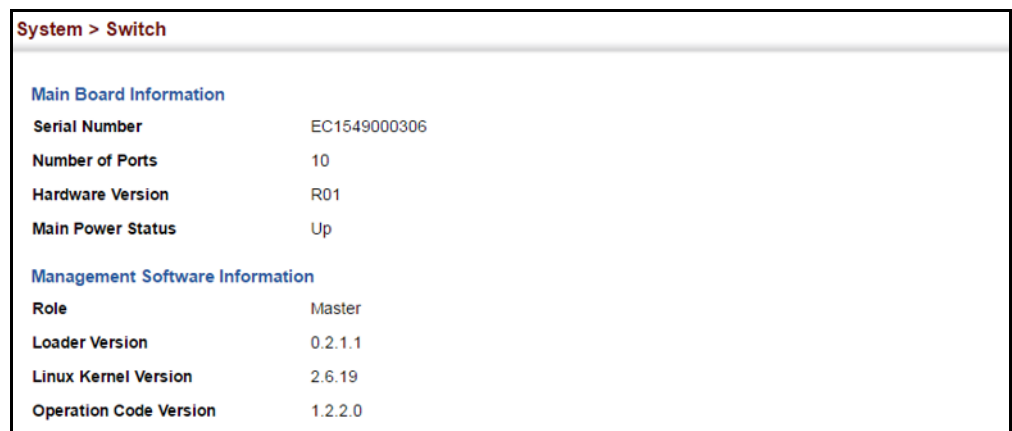
- ◆ **Role** – Shows that this switch is operating as Master or Slave.
- ◆ **Loader Version** – Version number of loader code.
- ◆ **Linux Kernel Version** – Version number of Linux kernel.
- ◆ **Operation Code Version** – Version number of runtime code.

### Web Interface

To view hardware and software version information.

1. Click System, then Switch.

**Figure 4: General Switch Information**



The screenshot shows a web interface with a breadcrumb trail 'System > Switch'. It is divided into two sections: 'Main Board Information' and 'Management Software Information'. Each section contains a list of parameters and their values.

Main Board Information	
Serial Number	EC1549000306
Number of Ports	10
Hardware Version	R01
Main Power Status	Up

Management Software Information	
Role	Master
Loader Version	0.2.1.1
Linux Kernel Version	2.6.19
Operation Code Version	1.2.2.0

## Configuring Support for Jumbo Frames

Use the System > Capability page to configure support for layer 2 jumbo frames. The switch provides more efficient throughput for large sequential data transfers by supporting jumbo frames up to 10240 bytes for Gigabit Ethernet and 10 Gigabit Ethernet ports or trunks. Compared to standard Ethernet frames that run only up to 1.5 KB, using jumbo frames significantly reduces the per-packet overhead required to process protocol encapsulation fields.

### Usage Guidelines

To use jumbo frames, both the source and destination end nodes (such as a computer or server) must support this feature. Also, when the connection is operating at full duplex, all switches in the network between the two end nodes must be able to accept the extended frame size. And for half-duplex connections, all devices in the collision domain would need to support jumbo frames.

### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

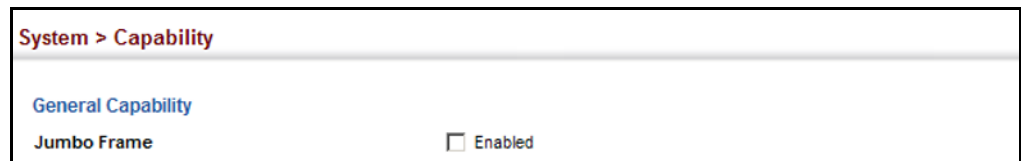
- ◆ **Jumbo Frame** – Configures support for jumbo frames. (Default: Disabled)

### Web Interface

To configure support for jumbo frames:

1. Click System, then Capability.
2. Enable or disable support for jumbo frames.
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 5: Configuring Support for Jumbo Frames**



---

## Displaying Bridge Extension Capabilities

Use the System > Capability page to display settings based on the Bridge MIB. The Bridge MIB includes extensions for managed devices that support Multicast Filtering, Traffic Classes, and Virtual LANs. You can access these extensions to display default settings for the key variables.

### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

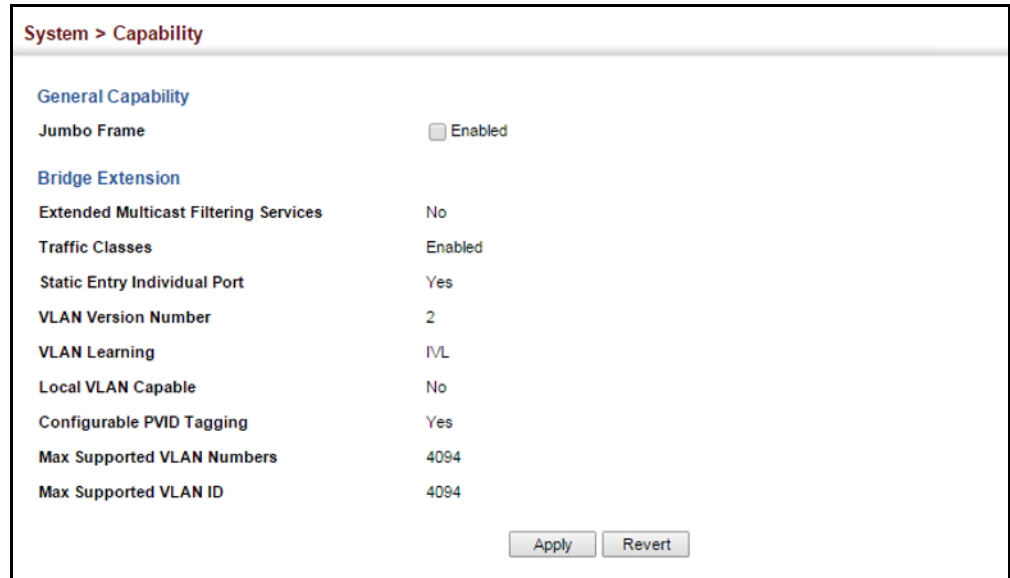
- ◆ **Extended Multicast Filtering Services** – This switch does not support the filtering of individual multicast addresses based on GMRP (GARP Multicast Registration Protocol).
- ◆ **Traffic Classes** – This switch provides mapping of user priorities to multiple traffic classes. (Refer to [“Class of Service” on page 205.](#))
- ◆ **Static Entry Individual Port** – This switch allows static filtering for unicast and multicast addresses. (Refer to [“Setting Static Addresses” on page 172.](#))
- ◆ **VLAN Version Number** – Based on IEEE 802.1Q, “1” indicates Bridges that support only single spanning tree (SST) operation, and “2” indicates Bridges that support multiple spanning tree (MST) operation.
- ◆ **VLAN Learning** – This switch uses Independent VLAN Learning (IVL), where each port maintains its own filtering database.
- ◆ **Local VLAN Capable** – This switch does not support multiple local bridges outside of the scope of 802.1Q defined VLANs.
- ◆ **Configurable PVID Tagging** – This switch allows you to override the default Port VLAN ID (PVID used in frame tags) and egress status (VLAN-Tagged or Untagged) on each port. (Refer to [“VLAN Configuration” on page 147.](#))
- ◆ **Max Supported VLAN Numbers** – The maximum number of VLANs supported on this switch.
- ◆ **Max Supported VLAN ID** – The maximum configurable VLAN identifier supported on this switch.

### Web Interface

To view Bridge Extension information:

1. Click System, then Capability.

**Figure 6: Displaying Bridge Extension Configuration**



---

## Managing System Files

This section describes how to upgrade the switch operating software or configuration files, and set the system start-up files.

### Copying Files via FTP/ SFTP/TFTP or HTTP

Use the System > File (Copy) page to upload/download firmware or configuration settings using FTP, SFTP, TFTP or HTTP. By backing up a file to a FTP/SFTP/TFTP server or management station, that file can later be downloaded to the switch to restore operation. Specify the method of file transfer, along with the file type and file names as required.

You can also set the switch to use new firmware or configuration settings without overwriting the current version. Just download the file using a different name from the current version, and then set the new file as the startup file.

### Command Usage

- ◆ When logging into an FTP/SFTP server, the interface prompts for a user name and password configured on the remote server. Note that "Anonymous" is set as the default user name.



- ◆ Secure Shell FTP (SFTP) provides a method of transferring files between two network devices over an SSH2-secured connection. SFTP functions similar to Secure Copy (SCP), using SSH for user authentication and data encryption.

Although the underlying premises of SFTP are similar to SCP, it requires some additional steps to verify the protocol versions and perform security checks. SFTP connection setup includes verification of the DSS signature, creation of session keys, creation of client-server and server-client ciphers, SSH key exchange, and user authentication. An SFTP channel is then opened, the SFTP protocol version compatibility verified, and SFTP finally initialized.

- ◆ The reset command will not be accepted during copy operations to flash memory.

### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Copy Type** – The firmware or configuration copy operations includes these options:
  - Running-Config - Copies the current running configuration to a startup configuration file (select either startup1.cfg or input a new configuration file name.
  - FTP Upload – Copies a file from an FTP server to the switch.
  - FTP Download – Copies a file from the switch to an FTP server.
  - HTTP Upload – Copies a file from a management station to the switch.
  - HTTP Download – Copies a file from the switch to a management station
  - SFTP Upload – Copies a file from an SFTP server to the switch.
  - SFTP Download – Copies a file from the switch to an SFTP server.
  - TFTP Upload – Copies a file from a TFTP server to the switch.
  - TFTP Download – Copies a file from the switch to a TFTP server.
- ◆ **FTP/SFTP/TFTP Server IP Address** – The IP address of an FTP/SFTP/TFTP server.
- ◆ **User Name** – The user name for SFTP/FTP server access.
- ◆ **Password** – The password for SFTP/FTP server access.
- ◆ **File Type** – Specify Operation Code to copy firmware.
- ◆ **File Name** – The file name should not contain slashes (\ or /), the leading letter of the file name should not be a period (.), and the maximum length for file names is 32 characters for files on the switch or 127 characters for files on the server. (Valid characters: A-Z, a-z, 0-9, "", "-", "\_")



**Note:** Up to two copies of the system software (i.e., the runtime firmware) can be stored in the file directory on the switch.

**Note:** The maximum number of user-defined configuration files is limited only by available flash memory space.

**Note:** The file “Factory\_Default\_Config.cfg” can be copied to a file server or management station, but cannot be used as the destination file name on the switch.

### Web Interface

To copy firmware files:

1. Click System, then File.
2. Select Copy from the Action list.
3. Select FTP Upload, HTTP Upload, SFTP or TFTP Upload as the file transfer method.
4. If FTP, SFTP or TFTP Upload is used, enter the IP address of the file server.
5. If FTP/SFTP Upload is used, enter the user name and password for your account on the FTP/SFTP server.
6. Set the file type to Operation Code.
7. Enter the name of the file to download.
8. Select a file on the switch to overwrite or specify a new file name.
9. Then click Apply.

**Figure 7: Copy Firmware**

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "System > File". At the top, there is a dropdown menu for "Action" with "Copy" selected. Below this, there are several form fields: "Copy Type" with a dropdown menu set to "TFTP Upload"; "TFTP Server IP Address" with a text input field containing "192.168.2.99"; "File Type" with a dropdown menu set to "Operation Code"; "Source File Name" with an empty text input field; and "Destination File Name" with a radio button selected next to a dropdown menu showing "ECS2100\_V1.2.2.0.bix" and another empty radio button next to an empty text input field. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

If you replaced a file currently used for startup and want to start using the new file, reboot the system via the System > Reset menu.

### Saving the Running Configuration to a Local File

Use the System > File (Copy) page to save the current configuration settings to a local file on the switch. The configuration settings are not automatically saved by the system for subsequent use when the switch is rebooted. You must save these settings to the current startup file, or to another file which can be subsequently set as the startup file.

#### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Copy Type** – The copy operation includes this option:
  - Running-Config – Copies the current configuration settings to a local file on the switch.
- ◆ **Destination File Name** – Copy to the currently designated startup file, or to a new file. The file name should not contain slashes (\ or /), the leading letter of the file name should not be a period (.), and the maximum length for file names is 32 characters. (Valid characters: A-Z, a-z, 0-9, "", "-", "\_")



**Note:** The maximum number of user-defined configuration files is limited only by available flash memory space.

#### Web Interface

To save the running configuration file:

1. Click System, then File.
2. Select Copy from the Action list.
3. Select Running-Config from the Copy Type list.
4. Select the current startup file on the switch to overwrite or specify a new file name.
5. Then click Apply.

**Figure 8: Saving the Running Configuration**

The screenshot shows the 'System > File' web interface. At the top, the breadcrumb 'System > File' is displayed. Below it, there is a form with the following elements:

- Action:** A dropdown menu with 'Copy' selected.
- Copy Type:** A dropdown menu with 'Running-Config' selected.
- Destination File Name:** A section with a radio button selected next to a dropdown menu showing 'startup1.cfg'. Below this is an empty text input field.
- Buttons:** 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons at the bottom right.

If you replaced a file currently used for startup and want to start using the new file, reboot the system via the System > Reset menu.

**Setting the Start-up File** Use the System > File (Set Start-Up) page to specify the firmware or configuration file to use for system initialization.

#### Web Interface

To set a file to use for system initialization:

1. Click System, then File.
2. Select Set Start-Up from the Action list.
3. Mark the operation code or configuration file to be used at startup
4. Then click Apply.

**Figure 9: Setting Start-Up Files**

	File Name	File Type	Start-Up	Modify Time	Size (bytes)
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	ECS2100_V1.2.2.0.bix	Operation Code	Y	2016-12-16 06:03:41	8597768
<input type="radio"/>	Factory_Default_Config.cfg	Config File	N	2016-08-05 05:32:24	477
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	startup1.cfg	Config File	Y	2016-12-16 06:13:39	859

To start using the new firmware or configuration settings, reboot the system via the System > Reset menu.

**Showing System Files** Use the System > File (Show) page to show the files in the system directory, or to delete a file.



**Note:** Files designated for start-up, and the Factory\_Default\_Config.cfg file, cannot be deleted.

#### Web Interface

To show the system files:

1. Click System, then File.
2. Select Show from the Action list.
3. To delete a file, mark it in the File List and click Delete.

**Figure 10: Displaying System Files**

The screenshot shows a web interface for managing system files. At the top, it says "System > File". Below that is an "Action:" dropdown menu set to "Show". Underneath is a "File List" section with a "Total: 3" indicator. The table below lists three files with columns for File Name, File Type, Start-Up, Modify Time, and Size (bytes). At the bottom of the table are "Delete" and "Revert" buttons.

File Name	File Type	Start-Up	Modify Time	Size (bytes)
ECS2100_V1 2.2.0.bix	Operation Code	Y	2016-12-16 06:03:41	8597768
Factory_Default_Config.cfg	Config File	N	2016-08-05 05:32:24	477
startup1.cfg	Config File	Y	2016-12-16 06:13:39	859

### Automatic Operation Code Upgrade

Use the System > File (Automatic Operation Code Upgrade) page to automatically download an operation code file when a file newer than the currently installed one is discovered on the file server. After the file is transferred from the server and successfully written to the file system, it is automatically set as the startup file, and the switch is rebooted.

#### Usage Guidelines

- ◆ If this feature is enabled, the switch searches the defined URL once during the bootup sequence.
- ◆ FTP (port 21) and TFTP (port 69) are both supported. Note that the TCP/UDP port bindings cannot be modified to support servers listening on non-standard ports.
- ◆ The host portion of the upgrade file location URL must be a valid IPv4 IP address. DNS host names are not recognized. Valid IP addresses consist of four numbers, 0 to 255, separated by periods.
- ◆ The path to the directory must also be defined. If the file is stored in the root directory for the FTP/TFTP service, then use the "/" to indicate this (e.g., ftp://192.168.0.1/).
- ◆ The file name must not be included in the upgrade file location URL. The file name of the code stored on the remote server must be *ECS2100-Series.bix* (using upper case and lower case letters exactly as indicated here). Enter the file name for other switches described in this manual exactly as shown on the web interface.
- ◆ The FTP connection is made with PASV mode enabled. PASV mode is needed to traverse some fire walls, even if FTP traffic is not blocked. PASV mode cannot be disabled.
- ◆ The switch-based search function is case-insensitive in that it will accept a file name in upper or lower case (i.e., the switch will accept *ECS2100-Series.BIX* from the server even though *ECS2100-Series.bix* was requested). However, keep in mind that the file systems of many operating systems such as Unix and most Unix-like systems (FreeBSD, NetBSD, OpenBSD, and most Linux distributions, etc.) are case-sensitive, meaning that two files in the same directory, *ecs2100-*

*series.bix* and *ECS2100-Series.bix* are considered to be unique files. Thus, if the upgrade file is stored as *ECS2100-Series.bix* (or even *EcS2100-Series.bix*) on a case-sensitive server, then the switch (requesting *ecs2100-series.bix*) will not be upgraded because the server does not recognize the requested file name and the stored file name as being equal. A notable exception in the list of case-sensitive Unix-like operating systems is Mac OS X, which by default is case-insensitive. Please check the documentation for your server's operating system if you are unsure of its file system's behavior.

- ◆ Note that the switch itself does not distinguish between upper and lower-case file names, and only checks to see if the file stored on the server is more recent than the current runtime image.
- ◆ If two operation code image files are already stored on the switch's file system, then the non-startup image is deleted before the upgrade image is transferred.
- ◆ The automatic upgrade process will take place in the background without impeding normal operations (data switching, etc.) of the switch.
- ◆ During the automatic search and transfer process, the administrator cannot transfer or update another operation code image, configuration file, public key, or HTTPS certificate (i.e., no other concurrent file management operations are possible).
- ◆ The upgrade operation code image is set as the startup image after it has been successfully written to the file system.
- ◆ The switch will send an SNMP trap and make a log entry upon all upgrade successes and failures.
- ◆ The switch will immediately restart after the upgrade file is successfully written to the file system and set as the startup image.

### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Automatic Opcode Upgrade** – Enables the switch to search for an upgraded operation code file during the switch bootup process. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Automatic Upgrade Location URL** – Defines where the switch should search for the operation code upgrade file. The last character of this URL must be a forward slash ("/"). The *ECS2100-Series.bix* filename must not be included since it is automatically appended by the switch. (Options: ftp, sftp, tftp)

The following syntax must be observed:

**tftp://host[/filedir]**

- **tftp://** – Defines TFTP protocol for the server connection.

- *host* – Defines the IP address of the TFTP server. Valid IP addresses consist of four numbers, 0 to 255, separated by periods. DNS host names are not recognized.
- *filedir* – Defines the directory, relative to the TFTP server root, where the upgrade file can be found. Nested directory structures are accepted. The directory name must be separated from the host, and in nested directory structures, from the parent directory, with a prepended forward slash “/”.
- / – The forward slash must be the last character of the URL.

**ftp://[username[:password@]]host[/filedir]/**

- **ftp://** – Defines FTP protocol for the server connection.
- *username* – Defines the user name for the FTP connection. If the user name is omitted, then “anonymous” is the assumed user name for the connection.
- *password* – Defines the password for the FTP connection. To differentiate the password from the user name and host portions of the URL, a colon (:) must precede the password, and an “at” symbol (@), must follow the password. If the password is omitted, then “” (an empty string) is the assumed password for the connection.
- *host* – Defines the IP address of the FTP server. Valid IP addresses consist of four numbers, 0 to 255, separated by periods. DNS host names are not recognized.
- *filedir* – Defines the directory, relative to the FTP server root, where the upgrade file can be found. Nested directory structures are accepted. The directory name must be separated from the host, and in nested directory structures, from the parent directory, with a prepended forward slash “/”.
- / – The forward slash must be the last character of the URL.

### Examples

The following examples demonstrate the URL syntax for a TFTP server at IP address 192.168.0.1 with the operation code image stored in various locations:

- `tftp://192.168.0.1/`  
The image file is in the TFTP root directory.
- `tftp://192.168.0.1/switch-opcode/`  
The image file is in the “switch-opcode” directory, relative to the TFTP root.
- `tftp://192.168.0.1/switches/opcode/`  
The image file is in the “opcode” directory, which is within the “switches” parent directory, relative to the TFTP root.

The following examples demonstrate the URL syntax for an FTP server at IP address 192.168.0.1 with various user name, password and file location options presented:

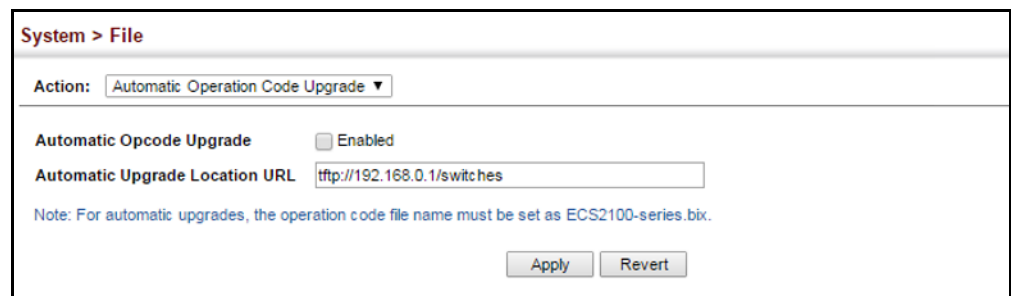
- ftp://192.168.0.1/  
The user name and password are empty, so “anonymous” will be the user name and the password will be blank. The image file is in the FTP root directory.
- ftp://switches:upgrade@192.168.0.1/  
The user name is “switches” and the password is “upgrade”. The image file is in the FTP root.
- ftp://switches:upgrade@192.168.0.1/switches/opcode/  
The user name is “switches” and the password is “upgrade”. The image file is in the “opcode” directory, which is within the “switches” parent directory, relative to the FTP root.

### Web Interface

To configure automatic code upgrade:

1. Click System, then File.
2. Select Automatic Operation Code Upgrade from the Action list.
3. Mark the check box to enable Automatic Opcode Upgrade.
4. Enter the URL of the FTP or TFTP server, and the path and directory containing the operation code.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 11: Configuring Automatic Code Upgrade**



The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring automatic code upgrade. The breadcrumb path is "System > File". The "Action:" dropdown menu is set to "Automatic Operation Code Upgrade". Below this, there is a section for "Automatic Opcode Upgrade" with a checkbox labeled "Enabled" that is currently unchecked. The "Automatic Upgrade Location URL" text box contains the value "tftp://192.168.0.1/switches". A note below the text box states: "Note: For automatic upgrades, the operation code file name must be set as ECS2100-series.bix." At the bottom right of the form, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".



If a new image is found at the specified location, the following type of messages will be displayed during bootup.

```
.  
. .  
Automatic Upgrade is looking for a new image  
New image detected: current version 1.2.1.3; new version 1.2.1.6  
Image upgrade in progress  
The switch will restart after upgrade succeeds  
Downloading new image  
  
Flash programming started  
Flash programming completed  
The switch will now restart  
. .  
.
```

---

## Setting the System Clock

Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) allows the switch to set its internal clock based on periodic updates from a time server (SNTP or NTP). Maintaining an accurate time on the switch enables the system log to record meaningful dates and times for event entries. You can also manually set the clock. If the clock is not set manually or via SNTP, the switch will only record the time from the factory default set at the last bootup.

When the SNTP client is enabled, the switch periodically sends a request for a time update to a configured time server. You can configure up to three time server IP addresses. The switch will attempt to poll each server in the configured sequence.

**Setting the Time Manually** Use the System > Time (Configure General - Manual) page to set the system time on the switch manually without using SNTP.

### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Current Time** – Shows the current time set on the switch.
- ◆ **Hours** – Sets the hour. (Range: 0-23)
- ◆ **Minutes** – Sets the minute value. (Range: 0-59)
- ◆ **Seconds** – Sets the second value. (Range: 0-59)
- ◆ **Month** – Sets the month. (Range: 1-12)
- ◆ **Day** – Sets the day of the month. (Range: 1-31)

- ◆ **Year** – Sets the year. (Range: 1970-2037)

### Web Interface

To manually set the system clock:

1. Click System, then Time.
2. Select Configure General from the Step list.
3. Select Manual from the Maintain Type list.
4. Enter the time and date in the appropriate fields.
5. Click Apply

**Figure 12: Manually Setting the System Clock**

The screenshot shows a web interface for setting the system clock. The breadcrumb is 'System > Time'. The 'Step' dropdown is set to '1. Configure General'. The 'Current Time' is displayed as '2014-5-30 9:59:20'. The 'Maintain Type' dropdown is set to 'Manual'. Below this, there are input fields for time and date: Hours (9), Minutes (59), Seconds (20), Month (5), Day (30), and Year (2014). At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons.

**Setting the SNTP Polling Interval** Use the System > Time (Configure General - SNTP) page to set the polling interval at which the switch will query the specified time servers.

### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Current Time** – Shows the current time set on the switch.
- ◆ **SNTP Polling Interval** – Sets the interval between sending requests for a time update from a time server. (Range: 16-16384 seconds; Default: 16 seconds)

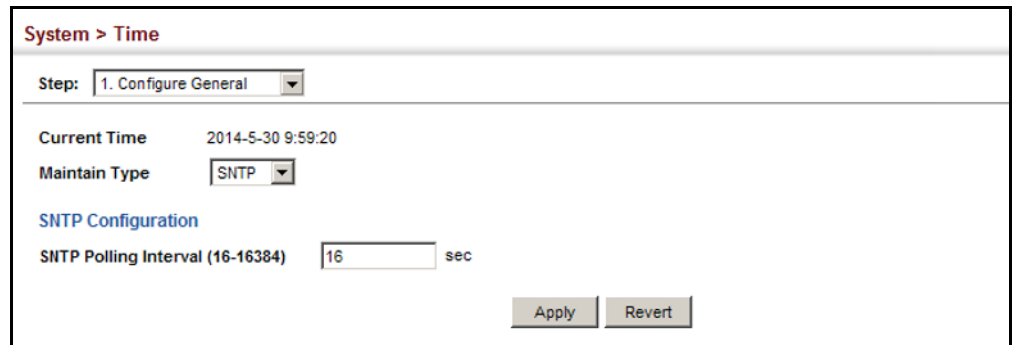
### Web Interface

To set the polling interval for SNTP:

1. Click System, then Time.
2. Select Configure General from the Step list.
3. Select SNTP from the Maintain Type list.
4. Modify the polling interval if required.

5. Click Apply

**Figure 13: Setting the Polling Interval for SNTP**



The screenshot shows the 'System > Time' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'System > Time' and a 'Step:' dropdown menu set to '1. Configure General'. Below this, the 'Current Time' is displayed as '2014-5-30 9:59:20'. The 'Maintain Type' is set to 'SNTP' via a dropdown menu. Under the 'SNTP Configuration' section, the 'SNTP Polling Interval (16-16384)' is set to '16' seconds. At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons.

**Configuring NTP** Use the System > Time (Configure General - NTP) page to configure NTP authentication and show the polling interval at which the switch will query the specified time servers.

#### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Current Time** – Shows the current time set on the switch.
- ◆ **Authentication Status** – Enables authentication for time requests and updates between the switch and NTP servers. (Default: Disabled)  

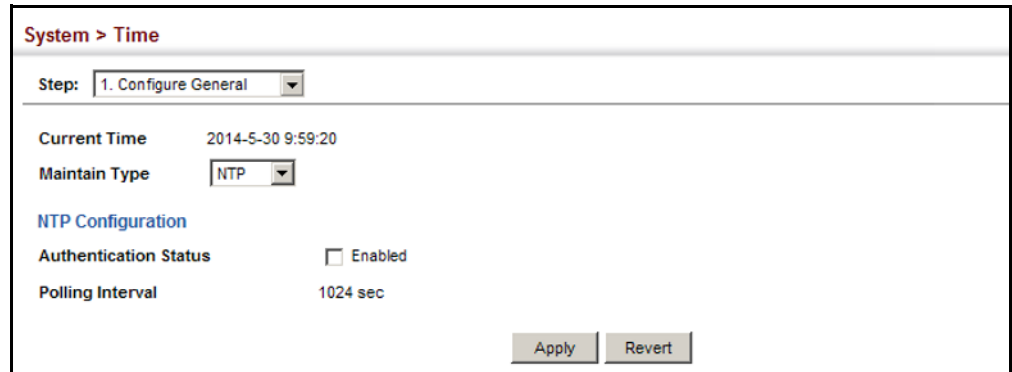
You can enable NTP authentication to ensure that reliable updates are received from only authorized NTP servers. The authentication keys and their associated key number must be centrally managed and manually distributed to NTP servers and clients. The key numbers and key values must match on both the server and client.
- ◆ **Polling Interval** – Shows the interval between sending requests for a time update from NTP servers. (Fixed: 1024 seconds)

#### Web Interface

To set the clock maintenance type to NTP:

1. Click System, then Time.
2. Select Configure General from the Step list.
3. Select NTP from the Maintain Type list.
4. Enable authentication if required.
5. Click Apply

Figure 14: Configuring NTP



The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring NTP. At the top, it says "System > Time". Below that is a "Step:" dropdown menu set to "1. Configure General". The "Current Time" is displayed as "2014-5-30 9:59:20". The "Maintain Type" is set to "NTP" in a dropdown menu. Under the "NTP Configuration" section, there is an "Authentication Status" checkbox labeled "Enabled" which is currently unchecked. The "Polling Interval" is set to "1024 sec". At the bottom right, there are "Apply" and "Revert" buttons.

**Configuring Time Servers** Use the System > Time (Configure Time Server) pages to specify the IP address for NTP/SNTP time servers, or to set the authentication key for NTP time servers.

### Specifying SNTP Time Servers

Use the System > Time (Configure Time Server – Configure SNTP Server) page to specify the IP address for up to three SNTP time servers.

#### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **SNTP Server IP Address** – Sets the IPv4 address for up to three time servers. The switch attempts to update the time from the first server, if this fails it attempts an update from the next server in the sequence.

#### Web Interface

To set the SNTP time servers:

1. Click System, then Time.
2. Select Configure Time Server from the Step list.
3. Select Configure SNTP Server from the Action list.
4. Enter the IP address of up to three time servers.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 15: Specifying SNTP Time Servers**

The screenshot shows the 'System > Time' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'System > Time'. Below it, there are two dropdown menus: 'Step: 2. Configure Time Server' and 'Action: Configure SNTP Server'. The main area contains three input fields for SNTP Server IP addresses: 'SNTP Server IP Address 1' with the value '10.1.0.19', 'SNTP Server IP Address 2' with the value '137.62.140.80', and 'SNTP Server IP Address 3' with the value '128.250.36.2'. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

### Specifying NTP Time Servers

Use the System > Time (Configure Time Server – Add NTP Server) page to add the IP address for up to 50 NTP time servers.

#### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **NTP Server IP Address** – Sets the IPv4 address for up to three time servers. The switch will poll the specified time servers for updates when the clock maintenance type is set to NTP on the System > Time (Configure General) page. It issues time synchronization requests at a fixed interval of 1024 seconds. The switch will poll all the time servers configured, the responses received are filtered and compared to determine the most reliable and accurate time update for the switch.
- ◆ **Version** – Specifies the NTP version supported by the server. (Fixed: Version 3)
- ◆ **Authentication Key** – Specifies the number of the key in the NTP Authentication Key List to use for authentication with the configured server. NTP authentication is optional. If enabled on the System > Time (Configure General) page, you must also configure at least one key on the System > Time (Add NTP Authentication Key) page. (Range: 1-65535)

#### Web Interface

To add an NTP time server to the server list:

1. Click System, then Time.
2. Select Configure Time Server from the Step list.
3. Select Add NTP Server from the Action list.
4. Enter the IP address of an NTP time server, and specify the index of the authentication key if authentication is required.
5. Click Apply.

Figure 16: Adding an NTP Time Server

The screenshot shows the 'System > Time' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'System > Time'. Below it, there are two dropdown menus: 'Step: 2. Configure Time Server' and 'Action: Add NTP Server'. The main form contains three input fields: 'NTP Server IP Address' with the value '192.168.3.20', 'Version' with the value '3', and 'Authentication Key (1-65535)' with the value '3' and '(optional)' text to its right. At the bottom right of the form are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

To show the list of configured NTP time servers:

1. Click System, then Time.
2. Select Configure Time Server from the Step list.
3. Select Show NTP Server from the Action list.

Figure 17: Showing the NTP Time Server List

The screenshot shows the 'System > Time' configuration page with the 'Action' dropdown set to 'Show NTP Server'. Below the form, there is a table titled 'NTP Server List' with a 'Total: 1' indicator. The table has four columns: a checkbox, 'Server IP Address', 'Version', and 'Authentication Key'. There is one row of data with the following values: checkbox (unchecked), '192.168.3.20', '3', and '3'. Below the table are two buttons: 'Delete' and 'Revert'.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Server IP Address	Version	Authentication Key
<input type="checkbox"/>	192.168.3.20	3	3

### Specifying NTP Authentication Keys

Use the System > Time (Configure Time Server – Add NTP Authentication Key) page to add an entry to the authentication key list.

#### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Authentication Key** – Specifies the number of the key in the NTP Authentication Key List to use for authentication with a configured server. NTP authentication is optional. When enabled on the System > Time (Configure General) page, you must also configure at least one key on this page. Up to 255 keys can be configured on the switch. (Range: 1-65535)
- ◆ **Key Context** – An MD5 authentication key string. The key string can be up to 32 case-sensitive printable ASCII characters (no spaces).  
NTP authentication key numbers and values must match on both the server and client.

### Web Interface

To add an entry to NTP authentication key list:

1. Click System, then Time.
2. Select Configure Time Server from the Step list.
3. Select Add NTP Authentication Key from the Action list.
4. Enter the index number and MD5 authentication key string.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 18: Adding an NTP Authentication Key**

System > Time

Step: 2. Configure Time Server Action: Add NTP Authentication Key

Authentication Key (1-65535)

Key Context (1-32)

Apply Revert

To show the list of configured NTP authentication keys:

1. Click System, then Time.
2. Select Configure Time Server from the Step list.
3. Select Show NTP Authentication Key from the Action list.

**Figure 19: Showing the NTP Authentication Key List**

System > Time

Step: 2. Configure Time Server Action: Show NTP Authentication Key

NTP Authentication Key List Total: 1

<input type="checkbox"/>	Authentication Key	Key Context
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	8J0774Q6699747D10867F12S505J62770084708278G1357878N8475052113Q69137L8

Delete Revert

**Setting the Time Zone** Use the System > Time (Configure Time Zone) page to set the time zone. SNTP uses Coordinated Universal Time (or UTC, formerly Greenwich Mean Time, or GMT) based on the time at the Earth's prime meridian, zero degrees longitude, which passes through Greenwich, England. To display a time corresponding to your local time, you must indicate the number of hours and minutes your time zone is east (before) or west (after) of UTC. You can choose one of the 80 predefined time zone definitions, or you can manually configure the parameters for your local time zone.

### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Predefined Configuration** – A drop-down box provides access to the 80 predefined time zone configurations. Each choice indicates its offset from UTC and lists at least one major city or location covered by the time zone.
- ◆ **User-defined Configuration** – Allows the user to define all parameters of the local time zone.
  - **Direction** – Configures the time zone to be before (east of) or after (west of) UTC.
  - **Name** – Assigns a name to the time zone. (Range: 1-30 characters)
  - **Hours** (0-13) – The number of hours before or after UTC. The maximum value before UTC is 12. The maximum value after UTC is 13.
  - **Minutes** (0-59) – The number of minutes before/after UTC.

### Web Interface

To set your local time zone:

1. Click System, then Time.
2. Select Configure Time Zone from the Step list.
3. Set the offset for your time zone relative to the UTC in hours and minutes.
4. Click Apply.



**Figure 20: Setting the Time Zone**

**Configuring Summer Time** Use the Summer Time page to set the system clock forward during the summer months (also known as daylight savings time).

In some countries or regions, clocks are adjusted through the summer months so that afternoons have more daylight and mornings have less. This is known as Summer Time, or Daylight Savings Time (DST). Typically, clocks are adjusted forward one hour at the start of spring and then adjusted backward in autumn.

### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed in the web interface:

#### General Configuration

- ◆ **Summer Time in Effect** – Shows if the system time has been adjusted.
- ◆ **Status** – Shows if summer time is set to take effect during the specified period.
- ◆ **Name** – Name of the time zone while summer time is in effect, usually an acronym. (Range: 1-30 characters)
- ◆ **Mode** – Selects one of the following configuration modes. (The Mode option can only be managed when the Summer Time Status option has been set to enabled for the switch.)

*Predefined Mode* – Configures the summer time status and settings for the switch using predefined configurations for several major regions of the world. To specify the time corresponding to your local time when summer time is in effect, select the predefined summer-time zone appropriate for your location.

**Table 5: Predefined Summer-Time Parameters**

Region	Start Time, Day, Week, & Month	End Time, Day, Week, & Month	Rel. Offset
Australia	00:00:00, Sunday, Week 5 of October	23:59:59, Sunday, Week 5 of March	60 min
Europe	00:00:00, Sunday, Week 5 of March	23:59:59, Sunday, Week 5 of October	60 min
New Zealand	00:00:00, Sunday, Week 1 of October	23:59:59, Sunday, Week 3 of March	60 min
USA	02:00:00, Sunday, Week 2 of March	02:00:00, Sunday, Week 1 of November	60 min

*Date Mode* – Sets the start, end, and offset times of summer time for the switch on a one-time basis. This mode sets the summer-time zone relative to the currently configured time zone. To specify a time corresponding to your local time when summer time is in effect, you must indicate the number of minutes your summer-time zone deviates from your regular time zone.

- ◆ **Offset** – Summer-time offset from the regular time zone, in minutes.  
(Range: 1-120 minutes)
- ◆ **From** – Start time for summer-time offset.
- ◆ **To** – End time for summer-time offset.

*Recurring Mode* – Sets the start, end, and offset times of summer time for the switch on a recurring basis. This mode sets the summer-time zone relative to the currently configured time zone. To specify a time corresponding to your local time when summer time is in effect, you must indicate the number of minutes your summer-time zone deviates from your regular time zone.

- ◆ **Offset** – Summer-time offset from the regular time zone, in minutes.  
(Range: 1-120 minutes)
- ◆ **From** – Start time for summer-time offset.
- ◆ **To** – End time for summer-time offset.

**Web Interface**

To specify summer time settings:

1. Click SNTP, Summer Time.
2. Select one of the configuration modes, configure the relevant attributes, enable summer time status.
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 21: Configuring Summer Time**

## Configuring the Console Port

Use the System > Console menu to configure connection parameters for the switch's console port. You can access the onboard configuration program by attaching a VT100 compatible device to the switch's serial console port. Management access through the console port is controlled by various parameters, including a password (only configurable through the CLI), time outs, and basic communication settings. Note that these parameters can be configured via the web or CLI interface.

### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Login Timeout** – Sets the interval that the system waits for a user to log into the CLI. If a login attempt is not detected within the timeout interval, the connection is terminated for the session. (Range: 10-300 seconds; Default: 300 seconds)
- ◆ **Exec Timeout** – Sets the interval that the system waits until user input is detected. If user input is not detected within the timeout interval, the current session is terminated. (Range: 60-65535 seconds; Default: 600 seconds)
- ◆ **Password Threshold** – Sets the password intrusion threshold, which limits the number of failed logon attempts. When the logon attempt threshold is reached, the system interface becomes silent for a specified amount of time (set by the Silent Time parameter) before allowing the next logon attempt. (Range: 1-120; Default: 3 attempts)
- ◆ **Silent Time** – Sets the amount of time the management console is inaccessible after the number of unsuccessful logon attempts has been exceeded. (Range: 1-65535 seconds; Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Data Bits** – Sets the number of data bits per character that are interpreted and generated by the console port. If parity is being generated, specify 7 data bits

per character. If no parity is required, specify 8 data bits per character.  
(Default: 8 bits)

- ◆ **Stop Bits** – Sets the number of the stop bits transmitted per byte.  
(Range: 1-2; Default: 1 stop bit)
- ◆ **Parity** – Defines the generation of a parity bit. Communication protocols provided by some terminals can require a specific parity bit setting. Specify Even, Odd, or None. (Default: None)
- ◆ **Speed** – Sets the terminal line’s baud rate for transmit (to terminal) and receive (from terminal). Set the speed to match the baud rate of the device connected to the serial port. (Range: 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, or 115200 baud; Default: 115200 baud)



**Note:** The password for the console connection can only be configured through the CLI (see the “password” command in the *CLI Reference Guide*).

**Note:** Password checking can be enabled or disabled for logging in to the console connection (see the “login” command in the *CLI Reference Guide*). You can select authentication by a single global password as configured for the password command, or by passwords set up for specific user-name accounts. The default is for local passwords configured on the switch.

### Web Interface

To configure parameters for the console port:

1. Click System, then Console.
2. Specify the connection parameters as required.
3. Click Apply

**Figure 22: Console Port Settings**

Login Timeout (10-300)	<input type="text" value="300"/> sec
Exec Timeout (60-65535)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value="600"/> sec
Password Threshold (1-120)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value="3"/>
Silent Time (1-65535)	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/> sec
Data Bits	<input type="text" value="8"/>
Stop Bits	<input type="text" value="1"/>
Parity	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Speed	<input type="text" value="115200"/> baud

Apply Revert

---

## Configuring Telnet Settings

Use the System > Telnet menu to configure parameters for accessing the CLI over a Telnet connection. You can access the onboard configuration program over the network using Telnet (i.e., a virtual terminal). Management access via Telnet can be enabled/disabled and other parameters set, including the TCP port number, time outs, and a password. Note that the password is only configurable through the CLI.) These parameters can be configured via the web or CLI interface.

### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Telnet Status** – Enables or disables Telnet access to the switch. (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **TCP Port** – Sets the TCP port number for Telnet on the switch. (Range: 1-65535; Default: 23)
- ◆ **Max Sessions** – Sets the maximum number of Telnet sessions that can simultaneously connect to this system. (Range: 0-8; Default: 8)  

A maximum of eight sessions can be concurrently opened for Telnet and Secure Shell (i.e., both Telnet and SSH share a maximum number of eight sessions).
- ◆ **Login Timeout** – Sets the interval that the system waits for a user to log into the CLI. If a login attempt is not detected within the timeout interval, the connection is terminated for the session. (Range: 10-300 seconds; Default: 300 seconds)
- ◆ **Exec Timeout** – Sets the interval that the system waits until user input is detected. If user input is not detected within the timeout interval, the current session is terminated. (Range: 60-65535 seconds; Default: 600 seconds)
- ◆ **Password Threshold** – Sets the password intrusion threshold, which limits the number of failed logon attempts. When the logon attempt threshold is reached, the system interface becomes silent for a specified amount of time (set by the Silent Time parameter) before allowing the next logon attempt. (Range: 1-120; Default: 3 attempts)
- ◆ **Silent Time** – Sets the amount of time the management interface is inaccessible after the number of unsuccessful logon attempts has been exceeded. (Range: 1-65535 seconds; Default: Disabled)



**Note:** The password for the Telnet connection can only be configured through the CLI (see the “password” command in the *CLI Reference Guide*).

**Note:** Password checking can be enabled or disabled for login to the console connection (see the “login” command in the *CLI Reference Guide*). You can select

authentication by a single global password as configured for the password command, or by passwords set up for specific user-name accounts. The default is for local passwords configured on the switch.

### Web Interface

To configure parameters for the console port:

1. Click System, then Telnet.
2. Specify the connection parameters as required.
3. Click Apply

**Figure 23: Telnet Connection Settings**

System > Telnet	
Telnet Status	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
TCP Port (1-65535)	<input type="text" value="23"/>
Max Sessions (0-8)	<input type="text" value="8"/>
Login Timeout (10-300)	<input type="text" value="300"/> sec
Exec Timeout (60-65535)	<input type="text" value="600"/> sec
Password Threshold (1-120)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value="3"/>
Silent Time (1-65535)	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/>

## Displaying CPU Utilization

Use the System > CPU Utilization page to display information on CPU utilization.

### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

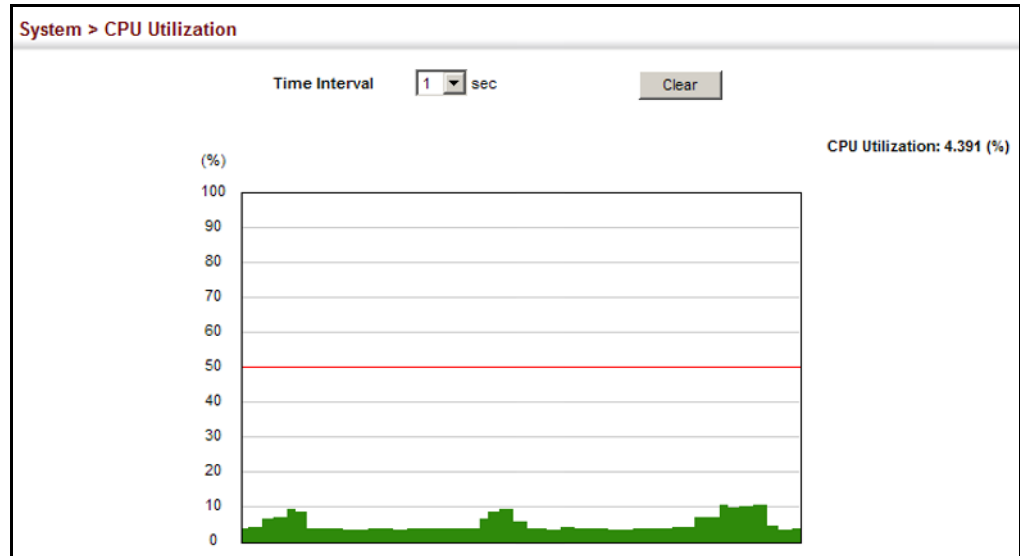
- ◆ **Time Interval** – The interval at which to update the displayed utilization rate. (Options: 1, 5, 10, 30, 60 seconds; Default: 1 second)
- ◆ **CPU Utilization** – CPU utilization over specified interval.

### Web Interface

To display CPU utilization:

1. Click System, then CPU Utilization.
2. Change the update interval if required. Note that the interval is changed as soon as a new setting is selected.

**Figure 24: Displaying CPU Utilization**



## Configuring CPU Guard

Use the System > CPU Guard page to set the CPU utilization high and low watermarks in percentage of CPU time utilized and the CPU high and low thresholds in the number of packets being processed per second.

### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **CPU Guard Status** – Enables CPU Guard. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **High Watermark** – If the percentage of CPU usage time is higher than the high-watermark, the switch stops packet flow to the CPU (allowing it to catch up with packets already in the buffer) until usage time falls below the low watermark. (Range: 40-100 %; Default: 90 %)
- ◆ **Low Watermark** – If packet flow has been stopped after exceeding the high watermark, normal flow will be restored after usage falls beneath the low watermark. (Range: 40-100 %; Default: 70 %)
- ◆ **Maximum Threshold** – If the number of packets being processed by the CPU is higher than the maximum threshold, the switch stops packet flow to the CPU (allowing it to catch up with packets already in the buffer) until the number of packets being processed falls below the minimum threshold. (Range: 50-300 pps; Default: 300 pps)
- ◆ **Minimum Threshold** – If packet flow has been stopped after exceeding the maximum threshold, normal flow will be restored after usage falls beneath the minimum threshold. (Range: 50-300 pps; Default: 50 pps)

- ◆ **Trap Status** – If enabled, an alarm message will be generated when utilization exceeds the high watermark or exceeds the maximum threshold. (Default: Disabled)

Once the high watermark is exceeded, utilization must drop beneath the low watermark before the alarm is terminated, and then exceed the high watermark again before another alarm is triggered.

Once the maximum threshold is exceeded, utilization must drop beneath the minimum threshold before the alarm is terminated, and then exceed the maximum threshold again before another alarm is triggered.

- ◆ **Current Threshold** – Shows the configured threshold in packets per second.

### Web Interface

To configure CPU Guard:

1. Click System, CPU Guard.
2. Set CPU guard status, configure the watermarks or threshold parameter, enable traps if required.
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 25: Configuring CPU Guard**

System > CPU Guard	
CPU Guard Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
High Watermark (40-100)	<input type="text" value="90"/> %
Low Watermark (40-100)	<input type="text" value="70"/> %
Maximum Threshold (50-300)	<input type="text" value="300"/> packets/sec
Minimum Threshold (50-300)	<input type="text" value="50"/> packets/sec
Trap Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Current Threshold	300 packets/sec

## Displaying Memory Utilization

Use the System > Memory Status page to display memory utilization parameters.

### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Free Size** – The amount of memory currently free for use.
- ◆ **Used Size** – The amount of memory allocated to active processes.
- ◆ **Total** – The total amount of system memory.



### Web Interface

To display memory utilization:

1. Click System, then Memory Status.

**Figure 26: Displaying Memory Utilization**

System > Memory Status		
<b>Memory Status</b>		
<b>Free Size</b>	45,416,448 bytes	16%
<b>Used Size</b>	223,019,008 bytes	84%
<b>Total</b>	268,435,456 bytes	

## Resetting the System

Use the System > Reset menu to restart the switch immediately, at a specified time, after a specified delay, or at a periodic interval.

### Command Usage

- ◆ This command resets the entire system.
- ◆ When the system is restarted, it will always run the Power-On Self-Test. It will also retain all configuration information stored in non-volatile memory. (See [“Saving the Running Configuration to a Local File” on page 75](#)).

### Parameters

The following parameters are displayed:

#### *System Reload Information*

- ◆ **Reload Settings** – Displays information on the next scheduled reload and selected reload mode as shown in the following example:  
 “The switch will be rebooted at March 9 12:00:00 2012. Remaining Time: 0 days, 2 hours, 46 minutes, 5 seconds.  
 Reloading switch regularly time: 12:00 everyday.”
- ◆ **Refresh** – Refreshes reload information. Changes made through the console or to system time may need to be refreshed to display the current settings.
- ◆ **Cancel** – Cancels the current settings shown in this field.

#### *System Reload Configuration*

- ◆ **Reset Mode** – Restarts the switch immediately or at the specified time(s).
  - **Immediately** – Restarts the system immediately.

- **In** – Specifies an interval after which to reload the switch. (The specified time must be equal to or less than 24 days.)
  - *hours* – The number of hours, combined with the minutes, before the switch resets. (Range: 0-576)
  - *minutes* – The number of minutes, combined with the hours, before the switch resets. (Range: 0-59)
- **At** – Specifies a time at which to reload the switch.
  - DD - The day of the month at which to reload. (Range: 01-31)
  - MM - The month at which to reload. (Range: 01-12)
  - YYYY - The year at which to reload. (Range: 1970-2037)
  - HH - The hour at which to reload. (Range: 00-23)
  - MM - The minute at which to reload. (Range: 00-59)
- **Regularly** – Specifies a periodic interval at which to reload the switch.

*Time*

- HH - The hour at which to reload. (Range: 00-23)
- MM - The minute at which to reload. (Range: 00-59)

*Period*

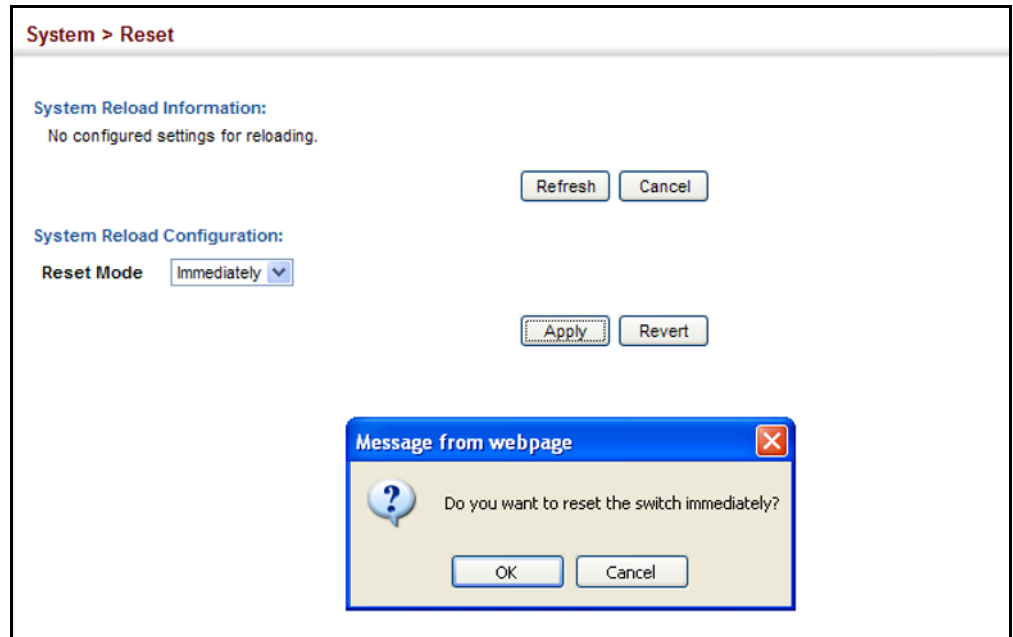
- Daily - Every day.
- Weekly - Day of the week at which to reload.  
(Range: Sunday ... Saturday)
- Monthly - Day of the month at which to reload. (Range: 1-31)

**Web Interface**

To restart the switch:

1. Click System, then Reset.
2. Select the required reset mode.
3. For any option other than to reset immediately, fill in the required parameters
4. Click Apply.
5. When prompted, confirm that you want reset the switch.

**Figure 27: Restarting the Switch (Immediately)**



**Figure 28: Restarting the Switch (In)**

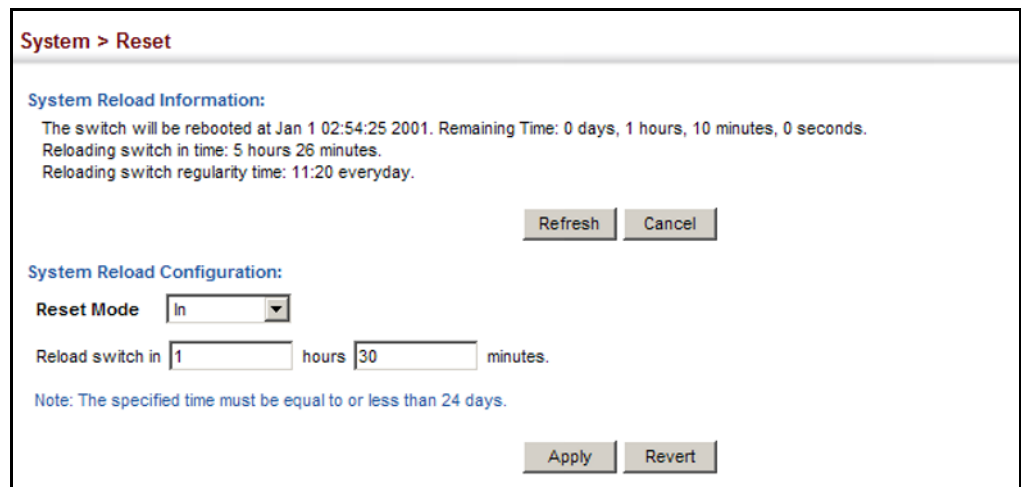


Figure 29: Restarting the Switch (At)

**System > Reset**

**System Reload Information:**  
The switch will be rebooted at Jan 1 02:54:25 2001. Remaining Time: 0 days, 1 hours, 10 minutes, 0 seconds.  
Reloading switch in time: 5 hours 26 minutes.  
Reloading switch regularity time: 11:20 everyday.

**System Reload Configuration:**  
Reset Mode   
Reload switch at  (DD/MM/YYYY)  (HH:MM)  
Warning: You have to setup system time first. Otherwise this function won't work.

Figure 30: Restarting the Switch (Regularly)

**System > Reset**

**System Reload Information:**  
No configured settings for reloading.

**System Reload Configuration:**  
Reset Mode   
Time  (HH:MM)  
Period  Daily  
 Weekly   
 Monthly

Warning: You have to setup system time first. Otherwise this function won't work.

# 4

## Interface Configuration

This chapter describes the following topics:

- ◆ [Port Configuration](#) – Configures connection settings, including auto-negotiation, or manual setting of speed, duplex mode, and flow control.
- ◆ [Displaying Statistics](#) – Shows Interface, Etherlike, and RMON port statistics in table or chart form.
- ◆ [Displaying Statistical History](#) – Displays statistical history for the specified interfaces.
- ◆ [Displaying Transceiver Data](#) – Displays identifying information, and operational parameters for optical transceivers which support DDM.
- ◆ [Configuring Transceiver Thresholds](#) – Configures thresholds for alarm and warning messages for optical transceivers which support DDM.
- ◆ [Cable Test](#) – Performs cable diagnostics on the specified port.
- ◆ [Trunk Configuration](#) – Configures static or dynamic trunks.
- ◆ [Saving Power](#) – Adjusts the power provided to ports based on the length of the cable used to connect to other devices.
- ◆ [Local Port Mirroring](#) – Sets the source and target ports for mirroring on the local switch.
- ◆ [Remote Port Mirroring](#) – Configures mirroring of traffic from remote switches for analysis at a destination port on the local switch.
- ◆ [Flow Sampling](#) – Configures periodic sampling of traffic flows.
- ◆ [Traffic Segmentation](#) – Configures the uplinks and down links to a segmented group of ports.

## Port Configuration

This section describes how to configure port connections, mirror traffic from one port to another, and run cable diagnostics.

**Configuring by Port List** Use the Interface > Port > General (Configure by Port List) page to enable/disable an interface, set auto-negotiation and the interface capabilities to advertise, or manually fix the speed, duplex mode, and flow control.

### Command Usage

- ◆ Auto-negotiation must be disabled before you can configure or force a Gigabit RJ-45 interface to use the Speed/Duplex mode or Flow Control options.
- ◆ When using auto-negotiation, the optimal settings will be negotiated between the link partners based on their advertised capabilities. To set the speed, duplex mode, or flow control under auto-negotiation, the required operation modes must be specified in the capabilities list for an interface.
- ◆ The Speed/Duplex mode is fixed at 100full for 100BASE-FX transceivers, and 1000full for Gigabit transceivers. When auto-negotiation is enabled, the attributes which can be advertised include speed, flow control and symmetric pause frames.
- ◆ The 1000BASE-T standard does not support forced mode. Auto-negotiation should always be used to establish a connection over any 1000BASE-T port or trunk. If not used, the success of the link process cannot be guaranteed when connecting to other types of switches.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** – Port identifier. (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **Type** – Indicates the port type. (1000BASE-T, 1000BASE SFP)
- ◆ **Name** – Allows you to label an interface. (Range: 1-64 characters)
- ◆ **Admin** – Allows you to manually disable an interface. You can disable an interface due to abnormal behavior (e.g., excessive collisions), and then re-enable it after the problem has been resolved. You may also disable an interface for security reasons. (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **Autonegotiation** (Port Capabilities) – Allows auto-negotiation to be enabled/disabled. When auto-negotiation is enabled, you need to specify the capabilities to be advertised. When auto-negotiation is disabled, you can force the settings for speed, mode, and flow control. The following capabilities are supported.

- **10h** - Supports 10 Mbps half-duplex operation.
  - **10f** - Supports 10 Mbps full-duplex operation.
  - **100h** - Supports 100 Mbps half-duplex operation.
  - **100f** - Supports 100 Mbps full-duplex operation.
  - **1000f** - Supports 1000 Mbps full-duplex operation.
  - **Sym** - Symmetric exchange of transmit and receive pause frames.
  - **FC** - Flow control can eliminate frame loss by “blocking” traffic from end stations or segments connected directly to the switch when its buffers fill. When enabled, back pressure is used for half-duplex operation and IEEE 802.3-2005 (formally IEEE 802.3x) for full-duplex operation.  
  
Default: Autonegotiation enabled;  
Advertised capabilities for  
100BASE-FX (SFP) – 100full  
1000BASE-T – 10half, 10full, 100half, 100full, 1000full  
1000BASE-SX/LX/LHX/ZX (SFP) – 1000full
- ◆ **Speed/Duplex** – Allows you to manually set the port speed and duplex mode. (i.e., with auto-negotiation disabled)
  - ◆ **Flow Control** – Allows automatic or manual selection of flow control. (Default: Disabled)
  - ◆ **Link Up Down Trap** – Issues a notification message whenever a port link is established or broken. (Default: Enabled)

### Web Interface

To configure port connection parameters:

1. Click Interface, Port, General.
2. Select Configure by Port List from the Action List.
3. Modify the required interface settings.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 31: Configuring Connections by Port List**

Port	Type	Name	Admin	Media Type	Autonegotiation	Speed Duplex	Flow Control	Link Up Down Trap
1	1000BASE-T		Enabled	None	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10h <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 100h <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1000f <input type="checkbox"/> FC <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10f <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 100f <input type="checkbox"/> Sym	100full	Enabled	Enabled
2	1000BASE-T		Enabled	None	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10h <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 100h <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1000f <input type="checkbox"/> FC <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10f <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 100f <input type="checkbox"/> Sym	100full	Enabled	Enabled
3	1000BASE-T		Enabled	None	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10h <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 100h <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1000f <input type="checkbox"/> FC <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10f <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 100f <input type="checkbox"/> Sym	100full	Enabled	Enabled

**Configuring by Port Range** Use the Interface > Port > General (Configure by Port Range) page to enable/disable an interface, set auto-negotiation and the interface capabilities to advertise, or manually fix the speed, duplex mode, and flow control.

**Parameters**

Except for the trap command, refer to “Configuring by Port List” on page 102 for more information on command usage and a description of the parameters.

**Web Interface**

To configure port connection parameters:

1. Click Interface, Port, General.
2. Select Configure by Port Range from the Action List.
3. Enter a range of ports to which your configuration changes apply.
4. Modify the required interface settings.
5. Click Apply.



**Figure 32: Configuring Connections by Port Range**

The screenshot shows the 'Interface > Port > General' configuration page. At the top, the breadcrumb 'Interface > Port > General' is visible. Below it, the 'Action' dropdown menu is set to 'Configure by Port Range'. The main configuration area includes several fields: 'Port Range (1-28)' with two empty input boxes separated by a hyphen; 'Admin' with a checked checkbox; 'Autonegotiation' with a checked checkbox and two rows of radio button options: the first row has '10h' selected and '100h', '1000f', and 'FC' unselected; the second row has '10f' selected and '100f' and 'Sym' unselected. Below these is a 'Speed Duplex' dropdown menu set to '10half'. 'Flow Control' and 'Link Up Down Trap' both have checked checkboxes. At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons.

### Displaying Connection Status

Use the Interface > Port > General (Show Information) page to display the current connection status, including link state, speed/duplex mode, flow control, and auto-negotiation.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** – Port identifier.
- ◆ **Type** – Indicates the port type. (1000BASE-T, 1000BASE SFP)
- ◆ **Name** – Interface label.
- ◆ **Admin** – Shows if the port is enabled or disabled.
- ◆ **Oper Status** – Indicates if the link is Up or Down.
- ◆ **Shutdown Reason** – Shows the reason this interface has been shut down if applicable. Some of the reasons for shutting down an interface include being administratively disabled, or exceeding traffic boundary limits set by auto traffic control.
- ◆ **Autonegotiation** – Shows if auto-negotiation is enabled or disabled.
- ◆ **Oper Speed Duplex** – Shows the current speed and duplex mode.
- ◆ **Oper Flow Control** – Shows the flow control type used.
- ◆ **Link Up Down Trap** – Shows if a notification message will be sent whenever a port link is established or broken. (Default: Enabled)

### Web Interface

To display port connection parameters:

1. Click Interface, Port, General.
2. Select Show Information from the Action List.

**Figure 33: Displaying Port Information**

Port	Type	Name	Admin	Oper Status	Shutdown Reason	Autonegotiation	Oper Speed Duplex	Oper Flow Control	Link Up Down Trap
1	1000BASE-T		Enabled	Up		Enabled	100full	None	Enabled
2	1000BASE-T		Enabled	Down		Enabled	1000full	None	Enabled
3	1000BASE-T		Enabled	Down		Enabled	1000full	None	Enabled
4	1000BASE-T		Enabled	Down		Enabled	1000full	None	Enabled
5	1000BASE-T		Enabled	Down		Enabled	1000full	None	Enabled

### Showing Port or Trunk Statistics

Use the Interface > Port/Trunk > Statistics or Chart page to display standard statistics on network traffic from the Interfaces Group and Ethernet-like MIBs, as well as a detailed breakdown of traffic based on the RMON MIB. Interfaces and Ethernet-like statistics display errors on the traffic passing through each port. This information can be used to identify potential problems with the switch (such as a faulty port or unusually heavy loading). RMON statistics provide access to a broad range of statistics, including a total count of different frame types and sizes passing through each port. All values displayed have been accumulated since the last system reboot, and are shown as counts per second. Statistics are refreshed every 60 seconds by default.



**Note:** RMON groups 2, 3 and 9 can only be accessed using SNMP management software.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

**Table 6: Port Statistics**

Parameter	Description
<i>Interface Statistics</i>	
Received Octets	The total number of octets received on the interface, including framing characters.
Transmitted Octets	The total number of octets transmitted out of the interface, including framing characters.

**Table 6: Port Statistics** (Continued)

Parameter	Description
Received Errors	The number of inbound packets that contained errors preventing them from being deliverable to a higher-layer protocol.
Received Unicast Packets	The number of subnetwork-unicast packets delivered to a higher-layer protocol.
Transmitted Unicast Packets	The total number of packets that higher-level protocols requested be transmitted to a subnetwork-unicast address, including those that were discarded or not sent.
Transmitted Discarded Packets	The number of outbound packets which were chosen to be discarded even though no errors had been detected to prevent their being transmitted. One possible reason for discarding such a packet could be to free up buffer space.
Received Multicast Packets	The number of packets, delivered by this sub-layer to a higher (sub-)layer, which were addressed to a multicast address at this sub-layer.
Transmitted Multicast Packets	The total number of packets that higher-level protocols requested be transmitted, and which were addressed to a multicast address at this sub-layer, including those that were discarded or not sent.
Received Broadcast Packets	The number of packets, delivered by this sub-layer to a higher (sub-)layer, which were addressed to a broadcast address at this sub-layer.
Transmitted Broadcast Packets	The total number of packets that higher-level protocols requested be transmitted, and which were addressed to a broadcast address at this sub-layer, including those that were discarded or not sent.
<i>Etherlike Statistics</i>	
Single Collision Frames	The number of successfully transmitted frames for which transmission is inhibited by exactly one collision.
Multiple Collision Frames	A count of successfully transmitted frames for which transmission is inhibited by more than one collision.
Late Collisions	The number of times that a collision is detected later than 512 bit-times into the transmission of a packet.
Excessive Collisions	A count of frames for which transmission on a particular interface fails due to excessive collisions. This counter does not increment when the interface is operating in full-duplex mode.
Deferred Transmissions	A count of frames for which the first transmission attempt on a particular interface is delayed because the medium was busy.
Frames Too Long	A count of frames received on a particular interface that exceed the maximum permitted frame size.
FCS Errors	A count of frames received on a particular interface that are an integral number of octets in length but do not pass the FCS check. This count does not include frames received with frame-too-long or frame-too-short error.
Internal MAC Receive Errors	A count of frames for which reception on a particular interface fails due to an internal MAC sublayer receive error.
Pause Frames Input	A count of the pause frames received by the port. Pause frames are sent by a receiver, when the sender of the frames, sends more than the receiver device can manage.
Pause Frames Output	A count of the pause frames sent by the port. Pause frames are sent by a receiver, when the sender of the frames, sends more than the receiver device can manage.

**Table 6: Port Statistics** (Continued)

Parameter	Description
Symbol Errors	Symbol errors occur when port interface hardware cannot decode the bits received electrically from the cable connection. A large amount of symbol errors indicates a possible hardware issue.
<i>RMON Statistics</i>	
Drop Events	The total number of events in which packets were dropped due to lack of resources.
Jabbers	The total number of frames received that were longer than 1518 octets (excluding framing bits, but including FCS octets), and had either an FCS or alignment error.
Fragments	The total number of frames received that were less than 64 octets in length (excluding framing bits, but including FCS octets) and had either an FCS or alignment error.
Collisions	The best estimate of the total number of collisions on this Ethernet segment.
Received Octets	Total number of octets of data received on the network. This statistic can be used as a reasonable indication of Ethernet utilization.
Received Packets	The total number of packets (bad, broadcast and multicast) received.
Broadcast Packets	The total number of good packets received that were directed to the broadcast address. Note that this does not include multicast packets.
Multicast Packets	The total number of good packets received that were directed to this multicast address.
Undersize Packets	The total number of packets received that were less than 64 octets long (excluding framing bits, but including FCS octets) and were otherwise well formed.
Oversize Packets	The total number of packets received that were longer than 1518 octets (excluding framing bits, but including FCS octets) and were otherwise well formed.
64 Bytes Packets	The total number of packets (including bad packets) received and transmitted that were 64 octets in length (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets).
65-127 Byte Packets	The total number of packets (including bad packets) received and transmitted where the number of octets fall within the specified range (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets).
128-255 Byte Packets	
256-511 Byte Packets	
512-1023 Byte Packets	
1024-1518 Byte Packets	
CRC Align Errors	Errors caused by cyclic redundancy check failures. Possible issues include hardware, cabling, or grounding.
<i>Utilization Statistics</i>	
Input Octets in kbits per second	Number of octets entering this interface in kbits/second.
Input Packets per second	Number of packets entering this interface per second.
Input Utilization	The input utilization rate for this interface.
Output Octets in kbits per second	Number of octets leaving this interface in kbits/second.

**Table 6: Port Statistics** (Continued)

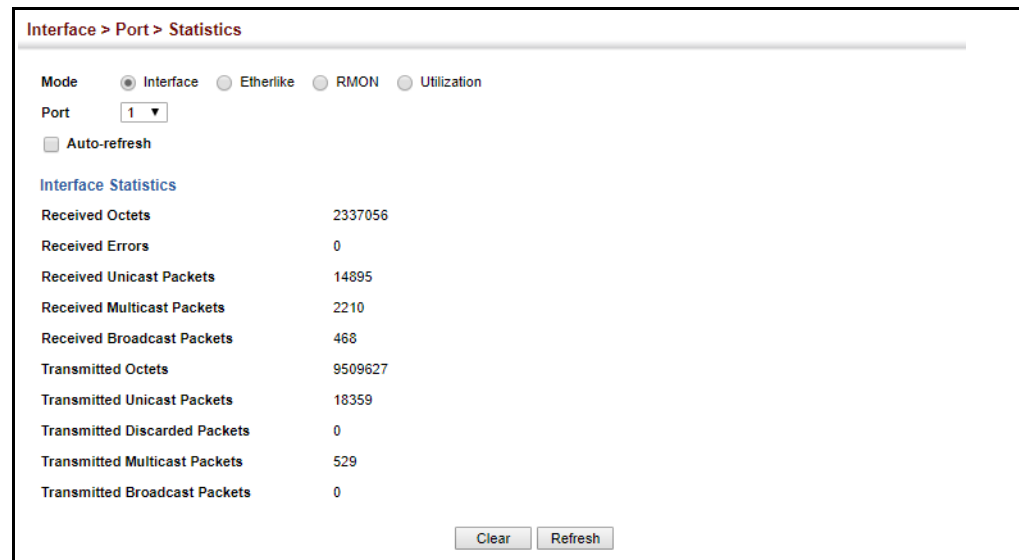
Parameter	Description
Output Packets per second	Number of packets leaving this interface per second.
Output Utilization	The output utilization rate for this interface.

### Web Interface

To show a list of port statistics:

1. Click Interface, Port, Statistics.
2. Select the statistics mode to display (Interface, Etherlike, RMON or Utilization).
3. Select a port from the drop-down list.
4. Use the Refresh button to update the screen and the clear button to reset the counters to zero.

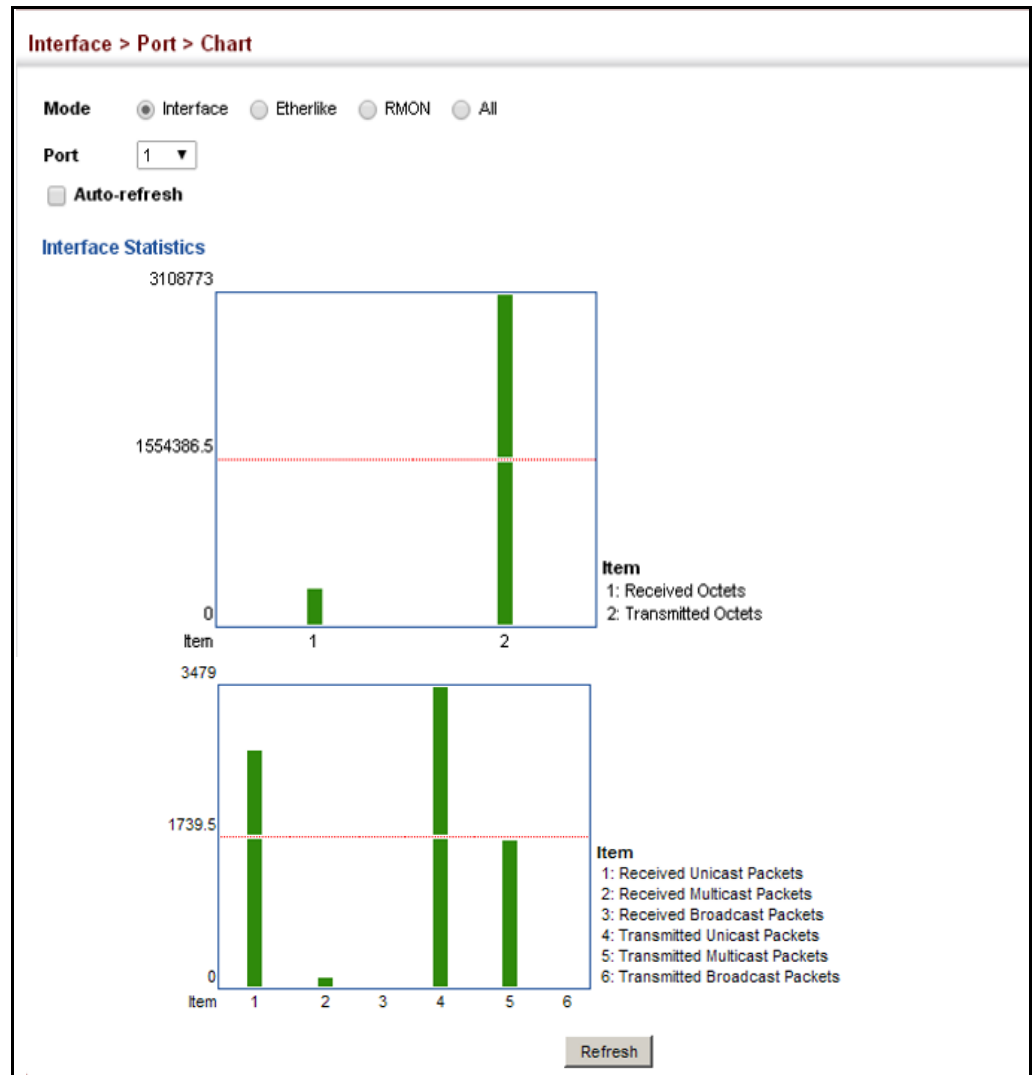
**Figure 34: Showing Port Statistics** (Table)



To show a chart of port statistics:

1. Click Interface, Port, Chart.
2. Select the statistics mode to display (Interface, Etherlike, RMON or All).
3. If Interface, Etherlike, RMON statistics mode is chosen, select a port from the drop-down list. If All (ports) statistics mode is chosen, select the statistics type to display.

Figure 35: Showing Port Statistics (Chart)



**Displaying Statistical History** Use the Interface > Port > History or Interface > Trunk > History page to display statistical history for the specified interfaces.

**Command Usage**

- ◆ For a description of the statistics displayed on these pages, see [“Showing Port or Trunk Statistics” on page 106.](#)
- ◆ To configure statistical history sampling, use the [“Displaying Statistical History” on page 110.](#)

**Parameters**

These parameters are displayed:

*Add*

- ◆ **Port** – Port number. (Range: 1-10/28)

- ◆ **History Name** – Name of sample interval. (Range: 1-32 characters)
- ◆ **Interval** - The interval for sampling statistics. (Range: 1-86400 minutes)
- ◆ **Requested Buckets** - The number of samples to take. (Range: 1-96)

*Show*

- ◆ **Port** – Port number. (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **History Name** – Name of sample interval. (Default settings: 15min, 1day)
- ◆ **Interval** - The interval for sampling statistics.
- ◆ **Requested Buckets** - The number of samples to take.

*Show Details*

- ◆ **Mode**
  - **Status** – Shows the sample parameters.
  - **Current Entry** – Shows current statistics for the specified port and named sample.
  - **Input Previous Entries** – Shows statistical history for ingress traffic.
  - **Output Previous Entries** – Shows statistical history for egress traffic.
- ◆ **Port** – Port number. (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **Name** – Name of sample interval.

### Web Configuration

To configure a periodic sample of statistics:

1. Click Interface, Port, Statistics, or Interface, Trunk, Statistics.
2. Select Add from the Action menu.
3. Select an interface from the Port or Trunk list.
4. Enter the sample name, the interval, and the number of buckets requested.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 36: Configuring a History Sample**

Interface > Port > History

Action: Add

Port: 1

History Name: rd#1

Interval (1-86400): 60

Requested Buckets (1-96): 50

Apply Revert

To show the configured entries for a history sample:

1. Click Interface, Port, Statistics, or Interface, Trunk, Statistics.
2. Select Show from the Action menu.
3. Select an interface from the Port or Trunk list.

**Figure 37: Showing Entries for History Sampling**

Interface > Port > History

Action: Show

Port: 1

History Name List Total: 3

<input type="checkbox"/>	History Name	Interval	Requested Buckets
<input type="checkbox"/>	15min	900	96
<input type="checkbox"/>	1day	86400	7
<input type="checkbox"/>	rd#1	60	50

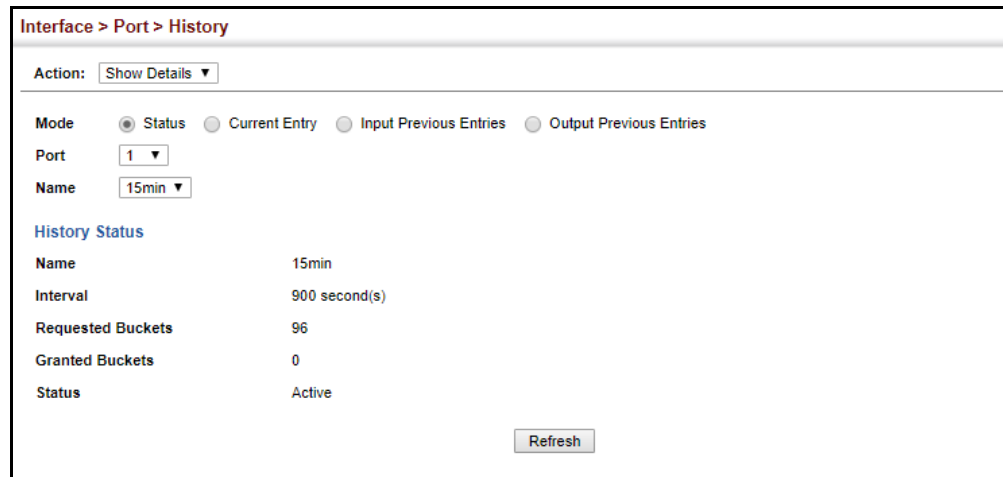
Delete Revert

To show the configured parameters for a sampling entry:

1. Click Interface, Port, Statistics, or Interface, Trunk, Statistics.
2. Select Show Details from the Action menu.
3. Select Status from the options for Mode.
4. Select an interface from the Port or Trunk list.
5. Select an sampling entry from the Name list.



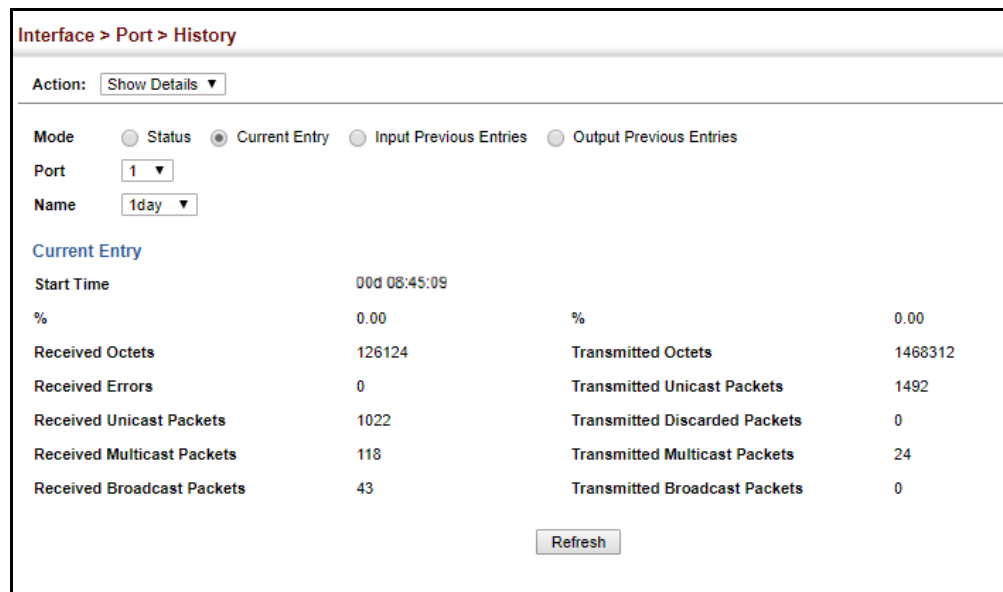
**Figure 38: Showing Status of Statistical History Sample**



To show statistics for the current interval of a sample entry:

1. Click Interface, Port, Statistics, or Interface, Trunk, Statistics.
2. Select Show Details from the Action menu.
3. Select Current Entry from the options for Mode.
4. Select an interface from the Port or Trunk list.
5. Select an sampling entry from the Name list.

**Figure 39: Showing Current Statistics for a History Sample**



To show ingress or egress traffic statistics for a sample entry:

1. Click Interface, Port, Statistics, or Interface, Trunk, Statistics.
2. Select Show Details from the Action menu.
3. Select Input Previous Entry or Output Previous Entry from the options for Mode.
4. Select an interface from the Port or Trunk list.
5. Select an sampling entry from the Name list.

**Figure 40: Showing Ingress Statistics for a History Sample**

The screenshot shows the 'Interface > Port > History' page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail and an 'Action' dropdown menu set to 'Show Details'. Below this, there are radio buttons for 'Mode': 'Status', 'Current Entry', 'Input Previous Entries' (which is selected), and 'Output Previous Entries'. There are also dropdown menus for 'Port' (set to '1') and 'Name' (set to '15min').

The main content is an 'Input Previous Entry List' with a 'Total: 16' and two small icons (1 and 2). The table below shows traffic statistics for various time intervals.

Start Time	%	Octets	Unicast	Multicast	Broadcast	Errors
00d 00:00:0	0.00	9401	0	40	36	0
00d 00:15:0	0.00	3246	0	30	9	0
00d 00:30:0	0.00	2999	0	30	8	0
00d 00:45:0	0.00	3863	0	30	17	0
00d 01:00:0	0.00	3511	0	29	14	0
00d 01:15:0	0.00	3246	0	30	9	0
00d 01:30:0	0.00	2999	0	30	8	0
00d 01:45:0	0.00	2999	0	30	8	0
00d 02:00:0	0.00	3575	0	30	14	0
00d 02:15:0	0.00	3246	0	30	9	0

At the bottom right of the table area, there is a 'Refresh' button.

**Displaying Transceiver Data** Use the Interface > Port > Transceiver page to display identifying information, and operational for optical transceivers which support Digital Diagnostic Monitoring (DDM).

**Parameters**

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** – Port number. (Range: 9-10/25-28)
- ◆ **General** – Information on connector type and vendor-related parameters.
- ◆ **DDM Information** – Information on temperature, supply voltage, laser bias current, laser power, and received optical power.

The switch can display diagnostic information for SFP modules which support the SFF-8472 Specification for Diagnostic Monitoring Interface for Optical Transceivers. This information allows administrators to remotely diagnose problems with optical devices. This feature, referred to as Digital Diagnostic Monitoring (DDM) provides information on transceiver parameters.

### Web Interface

To display identifying information and functional parameters for optical transceivers:

1. Click Interface, Port, Transceiver.
2. Select a port from the scroll-down list.

**Figure 41: Displaying Transceiver Data**

Interface > Port > Transceiver

Port: 25

**General**

Connector Type: LC

Fiber Type: Multimode 50um (M5), Multimode 62.5um (M6)

Eth Compliance Codes: 1000BASE-SX

Baud Rate: 1300 MBd

Vendor OUI: 00-00-00

Vendor Name: SMC Networks

Vendor PN: SMC1GSFP-SX

Vendor Rev: V1.1

Vendor SN: A492101711

Date Code: 09-05-19

**DDM Thresholds**

Trap

Auto Mode

	Low Alarm	Low Warning	High Warning	High Alarm
Temperature(°C)	-123.00	0.00	70.00	75.00
Voltage(Volts)	3.10	3.15	3.45	3.50
Current(mA)	6.00	7.00	90.00	100.00
Tx Power(dBm)	-12.00	-11.50	-9.50	-9.00
Rx Power(dBm)	-21.50	-21.00	-3.50	-3.00

Click this button to restore default DDM thresholds values.

**Configuring Transceiver Thresholds** Use the Interface > Port > Transceiver page to configure thresholds for alarm and warning messages for optical transceivers which support Digital Diagnostic Monitoring (DDM). This page also displays identifying information for supported transceiver types, and operational parameters for transceivers which support DDM.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** – Port number. (Range: 9-10/25-28)
- ◆ **General** – Information on connector type and vendor-related parameters.
- ◆ **DDM Information** – Information on temperature, supply voltage, laser bias current, laser power, and received optical power.

The switch can display diagnostic information for SFP modules which support the SFF-8472 Specification for Diagnostic Monitoring Interface for Optical Transceivers. This information allows administrators to remotely diagnose problems with optical devices. This feature, referred to as Digital Diagnostic Monitoring (DDM) provides information on transceiver parameters.

- ◆ **Trap** – Sends a trap when any of the transceiver's operation values falls outside of specified thresholds. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Auto Mode** – Uses default threshold settings obtained from the transceiver to determine when an alarm or trap message should be sent. (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **DDM Thresholds** – Information on alarm and warning thresholds. The switch can be configured to send a trap when the measured parameter falls outside of the specified thresholds.

The following alarm and warning parameters are supported:

- **High Alarm** – Sends an alarm message when the high threshold is crossed.
- **High Warning** – Sends a warning message when the high threshold is crossed.
- **Low Warning** – Sends a warning message when the low threshold is crossed.
- **Low Alarm** – Sends an alarm message when the low threshold is crossed.

The configurable ranges are:

- **Temperature:** -128.00-128.00 °C
- **Voltage:** 0.00-6.55 Volts
- **Current:** 0.00-131.00 mA
- **Power:** -40.00-8.20 dBm

The threshold value for Rx and Tx power is calculated as the power ratio in decibels (dB) of the measured power referenced to one milliwatt (mW).

Threshold values for alarm and warning messages can be configured as described below.

- A high-threshold alarm or warning message is sent if the current value is greater than or equal to the threshold, and the last sample value was less than the threshold. After a rising event has been generated, another such event will not be generated until the sampled value has fallen below the high threshold and reaches the low threshold.

- A low-threshold alarm or warning message is sent if the current value is less than or equal to the threshold, and the last sample value was greater than the threshold. After a falling event has been generated, another such event will not be generated until the sampled value has risen above the low threshold and reaches the high threshold.
- Threshold events are triggered as described above to avoid a hysteresis effect which would continuously trigger event messages if the power level were to fluctuate just above and below either the high threshold or the low threshold.
- Trap messages configured by this command are sent to any management station configured as an SNMP trap manager using the Administration > SNMP (Configure Trap) page.

### Web Interface

To configure threshold values for optical transceivers:

1. Click Interface, Port, Transceiver.
2. Select a port from the scroll-down list.
3. Set the switch to send a trap based on default or manual settings.
4. Set alarm and warning thresholds if manual configuration is used.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 42: Configuring Transceiver Thresholds**

**DDM Thresholds**

Trap

Auto Mode

	High Alarm	High Warning	Low Warning	Low Alarm
Temperature(°C)	75.00	70.00	0.00	-123.00
Voltage(Volts)	3.50	3.45	3.15	3.10
Current(mA)	100.00	90.00	7.00	6.00
Tx Power(dBm)	-9.00	-9.50	-11.50	-12.00
Rx Power(dBm)	-3.00	-3.50	-21.00	-21.50

Click this button to restore default DDM thresholds values.

**Performing Cable Diagnostics** Use the Interface > Port > Cable Test page to test the cable attached to a port. The cable test will check for any cable faults (short, open, etc.). If a fault is found, the switch reports the length to the fault. Otherwise, it reports the cable length. It can be used to determine the quality of the cable, connectors, and terminations. Problems such as opens, shorts, and cable impedance mismatch can be diagnosed with this test.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ Cable diagnostics are performed using Time Domain Reflectometry (TDR). TDR detects a cable fault by sending a signal through the cable and reading the signal that is reflected back. TDR can only determine if a link is valid or faulty.
- ◆ Cable diagnostics can only be performed on twisted-pair media.
- ◆ This cable test is only accurate for Gigabit Ethernet cables 7 - 100 meters long.
- ◆ The test takes approximately 5 seconds. The switch displays the results of the test immediately upon completion, including common cable failures, as well as the status and approximate length to a fault.
- ◆ Potential conditions which may be listed by the diagnostics include those listed below. Note that TDR testing can only show Test failed or OK.
  - Test failed
  - OK: Correctly terminated pair
  - Open: Open pair, no link partner
  - Short: Shorted pair
  - Impedance mismatch: Terminating impedance is not in the reference range.
  - No cable
  - Not tested
  - Not Supported: This message is displayed for any Gigabit Ethernet ports linked up at a speed lower than 1000 Mbps, or for any 10G Ethernet ports.
  - Unknown – Unknown error
- ◆ Ports are linked down while running cable diagnostics.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** – Switch port identifier.
- ◆ **Type** – Displays media type. (GE – Gigabit Ethernet, Other – SFP)
- ◆ **Link Status** – Shows if the port link is up or down.

- ◆ **Test Result** – The results include common cable failures, as well as the status and approximate distance to a fault, or the approximate cable length if no fault is found.

To ensure more accurate measurement of the length to a fault, first disable power-saving mode on the link partner before running cable diagnostics.

For link-down ports, the reported distance to a fault is accurate to within +/- 2 meters. For link-up ports, the accuracy is +/- 10 meters.

- ◆ **Last Updated** – Shows the last time this port was tested.
- ◆ **Test** – Initiates cable test.

### Web Interface

To test the cable attached to a port:

1. Click Interface, Port, Cable Test.
2. Click Test for any port to start the cable test.

**Figure 43: Performing Cable Tests**

Port	Type	Link Status	Test Result (Cable/Fault Distance in Meters)				Last Updated	Action
			Pair A (meters)	Pair B (meters)	Pair C (meters)	Pair D (meters)		
1	GE	Up	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested		Test
2	GE	Down	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested		Test
3	GE	Down	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested		Test
4	GE	Down	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested		Test
5	GE	Down	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested		Test
6	GE	Down	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested		Test
7	GE	Down	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested		Test
8	GE	Down	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested	Not Tested		Test
9	Other	Down	Not Supported	Not Supported	Not Supported	Not Supported		Test
10	Other	Down	Not Supported	Not Supported	Not Supported	Not Supported		Test

Note: After every test action, wait several seconds and click the refresh button to display test results.

Refresh

## Trunk Configuration

This section describes how to configure static and dynamic trunks.

You can create multiple links between devices that work as one virtual, aggregate link. A port trunk offers a dramatic increase in bandwidth for network segments where bottlenecks exist, as well as providing a fault-tolerant link between two devices. You can create up to 8 trunks at a time on the switch.

The switch supports both static trunking and dynamic Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP). Static trunks have to be manually configured at both ends of the link, and the switches must comply with the Cisco EtherChannel standard. On the other hand, LACP configured ports can automatically negotiate a trunked link with LACP-configured ports on another device. You can configure any number of ports on the switch as LACP, as long as they are not already configured as part of a static trunk. If ports on another device are also configured as LACP, the switch and the other device will negotiate a trunk link between them. If an LACP trunk consists of more than eight ports, all other ports will be placed in standby mode. Should one link in the trunk fail, one of the standby ports will automatically be activated to replace it.

### Command Usage

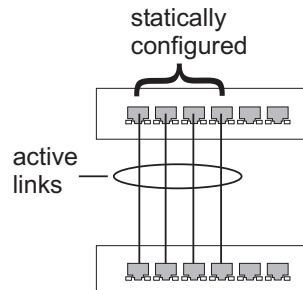
Besides balancing the load across each port in the trunk, the other ports provide redundancy by taking over the load if a port in the trunk fails. However, before making any physical connections between devices, use the web interface or CLI to specify the trunk on the devices at both ends. When using a trunk, take note of the following points:

- ◆ Finish configuring trunks before you connect the corresponding network cables between switches to avoid creating a loop.
- ◆ You can create up to 8 trunks on a switch, with up to eight ports per trunk.
- ◆ The ports at both ends of a connection must be configured as trunk ports.
- ◆ When configuring static trunks on switches of different types, they must be compatible with the Cisco EtherChannel standard.
- ◆ The ports at both ends of a trunk must be configured in an identical manner, including communication mode (i.e., speed, duplex mode and flow control), VLAN assignments, and CoS settings.
- ◆ Any of the Gigabit ports on the front panel can be trunked together, including ports of different media types.
- ◆ All the ports in a trunk have to be treated as a whole when moved from/to, added or deleted from a VLAN.
- ◆ STP, VLAN, and IGMP settings can only be made for the entire trunk.



**Configuring a Static Trunk** Use the Interface > Trunk > Static page to create a trunk, assign member ports, and configure the connection parameters.

**Figure 44: Configuring Static Trunks**



### Command Usage

- ◆ When configuring static trunks, you may not be able to link switches of different types, depending on the vendor’s implementation. However, note that the static trunks on this switch are Cisco EtherChannel compatible.
- ◆ To avoid creating a loop in the network, be sure you add a static trunk via the configuration interface before connecting the ports, and also disconnect the ports before removing a static trunk via the configuration interface.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Trunk ID** – Trunk identifier. (Range: 1-8)
- ◆ **Member** – The initial trunk member. Use the Add Member page to configure additional members.
  - **Unit** – Unit identifier. (Range: 1)
  - **Port** – Port identifier. (Range: 1-10/28)

### Web Interface

To create a static trunk:

1. Click Interface, Trunk, Static.
2. Select Configure Trunk from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Enter a trunk identifier.
5. Set the unit and port for the initial trunk member.
6. Click Apply.

**Figure 45: Creating Static Trunks**

Interface > Trunk > Static

Step: 1. Configure Trunk Action: Add

Trunk ID (1-16)

Member Unit 1 Port 1

Apply Revert

To add member ports to a static trunk:

Interface > Trunk > Static

Step: 1. Configure Trunk Action: Add

Trunk ID (1-8)

Member Unit 1 Port 1

Apply Revert

1. Click Interface, Trunk, Static.
2. Select Configure Trunk from the Step list.
3. Select Add Member from the Action list.
4. Select a trunk identifier.
5. Set the unit and port for an additional trunk member.
6. Click Apply.

**Figure 46: Adding Static Trunks Members**

Interface > Trunk > Static

Step: 1. Configure Trunk Action: Add Member

Trunk 1

Member Unit 1 Port 2

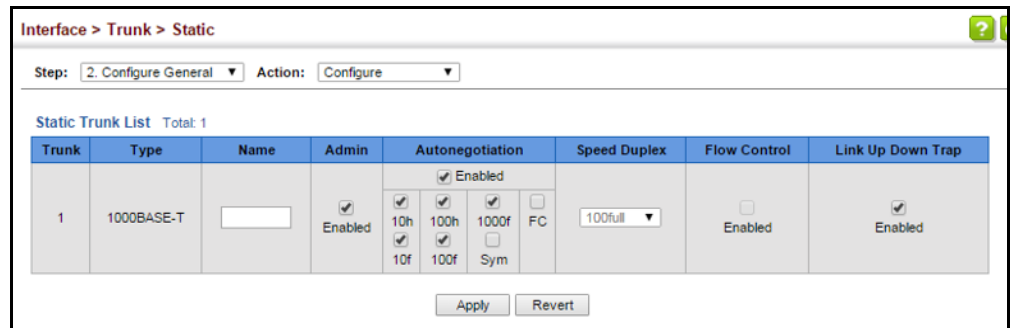
Apply Revert

To configure connection parameters for a static trunk:

1. Click Interface, Trunk, Static.
2. Select Configure General from the Step list.

3. Select Configure from the Action list.
4. Modify the required interface settings. (Refer to “Configuring by Port List” on page 102 for a description of the parameters.)
5. Click Apply.

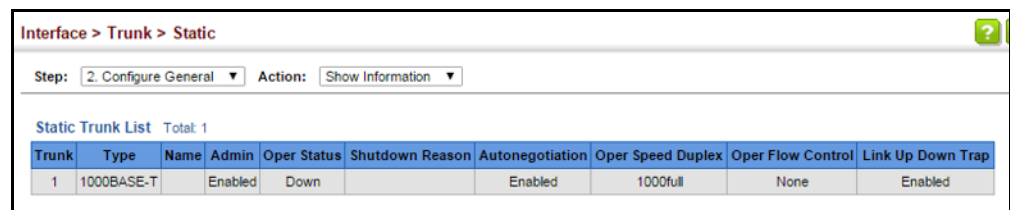
**Figure 47: Configuring Connection Parameters for a Static Trunk**



To display trunk connection parameters:

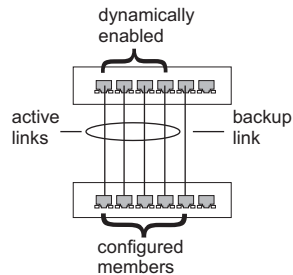
1. Click Interface, Trunk, Static.
2. Select Configure General from the Step list.
3. Select Show Information from the Action list.

**Figure 48: Showing Information for Static Trunks**



**Configuring a Dynamic Trunk** Use the Interface > Trunk > Dynamic pages to set the administrative key for an aggregation group, enable LACP on a port, configure protocol parameters for local and partner ports, or to set Ethernet connection parameters.

**Figure 49: Configuring Dynamic Trunks**



### Command Usage

- ◆ To avoid creating a loop in the network, be sure you enable LACP before connecting the ports, and also disconnect the ports before disabling LACP.
- ◆ If the target switch has also enabled LACP on the connected ports, the trunk will be activated automatically.
- ◆ A trunk formed with another switch using LACP will automatically be assigned the next available trunk ID.
- ◆ If more than eight ports attached to the same target switch have LACP enabled, the additional ports will be placed in standby mode, and will only be enabled if one of the active links fails.
- ◆ All ports on both ends of an LACP trunk must be configured for full duplex, and auto-negotiation.
- ◆ Ports are only allowed to join the same Link Aggregation Group (LAG) if (1) the LACP port system priority matches, (2) the LACP port admin key matches, and (3) the LAG admin key matches (if configured). However, if the LAG admin key is set, then the port admin key must be set to the same value for a port to be allowed to join that group.
- ◆ The port's LACP mode can be set (CLI only) to either Active or Passive.



**Note:** If the LACP admin key is not set when a channel group is formed (i.e., it has a null value of 0), the operational value of this key is set to the same value as the port admin key used by the interfaces that joined the group (see the “show lacp internal” command in the *CLI Reference Guide*).

**Note:** The port LACP mode can be set to Active or Passive using the CLI interface (see the “lacp mode” command in the *CLI Reference Guide*).

## Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

### *Configure Aggregator*

- ◆ **Admin Key** – LACP administration key is used to identify a specific link aggregation group (LAG) during local LACP setup on the switch. (Range: 0-65535)

If the port channel admin key is not set when a channel group is formed (i.e., it has the null value of 0), this key is set to the same value as the port admin key (see *Configure Aggregation Port - Actor/Partner*) used by the interfaces that joined the group. Note that when the LAG is no longer used, the port channel admin key is reset to 0.

If the port channel admin key is set to a non-default value, the operational key is based upon LACP PDUs received from the partner, and the channel admin key is reset to the default value. The trunk identifier will also be changed by this process.

- ◆ **Timeout Mode** – The timeout to wait for the next LACP data unit (LACPDU):
  - **Long Timeout** – Specifies a slow timeout of 90 seconds. (This is the default setting.)
  - **Short Timeout** – Specifies a fast timeout of 3 seconds.

The timeout is set in the LACP timeout bit of the Actor State field in transmitted LACPDU. When the partner switch receives an LACPDU set with a short timeout from the actor switch, the partner adjusts the transmit LACPDU interval to 1 second. When it receives an LACPDU set with a long timeout from the actor, it adjusts the transmit LACPDU interval to 30 seconds.

If the actor does not receive an LACPDU from its partner before the configured timeout expires, the partner port information will be deleted from the LACP group.

When a dynamic port-channel member leaves a port-channel, the default timeout value will be restored on that port.

When a dynamic port-channel is torn down, the configured timeout value will be retained. When the dynamic port-channel is constructed again, that timeout value will be used.

- ◆ **System Priority** – LACP system priority is used to determine link aggregation group (LAG) membership, and to identify this device to other switches during LAG negotiations.
- ◆ **System MAC Address** – The device MAC address assigned to each trunk.

*Configure Aggregation Port - General*

- ◆ **Port** – Port identifier. (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **LACP Status** – Enables or disables LACP on a port.

*Configure Aggregation Port - Actor/Partner*

- ◆ **Port** – Port number. (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **Admin Key** – The LACP administration key must be set to the same value for ports that belong to the same LAG. (Range: 0-65535; Default – Actor: 1, Partner: 0)

Once the remote side of a link has been established, LACP operational settings are already in use on that side. Configuring LACP settings for the partner only applies to its administrative state, not its operational state.



**Note:** Configuring the partner admin-key does not affect remote or local switch operation. The local switch just records the partner admin-key for user reference.

By default, the actor's operational key is determined by port's link speed (1000f - 4, 100f - 3, 10f - 2), and copied to the admin key.

- ◆ **System Priority** – LACP system priority is used to determine link aggregation group (LAG) membership, and to identify this device to other switches during LAG negotiations. (Range: 0-65535; Default: 32768)  
System priority is combined with the switch's MAC address to form the LAG identifier. This identifier is used to indicate a specific LAG during LACP negotiations with other systems.
- ◆ **Port Priority** – If a link goes down, LACP port priority is used to select a backup link. (Range: 0-65535; Default: 32768)
  - Setting a lower value indicates a higher effective priority.
  - If an active port link goes down, the backup port with the highest priority is selected to replace the downed link. However, if two or more ports have the same LACP port priority, the port with the lowest physical port number will be selected as the backup port.
  - If an LAG already exists with the maximum number of allowed port members, and LACP is subsequently enabled on another port using a higher priority than an existing member, the newly configured port will replace an existing port member that has a lower priority.



**Note:** Configuring LACP settings for a port only applies to its administrative state, not its operational state, and will only take effect the next time an aggregate link is established with that port.

**Note:** Configuring the port partner sets the remote side of an aggregate link; i.e., the ports on the attached device. The command attributes have the same meaning as those used for the port actor.

### Web Interface

To configure the admin key for a dynamic trunk:

1. Click Interface, Trunk, Dynamic.
2. Select Configure Aggregator from the Step list.
3. Set the Admin Key and timeout mode for the required LACP group.
4. Click Apply.

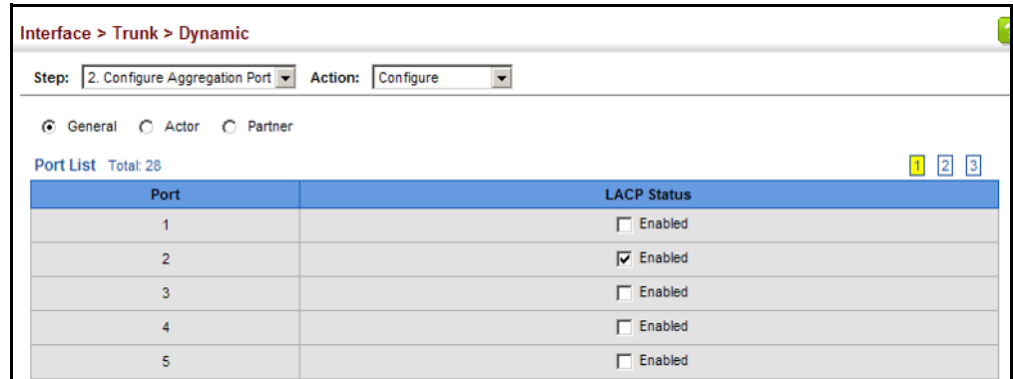
**Figure 50: Configuring the LACP Aggregator Admin Key**

Trunk	Admin Key (0-65535)	Timeout Mode	System Priority	System MAC Address
1	0	Long Timeout	32768	00-E0-0C-00-00-FD
2	0	Long Timeout	32768	00-E0-0C-00-00-FD
3	0	Long Timeout	32768	00-E0-0C-00-00-FD
4	0	Long Timeout	32768	00-E0-0C-00-00-FD
5	0	Long Timeout	32768	00-E0-0C-00-00-FD

To enable LACP for a port:

1. Click Interface, Trunk, Dynamic.
2. Select Configure Aggregation Port from the Step list.
3. Select Configure from the Action list.
4. Click General.
5. Enable LACP on the required ports.
6. Click Apply.

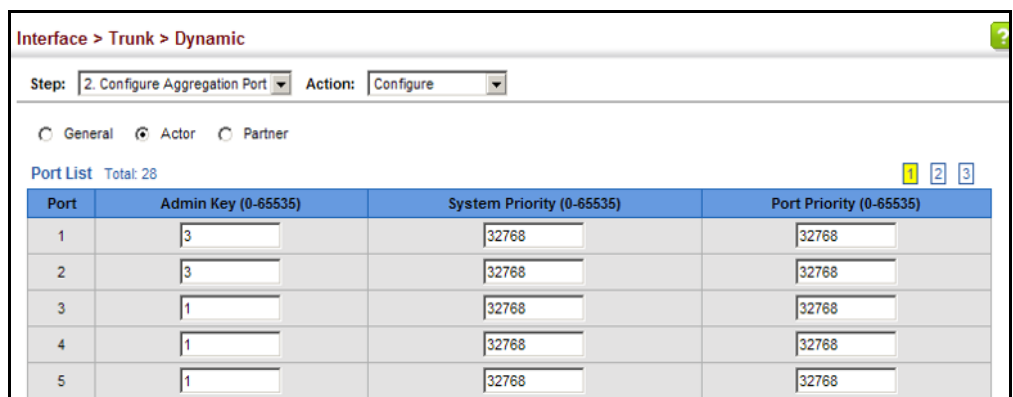
Figure 51: Enabling LACP on a Port



To configure LACP parameters for group members:

1. Click Interface, Trunk, Dynamic.
2. Select Configure Aggregation Port from the Step list.
3. Select Configure from the Action list.
4. Click Actor or Partner.
5. Configure the required settings.
6. Click Apply.

Figure 52: Configuring LACP Parameters on a Port



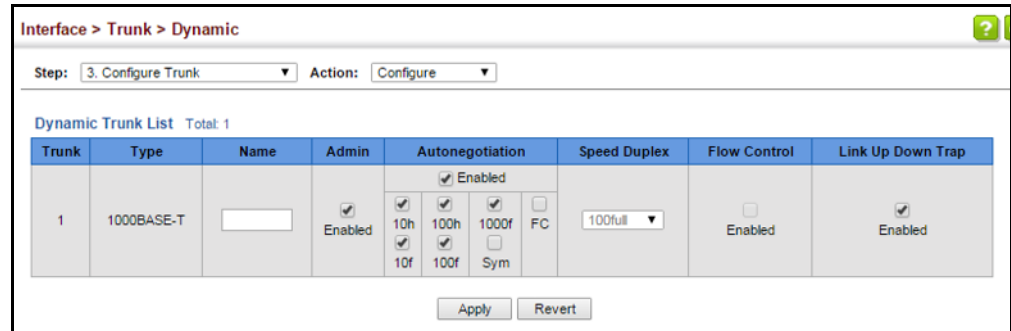
To configure connection parameters for a dynamic trunk:

1. Click Interface, Trunk, Dynamic.
2. Select Configure Trunk from the Step list.
3. Select Configure from the Action list.



4. Modify the required interface settings. (See “Configuring by Port List” on page 102 for a description of the interface settings.)
5. Click Apply.

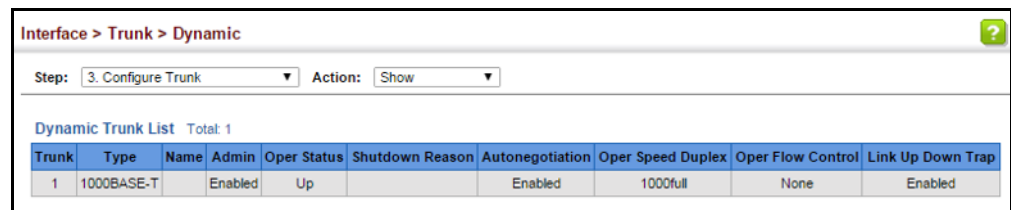
**Figure 53: Configuring Connection Settings for a Dynamic Trunk**



To show connection parameters for a dynamic trunk:

1. Click Interface, Trunk, Dynamic.
2. Select Configure Trunk from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 54: Showing Connection Parameters for Dynamic Trunks**



### Configuring Load Balancing

Use the Interface > Trunk > Load Balance page to set the load-distribution method used among ports in aggregated links.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ This command applies to all static and dynamic trunks on the switch.
- ◆ To ensure that the switch traffic load is distributed evenly across all links in a trunk, select the source and destination addresses used in the load-balance calculation to provide the best result for trunk connections:
  - **Destination IP Address:** All traffic with the same destination IP address is output on the same link in a trunk. This mode works best for switch-to-router trunk links where traffic through the switch is destined for many different hosts. Do not use this mode for switch-to-server trunk links where the destination IP address is the same for all traffic.

- **Destination MAC Address:** All traffic with the same destination MAC address is output on the same link in a trunk. This mode works best for switch-to-switch trunk links where traffic through the switch is destined for many different hosts. Do not use this mode for switch-to-router trunk links where the destination MAC address is the same for all traffic.
- **Source and Destination IP Address:** All traffic with the same source and destination IP address is output on the same link in a trunk. This mode works best for switch-to-router trunk links where traffic through the switch is received from and destined for many different hosts.
- **Source and Destination MAC Address:** All traffic with the same source and destination MAC address is output on the same link in a trunk. This mode works best for switch-to-switch trunk links where traffic through the switch is received from and destined for many different hosts.
- **Source IP Address:** All traffic with the same source IP address is output on the same link in a trunk. This mode works best for switch-to-router or switch-to-server trunk links where traffic through the switch is received from many different hosts.
- **Source MAC Address:** All traffic with the same source MAC address is output on the same link in a trunk. This mode works best for switch-to-switch trunk links where traffic through the switch is received from many different hosts.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed for the load balance mode:

- ◆ **Destination IP Address** - Load balancing based on destination IP address.
- ◆ **Destination MAC Address** - Load balancing based on destination MAC address.
- ◆ **Source and Destination IP Address** - Load balancing based on source and destination IP address.
- ◆ **Source and Destination MAC Address** - Load balancing based on source and destination MAC address.
- ◆ **Source IP Address** - Load balancing based on source IP address.
- ◆ **Source MAC Address** - Load balancing based on source MAC address.

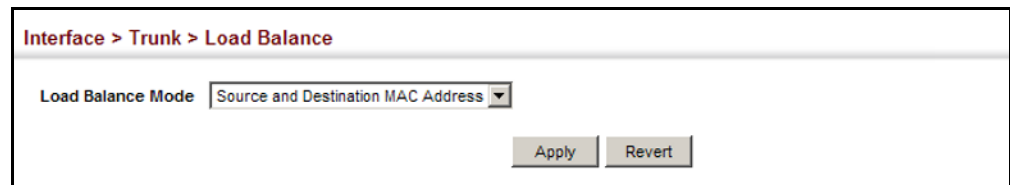
### Web Interface

To display the load-distribution method used by ports in aggregated links:

1. Click Interface, Trunk, Load Balance.
2. Select the required method from the Load Balance Mode list.

3. Click Apply.

**Figure 55: Configuring Load Balancing**



---

## Saving Power

Use the Interface > Green Ethernet page to enable power savings mode on the selected port.

### Command Usage

- ◆ IEEE 802.3 defines the Ethernet standard and subsequent power requirements based on cable connections operating at 100 meters. Enabling power saving mode can reduce power used for cable lengths of 60 meters or less, with more significant reduction for cables of 20 meters or less, and continue to ensure signal integrity.
- ◆ The power-saving methods provided by this switch include:
  - Power saving when there is no link partner:

Under normal operation, the switch continuously auto-negotiates to find a link partner, keeping the MAC interface powered up even if no link connection exists. When using power-savings mode, the switch checks for energy on the circuit to determine if there is a link partner. If none is detected, the switch automatically turns off the transmitter, and most of the receive circuitry (entering Sleep Mode). In this mode, the low-power energy-detection circuit continuously checks for energy on the cable. If none is detected, the MAC interface is also powered down to save additional energy. If energy is detected, the switch immediately turns on both the transmitter and receiver functions, and powers up the MAC interface.
  - Power saving when there is a link partner:

Traditional Ethernet connections typically operate with enough power to support at least 100 meters of cable even though average network cable length is shorter. When cable length is shorter, power consumption can be reduced since signal attenuation is proportional to cable length. When power-savings mode is enabled, the switch analyzes cable length to determine whether or not it can reduce the signal amplitude used on a particular link.



**Note:** Power savings can only be implemented on Gigabit Ethernet ports when using twisted-pair cabling. Power-savings mode on a active link only works when connection speed is 1 Gbps, and line length is less than 60 meters.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** – Power saving mode only applies to the Gigabit Ethernet ports using copper media.
- ◆ **Power Saving Status** – Adjusts the power provided to ports based on the length of the cable used to connect to other devices. Only sufficient power is used to maintain connection requirements. (Default: Enabled on Gigabit Ethernet RJ-45 ports)

### Web Interface

To enable power savings:

1. Click Interface, Green Ethernet.
2. Mark the Enabled check box for a port.
3. Click Apply.

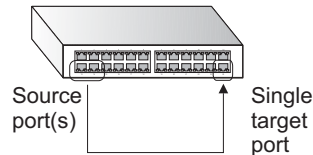
**Figure 56: Enabling Power Savings**

Port	Power Saving Status
21	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
22	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
23	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
24	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
25	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
26	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
27	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
28	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

## Configuring Local Port Mirroring

Use the Interface > Mirror page to mirror traffic from any source port to a target port for real-time analysis. You can then attach a logic analyzer or RMON probe to the target port and study the traffic crossing the source port in a completely unobtrusive manner.

**Figure 57: Configuring Local Port Mirroring**



### Command Usage

- ◆ Traffic can be mirrored from one or more source ports to a destination port on the same switch (local port mirroring as described in this section), or from one or more source ports on remote switches to a destination port on this switch (remote port mirroring as described in [“Configuring Remote Port Mirroring” on page 134](#)).
- ◆ Monitor port speed should match or exceed source port speed, otherwise traffic may be dropped from the monitor port.
- ◆ The destination port cannot be a trunk or trunk member port.
- ◆ Note that Spanning Tree BPDU packets are not mirrored to the target port.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Source Port** – The port whose traffic will be monitored.
- ◆ **Target Port** – The port that will mirror the traffic on the source port.
- ◆ **Type** – Allows you to select which traffic to mirror to the target port, Rx (receive), Tx (transmit), or Both. (Default: Both)

### Web Interface

To configure a local mirror session:

1. Click Interface, Mirror.
2. Select Add from the Action List.
3. Specify the source port.
4. Specify the monitor port.

5. Specify the traffic type to be mirrored.
6. Click Apply.

**Figure 58: Configuring Local Port Mirroring**

Interface > Mirror

Action: Add

Source Port Unit 1 Port 1

Target Port Unit 1 Port 1

Type Both

Apply Revert

To display the configured mirror sessions:

1. Click Interface, Mirror.
2. Select Show from the Action List.

**Figure 59: Displaying Local Port Mirror Sessions**

Interface > Mirror

Action: Show

Mirror Session List Total: 2

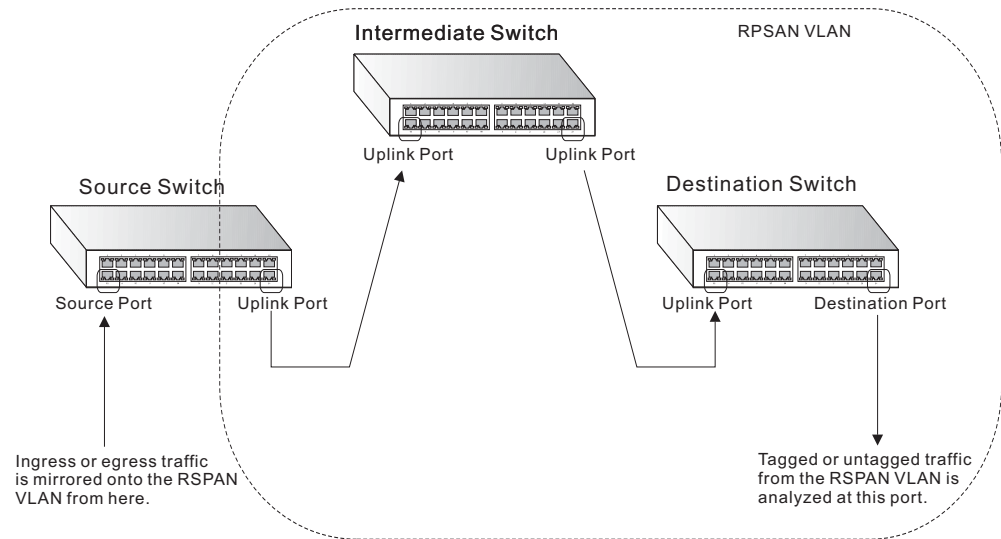
	Source (Unit/Port)	Target (Unit/Port)	Type
<input type="checkbox"/>	1 / 7	1 / 8	Both
<input type="checkbox"/>	1 / 9	1 / 10	Rx

Delete Revert

## Configuring Remote Port Mirroring

Use the Interface > RSPAN page to mirror traffic from remote switches for analysis at a destination port on the local switch. This feature, also called Remote Switched Port Analyzer (RSPAN), carries traffic generated on the specified source ports for each session over a user-specified VLAN dedicated to that RSPAN session in all participating switches. Monitored traffic from one or more sources is copied onto the RSPAN VLAN through IEEE 802.1Q trunk or hybrid ports that carry it to any RSPAN destination port monitoring the RSPAN VLAN as shown in the figure below.

Figure 60: Configuring Remote Port Mirroring



### Command Usage

- ◆ Traffic can be mirrored from one or more source ports to a destination port on the same switch (local port mirroring as described in [“Configuring Local Port Mirroring” on page 133](#)), or from one or more source ports on remote switches to a destination port on this switch (remote port mirroring as described in this section).
- ◆ *Configuration Guidelines*

Take the following step to configure an RSPAN session:

1. Use the VLAN Static List (see [“Configuring VLAN Groups” on page 149](#)) to reserve a VLAN for use by RSPAN (marking the “Remote VLAN” field on this page. (Default VLAN 1 is prohibited.)
2. Set up the source switch on the RSPAN configuration page by specifying the mirror session, the switch’s role (Source), the RSPAN VLAN, and the uplink port<sup>1</sup>. Then specify the source port(s), and the traffic type to monitor (Rx, Tx or Both).
3. Set up all intermediate switches on the RSPAN configuration page, entering the mirror session, the switch’s role (Intermediate), the RSPAN VLAN, and the uplink port(s).
4. Set up the destination switch on the RSPAN configuration page by specifying the mirror session, the switch’s role (Destination), the destination port<sup>1</sup>, whether or not the traffic exiting this port will be tagged or untagged, and the RSPAN VLAN. Then specify each uplink port where the mirrored traffic is being received.

1. Only 802.1Q trunk or hybrid (i.e., general use) ports can be configured as an RSPAN uplink or destination ports – access ports are not allowed (see [“Adding Static Members to VLANs” on page 152](#)).

◆ *RSPAN Limitations*

The following limitations apply to the use of RSPAN on this switch:

- *RSPAN Ports* – Only ports can be configured as an RSPAN source, destination, or uplink; static and dynamic trunks are not allowed. A port can only be configured as one type of RSPAN interface – source, destination, or uplink. Also, note that the source port and destination port cannot be configured on the same switch.
- *Local/Remote Mirror* – The destination of a local mirror session (created on the Interface > Port > Mirror page) cannot be used as the destination for RSPAN traffic.
- *Spanning Tree* – If the spanning tree is disabled, BPDUs will not be flooded onto the RSPAN VLAN.
- *MAC address learning* is not supported on RSPAN uplink ports when RSPAN is enabled on the switch. Therefore, even if spanning tree is enabled after RSPAN has been configured, MAC address learning will still not be re-started on the RSPAN uplink ports.
- *IEEE 802.1X* – RSPAN and 802.1X are mutually exclusive functions. When 802.1X is enabled globally, RSPAN uplink ports cannot be configured, even though RSPAN source and destination ports can still be configured. When RSPAN uplink ports are enabled on the switch, 802.1X cannot be enabled globally.
- *Port Security* – If port security is enabled on any port, that port cannot be set as an RSPAN uplink port, even though it can still be configured as an RSPAN source or destination port. Also, when a port is configured as an RSPAN uplink port, port security cannot be enabled on that port.

**Parameters**

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Session** – A number identifying this RSPAN session. (Range: 1-3)  
Only one active session is allowed.
- ◆ **Operation Status** – Indicates whether or not RSPAN is currently functioning.
- ◆ **Switch Role** – Specifies the role this switch performs in mirroring traffic.
  - **None** – This switch will not participate in RSPAN.
  - **Source** - Specifies this device as the source of remotely mirrored traffic.
  - **Intermediate** - Specifies this device as an intermediate switch, transparently passing mirrored traffic from one or more sources to one or more destinations.



- **Destination** - Specifies this device as a switch configured with a destination port which is to receive mirrored traffic for this session.
- ◆ **Remote VLAN** – The VLAN to which traffic mirrored from the source port will be flooded. The VLAN specified in this field must first be reserved for the RSPAN application using the VLAN > Static page (see [page 149](#)).
- ◆ **Uplink Port** – A port on any switch participating in RSPAN through which mirrored traffic is passed on to or received from the RSPAN VLAN.  
  
Only one uplink port can be configured on a source switch, but there is no limitation on the number of uplink ports<sup>1</sup> configured on an intermediate or destination switch.  
  
Only destination and uplink ports will be assigned by the switch as members of the RSPAN VLAN. Ports cannot be manually assigned to an RSPAN VLAN through the VLAN > Static page. Nor can GVRP dynamically add port members to an RSPAN VLAN. Also, note that the VLAN > Static (Show) page will not display any members for an RSPAN VLAN, but will only show configured RSPAN VLAN identifiers.
- ◆ **Type** – Specifies the traffic type to be mirrored remotely. (Options: Rx, Tx, Both)
- ◆ **Destination Port** – Specifies the destination port<sup>1</sup> to monitor the traffic mirrored from the source ports. Only one destination port can be configured on the same switch per session, but a destination port can be configured on more than one switch for the same session. Also note that a destination port can still send and receive switched traffic, and participate in any Layer 2 protocols to which it has been assigned.
- ◆ **Tag** – Specifies whether or not the traffic exiting the destination port to the monitoring device carries the RSPAN VLAN tag.

#### Web Interface

To configure a remote mirror session:

1. Click Interface, RSPAN.
2. Set the Switch Role to None, Source, Intermediate, or Destination.
3. Configure the required settings for each switch participating in the RSPAN VLAN.
4. Click Apply.

Figure 61: Configuring Remote Port Mirroring (Source)

Interface > RSPAN

Session

Operation Status Up

Switch Role

Remote VLAN

Uplink Port

Source Port Configuration List Total: 28

Source Port	Type
1	<input type="text" value="Rx"/>
2	<input type="text" value="Rx"/>
3	<input type="text" value="None"/>
4	<input type="text" value="None"/>
5	<input type="text" value="Tx"/>

Figure 62: Configuring Remote Port Mirroring (Intermediate)

Interface > RSPAN

Session

Operation Status Up

Switch Role

Remote VLAN

Uplink Port List Total: 28

Port	Uplink
1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>

Figure 63: Configuring Remote Port Mirroring (Destination)

Interface > RSPAN

Session

Operation Status Up

Switch Role

Destination Port

Tag

Remote VLAN

Uplink Port List Total: 28

Port	Uplink
1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>

---

## Sampling Traffic Flows

The flow sampling (sFlow) feature embedded on this switch, together with a remote sFlow Collector, can provide network administrators with an accurate, detailed and real-time overview of the types and levels of traffic present on their network. The sFlow Agent samples 1 out of  $n$  packets from all data traversing the switch, re-encapsulates the samples as sFlow datagrams and transmits them to the sFlow Collector. This sampling occurs at the internal hardware level where all traffic is seen, whereas traditional probes will only have a partial view of traffic as it is sampled at the monitored interface. Moreover, the processor and memory load imposed by the sFlow agent is minimal since local analysis does not take place. The wire-speed transmission characteristic of the switch is thus preserved even at high traffic levels.



---

**Note:** The terms “collector”, “receiver” and “owner”, in the context of this chapter, all refer to a remote server capable of receiving the sFlow datagrams generated by the sFlow agent of the switch.

---

As the Collector receives streams from the various sFlow agents (other switches or routers) throughout the network, a timely, network-wide picture of utilization and traffic flows is created. Analysis of the sFlow stream(s) can reveal trends and information that can be leveraged in the following ways:

- ◆ Detecting, diagnosing, and fixing network problems
- ◆ Real-time congestion management
- ◆ Understanding application mix (P2P, Web, DNS, etc.) and changes
- ◆ Identification and tracing of unauthorized network activity
- ◆ Usage accounting
- ◆ Trending and capacity planning

### Configuring sFlow Receiver Settings

Use the Interface > sFlow (Configure Receiver – Add) page to create an sFlow receiver on the switch.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Receiver Owner Name**<sup>2</sup> – The name of the receiver. (Range: 1-256 characters; Default: None)

---

2. Sampling must be disabled by setting the time out to 0 before these fields can be configured.

- ◆ **Receiver Timeout** – The time that the sFlow process will continuously send samples to the Collector before resetting all sFlow port parameters. (Range: 0-10000000 seconds, where 0 indicates no time out)  
  
The sFlow parameters affected by this command include the sampling interval, the receiver's name, address and UDP port, the time out, maximum header size, and maximum datagram size.
- ◆ **Receiver Destination**<sup>2</sup> – IP address of the sFlow Collector.
  - *ipv4-address* - IPv4 address of the sFlow collector. Valid IPv4 addresses consist of four decimal numbers, 0 to 255, separated by periods.
  - *ipv6-address* - IPv6 address of the sFlow collector. A full IPv6 address including the network prefix and host address bits. An IPv6 address consists of 8 colon-separated 16-bit hexadecimal values. One double colon may be used to indicate the appropriate number of zeros required to fill the undefined fields.
- ◆ **Receiver Socket Port**<sup>2</sup> – The UDP port on which the sFlow Collector is listening for sFlow streams. (Range: 1-65534)
- ◆ **Maximum Datagram Size** – Maximum size of the sFlow datagram payload. (Range: 200-1500 bytes)
- ◆ **Datagram Version** – Sends either v4 or v5 sFlow datagrams to the receiver.

### Web Interface

To configure an sFlow receiver:

1. Click Interface, sFlow.
2. Select Configure Receiver from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Fill in the parameters for the sFlow receiver and monitored traffic.
5. Click Apply.

Figure 64: Configuring an sFlow Receiver

### Web Interface

To show configured receivers:

1. Click Interface, sFlow.
2. Select Configure Receiver from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

Figure 65: Showing sFlow Receivers

Owner Name	Timeout	Destination	Socket Port	Maximum Datagram Size	Datagram Version
stat_server1	97	192.168.220.225	22500	512	5

### Configuring an sFlow Polling Instance

Use the Interface > sFlow (Configure Details – Add) page to enable an sFlow polling data source that polls periodically based on a specified time interval, or an sFlow data source instance that takes samples periodically based on the number of packets processed.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed in the web interface:

- ◆ **Receiver Owner Name** – The name of the receiver. (Range: 1-256 characters; Default: None)
- ◆ **Type** – Specifies the polling type as an sFlow polling data source for a specified interface that polls periodically based on a specified time interval, or an sFlow

data source instance for a specific interface that takes samples periodically based on the number of packets processed.

- ◆ **Data Source** – The source from which the samples will be taken and sent to a collector.
- ◆ **Instance ID** – An instance ID used to identify the sampling source. (Range: 1)
- ◆ **Sampling Rate** – The number of packets out of which one sample will be taken. (Range: 256-16777215 packets; Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Maximum Header Size** – Maximum size of the sFlow datagram header. (Range: 64-256 bytes)

### Web Interface

To configure an sFlow sampling or polling instance:

1. Click Interface, sFlow.
2. Select Configure Details from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Fill in the parameters for the sFlow instance, including sampling rate and maximum header size.
5. Click Apply.

Figure 66: Configuring an sFlow Instance

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring an sFlow instance. The breadcrumb is "Interface > sFlow". The "Step" is "2. Configure Details" and the "Action" is "Add". The "Receiver Owner Name" is "stat\_server1". The "Type" is "Sampling" (selected with a radio button). The "Data Source" is a dropdown menu. The "Unit" is "1" and the "Port" is "3". The "Instance ID (1-1)" is "1". The "Sampling Rate (256-16777215)" is "256". The "Maximum Header Size (64-256)" is "200" bytes. There are "Apply" and "Revert" buttons at the bottom right.

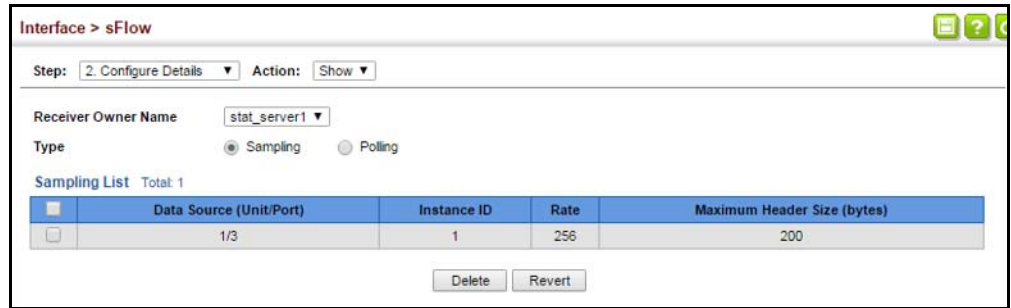
### Web Interface

To show configured instances:

1. Click Interface, sFlow.
2. Select Configure Details from the Step list.

3. Select Show from the Action list.
4. Select the owner name from the scroll-down list.
5. Select sFlow type as Sampling or Polling.

Figure 67: Showing sFlow Instances



## Traffic Segmentation

If tighter security is required for passing traffic from different clients through downlink ports on the local network and over uplink ports to the service provider, port-based traffic segmentation can be used to isolate traffic for individual clients. Data traffic on downlink ports is only forwarded to, and from, uplink ports.

Traffic belonging to each client is isolated to the allocated downlink ports. But the switch can be configured to either isolate traffic passing across a client's allocated uplink ports from the uplink ports assigned to other clients, or to forward traffic through the uplink ports used by other clients, allowing different clients to share access to their uplink ports where security is less likely to be compromised.

**Enabling Traffic Segmentation** Use the Interface > Traffic Segmentation (Configure Global) page to enable traffic segmentation.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

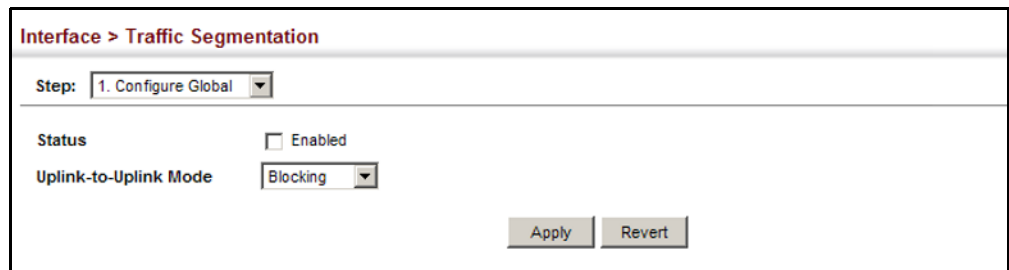
- ◆ **Status** – Enables port-based traffic segmentation. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Uplink-to-Uplink Mode** – Specifies whether or not traffic can be forwarded between uplink ports assigned to different client sessions.
  - **Blocking** – Blocks traffic between uplink ports assigned to different sessions.
  - **Forwarding** – Forwards traffic between uplink ports assigned to different sessions.

### Web Interface

To enable traffic segmentation:

1. Click Interface, Traffic Segmentation.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Mark the Status check box, and set the required uplink-to-uplink mode.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 68: Enabling Traffic Segmentation**



### Configuring Uplink and Downlink Ports

Use the Interface > Traffic Segmentation (Configure Session) page to assign the downlink and uplink ports to use in the segmented group. Ports designated as downlink ports can not communicate with any other ports on the switch except for the uplink ports. Uplink ports can communicate with any other ports on the switch and with any designated downlink ports.

### Command Usage

- ◆ When traffic segmentation is enabled, the forwarding state for the uplink and downlink ports assigned to different client sessions is shown below.

**Table 7: Traffic Segmentation Forwarding**

Destination Source	Session #1 Downlinks	Session #1 Uplinks	Session #2 Downlinks	Session #2 Uplinks	Normal Ports
<b>Session #1 Downlink Ports</b>	Blocking	Forwarding	Blocking	Blocking	Blocking
<b>Session #1 Uplink Ports</b>	Forwarding	Forwarding	Blocking	Blocking/ Forwarding*	Forwarding
<b>Session #2 Downlink Ports</b>	Blocking	Blocking	Blocking	Forwarding	Blocking
<b>Session #2 Uplink Ports</b>	Blocking	Blocking/ Forwarding*	Forwarding	Forwarding	Forwarding
<b>Normal Ports</b>	Forwarding	Forwarding	Forwarding	Forwarding	Forwarding

\* The forwarding state for uplink-to-uplink ports is configured on the Configure Global page (see [page 143](#)).



- ◆ When traffic segmentation is disabled, all ports operate in normal forwarding mode based on the settings specified by other functions such as VLANs and spanning tree protocol.
- ◆ A port cannot be configured in both an uplink and downlink list.
- ◆ A port can only be assigned to one traffic-segmentation session.
- ◆ A downlink port can only communicate with an uplink port in the same session. Therefore, if an uplink port is not configured for a session, the assigned downlink ports will not be able to communicate with any other ports.
- ◆ If a downlink port is not configured for the session, the assigned uplink ports will operate as normal ports.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Session ID** – Traffic segmentation session. (Range: 1-4)
- ◆ **Direction** – Adds an interface to the segmented group by setting the direction to uplink or downlink. (Default: Uplink)
- ◆ **Interface** – Displays a list of ports or trunks.
- ◆ **Port** – Port Identifier. (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **Trunk** – Trunk Identifier. (Range: 1-8)

### Web Interface

To configure the members of the traffic segmentation group:

1. Click Interface, Traffic Segmentation.
2. Select Configure Session from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Enter the session ID, set the direction to uplink or downlink, and select the interface to add.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 69: Configuring Members for Traffic Segmentation**

Interface > Traffic Segmentation

Step: 2. Configure Session Action: Add

Session ID (1-4)

Direction Uplink

Interface  Port (1-28)  -   
 Trunk (1-8)  -

Apply Revert

To show the members of the traffic segmentation group:

1. Click Interface, Traffic Segmentation.
2. Select Configure Session from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 70: Showing Traffic Segmentation Members**

Interface > Traffic Segmentation

Step: 2. Configure Session Action: Show

Session List Total: 2

<input type="checkbox"/>	Session ID	Direction	Interface
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Uplink	Unit 1 / Port 1
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Downlink	Unit 1 / Port 2

Delete Revert

# 5

## VLAN Configuration

---

This chapter includes the following topics:

- ◆ [IEEE 802.1Q VLANs](#) – Configures static VLANs.
- ◆ [IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling](#) – Configures QinQ tunneling to maintain customer-specific VLAN and Layer 2 protocol configurations across a service provider network, even when different customers use the same internal VLAN IDs.
- ◆ [Protocol VLANs](#) – Configures VLAN groups based on specified protocols.
- ◆ [MAC-based VLANs](#) – Maps untagged ingress frames to a specified VLAN if the source MAC address is found in the IP MAC address-to-VLAN mapping table.

---

### IEEE 802.1Q VLANs

In large networks, routers are used to isolate broadcast traffic for each subnet into separate domains. This switch provides a similar service at Layer 2 by using VLANs to organize any group of network nodes into separate broadcast domains. VLANs confine broadcast traffic to the originating group, and can eliminate broadcast storms in large networks. This also provides a more secure and cleaner network environment.

An IEEE 802.1Q VLAN is a group of ports that can be located anywhere in the network, but communicate as though they belong to the same physical segment.

VLANs help to simplify network management by allowing you to move devices to a new VLAN without having to change any physical connections. VLANs can be easily organized to reflect departmental groups (such as Marketing or R&D), usage groups (such as e-mail), or multicast groups (used for multimedia applications such as video conferencing).

VLANs provide greater network efficiency by reducing broadcast traffic, and allow you to make network changes without having to update IP addresses or IP subnets. VLANs inherently provide a high level of network security since traffic must pass through a configured Layer 3 link to reach a different VLAN.

This switch supports the following VLAN features:

- ◆ Up to 4094 VLANs based on the IEEE 802.1Q standard
- ◆ Distributed VLAN learning across multiple switches using explicit tagging.
- ◆ Port overlapping, allowing a port to participate in multiple VLANs
- ◆ End stations can belong to multiple VLANs
- ◆ Passing traffic between VLAN-aware and VLAN-unaware devices
- ◆ Priority tagging

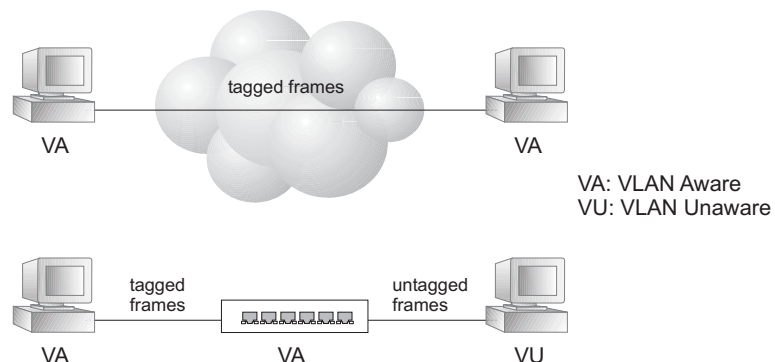
### Assigning Ports to VLANs

Before enabling VLANs for the switch, you must first assign each port to the VLAN group(s) in which it will participate. By default all ports are assigned to VLAN 1 as untagged ports. Add a port as a tagged port if you want it to carry traffic for one or more VLANs, and any intermediate network devices or the host at the other end of the connection supports VLANs. Then assign ports on the other VLAN-aware network devices along the path that will carry this traffic to the same VLAN(s), either manually or dynamically using GVRP. However, if you want a port on this switch to participate in one or more VLANs, but none of the intermediate network devices nor the host at the other end of the connection supports VLANs, then you should add this port to the VLAN as an untagged port.



**Note:** VLAN-tagged frames can pass through VLAN-aware or VLAN-unaware network interconnection devices, but the VLAN tags should be stripped off before passing it on to any end-node host that does not support VLAN tagging.

**Figure 71: VLAN Compliant and VLAN Non-compliant Devices**



**VLAN Classification** – When the switch receives a frame, it classifies the frame in one of two ways. If the frame is untagged, the switch assigns the frame to an associated VLAN (based on the default VLAN ID of the receiving port). But if the frame is tagged, the switch uses the tagged VLAN ID to identify the port broadcast domain of the frame.

**Port Overlapping** – Port overlapping can be used to allow access to commonly shared network resources among different VLAN groups, such as file servers or printers. Note that if you implement VLANs which do not overlap, but still need to communicate, you can connect them by enabled routing on this switch.

**Untagged VLANs** – Untagged VLANs are typically used to reduce broadcast traffic and to increase security. A group of network users assigned to a VLAN form a broadcast domain that is separate from other VLANs configured on the switch. Packets are forwarded only between ports that are designated for the same VLAN. Untagged VLANs can be used to manually isolate user groups or subnets. However, you should use IEEE 802.3 tagged VLANs with GVRP whenever possible to fully automate VLAN registration.

### Forwarding Tagged/Untagged Frames

If you want to create a small port-based VLAN for devices attached directly to a single switch, you can assign ports to the same untagged VLAN. However, to participate in a VLAN group that crosses several switches, you should create a VLAN for that group and enable tagging on all ports.

Ports can be assigned to multiple tagged or untagged VLANs. Each port on the switch is therefore capable of passing tagged or untagged frames. When forwarding a frame from this switch along a path that contains any VLAN-aware devices, the switch should include VLAN tags. When forwarding a frame from this switch along a path that does not contain any VLAN-aware devices (including the destination host), the switch must first strip off the VLAN tag before forwarding the frame. When the switch receives a tagged frame, it will pass this frame onto the VLAN(s) indicated by the frame tag. However, when this switch receives an untagged frame from a VLAN-unaware device, it first decides where to forward the frame, and then inserts a VLAN tag reflecting the ingress port's default VID.

## Configuring VLAN Groups

Use the VLAN > Static (Add) page to create or remove VLAN groups, set administrative status, or specify Remote VLAN type (see [“Configuring Remote Port Mirroring” on page 134](#)). To propagate information about VLAN groups used on this switch to external network devices, you must specify a VLAN ID for each of these groups.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### Add

- ◆ **VLAN ID** – ID of VLAN or range of VLANs (1-4094).  
VLAN 1 is the default untagged VLAN.
- ◆ **Status** – Enables or disables the specified VLAN.
- ◆ **Remote VLAN** – Reserves this VLAN for RSPAN (see [“Configuring Remote Port Mirroring” on page 134](#)).

*Modify*

- ◆ **VLAN ID** – ID of configured VLAN (1-4094).
- ◆ **VLAN Name** – Name of the VLAN (1 to 32 characters).
- ◆ **Status** – Enables or disables the specified VLAN.
- ◆ **L3 Interface** – Sets the interface to support Layer 3 configuration, and reserves memory space required to maintain additional information about this interface type. This parameter must be enabled before you can assign an IP address to a VLAN (see [“Setting the Switch’s IP Address \(IP Version 4\)” on page 471](#)).

*Show*

- ◆ **VLAN ID** – ID of configured VLAN.
- ◆ **VLAN Name** – Name of the VLAN.
- ◆ **Status** – Operational status of configured VLAN.
- ◆ **Remote VLAN** – Shows if RSPAN is enabled on this VLAN (see [“Configuring Remote Port Mirroring” on page 134](#)).
- ◆ **L3 Interface** – Shows if the interface supports Layer 3 configuration.

**Web Interface**

To create VLAN groups:

1. Click VLAN, Static.
2. Select Add from the Action list.
3. Enter a VLAN ID or range of IDs.
4. Check Status to configure the VLAN as operational.
5. Specify whether the VLANs are to be used for remote port mirroring.
6. Click Apply.

**Figure 72: Creating Static VLANs**

The screenshot shows the 'VLAN > Static' configuration page. At the top, the 'Action' dropdown menu is set to 'Add'. Below this, the 'VLAN ID (1-4094)' field contains the number '2'. The 'Status' checkbox is checked and labeled 'Enabled'. The 'Remote VLAN' checkbox is unchecked and labeled 'Enabled'. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

To modify the configuration settings for VLAN groups:

1. Click VLAN, Static.
2. Select Modify from the Action list.
3. Select the identifier of a configured VLAN.
4. Modify the VLAN name or operational status as required.
5. Enable the L3 Interface field to specify that a VLAN will be used as a Layer 3 interface.
6. Click Apply.

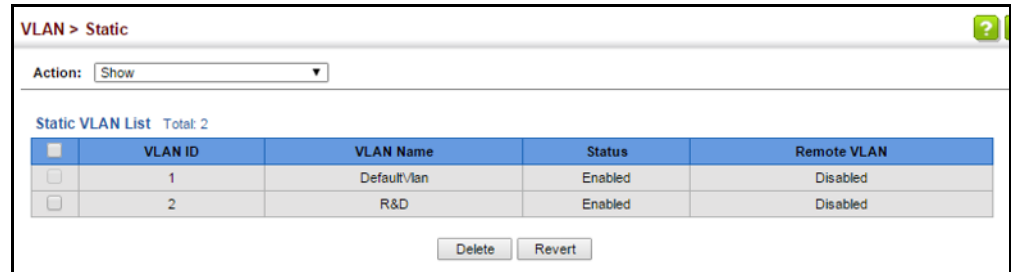
**Figure 73: Modifying Settings for Static VLANs**

The screenshot shows the 'VLAN > Static' configuration page with the 'Action' dropdown menu set to 'Modify'. The 'VLAN ID (1-4093)' field is a dropdown menu showing '2'. The 'VLAN Name' text box contains 'R&D'. The 'Status' checkbox is checked and labeled 'Enabled'. The 'L3 Interface' checkbox is checked and labeled 'Enabled'. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

To show the configuration settings for VLAN groups:

1. Click VLAN, Static.
2. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 74: Showing Static VLANs**



The screenshot shows the 'VLAN > Static' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'VLAN > Static' and a help icon. Below that is an 'Action:' dropdown menu set to 'Show'. The main content is a table titled 'Static VLAN List' with a 'Total: 2' indicator. The table has five columns: 'VLAN ID', 'VLAN Name', 'Status', and 'Remote VLAN'. There are two rows of data. Below the table are 'Delete' and 'Revert' buttons.

	VLAN ID	VLAN Name	Status	Remote VLAN
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	DefaultVlan	Enabled	Disabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	R&D	Enabled	Disabled

### Adding Static Members to VLANs

Use the VLAN > Static (Edit Member by VLAN, Edit Member by Interface, or Edit Member by Interface Range) pages to configure port members for the selected VLAN index, interface, or a range of interfaces. Use the menus for editing port members to configure the VLAN behavior for specific interfaces, including the mode of operation (Hybrid or 1Q Trunk), the default VLAN identifier (PVID), accepted frame types, and ingress filtering. Assign ports as tagged if they are connected to 802.1Q VLAN compliant devices, or untagged they are not connected to any VLAN-aware devices. Or configure a port as forbidden to prevent the switch from automatically adding it to a VLAN via the GVRP protocol.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### *Edit Member by VLAN*

- ◆ **VLAN** – ID of configured VLAN (1-4094).
- ◆ **Interface** – Displays a list of ports or trunks.
- ◆ **Port** – Port Identifier. (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **Trunk** – Trunk Identifier. (Range: 1-8)
- ◆ **Mode** – Indicates VLAN membership mode for an interface. (Default: Hybrid)
  - **Access** - Sets the port to operate as an untagged interface. The port transmits and receives untagged frames on a single VLAN only.
  - **Hybrid** – Specifies a hybrid VLAN interface. The port may transmit tagged or untagged frames.
  - **1Q Trunk** – Specifies a port as an end-point for a VLAN trunk. A trunk is a direct link between two switches, so the port transmits tagged frames that



identify the source VLAN. Note that frames belonging to the port's default VLAN (i.e., associated with the PVID) are also transmitted as tagged frames.

- ◆ **PVID** – VLAN ID assigned to untagged frames received on the interface. (Default: 1)

When using Access mode, and an interface is assigned to a new VLAN, its PVID is automatically set to the identifier for that VLAN. When using Hybrid mode, the PVID for an interface can be set to any VLAN for which it is an untagged member.

- ◆ **Acceptable Frame Type** – Sets the interface to accept all frame types, including tagged or untagged frames, or only tagged frames. When set to receive all frame types, any received frames that are untagged are assigned to the default VLAN. (Options: All, Tagged; Default: All)
- ◆ **Ingress Filtering** – Determines how to process frames tagged for VLANs for which the ingress port is not a member. (Default: Enabled)
  - Ingress filtering only affects tagged frames.
  - If ingress filtering is disabled and a port receives frames tagged for VLANs for which it is not a member, these frames will be flooded to all other ports (except for those VLANs explicitly forbidden on this port).
  - If ingress filtering is enabled and a port receives frames tagged for VLANs for which it is not a member, these frames will be discarded.
  - Ingress filtering does not affect VLAN independent BPDU frames, such as GVRP or STP. However, they do affect VLAN dependent BPDU frames, such as GMRP.
- ◆ **Membership Type** – Select VLAN membership for each interface by marking the appropriate radio button for a port or trunk:
  - **Tagged:** Interface is a member of the VLAN. All packets transmitted by the port will be tagged, that is, carry a tag and therefore carry VLAN or CoS information.
  - **Untagged:** Interface is a member of the VLAN. All packets transmitted by the port will be untagged, that is, not carry a tag and therefore not carry VLAN or CoS information. Note that an interface must be assigned to at least one group as an untagged port.
  - **Forbidden:** Interface cannot be included as a member of the VLAN.
  - **None:** Interface is not a member of the VLAN. Packets associated with this VLAN will not be transmitted by the interface.



**Note:** VLAN 1 is the default untagged VLAN containing all ports on the switch using Hybrid mode.

---

*Edit Member by Interface*

All parameters are the same as those described under the preceding section for Edit Member by VLAN.

*Edit Member by Interface Range*

All parameters are the same as those described under the earlier section for Edit Member by VLAN, except for the items shown below.

- ◆ **Port Range** – Displays a list of ports. (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **Trunk Range** – Displays a list of ports. (Range: 1-8)



**Note:** The PVID, acceptable frame type, and ingress filtering parameters for each interface within the specified range must be configured on either the Edit Member by VLAN or Edit Member by Interface page.

**Web Interface**

To configure static members by the VLAN index:

1. Click VLAN, Static.
2. Select Edit Member by VLAN from the Action list.
3. Select a VLAN from the scroll-down list.
4. Set the Interface type to display as Port or Trunk.
5. Modify the settings for any interface as required.
6. Click Apply.

**Figure 75: Configuring Static Members by VLAN Index**

Port	Mode	PVID (1-4094)	Acceptable Frame Type	Ingress Filtering	Membership Type			
					Tagged	Untagged	Forbidden	None
1	Hybrid	1	All	Enabled	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
2	Hybrid	1	All	Enabled	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
3	Hybrid	1	All	Enabled	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
4	Hybrid	1	All	Enabled	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
5	Hybrid	1	All	Enabled	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
6	Hybrid	1	All	Enabled	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

To configure static members by interface:

1. Click VLAN, Static.
2. Select Edit Member by Interface from the Action list.
3. Select a port or trunk configure.
4. Modify the settings for any interface as required.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 76: Configuring Static VLAN Members by Interface**

VLAN > Static

Action: Edit Member by Interface

Interface:  Port 1  Trunk

Mode: Hybrid

PVID: 1

Acceptable Frame Type: All

Ingress Filtering:  Enabled

Static VLAN Membership List Total: 4

VLAN	Membership Type			
	Tagged	Untagged	Forbidden	None
1	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
300	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
600	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
601	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>

Apply Revert

To configure static members by interface range:

1. Click VLAN, Static.
2. Select Edit Member by Interface Range from the Action list.
3. Set the Interface type to display as Port or Trunk.
4. Enter an interface range.
5. Modify the VLAN parameters as required. Remember that the PVID, acceptable frame type, and ingress filtering parameters for each interface within the specified range must be configured on either the Edit Member by VLAN or Edit Member by Interface page.
6. Click Apply.

Figure 77: Configuring Static VLAN Members by Interface Range

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "VLAN > Static". At the top, there is an "Action:" dropdown menu set to "Edit Member by Interface Range". Below this, the configuration options are as follows:

- Interface:** Radio buttons for "Port" (selected) and "Trunk".
- Port Range (1-28):** Two input boxes separated by a hyphen.
- Mode:** A dropdown menu currently set to "Hybrid".
- VLAN ID (1-4093):** Two input boxes separated by a hyphen.
- Membership Type:** Radio buttons for "Tagged" (selected), "Untagged", "Forbidden", and "None".

At the bottom right of the form, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

## IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling

IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling (QinQ) is designed for service providers carrying traffic for multiple customers across their networks. QinQ tunneling is used to maintain customer-specific VLAN and Layer 2 protocol configurations even when different customers use the same internal VLAN IDs. This is accomplished by inserting Service Provider VLAN (SPVLAN) tags into the customer's frames when they enter the service provider's network, and then stripping the tags when the frames leave the network.

A service provider's customers may have specific requirements for their internal VLAN IDs and number of VLANs supported. VLAN ranges required by different customers in the same service-provider network might easily overlap, and traffic passing through the infrastructure might be mixed. Assigning a unique range of VLAN IDs to each customer would restrict customer configurations, require intensive processing of VLAN mapping tables, and could easily exceed the maximum VLAN limit of 4096.

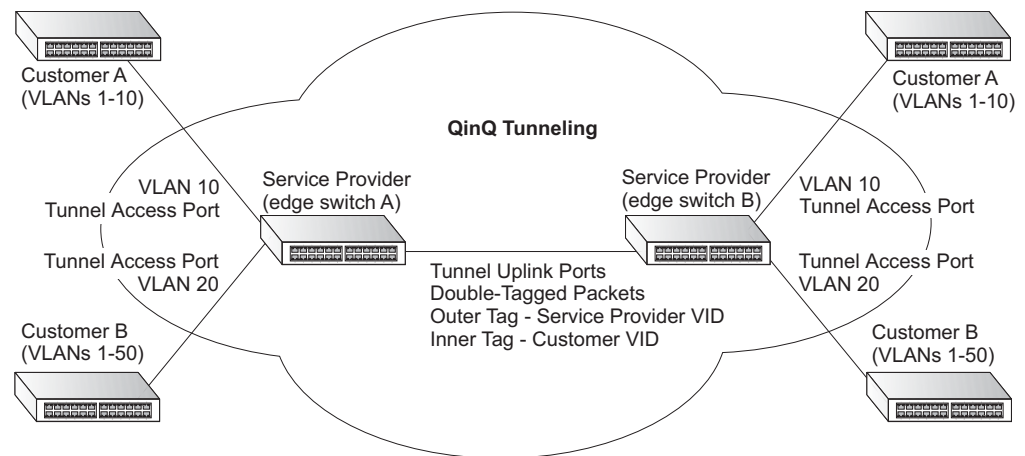
QinQ tunneling uses a single Service Provider VLAN (SPVLAN) for customers who have multiple VLANs. Customer VLAN IDs are preserved and traffic from different customers is segregated within the service provider's network even when they use the same customer-specific VLAN IDs. QinQ tunneling expands VLAN space by using a VLAN-in-VLAN hierarchy, preserving the customer's original tagged packets, and adding SPVLAN tags to each frame (also called double tagging).

A port configured to support QinQ tunneling must be set to tunnel port mode. The Service Provider VLAN (SPVLAN) ID for the specific customer must be assigned to the QinQ tunnel access port on the edge switch where the customer traffic enters the service provider's network. Each customer requires a separate SPVLAN, but this VLAN supports all of the customer's internal VLANs. The QinQ tunnel uplink port that passes traffic from the edge switch into the service provider's metro network must also be added to this SPVLAN. The uplink port can be added to multiple SPVLANs to carry inbound traffic for different customers onto the service provider's network.

When a double-tagged packet enters another trunk port in an intermediate or core switch in the service provider's network, the outer tag is stripped for packet processing. When the packet exits another trunk port on the same core switch, the same SPVLAN tag is again added to the packet.

When a packet enters the trunk port on the service provider's egress switch, the outer tag is again stripped for packet processing. However, the SPVLAN tag is not added when it is sent out the tunnel access port on the edge switch into the customer's network. The packet is sent as a normal IEEE 802.1Q-tagged frame, preserving the original VLAN numbers used in the customer's network.

**Figure 78: QinQ Operational Concept**



*Layer 2 Flow for Packets Coming into a Tunnel Access Port*

A QinQ tunnel port may receive either tagged or untagged packets. No matter how many tags the incoming packet has, it is treated as tagged packet.

The ingress process does source and destination lookups. If both lookups are successful, the ingress process writes the packet to memory. Then the egress process transmits the packet. Packets entering a QinQ tunnel port are processed in the following manner:

1. An SPVLAN tag is added to all outbound packets on the SPVLAN interface, no matter how many tags they already have. The switch constructs and inserts the outer tag (SPVLAN) into the packet based on the default VLAN ID and Tag Protocol Identifier (TPID, that is, the ether-type of the tag). The priority of the inner tag is copied to the outer tag if it is a tagged or priority tagged packet.
2. After successful source and destination lookup, the ingress process sends the packet to the switching process with two tags. If the incoming packet is untagged, the outer tag is an SPVLAN tag, and the inner tag is a dummy tag (8100 0000). If the incoming packet is tagged, the outer tag is an SPVLAN tag, and the inner tag is a CVLAN tag.

3. After packet classification through the switching process, the packet is written to memory with one tag (an outer tag) or with two tags (both an outer tag and inner tag).
4. The switch sends the packet to the proper egress port.
5. If the egress port is an untagged member of the SPVLAN, the outer tag will be stripped. If it is a tagged member, the outgoing packets will have two tags.

#### *Layer 2 Flow for Packets Coming into a Tunnel Uplink Port*

An uplink port receives one of the following packets:

- ◆ Untagged
- ◆ One tag (CVLAN or SPVLAN)
- ◆ Double tag (CVLAN + SPVLAN)

The ingress process does source and destination lookups. If both lookups are successful, the ingress process writes the packet to memory. Then the egress process transmits the packet. Packets entering a QinQ uplink port are processed in the following manner:

1. If incoming packets are untagged, the PVID VLAN native tag is added.
2. If the ether-type of an incoming packet (single or double tagged) is not equal to the TPID of the uplink port, the VLAN tag is determined to be a Customer VLAN (CVLAN) tag. The uplink port's PVID VLAN native tag is added to the packet. This outer tag is used for learning and switching packets within the service provider's network. The TPID must be configured on a per port basis, and the verification cannot be disabled.
3. If the ether-type of an incoming packet (single or double tagged) is equal to the TPID of the uplink port, no new VLAN tag is added. If the uplink port is not the member of the outer VLAN of the incoming packets, the packet will be dropped when ingress filtering is enabled. If ingress filtering is not enabled, the packet will still be forwarded. If the VLAN is not listed in the VLAN table, the packet will be dropped.
4. After successful source and destination lookups, the packet is double tagged. The switch uses the TPID of 0x8100 to indicate that an incoming packet is double-tagged. If the outer tag of an incoming double-tagged packet is equal to the port TPID and the inner tag is 0x8100, it is treated as a double-tagged packet. If a single-tagged packet has 0x8100 as its TPID, and port TPID is not 0x8100, a new VLAN tag is added and it is also treated as double-tagged packet.
5. If the destination address lookup fails, the packet is sent to all member ports of the outer tag's VLAN.

6. After packet classification, the packet is written to memory for processing as a single-tagged or double-tagged packet.
7. The switch sends the packet to the proper egress port.
8. If the egress port is an untagged member of the SPVLAN, the outer tag will be stripped. If it is a tagged member, the outgoing packet will have two tags.

#### *Configuration Limitations for QinQ*

- ◆ The native VLAN of uplink ports should not be used as the SPVLAN. If the SPVLAN is the uplink port's native VLAN, the uplink port must be an untagged member of the SPVLAN. Then the outer SPVLAN tag will be stripped when the packets are sent out. Another reason is that it causes non-customer packets to be forwarded to the SPVLAN.
- ◆ Static trunk port groups are compatible with QinQ tunnel ports as long as the QinQ configuration is consistent within a trunk port group.
- ◆ The native VLAN (VLAN 1) is not normally added to transmitted frames. Avoid using VLAN 1 as an SPVLAN tag for customer traffic to reduce the risk of misconfiguration. Instead, use VLAN 1 as a management VLAN instead of a data VLAN in the service provider network.
- ◆ There are some inherent incompatibilities between Layer 2 and Layer 3 switching:
  - Tunnel ports do not support IP Access Control Lists.
  - Layer 3 Quality of Service (QoS) and other QoS features containing Layer 3 information are not supported on tunnel ports.
  - Spanning tree bridge protocol data unit (BPDU) filtering is automatically disabled on a tunnel port.

#### *General Configuration Guidelines for QinQ*

1. Enable Tunnel Status, and set the Tag Protocol Identifier (TPID) value of the tunnel access port (in the Ethernet Type field). This step is required if the attached client is using a nonstandard 2-byte ethertype to identify 802.1Q tagged frames. The default ethertype value is 0x8100. (See [“Enabling QinQ Tunneling on the Switch” on page 160.](#))
2. Create a Service Provider VLAN, also referred to as an SPVLAN (see [“Configuring VLAN Groups” on page 149.](#))
3. Configure the QinQ tunnel access port to Access mode (see [“Adding an Interface to a QinQ Tunnel” on page 161.](#))
4. Configure the QinQ tunnel access port to join the SPVLAN as an untagged member (see [“Adding Static Members to VLANs” on page 152.](#))

5. Configure the SPVLAN ID as the native VID on the QinQ tunnel access port (see [“Adding Static Members to VLANs” on page 152](#)).
6. Configure the QinQ tunnel uplink port to Uplink mode (see [“Adding an Interface to a QinQ Tunnel” on page 161](#)).
7. Configure the QinQ tunnel uplink port to join the SPVLAN as a tagged member (see [“Adding Static Members to VLANs” on page 152](#)).

### Enabling QinQ Tunneling on the Switch

Use the VLAN > Tunnel (Configure Global) page to configure the switch to operate in IEEE 802.1Q (QinQ) tunneling mode, which is used for passing Layer 2 traffic across a service provider’s metropolitan area network. You can also globally set the Tag Protocol Identifier (TPID) value of the tunnel port if the attached client is using a nonstandard 2-byte ethertype to identify 802.1Q tagged frames.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Tunnel Status** – Sets the switch to QinQ mode. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Ethernet Type** – The Tag Protocol Identifier (TPID) specifies the ethertype of incoming packets on a tunnel port. (Range: hexadecimal 0800-FFFF; Default: 8100)

Use this field to set a custom 802.1Q ethertype value for the 802.1Q Tunnel TPID. This feature allows the switch to interoperate with third-party switches that do not use the standard 0x8100 ethertype to identify 802.1Q-tagged frames. For example, if 0x1234 is set as the custom 802.1Q ethertype on a trunk port, incoming frames containing that ethertype are assigned to the VLAN contained in the tag following the ethertype field, as they would be with a standard 802.1Q trunk. Frames arriving on the port containing any other ethertype are looked upon as untagged frames, and assigned to the native VLAN of that port.

The specified ethertype only applies to ports configured in Uplink mode (see [“Adding an Interface to a QinQ Tunnel” on page 161](#)). If the port is in normal mode, the TPID is always 8100. If the port is in Access mode, received packets are processed as untagged packets.

Avoid using well-known ethertypes for the TPID unless you can eliminate all side effects. For example, setting the TPID to 0800 hexadecimal (which is used for IPv4) will interfere with management access through the web interface.

#### Web Interface

To enable QinQ Tunneling on the switch:

1. Click VLAN, Tunnel.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.



3. Enable Tunnel Status, and specify the TPID if a client attached to a tunnel port is using a non-standard ethertype to identify 802.1Q tagged frames.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 79: Enabling QinQ Tunneling**

### Adding an Interface to a QinQ Tunnel

Follow the guidelines under in the preceding section to set up a QinQ tunnel on the switch. Then use the VLAN > Tunnel (Configure Interface) page to set the tunnel mode for any participating interface.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ Use the Configure Global page to set the switch to QinQ mode before configuring a tunnel access port or tunnel uplink port (see [“Enabling QinQ Tunneling on the Switch” on page 160](#)). Also set the Tag Protocol Identifier (TPID) value of the tunnel access port if the attached client is using a nonstandard 2-byte ethertype to identify 802.1Q tagged frames.
- ◆ Then use the Configure Interface page to set the access interface on the edge switch to Access mode, and set the uplink interface on the switch attached to the service provider network to Uplink mode.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

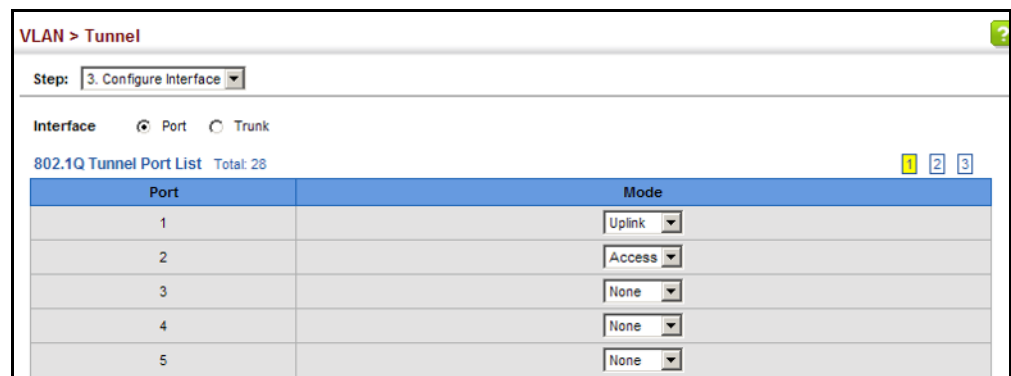
- ◆ **Interface** – Displays a list of ports or trunks.
- ◆ **Port** – Port Identifier. (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **Trunk** – Trunk Identifier. (Range: 1-8)
- ◆ **Mode** – Sets the VLAN membership mode of the port.
  - **None** – The port operates in its normal VLAN mode. (This is the default.)
  - **Access** – Configures QinQ tunneling for a client access port to segregate and preserve customer VLAN IDs for traffic crossing the service provider network.
  - **Uplink** – Configures QinQ tunneling for an uplink port to another device within the service provider network.

### Web Interface

To add an interface to a QinQ tunnel:

1. Click VLAN, Tunnel.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Set the mode for any tunnel access port to Access and the tunnel uplink port to Uplink.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 80: Adding an Interface to a QinQ Tunnel**



## Protocol VLANs

The network devices required to support multiple protocols cannot be easily grouped into a common VLAN. This may require non-standard devices to pass traffic between different VLANs in order to encompass all the devices participating in a specific protocol. This kind of configuration deprives users of the basic benefits of VLANs, including security and easy accessibility.

To avoid these problems, you can configure this switch with protocol-based VLANs that divide the physical network into logical VLAN groups for each required protocol. When a frame is received at a port, its VLAN membership can then be determined based on the protocol type being used by the inbound packets.

### Command Usage

◆ To configure protocol-based VLANs, follow these steps:

1. First configure VLAN groups for the protocols you want to use (see [“Configuring VLAN Groups” on page 149](#)). Although not mandatory, we suggest configuring a separate VLAN for each major protocol running on your network. Do not add port members at this time.

2. Create a protocol group for each of the protocols you want to assign to a VLAN using the Configure Protocol (Add) page.
  3. Then map the protocol for each interface to the appropriate VLAN using the Configure Interface (Add) page.
- ◆ When MAC-based, IP subnet-based, or protocol-based VLANs are supported concurrently, priority is applied in this sequence, and then port-based VLANs last.

## Configuring Protocol VLAN Groups

Use the VLAN > Protocol (Configure Protocol - Add) page to create protocol groups.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Frame Type** – Choose either Ethernet, RFC 1042, or LLC Other as the frame type used by this protocol.
- ◆ **Protocol Type** – Specifies the protocol type to match. The available options are IP, ARP, RARP and IPv6. If LLC Other is chosen for the Frame Type, the only available Protocol Type is IPX Raw.
- ◆ **Protocol Group ID** – Protocol Group ID assigned to the Protocol VLAN Group. (Range: 1-2147483647)



---

**Note:** Traffic which matches IP Protocol Ethernet Frames is mapped to the VLAN (VLAN 1) that has been configured with the switch's administrative IP. IP Protocol Ethernet traffic must not be mapped to another VLAN or you will lose administrative network connectivity to the switch. If lost in this manner, network access can be regained by removing the offending Protocol VLAN rule via the console. Alternately, the switch can be power-cycled, however all unsaved configuration changes will be lost.

---

### Web Interface

To configure a protocol group:

1. Click VLAN, Protocol.
2. Select Configure Protocol from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Select an entry from the Frame Type list.
5. Select an entry from the Protocol Type list.

6. Enter an identifier for the protocol group.
7. Click Apply.

**Figure 81: Configuring Protocol VLANs**

VLAN > Protocol

Step: 1. Configure Protocol Action: Add

Frame Type: Ethernet

Protocol Type: 08 06 (ARP)

Protocol Group ID (1-2147483647): 1

Apply Revert

To configure a protocol group:

1. Click VLAN, Protocol.
2. Select Configure Protocol from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 82: Displaying Protocol VLANs**

VLAN > Protocol

Step: 1. Configure Protocol Action: Show

Protocol to Group Mapping Table Total: 5

<input type="checkbox"/>	Frame Type	Protocol Type	Protocol Group ID
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ethernet	08 06	1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ethernet	80 35	2
<input type="checkbox"/>	RFC 1042	08 00	1
<input type="checkbox"/>	RFC 1042	80 35	3
<input type="checkbox"/>	LLC Other	FF FF	5

Delete Revert

## Configuring MAC-based VLANs

Use the VLAN > MAC-Based page to configure VLAN based on MAC addresses. The MAC-based VLAN feature assigns VLAN IDs to ingress untagged frames according to source MAC addresses.

When MAC-based VLAN classification is enabled, untagged frames received by a port are assigned to the VLAN which is mapped to the frame's source MAC address. When no MAC address is matched, untagged frames are assigned to the receiving port's native VLAN ID (PVID).

### Command Usage

- ◆ The MAC-to-VLAN mapping applies to all ports on the switch.
- ◆ Source MAC addresses can be mapped to only one VLAN ID.
- ◆ Configured MAC addresses cannot be broadcast or multicast addresses.
- ◆ When MAC-based, IP subnet-based, or protocol-based VLANs are supported concurrently, priority is applied in this sequence, and then port-based VLANs last.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **MAC Address** – A source MAC address which is to be mapped to a specific VLAN. The MAC address must be specified in the format xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx.
- ◆ **Mask** – Identifies a range of MAC addresses. (Range: 00-00-00-00-00-00 to ff-ff-ff-ff-ff-ff)  
  
The binary equivalent mask matching the characters in the front of the first non-zero character must all be 1s (e.g., 111, i.e., it cannot be 101 or 001...). A mask for the MAC address: 00-50-6e-00-5f-b1 translated into binary:  
  
MAC: 00000000-01010000-01101110-00000000-01011111-10110001  
could be: 11111111-11xxxxxx-xxxxxxxx-xxxxxxxx-xxxxxxxx-xxxxxxxx  
  
So the mask in hexadecimal for this example could be:  
ff-fx-xx-xx-xx-xx/ff-c0-00-00-00-00/ff-e0-00-00-00-00
- ◆ **VLAN** – VLAN to which ingress traffic matching the specified source MAC address is forwarded. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **Priority** – The priority assigned to untagged ingress traffic. (Range: 0-7, where 7 is the highest priority; Default: 0)

### Web Interface

To map a MAC address to a VLAN:

1. Click VLAN, MAC-Based.
2. Select Add from the Action list.
3. Enter an address in the MAC Address field, and a mask to indicate a range of addresses if required.
4. Enter an identifier in the VLAN field. Note that the specified VLAN need not already be configured.
5. Enter a value to assign to untagged frames in the Priority field.

6. Click Apply.

**Figure 83: Configuring MAC-Based VLANs**

VLAN > MAC-Based

Action: Add ▾

MAC Address  (xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx or xxxxxxxxxxxx)

Mask  (xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx or xxxxxxxxxxxx)

VLAN (1-4094)

Priority (0-7)

Apply Revert

To show the MAC addresses mapped to a VLAN:

1. Click VLAN, MAC-Based.
2. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 84: Showing MAC-Based VLANs**

VLAN > MAC-Based

Action: Show ▾

MAC-Based VLAN List Total: 1

<input type="checkbox"/>	MAC Address	Mask	VLAN	Priority
<input type="checkbox"/>	00-AB-CD-11-22-33	FF-FF-FF-FF-FF-FF	10	0

Delete Revert

# 6

## Address Table Settings

Switches store the addresses for all known devices. This information is used to pass traffic directly between the inbound and outbound ports. All the addresses learned by monitoring traffic are stored in the dynamic address table. You can also manually configure static addresses that are bound to a specific port.

This chapter describes the following topics:

- ◆ [Dynamic Address Cache](#) – Shows dynamic entries in the address table.
- ◆ [Address Aging Time](#) – Sets timeout for dynamically learned entries.
- ◆ [MAC Address Learning](#) – Enables or disables address learning on an interface.
- ◆ [Static MAC Addresses](#) – Configures static entries in the address table.
- ◆ [MAC Notification Traps](#) – Issue trap when a dynamic MAC address is added or removed.

---

### Displaying the Dynamic Address Table

Use the MAC Address > Dynamic (Show Dynamic MAC) page to display the MAC addresses learned by monitoring the source address for traffic entering the switch. When the destination address for inbound traffic is found in the database, the packets intended for that address are forwarded directly to the associated port. Otherwise, the traffic is flooded to all ports.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Sort Key** - You can sort the information displayed based on MAC address, VLAN or interface (port or trunk).
- ◆ **MAC Address** – Physical address associated with this interface.
- ◆ **VLAN** – ID of configured VLAN (1-4094).
- ◆ **Interface** – Indicates a port or trunk.
- ◆ **Type** – Shows that the entries in this table are learned.  
(Values: Learn or Security, the last of which indicates Port Security)

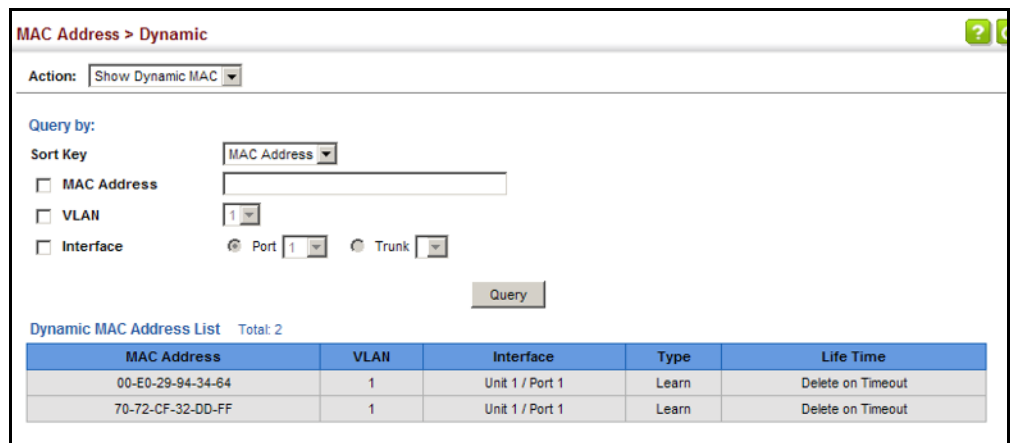
- ◆ **Life Time** – Shows the time to retain the specified address.

### Web Interface

To show the dynamic address table:

1. Click MAC Address, Dynamic.
2. Select Show Dynamic MAC from the Action list.
3. Select the Sort Key (MAC Address, VLAN, or Interface).
4. Enter the search parameters (MAC Address, VLAN, or Interface).
5. Click Query.

**Figure 85: Displaying the Dynamic MAC Address Table**



## Clearing the Dynamic Address Table

Use the MAC Address > Dynamic (Clear Dynamic MAC) page to remove any learned entries from the forwarding database.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Clear by** – All entries can be cleared; or you can clear the entries for a specific MAC address, all the entries in a VLAN, or all the entries associated with a port or trunk.

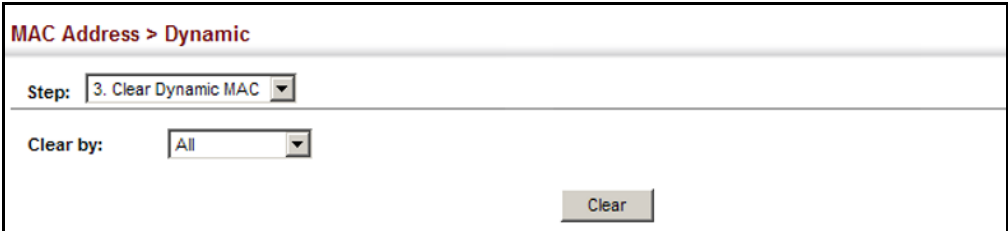


### Web Interface

To clear the entries in the dynamic address table:

1. Click MAC Address, Dynamic.
2. Select Clear Dynamic MAC from the Action list.
3. Select the method by which to clear the entries (i.e., All, MAC Address, VLAN, or Interface).
4. Enter information in the additional fields required for clearing entries by MAC Address, VLAN, or Interface.
5. Click Clear.

**Figure 86: Clearing Entries in the Dynamic MAC Address Table**



The screenshot shows a web interface for clearing dynamic MAC address table entries. At the top, it says "MAC Address > Dynamic". Below that, there is a "Step:" label followed by a dropdown menu showing "3. Clear Dynamic MAC". Underneath, there is a "Clear by:" label followed by a dropdown menu showing "All". A "Clear" button is located at the bottom right of the form area.

---

## Changing the Aging Time

Use the MAC Address > Dynamic (Configure Aging) page to set the aging time for entries in the dynamic address table. The aging time is used to age out dynamically learned forwarding information.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Aging Status** – Enables/disables the function.
- ◆ **Aging Time** – The time after which a learned entry is discarded. (Range: 6-7200 seconds; Default: 300 seconds)

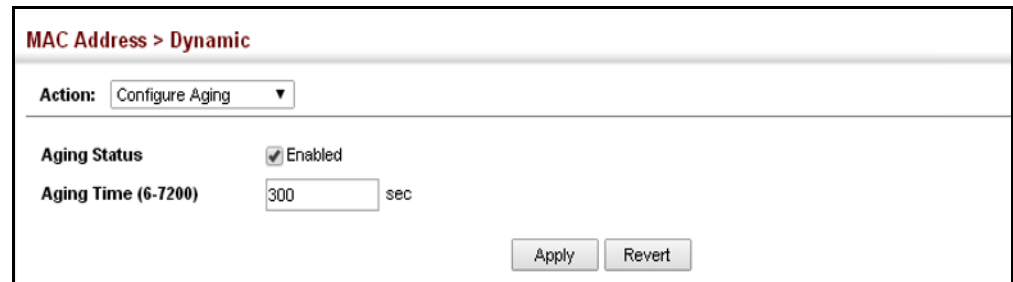
### Web Interface

To set the aging time for entries in the dynamic address table:

1. Click MAC Address, Dynamic.
2. Select Configure Aging from the Action list.
3. Modify the aging status if required.

4. Specify a new aging time.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 87: Setting the Address Aging Time**



The screenshot shows a configuration page titled "MAC Address > Dynamic". At the top, there is a dropdown menu for "Action" set to "Configure Aging". Below this, the "Aging Status" is checked and labeled "Enabled". The "Aging Time (6-7200)" is set to "300" with the unit "sec" to its right. At the bottom right of the form, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

---

## Configuring MAC Address Learning

Use the MAC Address > Learning Status page to enable or disable MAC address learning on an interface.

### Command Usage

- ◆ When MAC address learning is disabled, the switch immediately stops learning new MAC addresses on the specified interface. Only incoming traffic with source addresses stored in the static address table (see [“Setting Static Addresses” on page 172](#)) will be accepted as authorized to access the network through that interface.
- ◆ Dynamic addresses stored in the address table when MAC address learning is disabled are flushed from the system, and no dynamic addresses are subsequently learned until MAC address learning has been re-enabled. Any device not listed in the static address table that attempts to use the interface after MAC learning has been disabled will be prevented from accessing the switch.
- ◆ Also note that MAC address learning cannot be disabled if any of the following conditions exist:
  - 802.1X Port Authentication has been globally enabled on the switch (see [“Configuring 802.1X Global Settings” on page 298](#)).
  - Security Status (see [“Configuring Port Security” on page 294](#)) is enabled on the same interface.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

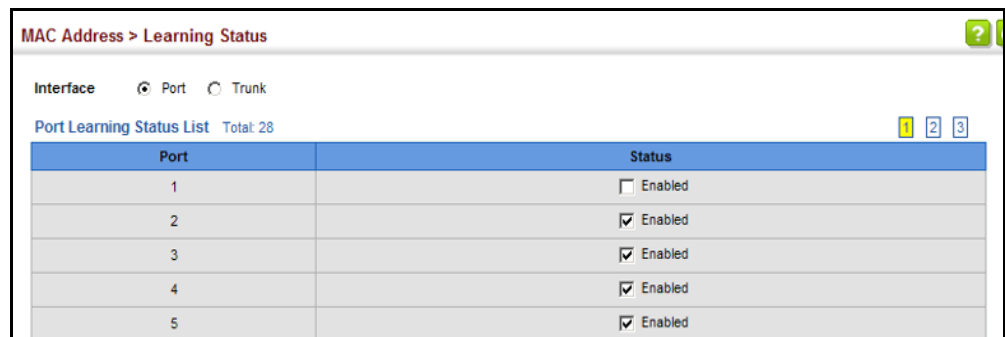
- ◆ **Interface** – Displays a list of ports or trunks.
- ◆ **Port** – Port Identifier. (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **Trunk** – Trunk Identifier. (Range: 1-8)
- ◆ **Status** – The status of MAC address learning. (Default: Enabled)

### Web Interface

To enable or disable MAC address learning:

1. Click MAC Address, Learning Status.
2. Set the learning status for any interface.
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 88: Configuring MAC Address Learning**



The screenshot shows the 'MAC Address > Learning Status' web interface. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'MAC Address > Learning Status' and a help icon. Below this, there are radio buttons for 'Interface' with 'Port' selected and 'Trunk' unselected. A 'Port Learning Status List' is displayed with a 'Total: 28' and pagination controls (1, 2, 3). The table has two columns: 'Port' and 'Status'. The 'Status' column contains a checkbox and the text 'Enabled'.

Port	Status
1	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled

## Setting Static Addresses

Use the MAC Address > Static page to configure static MAC addresses. A static address can be assigned to a specific interface on this switch. Static addresses are bound to the assigned interface and will not be moved. When a static address is seen on another interface, the address will be ignored and will not be written to the address table.

### Command Usage

The static address for a host device can be assigned to a specific port within a specific VLAN. Use this command to add static addresses to the MAC Address Table. Static addresses have the following characteristics:

- ◆ Static addresses are bound to the assigned interface and will not be moved. When a static address is seen on another interface, the address will be ignored and will not be written to the address table.
- ◆ Static addresses will not be removed from the address table when a given interface link is down.
- ◆ A static address cannot be learned on another port until the address is removed from the table.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### *Add Static Address*

- ◆ **VLAN** – ID of configured VLAN. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **Interface** – Port or trunk associated with the device assigned a static address.
- ◆ **MAC Address** – Physical address of a device mapped to this interface. Enter an address in the form of xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx or xxxxxxxxxxxx.
- ◆ **Static Status** – Sets the time to retain the specified address.
  - Delete-on-reset - Assignment lasts until the switch is reset.
  - Permanent - Assignment is permanent. (This is the default.)

#### *Show Static Address*

The following additional fields are displayed on this web page:

**Type** – Displays the address configuration method. (Values: CPU, Config, or Security, the last of which indicates Port Security)

**Life Time** – The duration for which this entry applies. (Values: Delete On Reset, Permanent)

### Web Interface

To configure a static MAC address:

1. Click MAC Address, Static.
2. Select Add from the Action list.
3. Specify the VLAN, the port or trunk to which the address will be assigned, the MAC address, and the time to retain this entry.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 89: Configuring Static MAC Addresses**

To show the static addresses in MAC address table:

1. Click MAC Address, Static.
2. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 90: Displaying Static MAC Addresses**

<input type="checkbox"/>	MAC Address	VLAN	Interface	Type	Life Time
<input type="checkbox"/>	00-00-0C-00-00-FD	1	CPU	CPU	Delete on Reset
<input type="checkbox"/>	00-12-CF-94-34-DA	1	Unit 1 / Port 1	Config	Permanent

## Issuing MAC Address Traps

Use the MAC Address > MAC Notification pages to send SNMP traps (i.e., SNMP notifications) when a dynamic MAC address is added or removed.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### Configure Global

- ◆ **MAC Notification Traps** – Issues a trap when a dynamic MAC address is added or removed. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **MAC Notification Trap Interval** – Specifies the interval between issuing two consecutive traps. (Range: 1-3600 seconds; Default: 1 second)

#### Configure Interface

- ◆ **Port** – Port Identifier. (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **MAC Notification Trap** – Enables MAC authentication traps on the current interface. (Default: Disabled)

MAC authentication traps must be enabled at the global level for this attribute to take effect.

### Web Interface

To enable MAC address traps at the global level:

1. Click MAC Address, MAC Notification.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Configure MAC notification traps and the transmission interval.
4. Click Apply.

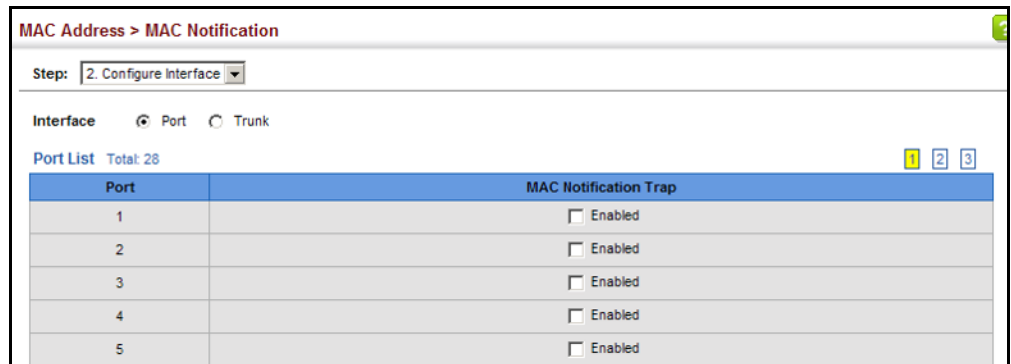
**Figure 91: Issuing MAC Address Traps** (Global Configuration)

The screenshot shows the 'MAC Address > MAC Notification' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail 'MAC Address > MAC Notification'. Below it, a 'Step:' dropdown menu is set to '1. Configure Global'. The main configuration area contains two settings: 'MAC Notification Traps' with an unchecked checkbox labeled 'Enabled', and 'MAC Notification Trap Interval (1-3600)' with a text input field containing the value '1' followed by 'sec'. At the bottom right of the configuration area, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

To enable MAC address traps at the interface level:

1. Click MAC Address, MAC Notification.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Enable MAC notification traps for the required ports.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 92: Issuing MAC Address Traps (Interface Configuration)**







# 7

## Spanning Tree Algorithm

This chapter describes the following basic topics:

- ◆ [Loopback Detection](#) – Configures detection and response to loopback BPDUs.
- ◆ [Global Settings for STA](#) – Configures global bridge settings for STP, RSTP and MSTP.
- ◆ [Interface Settings for STA](#) – Configures interface settings for STA, including priority, path cost, link type, and designation as an edge port.
- ◆ [Global Settings for MSTP](#) – Sets the VLANs and associated priority assigned to an MST instance
- ◆ [Interface Settings for MSTP](#) – Configures interface settings for MSTP, including priority and path cost.

---

### Overview

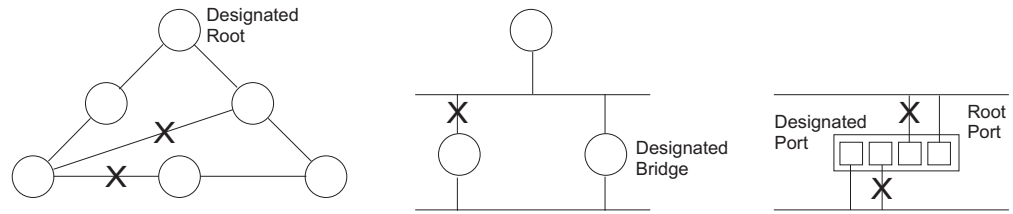
The Spanning Tree Algorithm (STA) can be used to detect and disable network loops, and to provide backup links between switches, bridges or routers. This allows the switch to interact with other bridging devices (that is, an STA-compliant switch, bridge or router) in your network to ensure that only one route exists between any two stations on the network, and provide backup links which automatically take over when a primary link goes down.

The spanning tree algorithms supported by this switch include these versions:

- ◆ STP – Spanning Tree Protocol (IEEE 802.1D)
- ◆ RSTP – Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (IEEE 802.1w)
- ◆ MSTP – Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (IEEE 802.1s)

**STP** – STP uses a distributed algorithm to select a bridging device (STP-compliant switch, bridge or router) that serves as the root of the spanning tree network. It selects a root port on each bridging device (except for the root device) which incurs the lowest path cost when forwarding a packet from that device to the root device. Then it selects a designated bridging device from each LAN which incurs the lowest path cost when forwarding a packet from that LAN to the root device. All ports connected to designated bridging devices are assigned as designated ports. After determining the lowest cost spanning tree, it enables all root ports and designated ports, and disables all other ports. Network packets are therefore only forwarded between root ports and designated ports, eliminating any possible network loops.

**Figure 93: STP Root Ports and Designated Ports**

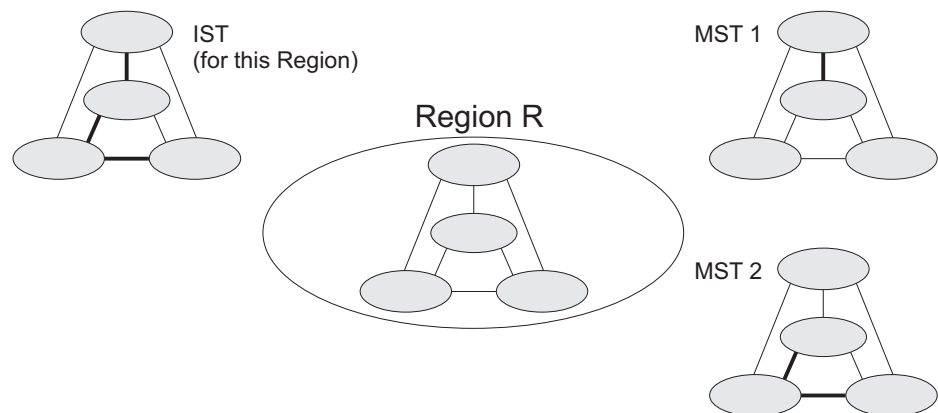


Once a stable network topology has been established, all bridges listen for Hello BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) transmitted from the Root Bridge. If a bridge does not get a Hello BPDU after a predefined interval (Maximum Age), the bridge assumes that the link to the Root Bridge is down. This bridge will then initiate negotiations with other bridges to reconfigure the network to reestablish a valid network topology.

**RSTP** – RSTP is designed as a general replacement for the slower, legacy STP. RSTP is also incorporated into MSTP. RSTP achieves much faster reconfiguration (i.e., around 1 to 3 seconds, compared to 30 seconds or more for STP) by reducing the number of state changes before active ports start learning, predefining an alternate route that can be used when a node or port fails, and retaining the forwarding database for ports insensitive to changes in the tree structure when reconfiguration occurs.

**MSTP** – Using multiple spanning trees can provide multiple forwarding paths and enable load balancing. One or more VLANs can be grouped into a Multiple Spanning Tree Instance (MSTI). MSTP builds a separate Multiple Spanning Tree (MST) for each instance to maintain connectivity among each of the assigned VLAN groups. MSTP then builds an Internal Spanning Tree (IST) for the Region containing all commonly configured MSTP bridges.

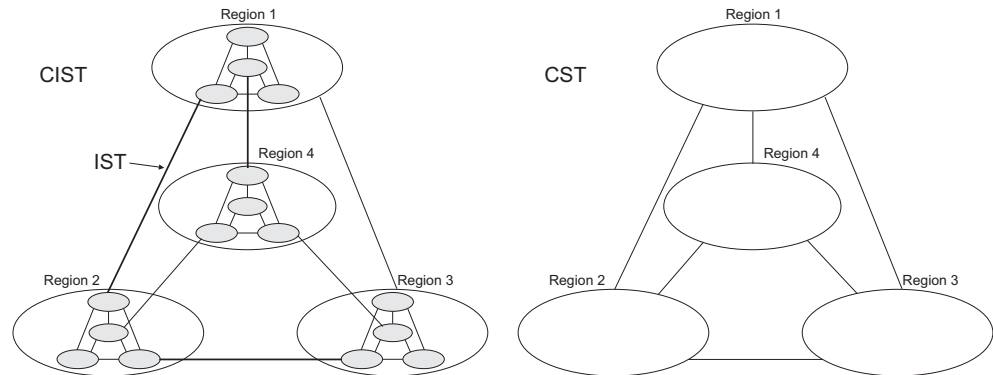
**Figure 94: MSTP Region, Internal Spanning Tree, Multiple Spanning Tree**



An MST Region consists of a group of interconnected bridges that have the same MST Configuration Identifiers (including the Region Name, Revision Level and Configuration Digest – see [“Configuring Multiple Spanning Trees” on page 195](#)). An MST Region may contain multiple MSTP Instances. An Internal Spanning Tree (IST) is used to connect all the MSTP switches within an MST region. A Common

Spanning Tree (CST) interconnects all adjacent MST Regions, and acts as a virtual bridge node for communications with STP or RSTP nodes in the global network.

**Figure 95: Spanning Tree – Common Internal, Common, Internal**



MSTP connects all bridges and LAN segments with a single Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST). The CIST is formed as a result of the running spanning tree algorithm between switches that support the STP, RSTP, MSTP protocols.

Once you specify the VLANs to include in a Multiple Spanning Tree Instance (MSTI), the protocol will automatically build an MSTI tree to maintain connectivity among each of the VLANs. MSTP maintains contact with the global network because each instance is treated as an RSTP node in the Common Spanning Tree (CST).

## Configuring Loopback Detection

Use the Spanning Tree > Loopback Detection page to configure loopback detection on an interface. When loopback detection is enabled and a port or trunk receives its own BPDU, the detection agent drops the loopback BPDU, sends an SNMP trap, and places the interface in discarding mode. This loopback state can be released manually or automatically. If the interface is configured for automatic loopback release, then the port will only be returned to the forwarding state if one of the following conditions is satisfied:

- ◆ The interface receives any other BPDU except for its own, or;
- ◆ The interface's link status changes to link down and then link up again, or;
- ◆ The interface ceases to receive its own BPDUs in a forward delay interval.



**Note:** If loopback detection is not enabled and an interface receives its own BPDU, then the interface will drop the loopback BPDU according to IEEE Standard 802.1w-2001 9.3.4 (Note 1).

**Note:** Loopback detection will not be active if Spanning Tree is disabled on the switch.

**Note:** When configured for manual release mode, then a link down/up event will not release the port from the discarding state.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Interface** – Displays a list of ports or trunks.
- ◆ **Status** – Enables loopback detection on this interface. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Trap** – Enables SNMP trap notification for loopback events on this interface. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Release Mode** – Configures the interface for automatic or manual loopback release. (Default: Auto)
- ◆ **Release** – Allows an interface to be manually released from discard mode. This is only available if the interface is configured for manual release mode.
- ◆ **Action** – Sets the response for loopback detection to shut down the interface. (Default: Shutdown)
- ◆ **Shutdown Interval** – The duration to shut down the interface. (Range: 60-86400 seconds; Default: 60 seconds)

If an interface is shut down due to a detected loopback, and the release mode is set to “Auto,” the selected interface will be automatically enabled when the shutdown interval has expired.

If an interface is shut down due to a detected loopback, and the release mode is set to “Manual,” the interface can be re-enabled using the Release button.

### Web Interface

To configure loopback detection:

1. Click Spanning Tree, Loopback Detection.
2. Click Port or Trunk to display the required interface type.
3. Modify the required loopback detection attributes.
4. Click Apply

**Figure 96: Configuring Port Loopback Detection**

Port	Status	Trap	Release Mode	Release	Action	Shutdown Interval (60-86400 sec)
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Auto	Release	Block	
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Auto	Release	Block	
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Auto	Release	Block	
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Auto	Release	Block	
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Manual	Release	Shutdown	60

## Configuring Global Settings for STA

Use the Spanning Tree > STA (Configure Global - Configure) page to configure global settings for the spanning tree that apply to the entire switch.

### Command Usage

- ◆ Spanning Tree Protocol<sup>3</sup>
- ◆ This option uses RSTP set to STP forced compatibility mode. It uses RSTP for the internal state machine, but sends only 802.1D BPDUs. Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol<sup>3</sup>

RSTP supports connections to either STP or RSTP nodes by monitoring the incoming protocol messages and dynamically adjusting the type of protocol messages the RSTP node transmits, as described below:

- STP Mode – If the switch receives an 802.1D BPDU (i.e., STP BPDU) after a port’s migration delay timer expires, the switch assumes it is connected to an 802.1D bridge and starts using only 802.1D BPDUs.
- RSTP Mode – If RSTP is using 802.1D BPDUs on a port and receives an RSTP BPDU after the migration delay expires, RSTP restarts the migration delay timer and begins using RSTP BPDUs on that port.

- ◆ Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol

MSTP generates a unique spanning tree for each instance. This provides multiple pathways across the network, thereby balancing the traffic load, preventing wide-scale disruption when a bridge node in a single instance fails, and allowing for faster convergence of a new topology for the failed instance.

- To allow multiple spanning trees to operate over the network, you must configure a related set of bridges with the same MSTP configuration, allowing them to participate in a specific set of spanning tree instances.

3. STP and RSTP BPDUs are transmitted as untagged frames, and will cross any VLAN boundaries.

- A spanning tree instance can exist only on bridges that have compatible VLAN instance assignments.
- Be careful when switching between spanning tree modes. Changing modes stops all spanning-tree instances for the previous mode and restarts the system in the new mode, temporarily disrupting user traffic.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### *Basic Configuration of Global Settings*

- ◆ **Spanning Tree Status** – Enables/disables STA on the switch. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Spanning Tree Type** – Specifies the type of spanning tree used on the switch:
  - **STP:** Spanning Tree Protocol (IEEE 802.1D); i.e., when this option is selected, the switch will use RSTP set to STP forced compatibility mode).
  - **RSTP:** Rapid Spanning Tree (IEEE 802.1w); RSTP is the default.
  - **MSTP:** Multiple Spanning Tree (IEEE 802.1s)
- ◆ **Priority** – Bridge priority is used in selecting the root device, root port, and designated port. The device with the highest priority becomes the STA root device. However, if all devices have the same priority, the device with the lowest MAC address will then become the root device. (Note that lower numeric values indicate higher priority.)
  - Default: 32768
  - Range: 0-61440, in steps of 4096
  - Options: 0, 4096, 8192, 12288, 16384, 20480, 24576, 28672, 32768, 36864, 40960, 45056, 49152, 53248, 57344, 61440
- ◆ **BPDU Flooding** – Configures the system to flood BPDUs to all other ports on the switch or just to all other ports in the same VLAN when spanning tree is disabled globally on the switch or disabled on a specific port.
  - To VLAN: Floods BPDUs to all other ports within the receiving port's native VLAN (i.e., as determined by port's PVID). This is the default.
  - To All: Floods BPDUs to all other ports on the switch.

The setting has no effect if BPDU flooding is disabled on a port (see ["Configuring Interface Settings for STA"](#)).
- ◆ **Cisco Prestandard Status** – Configures spanning tree operation to be compatible with Cisco prestandard versions. (Default: Disabled)

Cisco prestandard versions prior to Cisco IOS Release 12.2(25)SEC do not fully follow the IEEE standard, causing some state machine procedures to function incorrectly. This command forces the spanning tree protocol to function in a manner compatible with Cisco prestandard versions.

### *Advanced Configuration Settings*

The following attributes are based on RSTP, but also apply to STP since the switch uses a backwards-compatible subset of RSTP to implement STP, and also apply to MSTP which is based on RSTP according to the standard:

- ◆ **Path Cost Method** – The path cost is used to determine the best path between devices. The path cost method is used to determine the range of values that can be assigned to each interface.
  - Long: Specifies 32-bit based values that range from 1-200,000,000. (This is the default.)
  - Short: Specifies 16-bit based values that range from 1-65535.
- ◆ **Transmission Limit** – The maximum transmission rate for BPDUs is specified by setting the minimum interval between the transmission of consecutive protocol messages. (Range: 1-10; Default: 3)

### *When the Switch Becomes Root*

- ◆ **Hello Time** – Interval (in seconds) at which the root device transmits a configuration message.
  - Default: 2
  - Minimum: 1
  - Maximum: The lower of 10 or  $[(\text{Max. Message Age} / 2) - 1]$
- ◆ **Maximum Age** – The maximum time (in seconds) a device can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconverge. All device ports (except for designated ports) should receive configuration messages at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STA information (provided in the last configuration message) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the device ports attached to the network. (References to “ports” in this section mean “interfaces,” which includes both ports and trunks.)
  - Default: 20
  - Minimum: The higher of 6 or  $[2 \times (\text{Hello Time} + 1)]$
  - Maximum: The lower of 40 or  $[2 \times (\text{Forward Delay} - 1)]$
- ◆ **Forward Delay** – The maximum time (in seconds) this device will wait before changing states (i.e., discarding to learning to forwarding). This delay is required because every device must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a discarding state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result.
  - Default: 15
  - Minimum: The higher of 4 or  $[(\text{Max. Message Age} / 2) + 1]$
  - Maximum: 30

RSTP does not depend on the forward delay timer in most cases. It is able to confirm that a port can transition to the forwarding state without having to rely on any timer configuration. To achieve fast convergence, RSTP relies on the use of edge ports, and automatic detection of point-to-point link types, both of which allow a port to directly transition to the forwarding state.

#### *Configuration Settings for MSTP*

- ◆ **Max Instance Numbers** – The maximum number of MSTP instances to which this switch can be assigned.
- ◆ **Configuration Digest** – This is a system calculated parameter that is an indication of MSTP re-convergence. When ever the MSTP protocol is re-converged this parameter is recalculated by the switch.
- ◆ **Region Revision** – The revision for this MSTI. (Range: 0-65535; Default: 0)
- ◆ **Region Name** – The name for this MSTI. (Maximum length: 32 characters; Default: switch's MAC address)
- ◆ **Max Hop Count** – The maximum number of hops allowed in the MST region before a BPDU is discarded. (Range: 1-40; Default: 20)



**NOTE:** Region Revision and Region Name and are both required to uniquely identify an MST region.

---

#### **Web Interface**

To configure global STA settings:

1. Click Spanning Tree, STA.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Select Configure from the Action list.
4. Modify any of the required attributes. Note that the parameters displayed for the spanning tree types (STP, RSTP, MSTP) varies as described in the preceding section.
5. Click Apply



Figure 97: Configuring Global Settings for STA (STP)

Spanning Tree > STA

Step: 1. Configure Global Action: Configure

Spanning Tree Status  Enabled

Spanning Tree Type STP

Priority (0-61440, in steps of 4096) 32768

BPDU Flooding To VLAN

Cisco Prestandard Status  Enabled

Advanced:

Path Cost Method Long

Transmission Limit (1-10) 3

When the Switch Becomes Root:

Hello Time (1-10) 2 sec

Maximum Age (6-40) 20 sec

Forward Delay (4-30) 15 sec

Note:  $2 * (\text{Hello Time} + 1) \leq \text{Max Age} \leq 2 * (\text{Forward Delay} - 1)$

Apply Revert

Figure 98: Configuring Global Settings for STA (RSTP)

Spanning Tree > STA

Step: 1. Configure Global Action: Configure

Spanning Tree Status  Enabled

Spanning Tree Type RSTP

Priority (0-61440, in steps of 4096) 32768

BPDU Flooding To VLAN

Cisco Prestandard Status  Enabled

Advanced:

Path Cost Method Long

Transmission Limit (1-10) 3

When the Switch Becomes Root:

Hello Time (1-10) 2 sec

Maximum Age (6-40) 20 sec

Forward Delay (4-30) 15 sec

Note:  $2 * (\text{Hello Time} + 1) \leq \text{Max Age} \leq 2 * (\text{Forward Delay} - 1)$

Apply Revert

Figure 99: Configuring Global Settings for STA (MSTP)

The screenshot shows the 'Spanning Tree > STA' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'Spanning Tree > STA'. Below it, a 'Step' dropdown is set to '1. Configure Global' and an 'Action' dropdown is set to 'Configure'. The main configuration area is divided into several sections:

- Spanning Tree Status:** 'Spanning Tree Status' is checked 'Enabled'. 'Spanning Tree Type' is set to 'MSTP'. 'Priority (0-61440, in steps of 4096)' is set to '32768'. 'BPDU Flooding' is set to 'To VLAN'. 'Cisco Prestandard Status' is unchecked.
- Advanced:** 'Path Cost Method' is set to 'Long'. 'Transmission Limit (1-10)' is set to '3'.
- When the Switch Becomes Root:** 'Hello Time (1-10)' is set to '2' sec. 'Maximum Age (6-40)' is set to '20' sec. 'Forward Delay (4-30)' is set to '15' sec.
- Note:**  $2 * (\text{Hello Time} + 1) \leq \text{Max Age} \leq 2 * (\text{Forward Delay} - 1)$
- MSTP Configuration:** 'Max Instance Numbers' is set to '64'. 'Configuration Digest' is '0xAC36177F50283CD4B83821D8AB26DE62'. 'Region Revision (0-65535)' is set to '0'. 'Region Name' is '00 E0 0C 00 00 FD'. 'Max Hop Count (1-40)' is set to '20'.

At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons.

## Displaying Global Settings for STA

Use the Spanning Tree > STA (Configure Global - Show Information) page to display a summary of the current bridge STA information that applies to the entire switch.

### Parameters

The parameters displayed are described in the preceding section, except for the following items:

- ◆ **Bridge ID** – A unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of the bridge priority, the MST Instance ID 0 for the Common Spanning Tree when spanning tree type is set to MSTP, and MAC address (where the address is taken from the switch system).
- ◆ **Designated Root** – The priority and MAC address of the device in the Spanning Tree that this switch has accepted as the root device.
- ◆ **Root Port** – The number of the port on this switch that is closest to the root. This switch communicates with the root device through this port. If there is no root port, then this switch has been accepted as the root device of the Spanning Tree network.

- ◆ **Root Path Cost** – The path cost from the root port on this switch to the root device.
- ◆ **Topology Changes** – The number of times the Spanning Tree has been reconfigured.



**Note:** When showing the Global Settings for MSTP in the web interface, “**Topology Changes**” is shown as parameter “**Configuration Changes**”.

- ◆ **Last Topology Change** – Time since the Spanning Tree was last reconfigured.

### Web Interface

To display global STA settings:

1. Click Spanning Tree, STA.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Select Show Information from the Action list.

**Figure 100: Displaying Global Settings for STA**

The screenshot shows the 'Spanning Tree > STA' configuration page. At the top, there are two dropdown menus: 'Step: 1. Configure Global' and 'Action: Show Information'. Below this, the 'Spanning Tree Information' section displays the following settings:

<b>Spanning Tree Status</b>	Enabled	<b>Spanning Tree Type</b>	RSTP
<b>Designated Root</b>	32768.0000E89382A0	<b>Bridge ID</b>	32768.0000E89382A0
<b>Root Port</b>	0	<b>Max Age</b>	20 sec
<b>Root Path Cost</b>	0	<b>Hello Time</b>	2 sec
<b>Topology Changes</b>	2	<b>Forward Delay</b>	15 sec
<b>Last Topology Change</b>	0 days, 3 hours, 51 minutes, 11 seconds		

## Configuring Interface Settings for STA

Use the Spanning Tree > STA (Configure Interface - Configure) page to configure RSTP and MSTP attributes for specific interfaces, including port priority, path cost, link type, and edge port. You may use a different priority or path cost for ports of the same media type to indicate the preferred path, link type to indicate a point-to-point connection or shared-media connection, and edge port to indicate if the attached device can support fast forwarding. (References to “ports” in this section means “interfaces,” which includes both ports and trunks.)

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Interface** – Displays a list of ports or trunks.
- ◆ **Spanning Tree** – Enables/disables STA on this interface. (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **BPDU Flooding** - Enables/disables the flooding of BPDUs to other ports when global spanning tree is disabled (page 181) or when spanning tree is disabled on a specific port. When flooding is enabled, BPDUs are flooded to all other ports on the switch or to all other ports within the receiving port’s native VLAN as specified by the Spanning Tree BPDU Flooding attribute (page 181). (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **Priority** – Defines the priority used for this port in the Spanning Tree Protocol. If the path cost for all ports on a switch are the same, the port with the highest priority (i.e., lowest value) will be configured as an active link in the Spanning Tree. This makes a port with higher priority less likely to be blocked if the Spanning Tree Protocol is detecting network loops. Where more than one port is assigned the highest priority, the port with lowest numeric identifier will be enabled.
  - Default: 128
  - Range: 0-240, in steps of 16
- ◆ **Admin Path Cost** – This parameter is used by the STA to determine the best path between devices. Therefore, lower values should be assigned to ports attached to faster media, and higher values assigned to ports with slower media. Note that path cost takes precedence over port priority. (Range: 0 for auto-configuration, 1-65535 for the short path cost method<sup>4</sup>, 1-200,000,000 for the long path cost method)

By default, the system automatically detects the speed and duplex mode used on each port, and configures the path cost according to the values shown below. Path cost “0” is used to indicate auto-configuration mode. When the short path cost method is selected and the default path cost recommended by the IEEE 8021w standard exceeds 65,535, the default is set to 65,535.

**Table 8: Recommended STA Path Cost Range**

Port Type	IEEE 802.1D-1998	IEEE 802.1w-2001
Ethernet	50-600	200,000-20,000,000
Fast Ethernet	10-60	20,000-2,000,000
Gigabit Ethernet	3-10	2,000-200,000
10G Ethernet	1-5	200-20,000

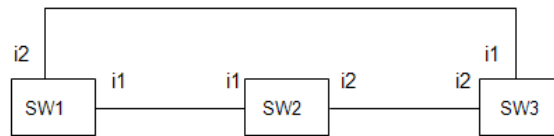
4. Refer to “Configuring Global Settings for STA” on page 181 for information on setting the path cost method. The range displayed on the STA interface configuration page shows the maximum value for path cost. However, note that the switch still enforces the rules for path cost based on the specified path cost method (long or short)

**Table 9: Default STA Path Costs**

Port Type	Short Path Cost (IEEE 802.1D-1998)	Long Path Cost (IEEE 802.1D-2004)
Ethernet	65,535	1,000,000
Fast Ethernet	65,535	100,000
Gigabit Ethernet	10,000	10,000
10G Ethernet	1,000	1,000

Administrative path cost cannot be used to directly determine the root port on a switch. Connections to other devices use IEEE 802.1Q-2005 to determine the root port as in the following example.

**Figure 101: Determining the Root Port**



For BPDUs received by i1 on SW3, the path cost is 0.

For BPDUs received by i2 on SW3, the path cost is that of i1 on SW2.

The root path cost for i1 on SW3 used to compete for the role of root port is 0 + path cost of i1 on SW3; 0 since i1 is directly connected to the root bridge.

If the path cost of i1 on SW2 is never configured/changed, it is 10000.

Then the root path cost for i2 on SW3 used to compete for the role of root port is 10000 + path cost of i2 on SW3.

The path cost of i1 on SW3 is also 10000 if not configured/changed.

Then even if the path cost of i2 on SW3 is configured/changed to 0, these ports will still have the same root path cost, and it will be impossible for i2 to become the root port just by changing its path cost on SW3.

For RSTP mode, the root port can be determined simply by adjusting the path cost of i1 on SW2. However, for MSTP mode, it is impossible to achieve this only by changing the path cost because external path cost is not added in the same region, and the regional root for i1 is SW1, but for i2 is SW2.

- ◆ **Admin Link Type** – The link type attached to this interface.
  - Point-to-Point – A connection to exactly one other bridge.
  - Shared – A connection to two or more bridges.
  - Auto – The switch automatically determines if the interface is attached to a point-to-point link or to shared media. (This is the default setting.)
  
- ◆ **Root Guard** – STA allows a bridge with a lower bridge identifier (or same identifier and lower MAC address) to take over as the root bridge at any time. Root Guard can be used to ensure that the root bridge is not formed at a suboptimal location. Root Guard should be enabled on any designated port connected to low-speed bridges which could potentially overload a slower link

by taking over as the root port and forming a new spanning tree topology. It could also be used to form a border around part of the network where the root bridge is allowed. (Default: Disabled)

- ◆ **Admin Edge Port** – Since end nodes **cannot** cause forwarding loops, they can pass directly through to the spanning tree forwarding state. Specifying Edge Ports provides quicker convergence for devices such as workstations or servers, retains the current forwarding database to reduce the amount of frame flooding required to rebuild address tables during reconfiguration events, does not cause the spanning tree to initiate reconfiguration when the interface changes state, and also overcomes other STA-related timeout problems. However, remember that Edge Port should only be enabled for ports connected to an end-node device. (Default: Auto)
  - **Enabled** – Manually configures a port as an Edge Port.
  - **Disabled** – Disables the Edge Port setting.
  - **Auto** – The port will be automatically configured as an edge port if the edge delay time expires without receiving any RSTP or MSTP BPDUs. Note that edge delay time (802.1D-2004 17.20.4) equals the protocol migration time if a port's link type is point-to-point (which is 3 seconds as defined in IEEE 802.3D-2004 17.20.4); otherwise it equals the spanning tree's maximum age for configuration messages (see maximum age under [“Configuring Global Settings for STA” on page 181](#)).

An interface cannot function as an edge port under the following conditions:

- If spanning tree mode is set to STP ([page 181](#)), edge-port mode cannot automatically transition to operational edge-port state using the automatic setting.
- If loopback detection is enabled ([page 179](#)) and a loopback BPDU is detected, the interface cannot function as an edge port until the loopback state is released.
- If an interface is in forwarding state and its role changes, the interface cannot continue to function as an edge port even if the edge delay time has expired.
- If the port does not receive any BPDUs after the edge delay timer expires, its role changes to designated port and it immediately enters forwarding state (see [“Displaying Interface Settings for STA” on page 192](#)).

When edge port is set as auto, the operational state is determined automatically by the Bridge Detection State Machine described in 802.1D-2004, where the edge port state may change dynamically based on environment changes (e.g., receiving a BPDU or not within the required interval).

- ◆ **BPDU Guard** – This feature protects edge ports from receiving BPDUs. It prevents loops by shutting down an edge port when a BPDU is received instead of putting it into the spanning tree discarding state. In a valid configuration,

configured edge ports should not receive BPDUs. If an edge port receives a BPDU an invalid configuration exists, such as a connection to an unauthorized device. The BPDU guard feature provides a secure response to invalid configurations because an administrator must manually enable the port. (Default: Disabled)

BPDU guard can only be configured on an interface if the edge port attribute is not disabled (that is, if edge port is set to enabled or auto).

- ◆ **BPDU Guard Auto Recovery** – Automatically re-enables an interface after the specified interval. (Range: Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **BPDU Guard Auto Recovery Interval** – The time to wait before re-enabling an interface. (Range: 30-86400 seconds; Default: 300 seconds)
- ◆ **BPDU Filter** – BPDU filtering allows you to avoid transmitting BPDUs on configured edge ports that are connected to end nodes. By default, STA sends BPDUs to all ports regardless of whether administrative edge is enabled on a port. BPDU filtering is configured on a per-port basis. (Default: Disabled)  
BPDU filter can only be configured on an interface if the edge port attribute is not disabled (that is, if edge port is set to enabled or auto).
- ◆ **Migration** – If at any time the switch detects STP BPDUs, including Configuration or Topology Change Notification BPDUs, it will automatically set the selected interface to forced STP-compatible mode. However, you can also use the Protocol Migration button to manually re-check the appropriate BPDU format (RSTP or STP-compatible) to send on the selected interfaces. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **TC Propagate Stop** – Stops the propagation of topology change notifications (TCN). (Default: Disabled)

### Web Interface

To configure interface settings for STA:

1. Click Spanning Tree, STA.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select Configure from the Action list.
4. Modify any of the required attributes.
5. Click Apply.

Figure 102: Configuring Interface Settings for STA

The screenshot shows the 'Spanning Tree > STA' configuration page. At the top, there is a 'Step: 2. Configure Interface' and an 'Action: Configure' dropdown. Below this, there are radio buttons for 'Port' (selected) and 'Trunk'. A 'Port List' section shows 'Total 28' ports. The main table displays settings for five ports (1-5). Each row has columns for Port, Spanning Tree, BPDU Flooding, Priority, Admin Path Cost, Admin Link Type, Root Guard, Admin Edge Port, BPDU Guard, BPDU Guard Auto Recovery, BPDU Guard Auto Recovery Interval, BPDU Filter, Migration, and TC Propagate Stop.

Port	Spanning Tree	BPDU Flooding	Priority (0-240, in steps of 16)	Admin Path Cost (0-200000000, 0: Auto)	Admin Link Type	Root Guard	Admin Edge Port	BPDU Guard	BPDU Guard Auto Recovery	BPDU Guard Auto Recovery Interval (30-86400)	BPDU Filter	Migration	TC Propagate Stop
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	128	0	Auto	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Auto	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	300	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	128	0	Auto	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Auto	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	300	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	128	0	Auto	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Auto	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	300	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	128	0	Auto	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Auto	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	300	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	128	0	Auto	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Auto	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	300	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled

## Displaying Interface Settings for STA

Use the Spanning Tree > STA (Configure Interface - Show Information) page to display the current status of ports or trunks in the Spanning Tree.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Spanning Tree** – Shows if STA has been enabled on this interface.
- ◆ **BPDU Flooding** – Shows if BPDUs will be flooded to other ports when spanning tree is disabled globally on the switch or disabled on a specific port.
- ◆ **STA Status** – Displays current state of this port within the Spanning Tree:
  - **Discarding** - Port receives STA configuration messages, but does not forward packets.
  - **Learning** - Port has transmitted configuration messages for an interval set by the Forward Delay parameter without receiving contradictory information. Port address table is cleared, and the port begins learning addresses.
  - **Forwarding** - Port forwards packets, and continues learning addresses.

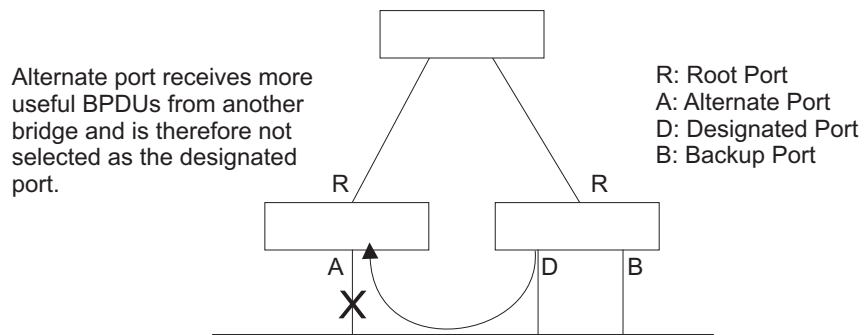
The rules defining port status are:

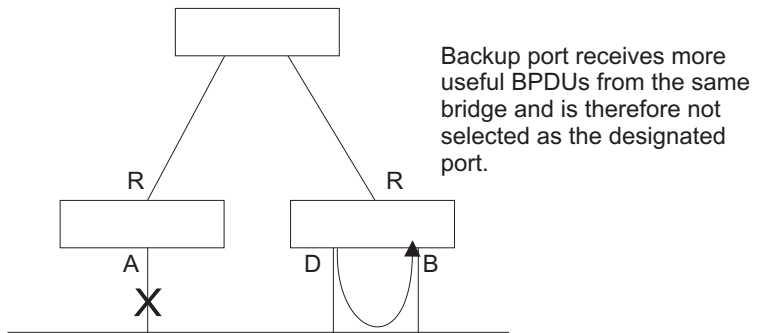
- A port on a network segment with no other STA compliant bridging device is always forwarding.
- If two ports of a switch are connected to the same segment and there is no other STA device attached to this segment, the port with the smaller ID forwards packets and the other is discarding.
- All ports are discarding when the switch is booted, then some of them change state to learning, and then to forwarding.



- ◆ **Forward Transitions** – The number of times this port has transitioned from the Learning state to the Forwarding state.
- ◆ **Designated Cost** – The cost for a packet to travel from this port to the root in the current Spanning Tree configuration. The slower the media, the higher the cost.
- ◆ **Designated Bridge** – The bridge priority and MAC address of the device through which this port must communicate to reach the root of the Spanning Tree.
- ◆ **Designated Port** – The port priority and number of the port on the designated bridging device through which this switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
- ◆ **Oper Path Cost** – The contribution of this port to the path cost of paths towards the spanning tree root which include this port.
- ◆ **Oper Link Type** – The operational point-to-point status of the LAN segment attached to this interface. This parameter is determined by manual configuration or by auto-detection, as described for Admin Link Type in STA Port Configuration on [page 187](#).
- ◆ **Oper Edge Port** – This parameter is initialized to the setting for Admin Edge Port in STA Port Configuration on [page 187](#) (i.e., Enabled or Disabled), but will be set to Disabled if a BPDU is received, indicating that another bridge is attached to this port.
- ◆ **Port Role** – Roles are assigned according to whether the port is part of the active topology, that is the best port connecting a non-root bridge to the root bridge (i.e., **root** port), connecting a LAN through the bridge to the root bridge (i.e., **designated** port), or is an **alternate** or **backup** port that may provide connectivity if other bridges, bridge ports, or LANs fail or are removed. The role is set to disabled (i.e., **disabled** port) if a port has no role within the spanning tree.

Figure 103: STA Port Roles





The criteria used for determining the port role is based on root bridge ID, root path cost, designated bridge, designated port, port priority, and port number, in that order and as applicable to the role under question.

**Web Interface**

To display interface settings for STA:

1. Click Spanning Tree, STA.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select Show Information from the Action list.

**Figure 104: Displaying Interface Settings for STA**

Spanning Tree > STA

Step: 2. Configure Interface Action: Show Information

Interface  Port  Trunk

Spanning Tree Port List Total: 28

Port	Spanning Tree	BPDU Flooding	STA Status	Forward Transitions	Designated Cost	Designated Bridge	Designated Port	Oper Path Cost	Oper Link Type	Oper Edge Port	Port Role
1	Enabled	Enabled	Forwarding	3	0	32768.00000C0000FD	128.1	10000	Point-to-Point	Disabled	Designated
2	Enabled	Enabled	Discarding	0	0	32768.00000C0000FD	128.2	10000	Point-to-Point	Disabled	Disabled
3	Enabled	Enabled	Discarding	0	0	32768.00000C0000FD	128.3	10000	Point-to-Point	Disabled	Disabled
4	Enabled	Enabled	Discarding	0	0	32768.00000C0000FD	128.4	10000	Point-to-Point	Disabled	Disabled
5	Enabled	Enabled	Discarding	0	0	32768.00000C0000FD	128.5	10000	Point-to-Point	Disabled	Disabled

---

## Configuring Multiple Spanning Trees

Use the Spanning Tree > MSTP (Configure Global) page to create an MSTP instance, or to add VLAN groups to an MSTP instance.

### Command Usage

MSTP generates a unique spanning tree for each instance. This provides multiple pathways across the network, thereby balancing the traffic load, preventing wide-scale disruption when a bridge node in a single instance fails, and allowing for faster convergence of a new topology for the failed instance.

By default all VLANs are assigned to the Internal Spanning Tree (MST Instance 0) that connects all bridges and LANs within the MST region. This switch supports up to 33 instances. You should try to group VLANs which cover the same general area of your network. However, remember that you must configure all bridges within the same MSTI Region ([page 181](#)) with the same set of instances, and the same instance (on each bridge) with the same set of VLANs. Also, note that RSTP treats each MSTI region as a single node, connecting all regions to the Common Spanning Tree.

To use multiple spanning trees:

1. Set the spanning tree type to MSTP ([page 181](#)).
2. Enter the spanning tree priority for the selected MST instance on the Spanning Tree > MSTP (Configure Global - Add) page.
3. Add the VLANs that will share this MSTI on the Spanning Tree > MSTP (Configure Global - Add Member) page.



**Note:** All VLANs are automatically added to the IST (Instance 0).

---

To ensure that the MSTI maintains connectivity across the network, you must configure a related set of bridges with the same MSTI settings.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **MST ID** – Instance identifier to configure. (Range: 0-4094)
- ◆ **VLAN ID** – VLAN to assign to this MST instance. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **Priority** – The priority of a spanning tree instance. (Range: 0-61440 in steps of 4096; Options: 0, 4096, 8192, 12288, 16384, 20480, 24576, 28672, 32768, 36864, 40960, 45056, 49152, 53248, 57344, 61440; Default: 32768)

### Web Interface

To create instances for MSTP:

1. Click Spanning Tree, MSTP.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Specify the MST instance identifier and the initial VLAN member. Additional member can be added using the Spanning Tree > MSTP (Configure Global - Add Member) page. If the priority is not specified, the default value 32768 is used.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 105: Creating an MST Instance**

The screenshot shows the 'Spanning Tree > MSTP' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'Spanning Tree > MSTP'. Below it, there are two dropdown menus: 'Step: 1. Configure Global' and 'Action: Add'. The main form contains three input fields: 'MST ID (0-4094)' with the value '1', 'VLAN ID (1-4094)' with the value '1', and 'Priority (0-61440, in steps of 4096)' which is empty. At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons.

To show the MSTP instances:

1. Click Spanning Tree, MSTP.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 106: Displaying MST Instances**

The screenshot shows the 'Spanning Tree > MSTP' configuration page with the 'Action' dropdown set to 'Show'. Below the dropdowns, there is a table titled 'MST List Total: 2'. The table has two columns: a checkbox column and an 'MST ID' column. There are two rows of data: one for MST ID 0 and one for MST ID 1. At the bottom right, there are 'Delete' and 'Revert' buttons.

	MST ID
<input type="checkbox"/>	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	1

To modify the priority for an MST instance:

1. Click Spanning Tree, MSTP.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Select Modify from the Action list.
4. Modify the priority for an MSTP Instance.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 107: Modifying the Priority for an MST Instance**

Spanning Tree > MSTP

Step: 1. Configure Global Action: Modify

MST Details List Total: 2

MST ID	Priority (0-61440, in steps of 4096)
0	0
1	32768

Apply Revert

To display list settings for MSTP:

1. Click Spanning Tree, MSTP.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Select Show Information from the Action list.
4. Select an MST ID. The attributes displayed on this page are described under ["Displaying Global Settings for STA" on page 186.](#)

**Figure 108: Displaying Global Settings for an MST Instance**

Spanning Tree > MSTP

Step: 1. Configure Global Action: Show Information

MST ID 1

Priority	0	Designated Root	32768.0030F1245660
Bridge ID	20	Root Port	2
Max Age	15 sec	Root Path Cost	32768.000001010010
Hello Time	23 sec	Configuration Changes	500000
Forward Delay	2 sec	Last Topology Change	0 days, 1 hours, 10 minutes, 0 seconds

To add additional VLAN groups to an MSTP instance:

1. Click Spanning Tree, MSTP.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Select Add Member from the Action list.
4. Select an MST instance from the MST ID list.
5. Enter the VLAN group to add to the instance in the VLAN ID field. Note that the specified member does not have to be a configured VLAN.
6. Click Apply

**Figure 109: Adding a VLAN to an MST Instance**

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for Spanning Tree > MSTP. The 'Step' dropdown is set to '1. Configure Global' and the 'Action' dropdown is set to 'Add Member'. The 'MST ID' dropdown is set to '1' and the 'VLAN ID (1-4094)' text input field contains the number '1'. At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons.

To show the VLAN members of an MSTP instance:

1. Click Spanning Tree, MSTP.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Select Show Member from the Action list.

**Figure 110: Displaying Members of an MST Instance**

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for Spanning Tree > MSTP with the 'Action' dropdown set to 'Show Member'. The 'MST ID' dropdown is set to '0'. Below the configuration fields, there is a 'Member List' section with a total of 4094 members. A pagination bar shows page 1 of 10. A table displays the first five members:

	VLAN
<input type="checkbox"/>	1
<input type="checkbox"/>	2
<input type="checkbox"/>	3
<input type="checkbox"/>	4
<input type="checkbox"/>	5

---

## Configuring Interface Settings for MSTP

Use the Spanning Tree > MSTP (Configure Interface - Configure) page to configure the STA interface settings for an MST instance.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **MST ID** – Instance identifier to configure. (Default: 0)
- ◆ **Interface** – Displays a list of ports or trunks.
- ◆ **STA Status** – Displays the current state of this interface within the Spanning Tree. (See “[Displaying Interface Settings for STA](#)” on page 192 for additional information.)
  - **Discarding** – Port receives STA configuration messages, but does not forward packets.
  - **Learning** – Port has transmitted configuration messages for an interval set by the Forward Delay parameter without receiving contradictory information. Port address table is cleared, and the port begins learning addresses.
  - **Forwarding** – Port forwards packets, and continues learning addresses.
- ◆ **Priority** – Defines the priority used for this port in the Spanning Tree Protocol. If the path cost for all ports on a switch are the same, the port with the highest priority (i.e., lowest value) will be configured as an active link in the Spanning Tree. This makes a port with higher priority less likely to be blocked if the Spanning Tree Protocol is detecting network loops. Where more than one port is assigned the highest priority, the port with lowest numeric identifier will be enabled. (Default: 128; Range: 0-240, in steps of 16)
- ◆ **Admin MST Path Cost** – This parameter is used by the MSTP to determine the best path between devices. Therefore, lower values should be assigned to ports attached to faster media, and higher values assigned to ports with slower media. (Path cost takes precedence over port priority.) Note that when the Path Cost Method is set to short ([page 181](#)), the maximum path cost is 65,535.

By default, the system automatically detects the speed and duplex mode used on each port, and configures the path cost according to the values shown below. Path cost “0” is used to indicate auto-configuration mode. When the short path cost method is selected and the default path cost recommended by the IEEE 8021w standard exceeds 65,535, the default is set to 65,535.

The recommended range is listed in [Table 8 on page 188](#).

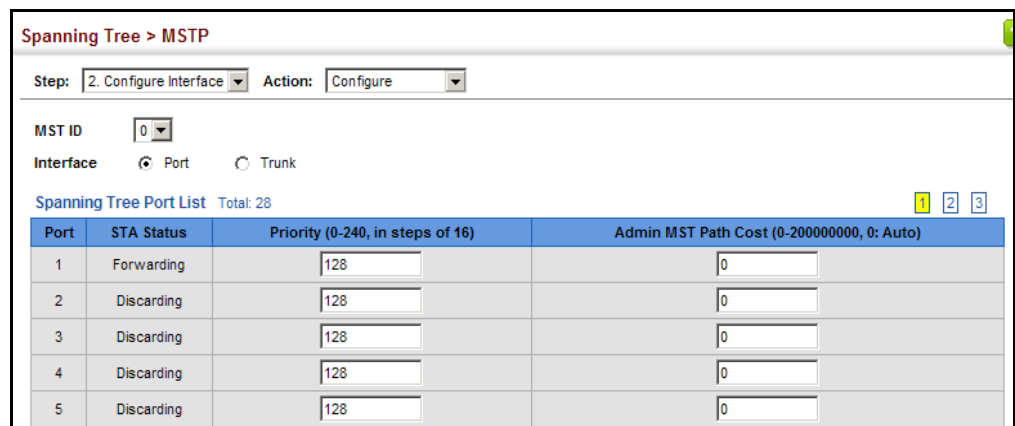
The default path costs are listed in [Table 9 on page 189](#).

### Web Interface

To configure MSTP parameters for a port or trunk:

1. Click Spanning Tree, MSTP.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select Configure from the Action list.
4. Enter the priority and path cost for an interface
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 111: Configuring MSTP Interface Settings**

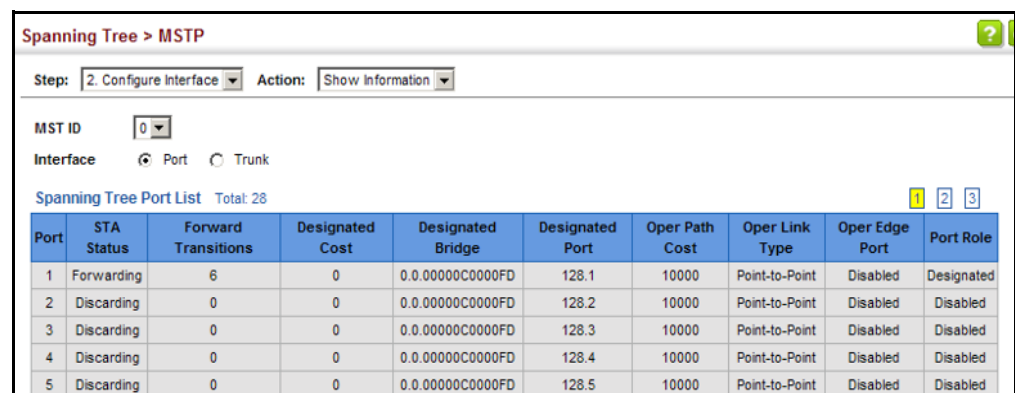


To display MSTP parameters for a port or trunk:

1. Click Spanning Tree, MSTP.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select Show Information from the Action list.

Refer to “[Displaying Interface Settings for STA](#)” on page 192 for the parameter descriptions.

**Figure 112: Displaying MSTP Interface Settings**





---

# Congestion Control

The switch can set the maximum upload or download data transfer rate for any port. It can also control traffic storms by setting a maximum threshold for broadcast traffic or multicast traffic. It can also set bounding thresholds for broadcast and multicast storms which can be used to automatically trigger rate limits or to shut down a port.

Congestion Control includes following options:

- ◆ **Rate Limiting** – Sets the input and output rate limits for a port.
- ◆ **Storm Control** – Sets the traffic storm threshold for each interface.

---

## Rate Limiting

Use the Traffic > Rate Limit page to apply rate limiting to ingress or egress ports. This function allows the network manager to control the maximum rate for traffic received or transmitted on an interface. Rate limiting is configured on interfaces at the edge of a network to limit traffic into or out of the network. Packets that exceed the acceptable amount of traffic are dropped.

Rate limiting can be applied to individual ports or trunks. When an interface is configured with this feature, the traffic rate will be monitored by the hardware to verify conformity. Non-conforming traffic is dropped, conforming traffic is forwarded without any changes.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

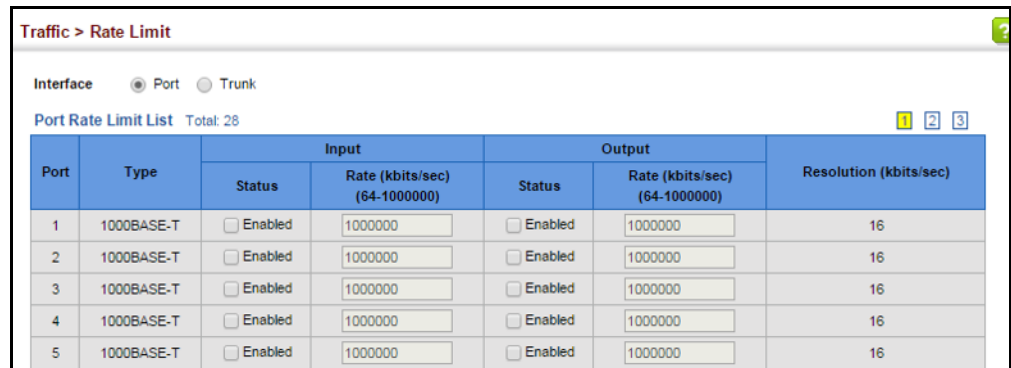
- ◆ **Interface** – Displays the switch's ports or trunks.
- ◆ **Type** – Indicates the port type. (1000BASE-T, 1000BASE SFP)
- ◆ **Status** – Enables or disables the rate limit. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Rate** – Sets the rate limit level.  
(Range: 64 - 1,000,000 kbits per second for Gigabit Ethernet ports)
- ◆ **Resolution** – The resolution at which the rate can be configured is 16 kbits/sec.

### Web Interface

To configure rate limits:

1. Click Traffic, Rate Limit.
2. Set the interface type to Port or Trunk.
3. Enable the Rate Limit Status for the required interface.
4. Set the rate limit for required interfaces.
5. Click Apply.

Figure 113: Configuring Rate Limits



The screenshot shows the 'Traffic > Rate Limit' configuration page. At the top, there are radio buttons for 'Interface' type: 'Port' (selected) and 'Trunk'. Below this is a 'Port Rate Limit List' with a 'Total: 28' and three numbered tabs (1, 2, 3). The main table has columns for Port, Type, Input Status, Input Rate (kbits/sec), Output Status, Output Rate (kbits/sec), and Resolution (kbits/sec). All five listed ports are 1000BASE-T, have their Rate Limit Status checked (Enabled), and have an input rate of 1000000 kbits/sec, an output rate of 1000000 kbits/sec, and a resolution of 16 kbits/sec.

Port	Type	Input		Output		Resolution (kbits/sec)
		Status	Rate (kbits/sec) (64-1000000)	Status	Rate (kbits/sec) (64-1000000)	
1	1000BASE-T	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	1000000	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	1000000	16
2	1000BASE-T	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	1000000	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	1000000	16
3	1000BASE-T	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	1000000	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	1000000	16
4	1000BASE-T	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	1000000	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	1000000	16
5	1000BASE-T	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	1000000	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	1000000	16

## Storm Control

Use the Traffic > Storm Control page to configure broadcast, multicast, and unknown unicast storm control thresholds. Traffic storms may occur when a device on your network is malfunctioning, or if application programs are not well designed or properly configured. If there is too much traffic on your network, performance can be severely degraded or everything can come to complete halt.

You can protect your network from traffic storms by setting a threshold for broadcast, multicast or unknown unicast traffic. Any packets exceeding the specified threshold will then be dropped.

### Command Usage

- ◆ Broadcast Storm Control is enabled by default.
- ◆ When traffic exceeds the threshold specified for broadcast and multicast or unknown unicast traffic, packets exceeding the threshold are dropped until the rate falls back down beneath the threshold.
- ◆ Rate limits set by the storm control function are also used by automatic storm control when the control response is set to rate control on the Auto Traffic Control (Configure Interface) page.

- ◆ Using both rate limiting and storm control on the same interface may lead to unexpected results. It is therefore not advisable to use both of these features on the same interface.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Interface** – Displays a list of ports or trunks.
- ◆ **Type** – Indicates the port type. (1000BASE-T, 1000BASE SFP).
- ◆ **Unknown Unicast** – Specifies storm control for unknown unicast traffic.
- ◆ **Multicast** – Specifies storm control for multicast traffic.
- ◆ **Broadcast** – Specifies storm control for broadcast traffic.
- ◆ **Status** – Enables or disables storm control. (Default: Enabled for broadcast storm control, disabled for multicast and unknown unicast storm control)
- ◆ **Rate** – Threshold level in packets per second.  
(Range: 1-14881000 pps; Default: Disabled for unknown unicast and multicast traffic, 500 pps for broadcast traffic)
- ◆ **Resolution** – Indicates the resolution at which the rate can be configured.

### Web Interface

To configure broadcast storm control:

1. Click Traffic, Storm Control.
2. Set the interface type to Port or Trunk.
3. Set the Status field to enable or disable storm control.
4. Set the required threshold beyond which the switch will start dropping packets.
5. Click Apply.

Figure 114: Configuring Storm Control

Traffic > Storm Control Help

Interface  Port  Trunk

Port Storm Control List Total: 26 1 2 3

Port	Type	Unknown Unicast		Multicast		Broadcast		Resolution (packets/sec)
		Status	Rate (packets/sec) (1-262142)	Status	Rate (packets/sec) (1-262142)	Status	Rate (packets/sec) (1-262142)	
1	1000BASE-T	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	500	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	500	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	500	1
2	1000BASE-T	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	500	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	500	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	500	1
3	1000BASE-T	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	500	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	500	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	500	1
4	1000BASE-T	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	500	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	500	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	500	1
5	1000BASE-T	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	500	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	500	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	500	1

---

# Class of Service

Class of Service (CoS) allows you to specify which data packets have greater precedence when traffic is buffered in the switch due to congestion. This switch supports CoS with eight priority queues for each port. Data packets in a port's high-priority queue will be transmitted before those in the lower-priority queues. You can set the default priority for each interface, and configure the mapping of frame priority tags to the switch's priority queues.

This chapter describes the following basic topics:

- ◆ [Layer 2 Queue Settings](#) – Configures each queue, including the default priority, queue mode, queue weight, and mapping of packets to queues based on CoS tags.
- ◆ [Layer 3/4 Priority Settings](#) – Selects the method by which inbound packets are processed (DSCP or CoS), and sets the per-hop behavior and drop precedence for internal processing.

---

## Layer 2 Queue Settings

This section describes how to configure the default priority for untagged frames, set the queue mode, set the weights assigned to each queue, and map class of service tags to queues.

### Setting the Default Priority for Interfaces

Use the [Traffic > Priority > Default Priority](#) page to specify the default port priority for each interface on the switch. All untagged packets entering the switch are tagged with the specified default port priority, and then sorted into the appropriate priority queue at the output port.

### Command Usage

- ◆ This switch provides eight priority queues for each port. It uses Weighted Round Robin to prevent head-of-queue blockage, but can be configured to process each queue in strict order, or use a combination of strict and weighted queueing.
- ◆ The default priority applies for an untagged frame received on a port set to accept all frame types (i.e, receives both untagged and tagged frames). This priority does not apply to IEEE 802.1Q VLAN tagged frames. If the incoming frame is an IEEE 802.1Q VLAN tagged frame, the IEEE 802.1p User Priority bits will be used.

- ◆ If the output port is an untagged member of the associated VLAN, these frames are stripped of all VLAN tags prior to transmission.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Interface** – Displays a list of ports or trunks.
- ◆ **CoS** – The priority that is assigned to untagged frames received on the specified interface. (Range: 0-7; Default: 0)

### Web Interface

To configure the queue mode:

1. Click Traffic, Priority, Default Priority.
2. Select the interface type to display (Port or Trunk).
3. Modify the default priority for any interface.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 115: Setting the Default Port Priority**

Port	CoS (0-7)
1	0
2	0
3	5
4	0
5	0

### Selecting the Queue Mode

Use the Traffic > Priority > Queue page to set the queue mode for the egress queues on any interface. The switch can be set to service the queues based on a strict rule that requires all traffic in a higher priority queue to be processed before the lower priority queues are serviced, or Weighted Round-Robin (WRR) queuing which specifies a scheduling weight for each queue. It can also be configured to use a combination of strict and weighted queuing.

### Command Usage

- ◆ Strict priority requires all traffic in a higher priority queue to be processed before lower priority queues are serviced.
- ◆ WRR queuing specifies a relative weight for each queue. WRR uses a predefined relative weight for each queue that determines the percentage of service time

the switch services each queue before moving on to the next queue. This prevents the head-of-line blocking that can occur with strict priority queuing.

- ◆ If Strict and WRR mode is selected, a combination of strict service is used for the high priority queues and weighted service for the remaining queues. The queues assigned to use strict priority should be specified using the Strict Mode field parameter.
- ◆ A weight can be assigned to each of the weighted queues (and thereby to the corresponding traffic priorities). This weight sets the frequency at which each queue is polled for service, and subsequently affects the response time for software applications assigned a specific priority value.

Service time is shared at the egress ports by defining scheduling weights for WRR, or one of the queuing modes that use a combination of strict and weighted queuing.

- ◆ The specified queue mode applies to all interfaces.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Queue Mode**
  - **Strict** – Services the egress queues in sequential order, transmitting all traffic in the higher priority queues before servicing lower priority queues. This ensures that the highest priority packets are always serviced first, ahead of all other traffic.
  - **WRR** – Weighted Round-Robin shares bandwidth at the egress ports by using scheduling weights, and servicing each queue in a round-robin fashion. (This is the default setting.)
  - **Strict and WRR** – Uses strict priority on the high-priority queues and WRR on the remaining queues.
- ◆ **Queue ID** – The ID of the priority queue. (Range: 0-7)
- ◆ **Strict Mode** – If “Strict and WRR” mode is selected, then a combination of strict service is used for the high priority queues and weighted service for the remaining queues. Use this parameter to specify the queues assigned to use strict priority when using the strict-weighted queuing mode. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Weight** – Sets a weight for each queue which is used by the WRR scheduler. (Range: 1-127; Default: Weights 1, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12 and 14 are assigned to queues 0 - 7 respectively)

### Web Interface

To configure the queue mode:

1. Click Traffic, Priority, Queue.
2. Set the queue mode.
3. If the weighted queue mode is selected, the queue weight can be modified if required.
4. If the queue mode that uses a combination of strict and weighted queuing is selected, the queues which are serviced first must be specified by enabling strict mode parameter in the table.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 116: Setting the Queue Mode (Strict)**

The screenshot shows the 'Traffic > Priority > Queue' configuration page. The 'Queue Mode' dropdown menu is set to 'Strict'. There are 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons at the bottom right.

**Figure 117: Setting the Queue Mode (WRR)**

The screenshot shows the 'Traffic > Priority > Queue' configuration page. The 'Port' dropdown is set to '1' and the 'Queue Mode' dropdown is set to 'WRR'. Below the dropdowns is a 'Queue Setting Table' with a 'Total: 8' label. The table has two columns: 'Queue ID' and 'Weight (1-127)'. The table contains 8 rows with Queue IDs from 0 to 7 and corresponding weights from 1 to 14. There are 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons at the bottom right.

Queue ID	Weight (1-127)
0	1
1	2
2	4
3	6
4	8
5	10
6	12
7	14



**Figure 118: Setting the Queue Mode (Strict and WRR)**

Traffic > Priority > Queue

Port: 1

Queue Mode: Strict and WRR

Queue Setting Table Total: 8

Queue ID	Strict Mode	Weight (1-127)
0	Disabled	1
1	Disabled	2
2	Disabled	4
3	Disabled	6
4	Disabled	8
5	Disabled	10
6	Disabled	12
7	Disabled	14

Apply Revert

## Layer 3/4 Priority Settings

### Mapping Layer 3/4 Priorities to CoS Values

The switch supports several common methods of prioritizing layer 3/4 traffic to meet application requirements. Traffic priorities can be specified in the IP header of a frame, using the priority bits in the Type of Service (ToS) octet, or the number of the TCP/UDP port. If priority bits are used, the ToS octet may contain three bits for IP Precedence or six bits for Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) service. When these services are enabled, the priorities are mapped to a Class of Service value by the switch, and the traffic then sent to the corresponding output queue.

Because different priority information may be contained in the traffic, this switch maps priority values to the output queues in the following manner – The precedence for priority mapping is DSCP Priority and then Default Port Priority.



**Note:** The default settings used for mapping priority values from ingress traffic to internal DSCP values are used to determine the hardware queues used for egress traffic, not to replace the priority values. These defaults are designed to optimize priority services for the majority of network applications. It should not be necessary to modify any of the default settings, unless a queuing problem occurs with a particular application.

**Setting Priority Processing to DSCP or CoS** The switch allows a choice between using DSCP or CoS priority processing methods. Use the Priority > Trust Mode page to select the required processing method.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ If the QoS mapping mode is set to DSCP, and the ingress packet type is IPv4, then priority processing will be based on the DSCP value in the ingress packet.
- ◆ If the QoS mapping mode is set to DSCP, and a non-IP packet is received, the packet's CoS and CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) values are used for priority processing if the packet is tagged. For an untagged packet, the default port priority (see [page 205](#)) is used for priority processing.
- ◆ If the QoS mapping mode is set to CoS, and the ingress packet type is IPv4, then priority processing will be based on the CoS and CFI values in the ingress packet.

For an untagged packet, the default port priority (see [page 205](#)) is used for priority processing.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** – Port identifier. (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **Trust Mode**
  - **CoS** – Maps layer 3/4 priorities using Class of Service values. (This is the default setting.)
  - **DSCP** – Maps layer 3/4 priorities using Differentiated Services Code Point values.

#### Web Interface

To configure the trust mode:

1. Click Traffic, Priority, Trust Mode.
2. Set the trust mode for any port.
3. Click Apply.

Figure 119: Setting the Trust Mode

Port	Trust Mode
1	CoS ▼
2	CoS ▼
3	CoS ▼
4	CoS ▼
5	CoS ▼

### Mapping CoS Priorities to Per-hop Behavior

Use the Traffic > Priority > CoS to Queue page to map CoS/CFI values in incoming packets to per-hop behavior for priority processing.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ The default mapping of CoS/CFI to Queue/CFI values is shown below.

Table 10: Default Mapping of CoS/CFI Values to Queue/CFI

CoS	CFI	0	1
0		(2,0)	(2,0)
1		(0,0)	(0,0)
2		(1,0)	(1,0)
3		(3,0)	(3,0)
4		(4,0)	(4,0)
5		(5,0)	(5,0)
6		(6,0)	(6,0)
7		(7,0)	(7,0)

- ◆ Enter the per-hop behavior for CoS/CFI paired values.
- ◆ If a packet arrives with a 802.1Q header but it is not an IP packet, then the CoS/CFI-to-Queue mapping table is used to generate priority for processing. Note that priority tags in the original packet are not modified by this command.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

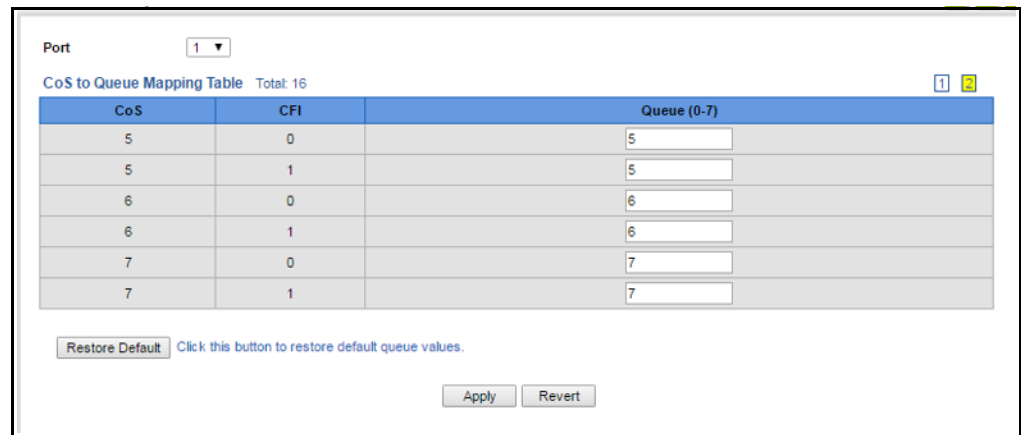
- ◆ **Port** – Specifies a port.
- ◆ **CoS** – CoS value in ingress packets. (Range: 0-7)
- ◆ **CFI** – Canonical Format Indicator. Set to this parameter to “0” to indicate that the MAC address information carried in the frame is in canonical format. (Range: 0-1)
- ◆ **Queue** – Per-hop behavior, or the priority used for this router hop. (Range: 0-7)

### Web Interface

To map CoS/CFI values to Queue precedence:

1. Click Traffic, Priority, CoS to Queue.
2. Set the Queue for any of the CoS/CFI combinations.
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 120: Configuring CoS to Queue Mapping**



### Mapping DSCP Priorities to Per-hop Behavior

Use the Traffic > Priority > DSCP to Queue page to map DSCP values in incoming packets to per-hop behavior for priority processing.

The DSCP is six bits wide, allowing coding for up to 64 different forwarding behaviors. The DSCP replaces the ToS bits, but it retains backward compatibility with the three precedence bits so that non-DSCP compliant, ToS-enabled devices, will not conflict with the DSCP mapping. Based on network policies, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different kinds of forwarding.

### Command Usage

- ◆ Enter per-hop behavior for any of the DSCP values 0 - 63.
- ◆ This map is only used when the priority mapping mode is set to DSCP (see [page 210](#)), and the ingress packet type is IPv4. Any attempt to configure the DSCP-to-Queue map will not be accepted by the switch, unless the trust mode has been set to DSCP.
- ◆ Two QoS domains can have different DSCP definitions, so the DSCP-to-Queue map can be used to modify one set of DSCP values to match the definition of another domain. The mutation map should be applied at the receiving port at the boundary of a QoS administrative domain.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** – Specifies a port.
- ◆ **DSCP** – DSCP value in ingress packets. (Range: 0-63)
- ◆ **Queue** – Per-hop behavior, or the priority used for this router hop. (Range: 0-7)

**Table 11: Default Mapping of DSCP Values to Queue/CFI**

	ingress-dscp1	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
ingress-dscp10											
0		2,0	2,0	2,0	2,0	2,0	2,0	2,0	2,0	0,0	0,0
1		0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	1,0	1,0	1,0	1,0
2		1,0	1,0	1,0	1,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0	3,0
3		3,0	3,0	4,0	4,0	4,0	4,0	4,0	4,0	4,0	4,0
4		5,0	5,0	5,0	5,0	5,0	5,0	5,0	5,0	6,0	6,0
5		6,0	6,0	6,0	6,0	6,0	6,0	7,0	7,0	7,0	7,0
6		7,0	7,0	7,0	7,0						

The ingress DSCP is composed of ingress-dscp10 (most significant digit in the left column) and ingress-dscp1 (least significant digit in the top row (in other words,  $\text{ingress-dscp} = \text{ingress-dscp10} * 10 + \text{ingress-dscp1}$ ); and the corresponding queue/cfi is shown at the intersecting cell in the table.

### Web Interface

To map DSCP values to internal PHB/drop precedence:

1. Click Traffic, Priority, DSCP to Queue.
2. Select the port to configure.
3. Set the queue for any DSCP value.
4. Click Apply.

Figure 121: Configuring DSCP to Queue Mapping

Traffic > Priority > DSCP to Queue

Port

DSCP to Queue Mapping Table Total: 64 1 2 3 4 5 6 7

DSCP	Queue (0-7)
0	<input type="text" value="2"/>
1	<input type="text" value="2"/>
2	<input type="text" value="2"/>
3	<input type="text" value="2"/>
4	<input type="text" value="2"/>
5	<input type="text" value="2"/>
6	<input type="text" value="2"/>
7	<input type="text" value="2"/>
8	<input type="text" value="0"/>
9	<input type="text" value="0"/>

Click this button to restore default queue values.

---

# Quality of Service

This chapter describes the following tasks required to apply QoS policies:

- ◆ **Class Map** – Creates a map which identifies a specific class of traffic.
- ◆ **Policy Map** – Sets the boundary parameters used for monitoring inbound traffic, and the action to take for conforming and non-conforming traffic.
- ◆ **Binding to a Port** – Applies a policy map to an ingress port.

---

## Overview

The commands described in this section are used to configure Quality of Service (QoS) classification criteria and service policies. Differentiated Services (DiffServ) provides policy-based management mechanisms used for prioritizing network resources to meet the requirements of specific traffic types on a per hop basis. Each packet is classified upon entry into the network based on access lists, IP Precedence, DSCP values, VLAN lists or CoS values. Using access lists allows you select traffic based on Layer 2, Layer 3, or Layer 4 information contained in each packet. Based on configured network policies, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different kinds of forwarding.

All switches or routers that access the Internet rely on class information to provide the same forwarding treatment to packets in the same class. Class information can be assigned by end hosts, or switches or routers along the path. Priority can then be assigned based on a general policy, or a detailed examination of the packet. However, note that detailed examination of packets should take place close to the network edge so that core switches and routers are not overloaded.

Switches and routers along the path can use class information to prioritize the resources allocated to different traffic classes. The manner in which an individual device handles traffic in the DiffServ architecture is called per-hop behavior. All devices along a path should be configured in a consistent manner to construct a consistent end-to-end QoS solution.



**Note:** You can configure up to 16 rules per class map. You can also include multiple classes in a policy map.

**Note:** You should create a class map before creating a policy map. Otherwise, you will not be able to select a class map from the policy rule settings screen (see [page 219](#)).

---

### Command Usage

To create a service policy for a specific category or ingress traffic, follow these steps:

1. Use the Configure Class (Add) page to designate a class name for a specific category of traffic.
2. Use the Configure Class (Add Rule) page to edit the rules for each class which specify a type of traffic based on an access list, a DSCP or IP Precedence value, a VLAN, or a CoS value.
3. Use the Configure Policy (Add) page to designate a policy name for a specific manner in which ingress traffic will be handled.
4. Use the Configure Policy (Add Rule) page to add one or more classes to the policy map. Assign policy rules to each class by “setting” the QoS value (CoS or PHB) to be assigned to the matching traffic class. The policy rule can also be configured to monitor the maximum throughput and burst rate. Then specify the action to take for conforming traffic, or the action to take for a policy violation.
5. Use the Configure Interface page to assign a policy map to a specific interface.



**Note:** Up to 16 classes can be included in a policy map.

---

---

## Configuring a Class Map

A class map is used for matching packets to a specified class. Use the Traffic > DiffServ (Configure Class) page to configure a class map.

### Command Usage

- ◆ The class map is used with a policy map ([page 219](#)) to create a service policy ([page 222](#)) for a specific interface that defines packet classification, service tagging, and bandwidth policing. Note that one or more class maps can be assigned to a policy map.
- ◆ Up to 32 class maps can be configured.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

*Add*

- ◆ **Class Name** – Name of the class map. (Range: 1-32 characters)
- ◆ **Type** – Only one match command is permitted per class map, so the match-any field refers to the criteria specified by the lone match command.



- ◆ **Description** – A brief description of a class map. (Range: 1-64 characters)

*Add Rule*

- ◆ **Class Name** – Name of the class map.
- ◆ **Type** – Only one match command is permitted per class map, so the match-any field refers to the criteria specified by the lone match command.
- ◆ **ACL** – Name of an access control list. Any type of ACL can be specified, including standard or extended IPv4/IPv6 ACLs and MAC ACLs.
- ◆ **IP DSCP** – A DSCP value. (Range: 0-63)
- ◆ **IP Precedence** – An IP Precedence value. (Range: 0-7)
- ◆ **IPv6 DSCP** – A DSCP value contained in an IPv6 packet. (Range: 0-63)
- ◆ **VLAN ID** – A VLAN. (Range:1-4094)
- ◆ **CoS** – A CoS value. (Range: 0-7)

**Web Interface**

To configure a class map:

1. Click Traffic, DiffServ.
2. Select Configure Class from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Enter a class name.
5. Enter a description.
6. Click Add.

**Figure 122: Configuring a Class Map**

Traffic > DiffServ

Step: 1. Configure Class Action: Add

Class Name: rd-class

Type: Match Any

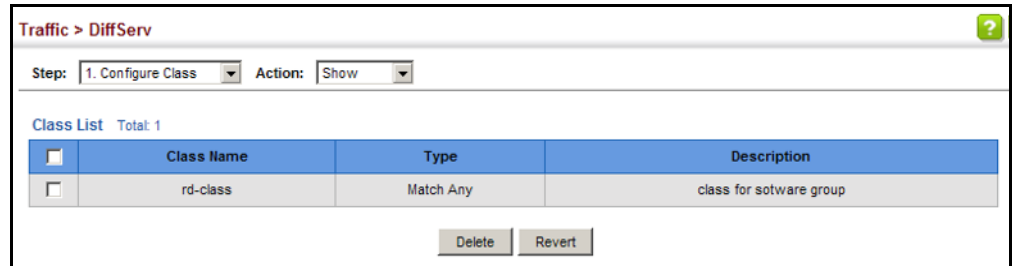
Description: class for software group

Apply Revert

To show the configured class maps:

1. Click Traffic, DiffServ.
2. Select Configure Class from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

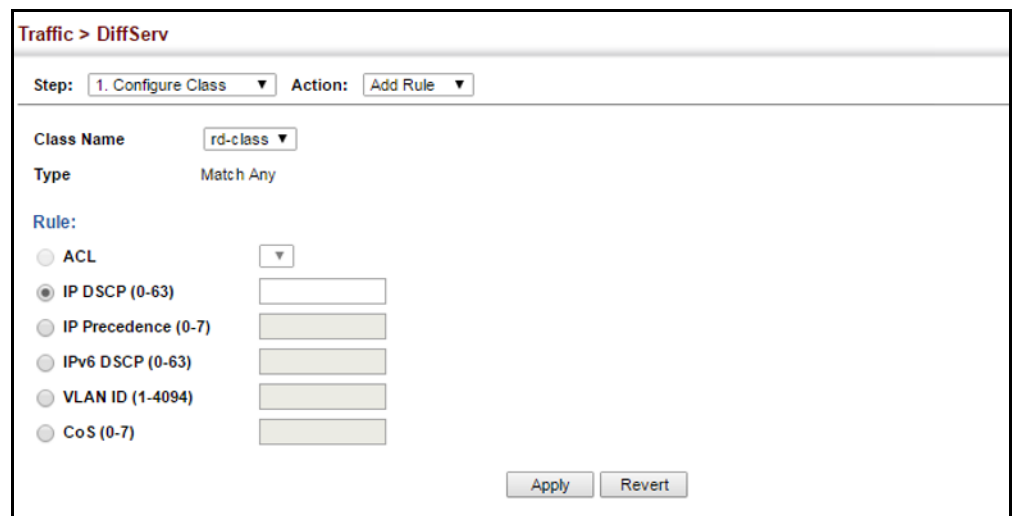
Figure 123: Showing Class Maps



To edit the rules for a class map:

1. Click Traffic, DiffServ.
2. Select Configure Class from the Step list.
3. Select Add Rule from the Action list.
4. Select the name of a class map.
5. Specify type of traffic for this class based on an access list, DSCP or IP Precedence value, VLAN, or CoS value. You can specify up to 16 items to match when assigning ingress traffic to a class map.
6. Click Apply.

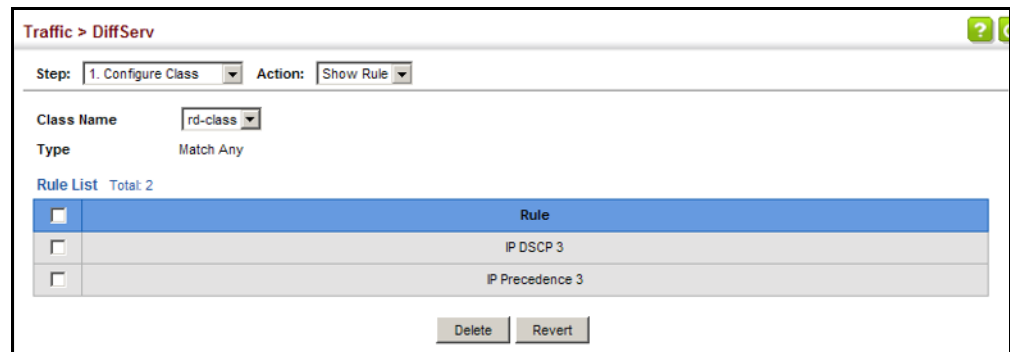
Figure 124: Adding Rules to a Class Map



To show the rules for a class map:

1. Click Traffic, DiffServ.
2. Select Configure Class from the Step list.
3. Select Show Rule from the Action list.

**Figure 125: Showing the Rules for a Class Map**



## Creating QoS Policies

Use the Traffic > DiffServ (Configure Policy) page to create a policy map that can be attached to multiple interfaces. A policy map is used to group one or more class map statements (page 216). A policy map can then be bound by a service policy to one or more interfaces (page 222).

Configuring QoS policies requires several steps. A class map must first be configured which indicates how to match the inbound packets according to an access list, a DSCP or IP Precedence value, a member of specific VLAN, or a CoS value. A policy map must first be configured to indicate the boundary parameters used for monitoring inbound traffic, and the action to take for conforming and non-conforming traffic. A policy map may contain one or more classes based on previously defined class maps.

In addition, the flow rate of inbound traffic can be monitored and the response to conforming and non-conforming traffic set.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

*Add*

- ◆ **Policy Name** – Name of policy map. (Range: 1-32 characters)
- ◆ **Description** – A brief description of a policy map. (Range: 1-64 characters)

### Add Rule

- ◆ **Policy Name** – Name of policy map.
- ◆ **Class Name** – Name of a class map that defines a traffic classification upon which a policy can act. A policy map can contain up to 32 class maps.
- ◆ **Action** – This attribute is used to set an internal QoS value in hardware for matching packets.
  - **Set CoS** – Configures the service provided to ingress traffic by setting an internal CoS value for a matching packet (as specified in rule settings for a class map). (Range: 0-7)  
See [Table 10, “Default Mapping of CoS/CFI Values to Queue/CFI,” on page 211](#)).
  - **Set IP DSCP** – Configures the service provided to ingress traffic by modifying the internal IP DSCP value for a matching packet (as specified in rule settings for a class map). (Range: 0-63)  
See [Table 11, “Default Mapping of DSCP Values to Queue/CFI,” on page 213](#)).
- ◆ **Meter** – Check this to define the maximum throughput.
- ◆ **Meter Mode (Rate Limit)** – Applies rate limiting to ingress or egress ports. This function allows the network manager to control the maximum rate for traffic received or transmitted on an interface. Rate limiting is configured on interfaces at the edge of a network to limit traffic into or out of the network. Packets that exceed the acceptable amount of traffic are dropped.
- ◆ **Rate** – Sets the rate limit level. (Range: 64 - 100000000 kbits per second)

### Web Interface

To configure a policy map:

1. Click Traffic, DiffServ.
2. Select Configure Policy from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Enter a policy name.
5. Enter a description.
6. Click Add.

**Figure 126: Configuring a Policy Map**

Traffic > DiffServ

Step: 2. Configure Policy Action: Add

Policy Name: rd-policy

Description: for the software group

Apply Revert

To show the configured policy maps:

1. Click Traffic, DiffServ.
2. Select Configure Policy from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 127: Showing Policy Maps**

Traffic > DiffServ

Step: 2. Configure Policy Action: Show

Policy List Total: 1

<input type="checkbox"/>	Policy Name	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	rd-policy	for the software group

Delete Revert

To edit the rules for a policy map:

1. Click Traffic, DiffServ.
2. Select Configure Policy from the Step list.
3. Select Add Rule from the Action list.
4. Select the name of a policy map.
5. Set the CoS or per-hop behavior for matching packets to specify the quality of service to be assigned to the matching traffic class. Enter a rate limit if required.
6. Click Apply.

Figure 128: Adding Rules to a Policy Map

Traffic > DiffServ

Step: 2. Configure Policy Action: Add Rule

Policy Name: rd-policy

Rule:

Class Name: rd-class

Action: Set CoS (0-7)

Meter

Meter Mode: Rate Limit

Rate (16-1000000): kbps

Apply Revert

To show the rules for a policy map:

1. Click Traffic, DiffServ.
2. Select Configure Policy from the Step list.
3. Select Show Rule from the Action list.

Figure 129: Showing the Rules for a Policy Map

Traffic > DiffServ

Step: 2. Configure Policy Action: Show Rule

Policy Name: rd-policy

Rule List Total: 1

	Class Name	Action	Meter	
			Meter Mode	Rate (kbps)
<input type="checkbox"/>	rd-class	Rate Limit		160

Delete Revert

## Attaching a Policy Map to a Port

Use the Traffic > DiffServ (Configure Interface) page to bind a policy map to a port.

### Command Usage

First define a class map, define a policy map, and then bind the service policy to the required interface.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** – Specifies a port.

- ◆ **Ingress** – Applies the selected rule to ingress traffic.

### Web Interface

To bind a policy map to a port:

1. Click Traffic, DiffServ.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Check the box under the Ingress field to enable a policy map for a port.
4. Select a policy map from the scroll-down box.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 130: Attaching a Policy Map to a Port**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring DiffServ. The breadcrumb is "Traffic > DiffServ". The "Step:" dropdown is set to "3. Configure Interface". Below this is a "Port Service Policy List" with a total of 28 items. The list has two columns: "Port" and "Ingress". The "Ingress" column contains a checkbox and a dropdown menu for each port. The "Apply" and "Revert" buttons are at the bottom.

Port	Ingress
1	<input type="checkbox"/> rd-policy ▼
2	<input type="checkbox"/> rd-policy ▼
3	<input type="checkbox"/> rd-policy ▼
4	<input type="checkbox"/> rd-policy ▼
5	<input type="checkbox"/> rd-policy ▼
6	<input type="checkbox"/> rd-policy ▼
7	<input type="checkbox"/> rd-policy ▼
8	<input type="checkbox"/> rd-policy ▼
9	<input type="checkbox"/> rd-policy ▼
10	<input type="checkbox"/> rd-policy ▼





---

# VoIP Traffic Configuration

This chapter covers the following topics:

- ◆ **Global Settings** – Enables VOIP globally, sets the Voice VLAN, and the aging time for attached ports.
- ◆ **Telephony OUI List** – Configures the list of phones to be treated as VOIP devices based on the specified Organization Unit Identifier (OUI).
- ◆ **Port Settings** – Configures the way in which a port is added to the Voice VLAN, the filtering of non-VoIP packets, the method of detecting VoIP traffic, and the priority assigned to voice traffic.

---

## Overview

When IP telephony is deployed in an enterprise network, it is recommended to isolate the Voice over IP (VoIP) network traffic from other data traffic. Traffic isolation can provide higher voice quality by preventing excessive packet delays, packet loss, and jitter. This is best achieved by assigning all VoIP traffic to a single Voice VLAN.

The use of a Voice VLAN has several advantages. It provides security by isolating the VoIP traffic from other data traffic. End-to-end QoS policies and high priority can be applied to VoIP VLAN traffic across the network, guaranteeing the bandwidth it needs. VLAN isolation also protects against disruptive broadcast and multicast traffic that can seriously affect voice quality.

The switch allows you to specify a Voice VLAN for the network and set a CoS priority for the VoIP traffic. The VoIP traffic can be detected on switch ports by using the source MAC address of packets, or by using LLDP (IEEE 802.1AB) to discover connected VoIP devices. When VoIP traffic is detected on a configured port, the switch automatically assigns the port as a tagged member the Voice VLAN. Alternatively, switch ports can be manually configured.

## Configuring VoIP Traffic

Use the Traffic > VoIP (Configure Global) page to configure the switch for VoIP traffic. First enable automatic detection of VoIP devices attached to the switch ports, then set the Voice VLAN ID for the network. The Voice VLAN aging time can also be set to remove a port from the Voice VLAN when VoIP traffic is no longer received on the port.

### Command Usage

All ports are set to VLAN hybrid mode by default. Prior to enabling VoIP for a port (by setting the VoIP mode to Auto or Manual as described below), first ensure that VLAN membership is not set to access mode (see [“Adding Static Members to VLANs” on page 152](#)).

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Auto Detection Status** – Enables the automatic detection of VoIP traffic on switch ports. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Voice VLAN** – Sets the Voice VLAN ID for the network. Only one Voice VLAN is supported and it must already be created on the switch. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **Voice VLAN Aging Time** – The time after which a port is removed from the Voice VLAN when VoIP traffic is no longer received on the port. (Range: 5-43200 minutes; Default: 1440 minutes)



**Note:** The Voice VLAN ID cannot be modified when the global Auto Detection Status is enabled.

---

### Web Interface

To configure global settings for a Voice VLAN:

1. Click Traffic, VoIP.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Enable Auto Detection.
4. Specify the Voice VLAN ID.
5. Adjust the Voice VLAN Aging Time if required.
6. Click Apply.

**Figure 131: Configuring a Voice VLAN**

Traffic > VoIP

Step: 1. Configure Global

Auto Detection Status  Enabled

Voice VLAN 1234

Voice VLAN Aging Time (5-43200) 3000 sec

Apply Revert

## Configuring Telephony OUI

VoIP devices attached to the switch can be identified by the vendor's Organizational Unique Identifier (OUI) in the source MAC address of received packets. OUI numbers are assigned to vendors and form the first three octets of device MAC addresses. The MAC OUI numbers for VoIP equipment can be configured on the switch so that traffic from these devices is recognized as VoIP. Use the Traffic > VoIP (Configure OUI) page to configure this feature.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Telephony OUI** – Specifies a MAC address range to add to the list. (Format: xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx or xxxxxxxxxxxxxx)
- ◆ **Mask** – Identifies a range of MAC addresses. Setting a mask of FF-FF-FF-00-00-00 identifies all devices with the same OUI (the first three octets). Other masks restrict the MAC address range. Setting a mask of FF-FF-FF-FF-FF-FF specifies a single MAC address. (Format: xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx or xxxxxxxxxxxxxx)
- ◆ **Description** – User-defined text that identifies the VoIP devices.

### Web Interface

To configure MAC OUI numbers for VoIP equipment:

1. Click Traffic, VoIP.
2. Select Configure OUI from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Enter a MAC address that specifies the OUI for VoIP devices in the network.
5. Select a mask from the pull-down list to define a MAC address range.
6. Enter a description for the devices.

7. Click Apply.

**Figure 132: Configuring an OUI Telephony List**

Traffic > VoIP

Step: 2. Configure OUI Action: Add

Telephony OUI: 00-e0-bb-00-00-00 (xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx or xxxxxxxxxxxx)

Mask: ff-ff-f-00-00-00 (xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx or xxxxxxxxxxxx)

Description: old phones

Apply Revert

To show the MAC OUI numbers used for VoIP equipment:

1. Click Traffic, VoIP.
2. Select Configure OUI from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 133: Showing an OUI Telephony List**

Traffic > VoIP

Step: 2. Configure OUI Action: Show

Telephony OUI List Total: 3

<input type="checkbox"/>	Telephony OUI	Mask	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	00-E0-BB-00-00-00	FF-FF-FF-00-00-00	old phones
<input type="checkbox"/>	00-11-22-33-44-55	FF-FF-FF-00-00-00	new phones
<input type="checkbox"/>	00-98-76-54-32-10	FF-FF-FF-FF-FF-FF	Chris' phone

Delete Revert

## Configuring VoIP Traffic Ports

Use the Traffic > VoIP (Configure Interface) page to configure ports for VoIP traffic, you need to set the mode (Auto or Manual), specify the discovery method to use, and set the traffic priority. You can also enable security filtering to ensure that only VoIP traffic is forwarded on the Voice VLAN.

### Command Usage

All ports are set to VLAN hybrid mode by default. Prior to enabling VoIP for a port (by setting the VoIP mode to Auto or Manual as described below), first ensure that VLAN membership is not set to access mode (see [“Adding Static Members to VLANs” on page 152](#)).

## Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Mode** – Specifies if the port will be added to the Voice VLAN when VoIP traffic is detected. (Default: None)
  - **None** – The Voice VLAN feature is disabled on the port. The port will not detect VoIP traffic or be added to the Voice VLAN.
  - **Auto** – The port will be added as a tagged member to the Voice VLAN when VoIP traffic is detected on the port. You must select a method for detecting VoIP traffic, either OUI or 802.1AB (LLDP). When OUI is selected, be sure to configure the MAC address ranges in the Telephony OUI list.
  - **Manual** – The Voice VLAN feature is enabled on the port, but the port must be manually added to the Voice VLAN.
- ◆ **Security** – Enables security filtering that discards any non-VoIP packets received on the port that are tagged with the voice VLAN ID. VoIP traffic is identified by source MAC addresses configured in the Telephony OUI list, or through LLDP that discovers VoIP devices attached to the switch. Packets received from non-VoIP sources are dropped. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Discovery Protocol** – Selects a method to use for detecting VoIP traffic on the port. (Default: OUI)
  - **OUI** – Traffic from VoIP devices is detected by the Organizationally Unique Identifier (OUI) of the source MAC address. OUI numbers are assigned to vendors and form the first three octets of a device MAC address. MAC address OUI numbers must be configured in the Telephony OUI list so that the switch recognizes the traffic as being from a VoIP device.
  - **LLDP** – Uses LLDP (IEEE 802.1AB) to discover VoIP devices attached to the port. LLDP checks that the “telephone bit” in the system capability TLV is turned on. See [“Link Layer Discovery Protocol” on page 335](#) for more information on LLDP.
- ◆ **Priority** – Defines a CoS priority for port traffic on the Voice VLAN. The priority of any received VoIP packet is overwritten with the new priority when the Voice VLAN feature is active for the port. (Range: 0-6; Default: 6)
- ◆ **Remaining Age** – Number of minutes before this entry is aged out.

The Remaining Age starts to count down when the OUI’s MAC address expires from the MAC address table. Therefore, the MAC address aging time should be added to the overall aging time. For example, if you configure the MAC address table aging time to 30 seconds, and the voice VLAN aging time to 5 minutes, then after 5.5 minutes, a port will be removed from voice VLAN when VoIP traffic is no longer received on the port. Alternatively, if you clear the MAC address table manually, then the switch will also start counting down the Remaining Age.

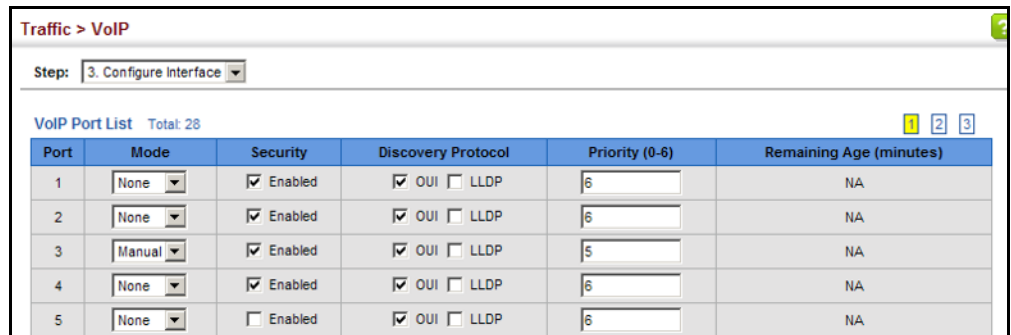
When VoIP Mode is set to Auto, the Remaining Age will be displayed. Otherwise, if the VoIP Mode is Disabled or set to Manual, the remaining age will display "NA."

### Web Interface

To configure VoIP traffic settings for a port:

1. Click Traffic, VoIP.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Configure any required changes to the VoIP settings each port.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 134: Configuring Port Settings for a Voice VLAN**



Traffic > VoIP

Step: 3. Configure Interface

VoIP Port List Total: 28

Port	Mode	Security	Discovery Protocol	Priority (0-6)	Remaining Age (minutes)
1	None	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OUI <input type="checkbox"/> LLDP	6	NA
2	None	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OUI <input type="checkbox"/> LLDP	6	NA
3	Manual	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OUI <input type="checkbox"/> LLDP	5	NA
4	None	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OUI <input type="checkbox"/> LLDP	6	NA
5	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OUI <input type="checkbox"/> LLDP	6	NA

---

# Security Measures

You can configure this switch to authenticate users logging into the system for management access using local or remote authentication methods. Port-based authentication using IEEE 802.1X can also be configured to control either management access to the uplink ports or client access to the data ports. This switch provides secure network management access using the following options:

- ◆ [AAA](#) – Use local or remote authentication to configure access rights, specify authentication servers, configure remote authentication and accounting.
- ◆ [User Accounts](#) – Manually configure access rights on the switch for specified users.
- ◆ [Web Authentication](#) – Allows stations to authenticate and access the network in situations where 802.1X or Network Access authentication methods are infeasible or impractical.
- ◆ [Network Access](#) - Configure MAC authentication, intrusion response, dynamic VLAN assignment, and dynamic QoS assignment.
- ◆ [HTTPS](#) – Provide a secure web connection.
- ◆ [SSH](#) – Provide a secure shell (for secure Telnet access).
- ◆ [ACL](#) – Access Control Lists provide packet filtering for IP frames (based on address, protocol, Layer 4 protocol port number or TCP control code).
- ◆ [IP Filter](#) – Filters management access to the web, SNMP or Telnet interface.
- ◆ [Port Security](#) – Configure secure addresses for individual ports.
- ◆ [Port Authentication](#) – Use IEEE 802.1X port authentication to control access to specific ports.
- ◆ [DoS Protection](#) – Protects against Denial-of-Service attacks.
- ◆ [DHCP Snooping](#) – Filter IP traffic on insecure ports for which the source address cannot be identified via DHCP snooping.
- ◆ [IPv4 Source Guard](#) – Filters IPv4 traffic on insecure ports for which the source address cannot be identified via DHCPv4 snooping nor static source bindings.
- ◆ [ARP Inspection](#) – Security feature that validates the MAC Address bindings for Address Resolution Protocol packets. Provides protection against ARP traffic

with invalid MAC to IP Address bindings, which forms the basis for certain “man-in-the-middle” attacks.



**Note:** The priority of execution for the filtering commands is Port Security, Port Authentication, Network Access, Web Authentication, Access Control Lists, IP Source Guard, and then DHCP Snooping.

---

## AAA (Authentication, Authorization and Accounting)

The authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) feature provides the main framework for configuring access control on the switch. The three security functions can be summarized as follows:

- ◆ Authentication — Identifies users that request access to the network.
- ◆ Authorization — Determines if users can access specific services.
- ◆ Accounting — Provides reports, auditing, and billing for services that users have accessed on the network.

The AAA functions require the use of configured RADIUS or TACACS+ servers in the network. The security servers can be defined as sequential groups that are applied as a method for controlling user access to specified services. For example, when the switch attempts to authenticate a user, a request is sent to the first server in the defined group, if there is no response the second server will be tried, and so on. If at any point a pass or fail is returned, the process stops.

The switch supports the following AAA features:

- ◆ Accounting for IEEE 802.1X authenticated users that access the network through the switch.
- ◆ Accounting for users that access management interfaces on the switch through the console and Telnet.
- ◆ Accounting for commands that users enter at specific CLI privilege levels.
- ◆ Authorization of users that access management interfaces on the switch through the console and Telnet.

To configure AAA on the switch, you need to follow this general process:

1. Configure RADIUS and TACACS+ server access parameters. See [“Configuring Local/Remote Logon Authentication” on page 233](#).



2. Define RADIUS and TACACS+ server groups to support the accounting and authorization of services.
3. Define a method name for each service to which you want to apply accounting or authorization and specify the RADIUS or TACACS+ server groups to use.
4. Apply the method names to port or line interfaces.



**Note:** This guide assumes that RADIUS and TACACS+ servers have already been configured to support AAA. The configuration of RADIUS and TACACS+ server software is beyond the scope of this guide, refer to the documentation provided with the RADIUS or TACACS+ server software.

### Configuring Local/ Remote Logon Authentication

Use the Security > AAA > System Authentication page to specify local or remote authentication. Local authentication restricts management access based on user names and passwords manually configured on the switch. Remote authentication uses a remote access authentication server based on RADIUS or TACACS+ protocols to verify management access.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ By default, management access is always checked against the authentication database stored on the local switch. If a remote authentication server is used, you must specify the authentication sequence. Then specify the corresponding parameters for the remote authentication protocol using the Security > AAA > Server page. Local and remote logon authentication control management access via the console port, web browser, or Telnet.
- ◆ You can specify up to three authentication methods for any user to indicate the authentication sequence. For example, if you select (1) RADIUS, (2) TACACS and (3) Local, the user name and password on the RADIUS server is verified first. If the RADIUS server is not available, then authentication is attempted using the TACACS+ server, and finally the local user name and password is checked.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

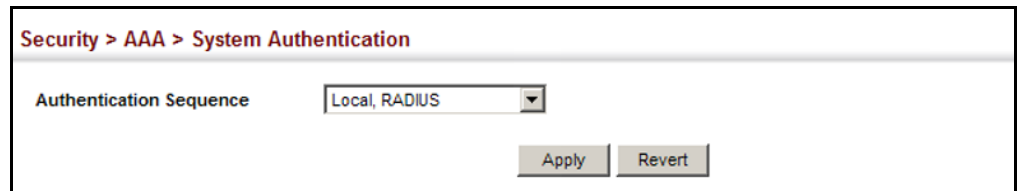
- ◆ **Authentication Sequence** – Select the authentication, or authentication sequence required:
  - **Local** – User authentication is performed only locally by the switch.
  - **RADIUS** – User authentication is performed using a RADIUS server only.
  - **TACACS** – User authentication is performed using a TACACS+ server only.
  - [authentication sequence] – User authentication is performed by up to three authentication methods in the indicated sequence.

### Web Interface

To configure the method(s) of controlling management access:

1. Click Security, AAA, System Authentication.
2. Specify the authentication sequence (i.e., one to three methods).
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 135: Configuring the Authentication Sequence**

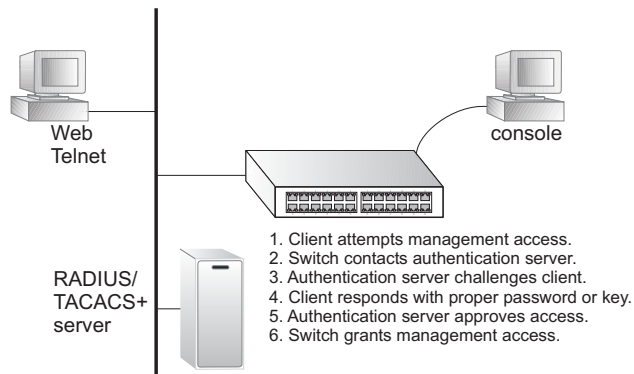


### Configuring Remote Logon Authentication Servers

Use the Security > AAA > Server page to configure the message exchange parameters for RADIUS or TACACS+ remote access authentication servers.

Remote Authentication Dial-in User Service (RADIUS) and Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+) are logon authentication protocols that use software running on a central server to control access to RADIUS-aware or TACACS-aware devices on the network. An authentication server contains a database of multiple user name/password pairs with associated privilege levels for each user that requires management access to the switch.

**Figure 136: Authentication Server Operation**



RADIUS uses UDP while TACACS+ uses TCP. UDP only offers best effort delivery, while TCP offers a more reliable connection-oriented transport. Also, note that RADIUS encrypts only the password in the access-request packet from the client to the server, while TACACS+ encrypts the entire body of the packet.

### Command Usage

- ◆ If a remote authentication server is used, you must specify the message exchange parameters for the remote authentication protocol. Both local and remote logon authentication control management access via the console port, web browser, or Telnet.
- ◆ RADIUS and TACACS+ logon authentication assign a specific privilege level for each user name/password pair. The user name, password, and privilege level must be configured on the authentication server. The encryption methods used for the authentication process must also be configured or negotiated between the authentication server and logon client. This switch can pass authentication messages between the server and client that have been encrypted using MD5 (Message-Digest 5), TLS (Transport Layer Security), or TTLS (Tunneled Transport Layer Security).

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### *Configure Server*

- ◆ **RADIUS**
  - **Global** – Provides globally applicable RADIUS settings.
  - **Server Index** – Specifies one of five RADIUS servers that may be configured. The switch attempts authentication using the listed sequence of servers. The process ends when a server either approves or denies access to a user.
  - **Server IP Address** – Address of authentication server.  
(A Server Index entry must be selected to display this item.)
  - **Accounting Server UDP Port** – Network (UDP) port on authentication server used for accounting messages. (Range: 1-65535; Default: 1813)
  - **Authentication Server UDP Port** – Network (UDP) port on authentication server used for authentication messages. (Range: 1-65535; Default: 1812)
  - **Authentication Timeout** – The number of seconds the switch waits for a reply from the RADIUS server before it resends the request.  
(Range: 1-65535; Default: 5)
  - **Authentication Retries** – Number of times the switch tries to authenticate logon access via the authentication server. (Range: 1-30; Default: 2)
  - **Set Key** – Mark this box to set or modify the encryption key.
  - **Authentication Key** – Encryption key used to authenticate logon access for client. Enclose any string containing blank spaces in double quotes.  
(Maximum length: 48 characters)

- **Confirm Authentication Key** – Re-type the string entered in the previous field to ensure no errors were made. The switch will not change the encryption key if these two fields do not match.

◆ **TACACS+**

- **Global** – Provides globally applicable TACACS+ settings.
- **Server Index** – Specifies the index number of the server to be configured. The switch currently supports only one TACACS+ server.
- **Server IP Address** – Address of the TACACS+ server. (A Server Index entry must be selected to display this item.)
- **Authentication Server TCP Port** – Network (TCP) port of TACACS+ server used for authentication messages. (Range: 1-65535; Default: 49)
- **Authentication Timeout** – The number of seconds the switch waits for a reply from the TACACS+ server before it resends the request. (Range: 1-540; Default: 5)
- **Authentication Retries** – Number of times the switch tries to authenticate logon access via the authentication server. (Range: 1-30; Default: 2)
- **Set Key** – Mark this box to set or modify the encryption key.
- **Authentication Key** – Encryption key used to authenticate logon access for client. Enclose any string containing blank spaces in double quotes. (Maximum length: 48 characters)
- **Confirm Authentication Key** – Re-type the string entered in the previous field to ensure no errors were made. The switch will not change the encryption key if these two fields do not match.

*Configure Group*

- ◆ **Server Type** – Select RADIUS or TACACS+ server.
- ◆ **Group Name** - Defines a name for the RADIUS or TACACS+ server group. (Range: 1-64 characters)
- ◆ **Sequence at Priority** - Specifies the server and sequence to use for the group. (Range: 1-5 for RADIUS; 1 for TACACS)

When specifying the priority sequence for a sever, the server index must already be defined (see [“Configuring Local/Remote Logon Authentication” on page 233](#)).

### Web Interface

To configure the parameters for RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication:

1. Click Security, AAA, Server.
2. Select Configure Server from the Step list.
3. Select RADIUS or TACACS+ server type.
4. Select Global to specify the parameters that apply globally to all specified servers, or select a specific Server Index to specify the parameters that apply to a specific server.
5. To set or modify the authentication key, mark the Set Key box, enter the key, and then confirm it
6. Click Apply.

**Figure 137: Configuring Remote Authentication Server (RADIUS)**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring a Remote Authentication Server (RADIUS). The breadcrumb navigation is "Security > AAA > Server". The "Server Type" is set to "RADIUS" (selected with a radio button) and "TACACS+" is unselected. The "Global" option is unselected, and "Server Index" is set to "1" (selected with a radio button). The configuration fields are as follows:

Server IP Address	10.1.1.1
Accounting Server UDP Port (1-65535)	1813
Authentication Server UDP Port (1-65535)	1815
Authentication Timeout (1-65535)	10 sec
Authentication Retries (1-30)	5
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Set Key	
Authentication Key	.....
Confirm Authentication Key	.....

At the bottom right, there are "Apply" and "Revert" buttons.

**Figure 138: Configuring Remote Authentication Server (TACACS+)**

The screenshot shows the configuration page for a TACACS+ server. The breadcrumb is 'Security > AAA > Server'. The 'Step' dropdown is set to '1. Configure Server'. Under 'Server Type', 'RADIUS' is unselected and 'TACACS+' is selected. The 'Global' radio button is unselected, and 'Server Index' is set to '1'. The 'Server IP Address' field contains '10.20.30.40'. The 'Authentication Server TCP Port (1-65535)' field contains '200'. The 'Authentication Timeout (1-540)' field contains '10' with 'sec' to its right. The 'Authentication Retries (1-30)' field contains '5'. The 'Set Key' checkbox is checked. The 'Authentication Key' and 'Confirm Authentication Key' fields both contain masked characters (dots). 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons are at the bottom right.

To configure the RADIUS or TACACS+ server groups to use for accounting and authorization:

1. Click Security, AAA, Server.
2. Select Configure Group from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Select RADIUS or TACACS+ server type.
5. Enter the group name, followed by the index of the server to use for each priority level.
6. Click Apply.

**Figure 139: Configuring AAA Server Groups**

The screenshot shows the configuration page for a RADIUS server group. The breadcrumb is 'Security > AAA > Server'. The 'Step' dropdown is set to '2. Configure Group' and the 'Action' dropdown is set to 'Add'. Under 'Server Type', 'RADIUS' is selected and 'TACACS+' is unselected. The 'RADIUS Group Name' field contains 'radius'. The 'Sequence At Priority 1' dropdown is set to '1'. The 'Sequence At Priority 2' dropdown is set to '3'. The 'Sequence At Priority 3' dropdown is set to '5'. The 'Sequence At Priority 4' dropdown is set to '2'. The 'Sequence At Priority 5' dropdown is set to 'None'. 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons are at the bottom right.

To show the RADIUS or TACACS+ server groups used for accounting and authorization:

1. Click Security, AAA, Server.
2. Select Configure Group from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 140: Showing AAA Server Groups**

The screenshot shows the 'Security > AAA > Server' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail and a navigation bar with 'Step: 2. Configure Group' and 'Action: Show'. Below this, there are radio buttons for 'Server Type' with 'RADIUS' selected and 'TACACS+' unselected. A section titled 'RADIUS Group List' indicates a total of 3 groups. A table with three columns is displayed: a checkbox column, a 'Group Name' column, and a 'Member Index' column. The table contains three rows: 'radius' with member index '1, 2, 3, 5', 'radius1' with member index '3, 5, 1', and 'radius2' with member index '1, 2, 5'. At the bottom of the table are 'Delete' and 'Revert' buttons.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Group Name	Member Index
<input type="checkbox"/>	radius	1, 2, 3, 5
<input type="checkbox"/>	radius1	3, 5, 1
<input type="checkbox"/>	radius2	1, 2, 5

## Configuring AAA Accounting

Use the Security > AAA > Accounting page to enable accounting of requested services for billing or security purposes, and also to display the configured accounting methods, the methods applied to specific interfaces, and basic accounting information recorded for user sessions.

### Command Usage

AAA authentication through a RADIUS or TACACS+ server must be enabled before accounting is enabled.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### *Configure Global*

- ◆ **Periodic Update** - Specifies the interval at which the local accounting service updates information for all users on the system to the accounting server. (Range: 1-2147483647 minutes; Default: 1 minute)

#### *Configure Method*

- ◆ **Accounting Type** – Specifies the service as:
  - **802.1X** – Accounting for end users.
  - **Command** - Enables the accounting of Exec mode commands.

- **Exec** – Administrative accounting for local console, Telnet, or SSH connections.
- ◆ **Method Name** – Specifies an accounting method for service requests. The “default” methods are used for a requested service if no other methods have been defined. (Range: 1-64 characters)  
  
Note that the method name is only used to describe the accounting method configured on the specified RADIUS or TACACS+ servers. No information is sent to the servers about the method to use.
- ◆ **Accounting Notice** – Records user activity from log-in to log-off point.
- ◆ **Server Group Name** - Specifies the accounting server group. (Range: 1-64 characters)  
  
The group names “radius” and “tacacs+” specifies all configured RADIUS and TACACS+ hosts (see [“Configuring Local/Remote Logon Authentication” on page 233](#)). Any other group name refers to a server group configured on the Security > AAA > Server (Configure Group) page.

#### *Configure Service*

- ◆ **Accounting Type** – Specifies the service as 802.1X, Command or Exec as described in the preceding section.
- ◆ **802.1X**
  - **Method Name** – Specifies a user defined accounting method to apply to an interface. This method must be defined in the Configure Method page. (Range: 1-64 characters)
- ◆ **Command**
  - **Privilege Level**– The privilege levels 0 to 15 that the command accounting Console and VTY methods are applied for.
  - **Console Method Name** – Specifies a user defined accounting method to apply to the console connections. This method must be defined in the Configure Method page. (Range: 1-64 characters)
  - **VTY Method Name** – Specifies a user defined method name to apply to Telnet and SSH connections. This method must be defined in the Configure Method page. (Range: 1-64 characters)
- ◆ **Exec**
  - **Console Method Name** – Specifies a user defined accounting method to apply to the console connections. This method must be defined in the Configure Method page. (Range: 1-64 characters)



- **VTY Method Name** – Specifies a user defined method name to apply to Telnet and SSH connections. This method must be defined in the Configure Method page. (Range: 1-64 characters)

*Show Information – Summary*

- ◆ **Accounting Type** - Displays the accounting service.
- ◆ **Method Name** - Displays the user-defined or default accounting method.
- ◆ **Server Group Name** - Displays the accounting server group.
- ◆ **Interface** - Displays the port, console or Telnet interface to which these rules apply. (This field is null if the accounting method and associated server group has not been assigned to an interface.)

*Show Information – Statistics*

- ◆ **User Name** - Displays a registered user name.
- ◆ **Accounting Type** - Displays the accounting service.
- ◆ **Interface** - Displays the receive port number through which this user accessed the switch.
- ◆ **Time Elapsed** - Displays the length of time this entry has been active.

**Web Interface**

To configure global settings for AAA accounting:

1. Click Security, AAA, Accounting.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Enter the required update interval.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 141: Configuring Global Settings for AAA Accounting**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring AAA Accounting. The breadcrumb path is "Security > AAA > Accounting". Below this, there is a "Step:" dropdown menu currently set to "1. Configure Global". Underneath, there is a section for "Periodic Update (1-2147483647)" which includes a checked checkbox and a text input field containing the number "1", followed by the unit "min". At the bottom right of the configuration area, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

To configure the accounting method applied to various service types and the assigned server group:

1. Click Security, AAA, Accounting.
2. Select Configure Method from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Select the accounting type (802.1X, Exec).
5. Specify the name of the accounting method and server group name.
6. Click Apply.

**Figure 142: Configuring AAA Accounting Methods**

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration interface for AAA Accounting. The breadcrumb navigation is "Security > AAA > Accounting". At the top, there are two dropdown menus: "Step:" set to "2. Configure Method" and "Action:" set to "Add". Below this, there are four main configuration fields:

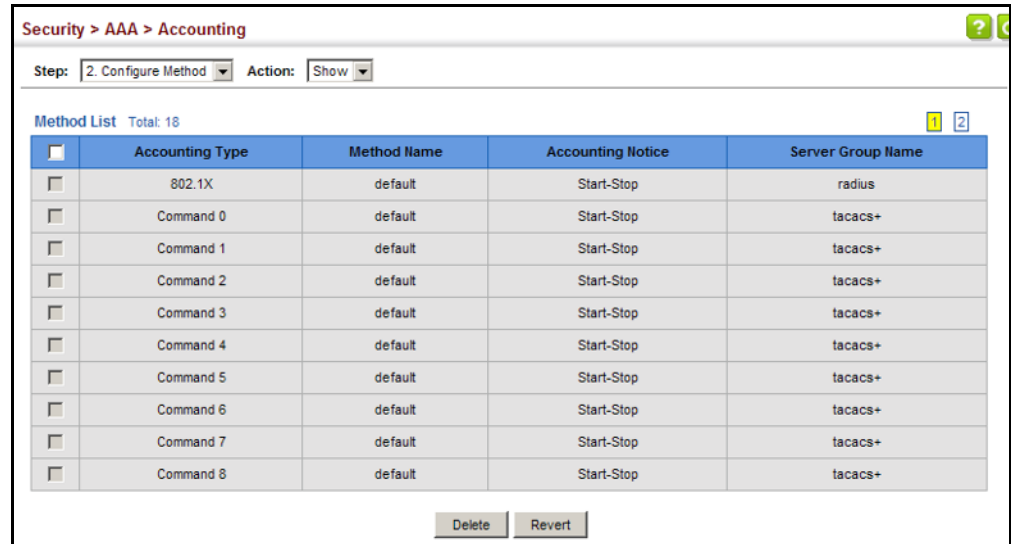
- Accounting Type:** A dropdown menu with "802.1X" selected.
- Method Name:** A text input field containing "default".
- Accounting Notice:** A dropdown menu with "Start-Stop" selected.
- Server Group Name:** A radio button group. The first radio button is selected and is followed by a dropdown menu with "radius" selected. The second radio button is followed by an empty text input field.

At the bottom right of the form, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

To show the accounting method applied to various service types and the assigned server group:

1. Click Security, AAA, Accounting.
2. Select Configure Method from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

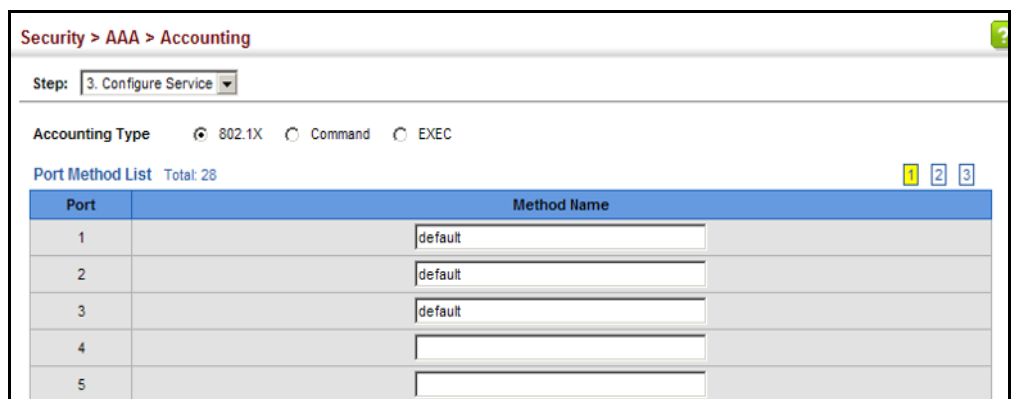
**Figure 143: Showing AAA Accounting Methods**



To configure the accounting method applied to specific interfaces, console commands entered at specific privilege levels, and local console, Telnet, or SSH connections:

1. Click Security, AAA, Accounting.
2. Select Configure Service from the Step list.
3. Select the accounting type (802.1X, Exec).
4. Enter the required accounting method.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 144: Configuring AAA Accounting Service for 802.1X Service**



**Figure 145: Configuring AAA Accounting Service for Exec Service**

Security > AAA > Accounting

Step: 3. Configure Service

Accounting Type  802.1X  Command  EXEC

Console Method Name

VTY Method Name

Apply Revert

To display a summary of the configured accounting methods and assigned server groups for specified service types:

1. Click Security, AAA, Accounting.
2. Select Show Information from the Step list.
3. Click Summary.

**Figure 146: Displaying a Summary of Applied AAA Accounting Methods**

Security > AAA > Accounting

Step: 4. Show Information

Summary  Statistics

Method List Total: 18

Accounting Type	Method Name	Server Group Name	Interface
802.1X	default	radius	
Command 0	default	tacacs+	
Command 1	default	tacacs+	
Command 2	default	tacacs+	
Command 3	default	tacacs+	
Command 4	default	tacacs+	
Command 5	default	tacacs+	
Command 6	default	tacacs+	
Command 7	default	tacacs+	
Command 8	default	tacacs+	

To display basic accounting information and statistics recorded for user sessions:

1. Click Security, AAA, Accounting.
2. Select Show Information from the Step list.
3. Click Statistics.

**Figure 147: Displaying Statistics for AAA Accounting Sessions**

The screenshot shows a web interface for displaying AAA Accounting Statistics. The breadcrumb path is "Security > AAA > Accounting". The current step is "4. Show Information". There are two tabs: "Summary" (unselected) and "Statistics" (selected). Below the tabs, it says "Accounting Statistics Total: 2". A table displays the following data:

User Name	Accounting Type	Interface	Time Elapsed
Bob	802.1X	Eth1/1	3:44:55
Ted	802.1X	Eth1/5	1:24:51

### Configuring AAA Authorization

Use the Security > AAA > Authorization page to enable authorization of requested services, and also to display the configured authorization methods, and the methods applied to specific interfaces.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ This feature performs authorization to determine if a user is allowed to run an Exec shell.
- ◆ AAA authentication through a RADIUS or TACACS+ server must be enabled before authorization is enabled.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

##### Configure Method

- ◆ **Authorization Type** – Specifies the service as:
  - authorization**Exec** – Administrative authorization for local console, Telnet, or SSH connections.
- ◆ **Method Name** – Specifies an authorization method for service requests. The “default” method is used for a requested service if no other methods have been defined. (Range: 1-64 characters)
- ◆ **Server Group Name** - Specifies the authorization server group. (Range: 1-64 characters)  
 The group name “tacacs+” specifies all configured TACACS+ hosts (see [“Configuring Local/Remote Logon Authentication” on page 233](#)). Any other group name refers to a server group configured on the TACACS+ Group Settings page. Authorization is only supported for TACACS+ servers.

##### Configure Service

- ◆ **Authorization Type** – Specifies the service as Exec, indicating administrative authorization for local console, Telnet, or SSH connections.

- ◆ **Console Method Name** – Specifies a user defined method name to apply to console connections.
- ◆ **VTY Method Name** – Specifies a user defined method name to apply to Telnet and SSH connections.

*Show Information*

- ◆ **Authorization Type** - Displays the authorization service.
- ◆ **Method Name** - Displays the user-defined or default accounting method.
- ◆ **Server Group Name** - Displays the authorization server group.
- ◆ **Interface** - Displays the console or Telnet interface to which these rules apply. (This field is null if the authorization method and associated server group has not been assigned to an interface.)

**Web Interface**

To configure the authorization method applied to the Exec service type and the assigned server group:

1. Click Security, AAA, Authorization.
2. Select Configure Method from the Step list.
3. Specify the name of the authorization method and server group name.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 148: Configuring AAA Authorization Methods**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring AAA Authorization. The breadcrumb path is "Security > AAA > Authorization". The "Step:" dropdown is set to "1. Configure Method" and the "Action:" dropdown is set to "Add". The "Authorization Type" is set to "EXEC". The "Method Name" text field contains "default". The "Server Group Name" section has a radio button selected for "tacacs+" and an empty text field below it. At the bottom right, there are "Apply" and "Revert" buttons.

To show the authorization method applied to the EXEC service type and the assigned server group:

1. Click Security, AAA, Authorization.
2. Select Configure Method from the Step list.

3. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 149: Showing AAA Authorization Methods**

<input type="checkbox"/>	Authorization Type	Method Name	Server Group Name
<input type="checkbox"/>	EXEC	default	tacacs+
<input type="checkbox"/>	EXEC	aaa	tacacs1

To configure the authorization method applied to local console, Telnet, or SSH connections:

1. Click Security, AAA, Authorization.
2. Select Configure Service from the Step list.
3. Enter the required authorization method.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 150: Configuring AAA Authorization Methods for Exec Service**

Step: 2. Configure Service

Authorization Type: EXEC

Console Method Name: tps-auth

VTY Method Name: tps-auth

To display a the configured authorization method and assigned server groups for The Exec service type:

1. Click Security, AAA, Authorization.
2. Select Show Information from the Step list.

**Figure 151: Displaying the Applied AAA Authorization Method**

Authorization Type	Method Name	Server Group Name	Interface
EXEC	default	tacacs+	
EXEC	console	tacacs+	Console
EXEC	telnet	tacacs+	Telnet

## Configuring User Accounts

Use the Security > User Accounts page to control management access to the switch based on manually configured user names and passwords.

### Command Usage

- ◆ The default guest name is “guest” with the password “guest.” The default administrator name is “admin” with the password “admin.”
- ◆ The guest only has read access for most configuration parameters. However, the administrator has write access for all parameters governing the onboard agent. You should therefore assign a new administrator password as soon as possible, and store it in a safe place.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **User Name** – The name of the user.  
(Maximum length: 32 characters; maximum number of users: 16)
- ◆ **Access Level** – Specifies command access privileges. (Range: 0-15)  
Level 0, 8 and 15 are designed for users (guest), managers (network maintenance), and administrators (top-level access). The other levels can be used to configured specialized access profiles.  
Level 0-7 provide the same default access to a limited number of commands which display the current status of the switch, as well as several database clear and reset functions. These commands are equivalent to those available under Normal Exec command mode in the CLI.



Level 8-14 provide the same default access privileges, including additional commands beyond those provided for Levels 0-7 (equivalent to CLI Normal Exec command mode), and a subset of the configuration commands provided for Level 15 (equivalent to CLI Privileged Exec command mode).

Level 15 provides full access to all commands.

The privilege level associated with any command can be changed using the “privilege” command described in the *CLI Reference Guide*.

Any privilege level can access all of the commands assigned to lower privilege levels. For example, privilege level 8 can access all commands assigned to privilege levels 7-0 according to default settings, and to any other commands assigned to levels 7-0 using the “privilege” command described in the *CLI Reference Guide*.

◆ **Password Type** – Specifies the following options:

- **No Password** – No password is required for this user to log in.
- **Plain Password** – Plain text unencrypted password.
- **Encrypted Password** – Encrypted password.

The encrypted password is required for compatibility with legacy password settings (i.e., plain text or encrypted) when reading the configuration file during system bootup or when downloading the configuration file from a TFTP or FTP server. There is no need for you to manually configure encrypted passwords.

◆ **Password** – Specifies the user password. (Range: 0-32 characters, case sensitive)

◆ **Confirm Password** – Re-type the string entered in the previous field to ensure no errors were made. The switch will not change the password if these two fields do not match.

### Web Interface

To configure user accounts:

1. Click Security, User Accounts.
2. Select Add from the Action list.
3. Specify a user name, select the user's access level, then enter a password if required and confirm it.
4. Click Apply.

Figure 152: Configuring User Accounts

Security > User Accounts

Action: Add

User Name: bob

Access Level: 15 (Privileged)

Password Type: Plain Password

Password: .....

Confirm Password: .....

Apply Revert

To show user accounts:

1. Click Security, User Accounts.
2. Select Show from the Action list.

Figure 153: Showing User Accounts

Security > User Accounts

Action: Show

User Account List Total: 3

<input type="checkbox"/>	User Name	Access Level
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	15
<input type="checkbox"/>	guest	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	bob	15

Delete Revert

## Web Authentication

Web authentication allows stations to authenticate and access the network in situations where 802.1X or Network Access authentication are infeasible or impractical. The web authentication feature allows unauthenticated hosts to request and receive a DHCP assigned IP address and perform DNS queries. All other traffic, except for HTTP protocol traffic, is blocked. The switch intercepts HTTP protocol traffic and redirects it to a switch-generated web page that facilitates user name and password authentication via RADIUS. Once authentication is successful, the web browser is forwarded on to the originally requested web page. Successful authentication is valid for all hosts connected to the port.



**Note:** RADIUS authentication must be activated and configured properly for the web authentication feature to work properly. (See [“Configuring Local/Remote](#)

[Logon Authentication” on page 233.](#))

**Note:** Web authentication cannot be configured on trunk ports.

---

## Configuring Global Settings for Web Authentication

Use the Security > Web Authentication (Configure Global) page to edit the global parameters for web authentication.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Web Authentication Status** – Enables web authentication for the switch. (Default: Disabled)  
  
Note that this feature must also be enabled for any port where required under the Configure Interface menu.
- ◆ **Session Timeout** – Configures how long an authenticated session stays active before it must re-authenticate itself. (Range: 300-3600 seconds; Default: 3600 seconds)
- ◆ **Quiet Period** – Configures how long a host must wait to attempt authentication again after it has exceeded the maximum allowable failed login attempts. (Range: 1-180 seconds; Default: 60 seconds)
- ◆ **Login Attempts** – Configures the amount of times a supplicant may attempt and fail authentication before it must wait the configured quiet period. (Range: 1-3 attempts; Default: 3 attempts)

### Web Interface

To configure global parameters for web authentication:

1. Click Security, Web Authentication.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Enable web authentication globally on the switch, and adjust any of the protocol parameters as required.
4. Click Apply.

Figure 154: Configuring Global Settings for Web Authentication

Security > Web Authentication

Step: 1. Configure Global

Web Authentication Status  Enabled

Session Timeout (300-3600) 3600 sec

Quiet Period (1-180) 60 sec

Login Attempts (1-3) 3

Apply Revert

### Configuring Interface Settings for Web Authentication

Use the Security > Web Authentication (Configure Interface) page to enable web authentication on a port, and display information for any connected hosts.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** – Indicates the port being configured.
- ◆ **Status** – Configures the web authentication status for the port.
- ◆ **Host IP Address** – Indicates the IP address of each connected host.
- ◆ **Remaining Session Time** – Indicates the remaining time until the current authorization session for the host expires.
- ◆ **Apply** – Enables web authentication if the Status box is checked.
- ◆
- ◆ **Re-authenticate** – Ends all authenticated web sessions for selected host IP addresses in the Authenticated Host List, and forces the users to re-authenticate.
- ◆

#### Web Interface

To enable web authentication for a port:

1. Click Security, Web Authentication.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Set the status box to enabled for any port that requires web authentication, and click Apply.
4. Mark the check box for any host addresses that need to be re-authenticated, and click Re-authenticate.

Figure 155: Configuring Interface Settings for Web Authentication

Security > Web Authentication

Step: 2. Configure Interface

Port: 1

Status:  Enabled

Apply Revert

Authenticated Host List Total: 2

<input type="checkbox"/>	Host IP Address	Remaining Session Time (sec)
<input type="checkbox"/>	10.1.1.1	300
<input type="checkbox"/>	10.2.2.2	100

Re-authenticate Revert

## Network Access (MAC Address Authentication)

Some devices connected to switch ports may not be able to support 802.1X authentication due to hardware or software limitations. This is often true for devices such as network printers, IP phones, and some wireless access points. The switch enables network access from these devices to be controlled by authenticating device MAC addresses with a central RADIUS server.



**Note:** RADIUS authentication must be activated and configured properly for the MAC Address authentication feature to work properly. (See [“Configuring Remote Logon Authentication Servers”](#) on page 234.)

**Note:** MAC authentication cannot be configured on trunk ports.

### Command Usage

- ◆ MAC address authentication controls access to the network by authenticating the MAC address of each host that attempts to connect to a switch port. Traffic received from a specific MAC address is forwarded by the switch only if the source MAC address is successfully authenticated by a central RADIUS server. While authentication for a MAC address is in progress, all traffic is blocked until authentication is completed. On successful authentication, the RADIUS server may optionally assign VLAN and quality of service settings for the switch port.
- ◆ When enabled on a port, the authentication process sends a Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) request to a configured RADIUS server. The user name and password are both equal to the MAC address being authenticated. On the RADIUS server, PAP user name and passwords must be configured in the MAC address format XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX (all in upper case).
- ◆ Authenticated MAC addresses are stored as dynamic entries in the switch secure MAC address table and are removed when the aging time expires. The maximum number of secure MAC addresses supported for the switch system is 1024.

- ◆ Configured static MAC addresses are added to the secure address table when seen on a switch port. Static addresses are treated as authenticated without sending a request to a RADIUS server.
- ◆ When port status changes to down, all MAC addresses mapped to that port are cleared from the secure MAC address table. Static VLAN assignments are not restored.
- ◆ The RADIUS server may optionally return a VLAN identifier list to be applied to the switch port. The following attributes need to be configured on the RADIUS server.
  - **Tunnel-Type** = VLAN
  - **Tunnel-Medium-Type** = 802
  - **Tunnel-Private-Group-ID** = 1u,2t [VLAN ID list]

The VLAN identifier list is carried in the RADIUS “Tunnel-Private-Group-ID” attribute. The VLAN list can contain multiple VLAN identifiers in the format “1u,2t,3u” where “u” indicates an untagged VLAN and “t” a tagged VLAN.

- ◆ The RADIUS server may optionally return dynamic QoS assignments to be applied to a switch port for an authenticated user. The “Filter-ID” attribute (attribute 11) can be configured on the RADIUS server to pass the following QoS information:

**Table 12: Dynamic QoS Profiles**

Profile	Attribute Syntax	Example
DiffServ	<b>service-policy-in</b> = <i>policy-map-name</i>	service-policy-in=p1
Rate Limit	<b>rate-limit-input</b> = <i>rate</i>	rate-limit-input=100 (kbps)
	<b>rate-limit-output</b> = <i>rate</i>	rate-limit-output=200 (kbps)
802.1p	<b>switchport-priority-default</b> = <i>value</i>	switchport-priority-default=2
IP ACL	<b>ip-access-group-in</b> = <i>ip-acl-name</i>	ip-access-group-in=ipV4acl
IPv6 ACL	<b>ipv6-access-group-in</b> = <i>ipv6-acl-name</i>	ipv6-access-group-in=ipV6acl
MAC ACL	<b>mac-access-group-in</b> = <i>mac-acl-name</i>	mac-access-group-in=macAcl

- ◆ Multiple profiles can be specified in the Filter-ID attribute by using a semicolon to separate each profile.  
For example, the attribute “service-policy-in=pp1;rate-limit-input=100” specifies that the diffserv profile name is “pp1,” and the ingress rate limit profile value is 100 kbps.
- ◆ If duplicate profiles are passed in the Filter-ID attribute, then only the first profile is used.  
For example, if the attribute is “service-policy-in=p1;service-policy-in=p2”, then the switch applies only the DiffServ profile “p1.”

- ◆ Any unsupported profiles in the Filter-ID attribute are ignored.  
For example, if the attribute is “map-ip-dscp=2:3;service-policy-in=p1,” then the switch ignores the “map-ip-dscp” profile.
- ◆ When authentication is successful, the dynamic QoS information may not be passed from the RADIUS server due to one of the following conditions (authentication result remains unchanged):
  - The Filter-ID attribute cannot be found to carry the user profile.
  - The Filter-ID attribute is empty.
  - The Filter-ID attribute format for dynamic QoS assignment is unrecognizable (can not recognize the whole Filter-ID attribute).
- ◆ Dynamic QoS assignment fails and the authentication result changes from success to failure when the following conditions occur:
  - Illegal characters found in a profile value (for example, a non-digital character in an 802.1p profile value).
  - Failure to configure the received profiles on the authenticated port.
- ◆ When the last user logs off on a port with a dynamic QoS assignment, the switch restores the original QoS configuration for the port.
- ◆ When a user attempts to log into the network with a returned dynamic QoS profile that is different from users already logged on to the same port, the user is denied access.
- ◆ While a port has an assigned dynamic QoS profile, any manual QoS configuration changes only take effect after all users have logged off the port.

### Configuring Global Settings for Network Access

MAC address authentication is configured on a per-port basis, however there are two configurable parameters that apply globally to all ports on the switch. Use the Security > Network Access (Configure Global) page to configure MAC address authentication aging and reauthentication time.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Aging Status** – Enables aging for authenticated MAC addresses stored in the secure MAC address table. (Default: Disabled)

This parameter applies to authenticated MAC addresses configured by the MAC Address Authentication process described in this section, as well as to any secure MAC addresses authenticated by 802.1X, regardless of the 802.1X Operation Mode (Single-Host, Multi-Host, or MAC-Based authentication as described on [page 299](#)).

Authenticated MAC addresses are stored as dynamic entries in the switch's secure MAC address table and are removed when the aging time expires.

The maximum number of secure MAC addresses supported for the switch system is 1024.

- ◆ **Reauthentication Time** – Sets the time period after which the switch removes an authenticated MAC address from the secure table. When the reauthentication time expires for a secure MAC address, it is removed from the secure MAC address table, and the switch will only perform the authentication process the next time it receives the MAC address packet. (Range: 120-1000000 seconds; Default: 1800 seconds)

### Web Interface

To configure aging status and reauthentication time for MAC address authentication:

1. Click Security, Network Access.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Enable or disable aging for secure addresses, and modify the reauthentication time as required.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 156: Configuring Global Settings for Network Access**

The screenshot shows the 'Security > Network Access' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'Security > Network Access'. Below it, a 'Step:' dropdown menu is set to '1. Configure Global'. The main configuration area has two rows: 'Aging Status' with a checked checkbox and the text 'Enabled', and 'Reauthentication Time (120-1000000)' with a text input field containing '30000' and the unit 'sec'. At the bottom right of the configuration area, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

### Configuring Network Access for Ports

Use the Security > Network Access (Configure Interface) page to configure MAC authentication on switch ports, including enabling address authentication, setting the maximum MAC count, and enabling dynamic VLAN or dynamic QoS assignments.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **MAC Authentication**
  - **Status** – Enables MAC authentication on a port. (Default: Disabled)
  - **Intrusion** – Sets the port response to a host MAC authentication failure to either block access to the port or to pass traffic through. (Options: Block, Pass; Default: Block)



- **Max MAC Count**<sup>5</sup> – Sets the maximum number of MAC addresses that can be authenticated on a port via MAC authentication; that is, the Network Access process described in this section. (Range: 1-1024; Default: 1024)
- ◆ **Network Access Max MAC Count**<sup>5</sup> – Sets the maximum number of MAC addresses that can be authenticated on a port interface via all forms of authentication (including Network Access and IEEE 802.1X). (Range: 1-2048; Default: 1024)
- ◆ **Guest VLAN** – Specifies the VLAN to be assigned to the port when 802.1X Authentication or MAC authentication fails. (Range: 0-4094, where 0 means disabled; Default: Disabled)

The VLAN must already be created and active (see [“Configuring VLAN Groups” on page 149](#)). Also, when used with 802.1X authentication, intrusion action must be set for “Guest VLAN” (see [“Configuring Port Authenticator Settings for 802.1X” on page 299](#)).

A port can only be assigned to the guest VLAN in case of failed authentication, and switchport mode is set to Hybrid. (See [“Adding Static Members to VLANs” on page 152](#).)

- ◆ **Dynamic VLAN** – Enables dynamic VLAN assignment for an authenticated port. When enabled, any VLAN identifiers returned by the RADIUS server through the 802.1X authentication process are applied to the port, providing the VLANs have already been created on the switch. (GVRP is not used to create the VLANs.) (Default: Enabled)

The VLAN settings specified by the first authenticated MAC address are implemented for a port. Other authenticated MAC addresses on the port must have the same VLAN configuration, or they are treated as authentication failures.

If dynamic VLAN assignment is enabled on a port and the RADIUS server returns no VLAN configuration (to the 802.1X authentication process), the authentication is still treated as a success, and the host is assigned to the default untagged VLAN.

When the dynamic VLAN assignment status is changed on a port, all authenticated addresses mapped to that port are cleared from the secure MAC address table.

- ◆ **Dynamic QoS** – Enables dynamic QoS assignment for an authenticated port. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **MAC Filter ID** – Allows a MAC Filter to be assigned to the port. MAC addresses or MAC address ranges present in a selected MAC Filter are exempt from authentication on the specified port (as described under [“Configuring a MAC Address Filter”](#)). (Range: 1-64; Default: None)

---

5. The maximum number of MAC addresses per port is 1024, and the maximum number of secure MAC addresses supported for the switch system is 1024. When the limit is reached, all new MAC addresses are treated as authentication failures.

### Web Interface

To configure MAC authentication on switch ports:

1. Click Security, Network Access.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Click the General button.
4. Make any configuration changes required to enable address authentication on a port, set the maximum number of secure addresses supported, the guest VLAN to use when MAC Authentication or 802.1X Authentication fails, and the dynamic VLAN and QoS assignments.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 157: Configuring Interface Settings for Network Access**

The screenshot shows the 'Security > Network Access' configuration page. The 'Step' dropdown is set to '2. Configure Interface'. The 'General' tab is selected. Below the tabs is a 'Port List' with a total of 28 ports. A table displays the configuration for the first five ports. The table has columns for Port, MAC Authentication (Status, Intrusion, Max MAC Count), Network Access (Max MAC Count), Guest VLAN, Dynamic VLAN, Dynamic QoS, and MAC Filter ID.

Port	MAC Authentication			Network Access Max MAC Count (1-2048)	Guest VLAN (0-4093, 0: Disabled)	Dynamic VLAN	Dynamic QoS	MAC Filter ID (1-64)
	Status	Intrusion	Max MAC Count (1-1024)					
1	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Block	1024	1024	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Block	1024	1024	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Block	1024	1024	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Block	1024	1024	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Block	1024	1024	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/>

### Configuring a MAC Address Filter

Use the Security > Network Access (Configure MAC Filter) page to designate specific MAC addresses or MAC address ranges as exempt from authentication. MAC addresses present in MAC Filter tables activated on a port are treated as pre-authenticated on that port.

### Command Usage

- ◆ Specified MAC addresses are exempt from authentication.
- ◆ Up to 65 filter tables can be defined.
- ◆ There is no limitation on the number of entries used in a filter table.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Filter ID** – Adds a filter rule for the specified filter. (Range: 1-64)

- ◆ **MAC Address** – The filter rule will check ingress packets against the entered MAC address or range of MAC addresses (as defined by the MAC Address Mask).
- ◆ **MAC Address Mask** – The filter rule will check for the range of MAC addresses defined by the MAC bit mask. If you omit the mask, the system will assign the default mask of an exact match. (Range: 000000000000 - FFFFFFFF; Default: FFFFFFFF)

### Web Interface

To add a MAC address filter for MAC authentication:

1. Click Security, Network Access.
2. Select Configure MAC Filter from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Enter a filter ID, MAC address, and optional mask.
5. Click Apply.

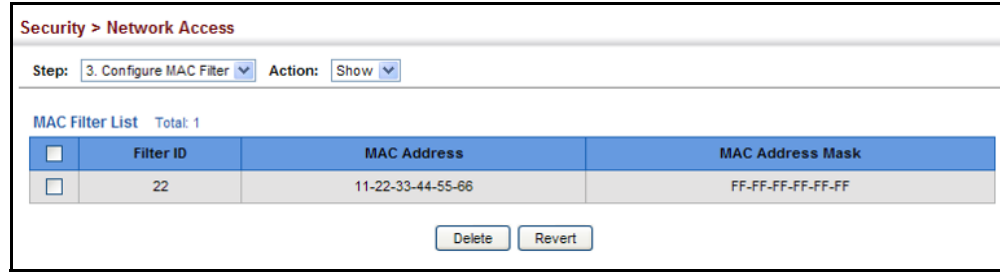
**Figure 158: Configuring a MAC Address Filter for Network Access**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring a MAC address filter. The breadcrumb path is "Security > Network Access". The "Step" dropdown is set to "3. Configure MAC Filter" and the "Action" dropdown is set to "Add". The form contains three input fields: "Filter ID (1-64)" with the value "22", "MAC Address" with the value "11-22-33-44-55-66", and "MAC Address Mask" with the value "FFFFFFFF". At the bottom right of the form are "Apply" and "Revert" buttons.

To show the MAC address filter table for MAC authentication:

1. Click Security, Network Access.
2. Select Configure MAC Filter from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

Figure 159: Showing the MAC Address Filter Table for Network Access



The screenshot shows the 'Security > Network Access' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail 'Security > Network Access'. Below it, there are two dropdown menus: 'Step: 3. Configure MAC Filter' and 'Action: Show'. The main content area is titled 'MAC Filter List' with a 'Total: 1' indicator. It contains a table with the following data:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Filter ID	MAC Address	MAC Address Mask
<input type="checkbox"/>	22	11-22-33-44-55-66	FF-FF-FF-FF-FF-FF

Below the table, there are two buttons: 'Delete' and 'Revert'.

### Displaying Secure MAC Address Information

Use the Security > Network Access (Show Information) page to display the authenticated MAC addresses stored in the secure MAC address table. Information on the secure MAC entries can be displayed and selected entries can be removed from the table.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Query By** – Specifies parameters to use in the MAC address query.
  - **Sort Key** – Sorts the information displayed based on MAC address, port interface, or attribute.
  - **MAC Address** – Specifies a specific MAC address.
  - **Interface** – Specifies a port interface.
  - **Attribute** – Displays static or dynamic addresses.
- ◆ **Authenticated MAC Address List**
  - **MAC Address** – The authenticated MAC address.
  - **Interface** – The port interface associated with a secure MAC address.
  - **RADIUS Server** – The IP address of the RADIUS server that authenticated the MAC address.
  - **Time** – The time when the MAC address was last authenticated.
  - **Attribute** – Indicates a static or dynamic address.

### Web Interface

To display the authenticated MAC addresses stored in the secure MAC address table:

1. Click Security, Network Access.
2. Select Show Information from the Step list.
3. Use the sort key to display addresses based MAC address, interface, or attribute.
4. Restrict the displayed addresses by entering a specific address in the MAC Address field, specifying a port in the Interface field, or setting the address type to static or dynamic in the Attribute field.
5. Click Query.

**Figure 160: Showing Addresses Authenticated for Network Access**

The screenshot shows the 'Security > Network Access' web interface. At the top, the breadcrumb is 'Security > Network Access'. Below it, the 'Step:' dropdown is set to '4. Show Information'. Under 'Query by:', there are three options: 'Sort Key' (set to 'MAC Address'), 'MAC Address' (checkbox), 'Interface' (checkbox), and 'Attribute' (checkbox). The 'MAC Address' field is empty. The 'Interface' dropdown is set to '1'. The 'Attribute' dropdown is set to 'Static'. A 'Query' button is located below these filters. Below the filters, the text 'Authenticated MAC Address List Total: 8' is displayed. A table with 6 columns (checkbox, MAC Address, Interface, RADIUS Server, Time, Attribute) contains 8 rows of data. At the bottom, there are 'Delete' and 'Revert' buttons.

<input type="checkbox"/>	MAC Address	Interface	RADIUS Server	Time	Attribute
<input type="checkbox"/>	00-00-86-45-F2-23	Unit 1 / Port 23	10.2.2.10	2008y 20m 12d 11h 16m 12s	Dynamic
<input type="checkbox"/>	00-00-E8-5E-E1-DD	Unit 1 / Port 23	10.2.2.10	2008y 20m 12d 11h 32m 24s	Dynamic
<input type="checkbox"/>	00-00-E8-81-93-30	Unit 1 / Port 23	10.2.2.10	2008y 20m 12d 11h 40m 32s	Dynamic
<input type="checkbox"/>	00-01-80-31-B8-30	Unit 1 / Port 23	10.2.2.10	2008y 20m 12d 11h 18m 51s	Dynamic
<input type="checkbox"/>	00-01-80-36-95-D8	Unit 1 / Port 23	10.2.2.10	2008y 20m 12d 11h 32m 22s	Dynamic
<input type="checkbox"/>	00-01-80-3B-D3-7F	Unit 1 / Port 23	10.2.2.10	2008y 20m 12d 11h 22m 28s	Dynamic
<input type="checkbox"/>	00-01-80-3C-3C-19	Unit 2 / Port 23	10.2.2.10	2008y 20m 12d 11h 15m 19s	Dynamic
<input type="checkbox"/>	00-01-80-3C-3E-B3	Unit 2 / Port 23	10.2.2.10	2008y 20m 12d 11h 17m 40s	Dynamic

## Configuring HTTPS

You can configure the switch to enable the Secure Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTPS) over the Secure Socket Layer (SSL), providing secure access (i.e., an encrypted connection) to the switch's web interface.

**Configuring Global Settings for HTTPS** Use the Security > HTTPS (Configure Global) page to enable or disable HTTPS and specify the TCP port used for this service.

### Command Usage

- ◆ Both the HTTP and HTTPS service can be enabled independently on the switch. However, you cannot configure both services to use the same TCP port. (HTTP can only be configured through the CLI using the “ip http server” command described in the *CLI Reference Guide*.)
- ◆ If you enable HTTPS, you must indicate this in the URL that you specify in your browser: `https://device[:port_number]`
- ◆ When you start HTTPS, the connection is established in this way:
  - The client authenticates the server using the server's digital certificate.
  - The client and server negotiate a set of security protocols to use for the connection.
  - The client and server generate session keys for encrypting and decrypting data.
- ◆ The client and server establish a secure encrypted connection.  
A padlock icon should appear in the status bar for Internet Explorer 9, Mozilla Firefox 39, or Google Chrome 44, or more recent versions.
- ◆ The following web browsers and operating systems currently support HTTPS:

**Table 13: HTTPS System Support**

Web Browser	Operating System
Internet Explorer 9.x or later	Windows 7, 8, 10
Mozilla Firefox 39 or later	Windows 7, 8, 10, Linux
Google Chrome 44 or later	Windows 7, 8, 10

- ◆ To specify a secure-site certificate, see [“Replacing the Default Secure-site Certificate” on page 263](#).



**Note:** Connection to the web interface is not supported for HTTPS using an IPv6 link local address.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **HTTPS Status** – Allows you to enable/disable the HTTPS server feature on the switch. (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **HTTPS Port** – Specifies the TCP port number used for HTTPS connection to the switch’s web interface. (Range: 1-65535; Default: Port 443)

### Web Interface

To configure HTTPS:

1. Click Security, HTTPS.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Enable HTTPS and specify the port number if required.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 161: Configuring HTTPS**

### Replacing the Default Secure-site Certificate

Use the Security > HTTPS (Copy Certificate) page to replace the default secure-site certificate.

When you log onto the web interface using HTTPS (for secure access), a Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) certificate appears for the switch. By default, the certificate that the web browser displays will be associated with a warning that the site is not recognized as a secure site. This is because the certificate has not been signed by an approved certification authority. If you want this warning to be replaced by a message confirming that the connection to the switch is secure, you must obtain a unique certificate and a private key and password from a recognized certification authority.



**Caution:** For maximum security, we recommend you obtain a unique Secure Sockets Layer certificate at the earliest opportunity. This is because the default certificate for the switch is not unique to the hardware you have purchased.

When you have obtained these, place them on your TFTP server and transfer them to the switch to replace the default (unrecognized) certificate with an authorized one.



**Note:** The switch must be reset for the new certificate to be activated. To reset the switch, see [“Resetting the System” on page 97](#) or type “reload” at the command prompt: `Console#reload`

---

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **TFTP Server IP Address** – IP address of TFTP server which contains the certificate file.
- ◆ **Certificate Source File Name** – Name of certificate file stored on the TFTP server.
- ◆ **Private Key Source File Name** – Name of private key file stored on the TFTP server.
- ◆ **Private Password** – Password stored in the private key file. This password is used to verify authorization for certificate use, and is verified when downloading the certificate to the switch.
- ◆ **Confirm Password** – Re-type the string entered in the previous field to ensure no errors were made. The switch will not download the certificate if these two fields do not match.
- ◆ **Delete** – Deletes the HTTPS secure site certificate. You must reboot the switch to load the default certificate.

### Web Interface

To replace the default secure-site certificate:

1. Click Security, HTTPS.
2. Select Copy Certificate from the Step list.
3. Fill in the TFTP server, certificate and private key file name, and private password.
4. Click Apply.



Figure 162: Downloading the Secure-Site Certificate

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring HTTPS. The title is "Security > HTTPS". Below the title, there is a dropdown menu for "Action" set to "Copy Certificate". There are five input fields: "TFTP Server IP Address" with the value "192.168.0.4", "Certificate Source File Name" with "site-certificate", "Private Key Source File Name" with "private-key", "Private Password" with "\*\*\*\*\*", and "Confirm Password" with "\*\*\*\*\*". At the bottom right, there are "Apply" and "Revert" buttons. At the bottom left, there is a "Delete" button with a tooltip that says "Click this button to delete current certificate."

---

## Configuring the Secure Shell

The Berkeley-standard includes remote access tools originally designed for Unix systems. Some of these tools have also been implemented for Microsoft Windows and other environments. These tools, including commands such as *rlogin* (remote login), *rsh* (remote shell), and *rcp* (remote copy), are not secure from hostile attacks.

Secure Shell (SSH) includes server/client applications intended as a secure replacement for the older Berkeley remote access tools. SSH can also provide remote management access to this switch as a secure replacement for Telnet. When the client contacts the switch via the SSH protocol, the switch generates a public-key that the client uses along with a local user name and password for access authentication. SSH also encrypts all data transfers passing between the switch and SSH-enabled management station clients, and ensures that data traveling over the network arrives unaltered.



**Note:** You need to install an SSH client on the management station to access the switch for management via the SSH protocol.

**Note:** The switch supports both SSH Version 1.5 and 2.0 clients.

---

### Command Usage

The SSH server on this switch supports both password and public key authentication. If password authentication is specified by the SSH client, then the password can be authenticated either locally or via a RADIUS or TACACS+ remote authentication server, as specified on the System Authentication page (page 233). If public key authentication is specified by the client, then you must configure authentication keys on both the client and the switch as described in the following section. Note that regardless of whether you use public key or password authentication, you still have to generate authentication keys on the switch (SSH Host Key Settings) and enable the SSH server (Authentication Settings).

To use the SSH server, complete these steps:

1. *Generate a Host Key Pair* – On the SSH Host Key Settings page, create a host public/private key pair.
2. *Provide Host Public Key to Clients* – Many SSH client programs automatically import the host public key during the initial connection setup with the switch. Otherwise, you need to manually create a known hosts file on the management station and place the host public key in it. An entry for a public key in the known hosts file would appear similar to the following example:

```
10.1.0.54 1024 35 15684995401867669259333946775054617325313674890836547254
15020245593199868544358361651999923329781766065830956 10825913212890233
76546801726272571413428762941301196195566782
595664104869574278881462065194174677298486546861571773939016477935594230357741
309802273708779454524083971752646358058176716709574804776117
```

3. *Import Client's Public Key to the Switch* – See [“Importing User Public Keys” on page 270](#) to copy a file containing the public key for all the SSH client's granted management access to the switch. (Note that these clients must be configured locally on the switch via the User Accounts page as described on [page 248](#).) The clients are subsequently authenticated using these keys. The current firmware only accepts public key files based on standard UNIX format as shown in the following example for an RSA Version 1 key:

```
1024 35
134108168560989392104094492015542534763164192187295892114317388005553616163105
177594083868631109291232226828519254374603100937187721199696317813662774141689
851320491172048303392543241016379975923714490119380060902539484084827178194372
288402533115952134861022902978982721353267131629432532818915045306393916643
steve@192.168.1.19
```

4. *Set the Optional Parameters* – On the SSH Settings page, configure the optional parameters, including the authentication timeout, the number of retries, and the server key size.
5. *Enable SSH Service* – On the SSH Settings page, enable the SSH server on the switch.
6. *Authentication* – One of the following authentication methods is employed:  
*Password Authentication (for SSH v1.5 or V2 Clients)*
  - a. The client sends its password to the server.
  - b. The switch compares the client's password to those stored in memory.
  - c. If a match is found, the connection is allowed.



---

**Note:** To use SSH with only password authentication, the host public key must still be given to the client, either during initial connection or manually entered into the known host file. However, you do not need to configure the client's keys.

---

*Public Key Authentication* – When an SSH client attempts to contact the switch, the SSH server uses the host key pair to negotiate a session key and encryption method. Only clients that have a private key corresponding to the public keys stored on the switch can access it. The following exchanges take place during this process:

*Authenticating SSH v1.5 Clients*

- a. The client sends its RSA public key to the switch.
- b. The switch compares the client's public key to those stored in memory.
- c. If a match is found, the switch uses its secret key to generate a random 256-bit string as a challenge, encrypts this string with the user's public key, and sends it to the client.
- d. The client uses its private key to decrypt the challenge string, computes the MD5 checksum, and sends the checksum back to the switch.
- e. The switch compares the checksum sent from the client against that computed for the original string it sent. If the two checksums match, this means that the client's private key corresponds to an authorized public key, and the client is authenticated.

*Authenticating SSH v2 Clients*

- a. The client first queries the switch to determine if DSA public key authentication using a preferred algorithm is acceptable.
- b. If the specified algorithm is supported by the switch, it notifies the client to proceed with the authentication process. Otherwise, it rejects the request.
- c. The client sends a signature generated using the private key to the switch.
- d. When the server receives this message, it checks whether the supplied key is acceptable for authentication, and if so, it then checks whether the signature is correct. If both checks succeed, the client is authenticated.



**Note:** The SSH server supports up to eight client sessions. The maximum number of client sessions includes both current Telnet sessions and SSH sessions.

**Note:** The SSH server can be accessed using any configured IPv4 or IPv6 interface address on the switch.

---

### Configuring the SSH Server

Use the Security > SSH (Configure Global) page to enable the SSH server and configure basic settings for authentication.



**Note:** You must generate DSA and RSA host keys before enabling the SSH server. See [“Generating the Host Key Pair” on page 269](#).

---

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **SSH Server Status** – Allows you to enable/disable the SSH server on the switch. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Version** – The Secure Shell version number. Version 2.0 is displayed, but the switch supports management access via either SSH Version 1.5 or 2.0 clients.
- ◆ **Authentication Timeout** – Specifies the time interval in seconds that the SSH server waits for a response from a client during an authentication attempt. (Range: 1-120 seconds; Default: 120 seconds)
- ◆ **Authentication Retries** – Specifies the number of authentication attempts that a client is allowed before authentication fails and the client has to restart the authentication process. (Range: 1-5 times; Default: 3)
- ◆ **Server-Key Size** – Specifies the SSH server key size. (Range: 512-896 bits; Default:768)
  - The server key is a private key that is never shared outside the switch.
  - The host key is shared with the SSH client, and is fixed at 1024 bits.

### Web Interface

To configure the SSH server:

1. Click Security, SSH.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Enable the SSH server.
4. Adjust the authentication parameters as required.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 163: Configuring the SSH Server**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring the SSH server. The breadcrumb is "Security > SSH". A dropdown menu shows "Step: 1. Configure Global". The configuration table is as follows:

SSH Server Status	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Version	2.0
Authentication Timeout (1-120)	<input type="text" value="120"/> sec
Authentication Retries (1-5)	<input type="text" value="3"/>
Server-Key Size (512-896)	<input type="text" value="768"/>

At the bottom right, there are "Apply" and "Revert" buttons.

## Generating the Host Key Pair

Use the Security > SSH (Configure Host Key - Generate) page to generate a host public/private key pair used to provide secure communications between an SSH client and the switch. After generating this key pair, you must provide the host public key to SSH clients and import the client's public key to the switch as described in the section "Importing User Public Keys" on page 270.



**Note:** A host key pair must be configured on the switch before you can enable the SSH server. See "Configuring the SSH Server" on page 267.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Host-Key Type** – The key type used to generate the host key pair (i.e., public and private keys). (Range: RSA (Version 1), DSA (Version 2), Both; Default: Both)  
The SSH server uses RSA or DSA for key exchange when the client first establishes a connection with the switch, and then negotiates with the client to select either DES (56-bit) or 3DES (168-bit) for data encryption.



**Note:** The switch uses only RSA Version 1 for SSHv1.5 clients and DSA Version 2 for SSHv2 clients.

- ◆ **Save** – Saves the host key from RAM (i.e., volatile memory) to flash memory. Otherwise, the host key pair is stored to RAM by default. Note that you must select this item from the Show page. (Default: Disabled)

### Web Interface

To generate the SSH host key pair:

1. Click Security, SSH.
2. Select Configure Host Key from the Step list.
3. Select Generate from the Action list.
4. Select the host-key type from the drop-down box.
5. Click Apply.

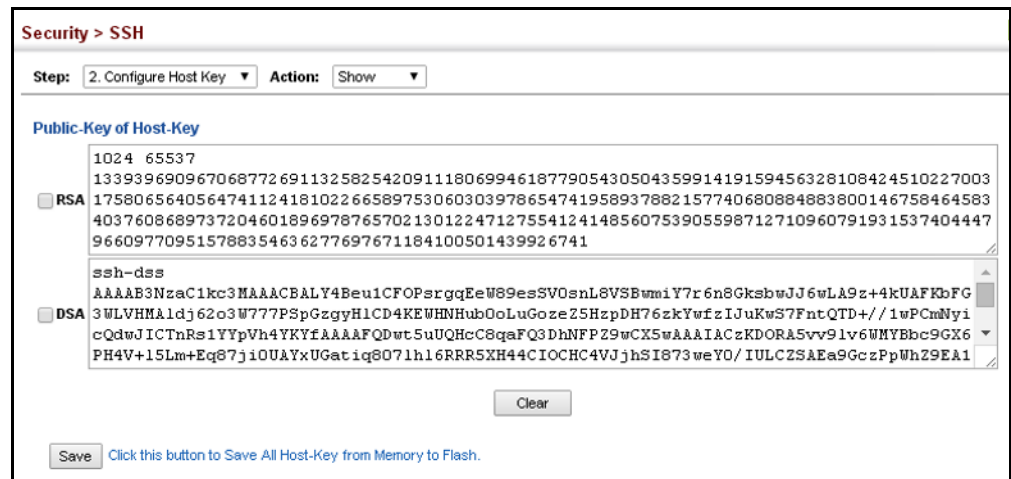
**Figure 164: Generating the SSH Host Key Pair**

The screenshot shows the "Security > SSH" configuration page. At the top, the breadcrumb "Security > SSH" is displayed. Below it, there are two dropdown menus: "Step:" set to "2. Configure Host Key" and "Action:" set to "Generate". Underneath, the "Host-Key Type" is set to "Both" in a dropdown menu. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

To display or clear the SSH host key pair:

1. Click Security, SSH.
2. Select Configure Host Key from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.
4. Select the option to save the host key from memory to flash by clicking Save, or select the host-key type to clear and click Clear.

Figure 165: Showing the SSH Host Key Pair



### Importing User Public Keys

Use the Security > SSH (Configure User Key - Copy) page to upload a user's public key to the switch. This public key must be stored on the switch for the user to be able to log in using the public key authentication mechanism. If the user's public key does not exist on the switch, SSH will revert to the interactive password authentication mechanism to complete authentication.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **User Name** – This drop-down box selects the user who's public key you wish to manage. Note that you must first create users on the User Accounts page (see ["Configuring User Accounts" on page 248](#)).
- ◆ **User Key Type** – The type of public key to upload.
  - RSA: The switch accepts a RSA version 1 encrypted public key.
  - DSA: The switch accepts a DSA version 2 encrypted public key.

The SSH server uses RSA or DSA for key exchange when the client first establishes a connection with the switch, and then negotiates with the client to select either DES (56-bit) or 3DES (168-bit) for data encryption.

The switch uses only RSA Version 1 for SSHv1.5 clients and DSA Version 2 for SSHv2 clients.

- ◆ **TFTP Server IP Address** – The IP address of the TFTP server that contains the public key file you wish to import.
- ◆ **Source File Name** – The public key file to upload.

### Web Interface

To copy the SSH user's public key:

1. Click Security, SSH.
2. Select Configure User Key from the Step list.
3. Select Copy from the Action list.
4. Select the user name and the public-key type from the respective drop-down boxes, input the TFTP server IP address and the public key source file name.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 166: Copying the SSH User's Public Key**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring SSH settings. The breadcrumb is "Security > SSH". The "Step" dropdown is set to "3. Configure User Key" and the "Action" dropdown is set to "Copy". The form contains the following fields:

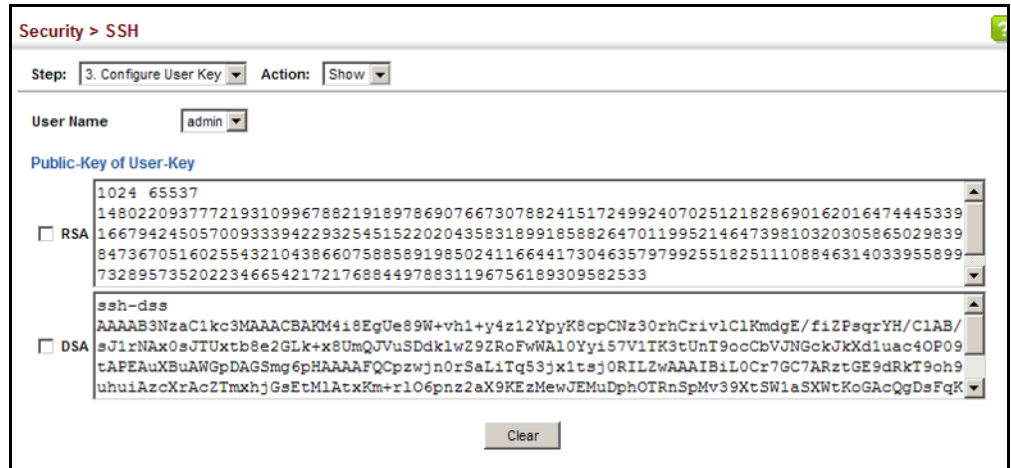
User Name	steve
User-Key Type	RSA
TFTP Server IP Address	192.168.0.61
Source File Name	rsa.pub

At the bottom right of the form are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

To display or clear the SSH user's public key:

1. Click Security, SSH.
2. Select Configure User Key from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.
4. Select a user from the User Name list.
5. Select the host-key type to clear.
6. Click Clear.

Figure 167: Showing the SSH User's Public Key



## Access Control Lists

Access Control Lists (ACL) provide ingress packet filtering for IPv4/IPv6 frames (based on address, protocol, Layer 4 protocol port number or TCP control code), IPv6 frames (based on address, DSCP traffic class, ), or any frames (based on MAC address or Ethernet type). To filter incoming packets, first create an access list, add the required rules, and then bind the list to a specific port.

### Configuring Access Control Lists –

An ACL is a sequential list of permit or deny conditions that apply to IP addresses, MAC addresses, or other more specific criteria. This switch tests ingress packets against the conditions in an ACL one by one. A packet will be accepted as soon as it matches a permit rule, or dropped as soon as it matches a deny rule. If no rules match, the packet is accepted.

### Command Usage

The following restrictions apply to ACLs:

- ◆ ACLs only filter ingress packets or frames.
- ◆ The maximum number of ACLs is 256.
- ◆ The maximum number of rules per system is 512 rules.
- ◆ An ACL can have up to 128 rules.
- ◆ The number of ACLs that can be bound to the switch ports is limited to the following:
  - 128 MAC ACLs I
  - 128 IP ACLs (including Standard and Extended ACLs)
  - 64 IPv6 (Standard ACLs, and IPv6 Extended ACLs)



The maximum number of rules (Access Control Entries, or ACEs) stated is the worst case scenario. In practice, the switch compresses the ACEs in TCAM (a hardware table used to store ACEs), but the actual maximum number of ACEs possible depends on too many factors to be precisely determined. It depends on the amount of hardware resources reserved at runtime for this purpose.

Auto ACE Compression is a software feature used to compress all the ACEs of an ACL to utilize hardware resources more efficiently. Without compression, one ACE would occupy a fixed number of entries in TCAM. So if one ACL includes 25 ACEs, the ACL would need  $(25 * n)$  entries in TCAM, where "n" is the fixed number of TCAM entries needed for one ACE. When compression is employed, before writing the ACE into TCAM, the software compresses the ACEs to reduce the number of required TCAM entries. For example, one ACL may include 128 ACEs which classify a continuous IP address range like 192.168.1.0~255. If compression is disabled, the ACL would occupy  $(128*n)$  entries of TCAM, using up nearly all of the hardware resources. When using compression, the 128 ACEs are compressed into one ACE classifying the IP address as 192.168.1.0/24, which requires only "n" entries in TCAM. The above example is an ideal case for compression. The worst case would be if no any ACE can be compressed, in which case the used number of TCAM entries would be the same as without compression. It would also require more time to process the ACEs.

- ◆ If no matches are found down to the end of the list, the traffic will be permitted. Frequently hit entries should ideally be placed at the top of the list to reduce the number of checks needed. Because the switch stops testing after the first match, the order of the conditions is critical. If no conditions match, the packet will be permitted.

The order in which active ACLs are checked is as follows:

1. User-defined rules in IP and MAC ACLs for ingress ports are checked in parallel.
2. Rules within an ACL are checked in the configured order, from top to bottom.
3. If the result of checking an IP ACL is to permit a packet, but the result of a MAC ACL on the same packet is to deny it, the packet will be denied (because the decision to deny a packet has a higher priority for security reasons). A packet will also be denied if the IP ACL denies it and the MAC ACL accepts it.

### Showing TCAM Utilization

Use the Security > ACL (Configure ACL - Show TCAM) page to show utilization parameters for TCAM (Ternary Content Addressable Memory), including the number policy control entries in use, the number of free entries, and the overall percentage of TCAM in use.

### Command Usage

Policy control entries (PCEs) are used by various system functions which rely on rule-based searches, including Access Control Lists (ACLs), IP Source Guard filter rules, Quality of Service (QoS) processes, QinQ, MAC-based VLANs, VLAN translation, or traps.

For example, when binding an ACL to a port, each rule in an ACL will use two PCEs; and when setting an IP Source Guard filter rule for a port, the system will also use two PCEs.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Pool Capability Code** – Abbreviation for processes shown in the TCAM List.
- ◆ **Unit** – Stack unit identifier.
- ◆ **Device** – Memory chip used for indicated pools.
- ◆ **Pool** – Rule slice (or call group). Each slice has a fixed number of rules that are used for the specified features.
- ◆ **Total** – The maximum number of policy control entries allocated to the each pool.
- ◆ **Used** – The number of policy control entries used by the operating system.
- ◆ **Free** – The number of policy control entries available for use.
- ◆ **Capability** – The processes assigned to each pool.

### Web Interface

To show information on TCAM utilization:

1. Click Security, ACL.
2. Select Configure ACL from the Step list.
3. Select Show TCAM from the Action list.

**Figure 168: Showing TCAM Utilization**

Security > ACL

Step: 1. Configure ACL Action: Show TCAM

Pool Capability Code:

AM - MAC ACL, A4 - IPv4 ACL, A6S - IPv6 Standard ACL,  
A6E - IPv6 extended ACL, DM - MAC diffServ, D4 - IPv4 diffServ,  
D6S - IPv6 standard diffServ, D6E - IPv6 extended diffServ,  
I - IP source guard, C - CPU interface, L - Link local,  
MV - Mac based VLAN, PV - Protocol based VLAN, VV - Voice VLAN,  
R - Routing, Reserved - Reserved, ALL - All supported function,

TCAM List Total: 12

Unit	Device	Pool	Total	Used	Free	Capability
1	0	0	64	0	64	A6S
1	0	1	64	0	64	A6E
1	0	2	128	0	128	A4
1	0	3	128	0	128	AM
1	0	4	64	0	64	D6S D6E
1	0	5	128	0	128	D4
1	0	6	128	0	128	DM
1	0	7	128	128	0	Reserved
1	0	8	64	64	0	I
1	0	9	64	64	0	C
1	0	10	64	64	0	Reserved
1	0	11	64	64	0	L

### Setting the ACL Name and Type

Use the Security > ACL (Configure ACL - Add) page to create an ingress ACL.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **ACL Name** – Name of the ACL. (Maximum length: 32 characters)
- ◆ **Type** – The following filter modes are supported:
  - **IP Standard:** IPv4 ACL mode filters packets based on the source IPv4 address.
  - **IP Extended:** IPv4 ACL mode filters packets based on the source or destination IPv4 address, as well as the protocol type and protocol port number. If the “TCP” protocol is specified, then you can also filter packets based on the TCP control code.
  - **IPv6 Standard:** IPv6 ACL mode filters packets based on the source IPv6 address.
  - **IPv6 Extended:** IPv6 ACL mode filters packets based on the source or destination IP address, as well as DSCP, .
  - **MAC** – MAC ACL mode filters packets based on the source or destination MAC address and the Ethernet frame type (RFC 1060).

- **ARP** – ARP ACL specifies static IP-to-MAC address bindings used for ARP inspection (see “[ARP Inspection](#)” on page 320).

### Web Interface

To configure the name and type of an ACL:

1. Click Security, ACL.
2. Select Configure ACL from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Fill in the ACL Name field, and select the ACL type.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 169: Creating an ACL**

Security > ACL

Step: 2. Configure ACL Action: Add

ACL Name R&D

Type IP Standard

Apply Revert

To show a list of ACLs:

1. Click Security, ACL.
2. Select Configure ACL from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

Figure 170: Showing a List of ACLs

Security > ACL

Step: 2. Configure ACL Action: Show

ACL List Total: 10

<input type="checkbox"/>	ACL Name	Type
<input type="checkbox"/>	acIStandard1	IP Standard
<input type="checkbox"/>	acIStandard2	IP Standard
<input type="checkbox"/>	acIExtended1	IP Extended
<input type="checkbox"/>	acIExtended2	IP Extended
<input type="checkbox"/>	acIMAC1	MAC
<input type="checkbox"/>	acIMAC2	MAC
<input type="checkbox"/>	acIMAC2	MAC
<input type="checkbox"/>	acIPv6Standard	IPv6 Standard
<input type="checkbox"/>	acIPv6Extended	IPv6 Extended
<input type="checkbox"/>	acIARP	ARP

Delete Revert

**Configuring a Standard IPv4 ACL** Use the Security > ACL (Configure ACL - Add Rule - IP Standard) page to configure a Standard IPv4 ACL.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Type** – Selects the type of ACLs to show in the Name list.
- ◆ **Name** – Shows the names of ACLs matching the selected type.
- ◆ **Action** – An ACL can contain any combination of permit or deny rules.
- ◆ **Address Type** – Specifies the source IP address. Use “Any” to include all possible addresses, “Host” to specify a specific host address in the Address field, or “IP” to specify a range of addresses with the Address and Subnet Mask fields. (Options: Any, Host, IP; Default: Any)
- ◆ **Source IP Address** – Source IP address.
- ◆ **Source Subnet Mask** – A subnet mask containing four integers from 0 to 255, each separated by a period. The mask uses 1 bits to indicate “match” and 0 bits to indicate “ignore.” The mask is bitwise ANDed with the specified source IP address, and compared with the address for each IP packet entering the port(s) to which this ACL has been assigned.
- ◆ **Time Range** – Name of a time range.

### Web Interface

To add rules to an IPv4 Standard ACL:

1. Click Security, ACL.
2. Select Configure ACL from the Step list.
3. Select Add Rule from the Action list.
4. Select IP Standard from the Type list.
5. Select the name of an ACL from the Name list.
6. Specify the action (i.e., Permit or Deny).
7. Select the address type (Any, Host, or IP).
8. If you select "Host," enter a specific address. If you select "IP," enter a subnet address and the mask for an address range.
9. Click Apply.

**Figure 171: Configuring a Standard IPv4 ACL**

The screenshot shows the 'Security > ACL' configuration page. The 'Step' is set to '2. Configure ACL' and the 'Action' is 'Add Rule'. Under 'Type', 'IP Standard' is selected. The 'Name' is 'R&D'. The 'Action' is 'Permit', 'Address Type' is 'Host', 'Source IP Address' is '10.1.1.21', and 'Source Subnet Mask' is '255.255.255.255'. The 'Time-Range' checkbox is checked, and its name is 'R&D'. 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons are at the bottom right.

**Configuring an Extended IPv4 ACL** Use the Security > ACL (Configure ACL - Add Rule - IP Extended) page to configure an Extended IPv4 ACL.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Type** – Selects the type of ACLs to show in the Name list.
- ◆ **Name** – Shows the names of ACLs matching the selected type.

- ◆ **Action** – An ACL can contain any combination of permit or deny rules.
- ◆ **Source/Destination Address Type** – Specifies the source or destination IP address type. Use “Any” to include all possible addresses, “Host” to specify a specific host address in the Address field, or “IP” to specify a range of addresses with the Address and Subnet Mask fields. (Options: Any, Host, IP; Default: Any)
- ◆ **Source/Destination IP Address** – Source or destination IP address.
- ◆ **Source/Destination Subnet Mask** – Subnet mask for source or destination address. (See the description for Subnet Mask on [page 277](#).)
- ◆ **Source/Destination Port** – Source/destination port number for the specified protocol type. (Range: 0-65535)
- ◆ **Source/Destination Port Bit Mask** – Decimal number representing the port bits to match. (Range: 0-65535)
- ◆ **Protocol** – Specifies the protocol type to match as TCP, UDP or Others, where others indicates a specific protocol number (0-255). (Options: TCP, UDP, Others; Default: Others)

The following items are under TCP

- **Control Code** – Decimal number (representing a bit string) that specifies flag bits in byte 14 of the TCP header. (Range: 0-63)
- **Control Code Bit Mask** – Decimal number representing the code bits to match. (Range: 0-63)

The control bit mask is a decimal number (for an equivalent binary bit mask) that is applied to the control code. Enter a decimal number, where the equivalent binary bit “1” means to match a bit and “0” means to ignore a bit. The following bits may be specified:

- 1 (fin) – Finish
- 2 (syn) – Synchronize
- 4 (rst) – Reset
- 8 (psh) – Push
- 16 (ack) – Acknowledgement
- 32 (urg) – Urgent pointer

For example, use the code value and mask below to catch packets with the following flags set:

- SYN flag valid, use control-code 2, control bit mask 2
- Both SYN and ACK valid, use control-code 18, control bit mask 18
- SYN valid and ACK invalid, use control-code 2, control bit mask 18

- ◆ **Service Type** – Packet priority settings based on the following criteria:
  - **Precedence** – IP precedence level. (Range: 0-7)
  - **DSCP** – DSCP priority level. (Range: 0-63)
- ◆ **Time Range** – Name of a time range.

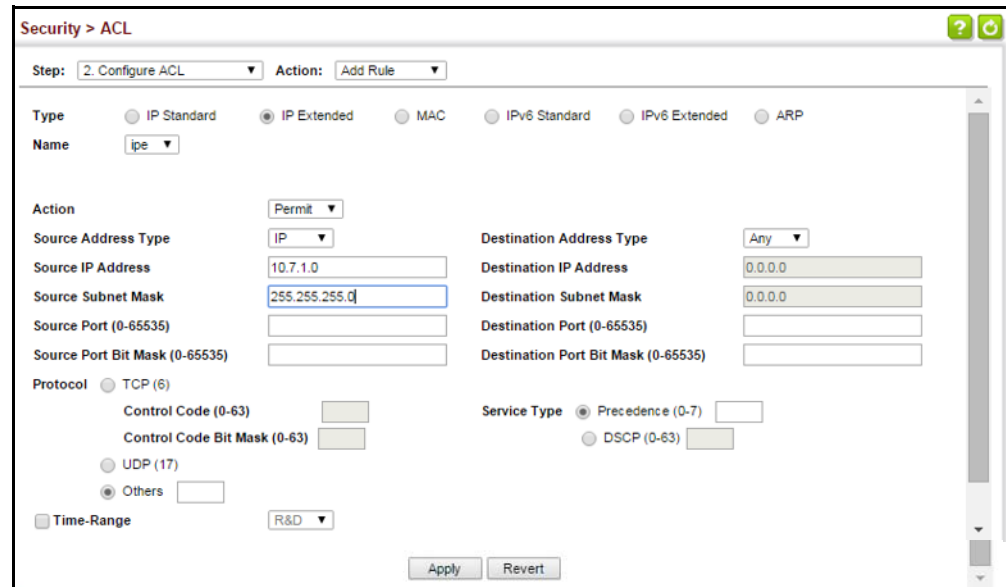
#### **Web Interface**

To add rules to an IPv4 Extended ACL:

1. Click Security, ACL.
2. Select Configure ACL from the Step list.
3. Select Add Rule from the Action list.
4. Select IP Extended from the Type list.
5. Select the name of an ACL from the Name list.
6. Specify the action (i.e., Permit or Deny).
7. Select the address type (Any, Host, or IP).
8. If you select "Host," enter a specific address. If you select "IP," enter a subnet address and the mask for an address range.
9. Set any other required criteria, such as service type, protocol type, or control code.
10. Click Apply.



**Figure 172: Configuring an Extended IPv4 ACL**



**Configuring a Standard IPv6 ACL** Use the Security > ACL (Configure ACL - Add Rule - IPv6 Standard) page to configure a Standard IPv6 ACL.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Type** – Selects the type of ACLs to show in the Name list.
- ◆ **Name** – Shows the names of ACLs matching the selected type.
- ◆ **Action** – An ACL can contain any combination of permit or deny rules.
- ◆ **Source Address Type** – Specifies the source IP address. Use “Any” to include all possible addresses, “Host” to specify a specific host address in the Address field, or “IPv6-Prefix” to specify a range of addresses. (Options: Any, Host, IPv6-Prefix; Default: Any)
- ◆ **Source IPv6 Address** – An IPv6 source address or network class. The address must be formatted according to RFC 2373 “IPv6 Addressing Architecture,” using 8 colon-separated 16-bit hexadecimal values. One double colon may be used in the address to indicate the appropriate number of zeros required to fill the undefined fields.
- ◆ **Source Prefix-Length** – A decimal value indicating how many contiguous bits (from the left) of the address comprise the prefix (i.e., the network portion of the address). (Range: 0-128 bits)
- ◆ **Time Range** – Name of a time range.

### Web Interface

To add rules to a Standard IPv6 ACL:

1. Click Security, ACL.
2. Select Configure ACL from the Step list.
3. Select Add Rule from the Action list.
4. Select IPv6 Standard from the Type list.
5. Select the name of an ACL from the Name list.
6. Specify the action (i.e., Permit or Deny).
7. Select the source address type (Any, Host, or IPv6-prefix).
8. If you select "Host," enter a specific address. If you select "IPv6-prefix," enter a subnet address and the prefix length.
9. Click Apply.

**Figure 173: Configuring a Standard IPv6 ACL**

The screenshot shows the 'Security > ACL' configuration page. At the top, the breadcrumb is 'Security > ACL'. Below it, there are two dropdown menus: 'Step: 2. Configure ACL' and 'Action: Add Rule'. The 'Type' section has radio buttons for 'IP Standard', 'IP Extended', 'MAC', 'IPv6 Standard' (which is selected), 'IPv6 Extended', and 'ARP'. The 'Name' field is a dropdown menu showing 'R&D#6S'. The 'Action' field is a dropdown menu showing 'Permit'. The 'Source Address Type' field is a dropdown menu showing 'Host'. The 'Source IPv6 Address' field is a text input containing '2009:DB9:2229::79'. The 'Source Prefix Length (0-128)' field is a text input containing '128'. There is a checkbox for 'Time-Range' which is unchecked, and a dropdown menu next to it showing 'R&D'. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

**Configuring an Extended IPv6 ACL** Use the Security > ACL (Configure ACL - Add Rule - IPv6 Extended) page to configure an Extended IPv6 ACL.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Type** – Selects the type of ACLs to show in the Name list.
- ◆ **Name** – Shows the names of ACLs matching the selected type.

- ◆ **Action** – An ACL can contain any combination of permit or deny rules.
- ◆ **Source Address Type** – Specifies the source IP address type. Use “Any” to include all possible addresses, “Host” to specify a specific host address in the Address field, or “IPv6-Prefix” to specify a range of addresses. (Options: Any, Host, IPv6-Prefix; Default: Any)
- ◆ **Destination Address Type** – Specifies the destination IP address type. Use “Any” to include all possible addresses, or “IPv6-Prefix” to specify a range of addresses. (Options: Any, IPv6-Prefix; Default: Any)
- ◆ **Source/Destination IPv6 Address** – An IPv6 address or network class. The address must be formatted according to RFC 2373 “IPv6 Addressing Architecture,” using 8 colon-separated 16-bit hexadecimal values. One double colon may be used in the address to indicate the appropriate number of zeros required to fill the undefined fields.
- ◆ **Source/Destination Prefix-Length** – A decimal value indicating how many contiguous bits (from the left) of the address comprise the prefix; i.e., the network portion of the address. (Range: 0-128 bits for the source prefix; 0-8 bits for the destination prefix)
- ◆ **DSCP** – DSCP traffic class. (Range: 0-63)
- ◆ **Next Header** - Identifies the type of header immediately following the IPv6 header. (Range: 0-255)
- ◆ **Source Port** – Protocol<sup>6</sup> source port number. (Range: 0-65535)
- ◆ **Source Port Bit Mask** – Decimal number representing the port bits to match. (Range: 0-65535)
- ◆ **Destination Port** – Protocol<sup>6</sup> destination port number. (Range: 0-65535)
- ◆ **Destination Port Bit Mask** – Decimal number representing the port bits to match. (Range: 0-65535)
  
- ◆ **Time Range** – Name of a time range.

### Web Interface

To add rules to an Extended IPv6 ACL:

1. Click Security, ACL.
2. Select Configure ACL from the Step list.

---

6. Includes TCP, UDP or other protocol types.

3. Select Add Rule from the Action list.
4. Select IPv6 Extended from the Type list.
5. Select the name of an ACL from the Name list.
6. Specify the action (i.e., Permit or Deny).
7. Select the address type (Any or IPv6-prefix).
8. If you select "Host," enter a specific address. If you select "IPv6-prefix," enter a subnet address and prefix length.
9. Set any other required criteria, such as DSCP .
10. Click Apply.

Figure 174: Configuring an Extended IPv6 ACL

The screenshot shows the 'Security > ACL' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'Security > ACL' and a status bar with a question mark and refresh icon. Below this, the 'Step' is set to '2. Configure ACL' and the 'Action' is 'Add Rule'. The main configuration area contains the following fields:

- Action: Permit (dropdown)
- Source Address Type: Any (dropdown)
- Source IPv6 Address: :: (text input)
- Source Prefix Length (0-128): 0 (text input)
- Destination Address Type: Any (dropdown)
- Destination IPv6 Address: :: (text input)
- Destination Prefix Length (0-128): 0 (text input)
- DSCP (0-63): (text input)
- Next-Header (0-255): (text input)
- Source Port (0-65535): (text input)
- Source Port Bit Mask (0-65535): (text input)
- Destination Port (0-65535): (text input)
- Destination Port Bit Mask (0-65535): (text input)
- Time-Range:  R&D (checkbox and dropdown)

At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons.

**Configuring a MAC ACL** Use the Security > ACL (Configure ACL - Add Rule - MAC) page to configure a MAC ACL based on hardware addresses, packet format, and Ethernet type.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Type** – Selects the type of ACLs to show in the Name list.
- ◆ **Name** – Shows the names of ACLs matching the selected type.
- ◆ **Action** – An ACL can contain any combination of permit or deny rules.

- ◆ **Source/Destination Address Type** – Use “Any” to include all possible addresses, “Host” to indicate a specific MAC address, or “MAC” to specify an address range with the Address and Bit Mask fields. (Options: Any, Host, MAC; Default: Any)
- ◆ **Source/Destination MAC Address** – Source or destination MAC address.
- ◆ **Source/Destination Bit Mask** – Hexadecimal mask for source or destination MAC address.
- ◆ **Packet Format** – This attribute includes the following packet types:
  - **Any** – Any Ethernet packet type.
  - **Untagged-eth2** – Untagged Ethernet II packets.
  - **Untagged-802.3** – Untagged Ethernet 802.3 packets.
  - **Tagged-eth2** – Tagged Ethernet II packets.
  - **Tagged-802.3** – Tagged Ethernet 802.3 packets.
- ◆ **VID** – VLAN ID. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **VID Bit Mask** – VLAN bit mask. (Range: 0-4095)
- ◆ **Ethernet Type** – This option can only be used to filter Ethernet II formatted packets. (Range: 0-ffff hex.)

A detailed listing of Ethernet protocol types can be found in RFC 1060. A few of the more common types include 0800 (IP), 0806 (ARP), 8137 (IPX).
- ◆ **Ethernet Type Bit Mask** – Protocol bit mask. (Range: 0-ffff hex)
- ◆ **CoS** – CoS value. (Range: 0-7, where 7 is the highest priority)
- ◆ **CoS Bit Mask** – CoS bitmask. (Range: 0-7)
- ◆ **Time Range** – Name of a time range.

### Web Interface

To add rules to a MAC ACL:

1. Click Security, ACL.
2. Select Configure ACL from the Step list.
3. Select Add Rule from the Action list.
4. Select MAC from the Type list.
5. Select the name of an ACL from the Name list.

6. Specify the action (i.e., Permit or Deny).
7. Select the address type (Any, Host, or MAC).
8. If you select “Host,” enter a specific address (e.g., 11-22-33-44-55-66). If you select “MAC,” enter a base address and a hexadecimal bit mask for an address range.
9. Set any other required criteria, such as VID, Ethernet type, or packet format.
10. Click Apply.

**Figure 175: Configuring a MAC ACL**

The screenshot shows the 'Security > ACL' configuration page. At the top, it indicates 'Step: 2. Configure ACL' and 'Action: Add Rule'. The 'Type' section has radio buttons for 'IP Standard', 'IP Extended', 'MAC' (selected), 'IPv6 Standard', 'IPv6 Extended', and 'ARP'. The 'Name' field contains 'mac'. The 'Action' dropdown is set to 'Permit'. The 'Source Address Type' is 'Any', and the 'Destination Address Type' is also 'Any'. Both 'Source MAC Address' and 'Destination MAC Address' fields contain '00-00-00-00-00-00'. Similarly, both 'Source Bit Mask' and 'Destination Bit Mask' fields contain '00-00-00-00-00-00'. The 'Packet Format' dropdown is set to 'Any'. There are empty input fields for 'VID (1-4094)', 'VID Bit Mask (0-4095)', 'CoS (0-7)', and 'CoS Bit Mask (0-7)'. The 'Time-Range' checkbox is unchecked, and the dropdown is set to 'R&D'. At the bottom, there are 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons.

**Configuring an ARP ACL** Use the Security > ACL (Configure ACL - Add Rule - ARP) page to configure ACLs based on ARP message addresses. ARP Inspection can then use these ACLs to filter suspicious traffic (see [“Configuring Global Settings for ARP Inspection” on page 321](#)).

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Type** – Selects the type of ACLs to show in the Name list.
- ◆ **Name** – Shows the names of ACLs matching the selected type.
- ◆ **Action** – An ACL can contain any combination of permit or deny rules.

- ◆ **Packet Type** – Indicates an ARP request, ARP response, or either type. (Range: IP, Request, Response; Default: IP)
- ◆ **Source/Destination IP Address Type** – Specifies the source or destination IPv4 address. Use “Any” to include all possible addresses, “Host” to specify a specific host address in the Address field, or “IP” to specify a range of addresses with the Address and Mask fields. (Options: Any, Host, IP; Default: Any)
- ◆ **Source/Destination IP Address** – Source or destination IP address.
- ◆ **Source/Destination IP Subnet Mask** – Subnet mask for source or destination address. (See the description for Subnet Mask on [page 277](#).)
- ◆ **Source/Destination MAC Address Type** – Use “Any” to include all possible addresses, “Host” to indicate a specific MAC address, or “MAC” to specify an address range with the Address and Mask fields. (Options: Any, Host, MAC; Default: Any)
- ◆ **Source/Destination MAC Address** – Source or destination MAC address.
- ◆ **Source/Destination MAC Bit Mask** – Hexadecimal mask for source or destination MAC address.
- ◆ **Log** – Logs a packet when it matches the access control entry.

### Web Interface

To add rules to an ARP ACL:

1. Click Security, ACL.
2. Select Configure ACL from the Step list.
3. Select Add Rule from the Action list.
4. Select ARP from the Type list.
5. Select the name of an ACL from the Name list.
6. Specify the action (i.e., Permit or Deny).
7. Select the packet type (Request, Response, All).
8. Select the address type (Any, Host, or IP).
9. If you select “Host,” enter a specific address (e.g., 11-22-33-44-55-66). If you select “IP,” enter a base address and a hexadecimal bit mask for an address range.
10. Enable logging if required.

11. Click Apply.

Figure 176: Configuring a ARP ACL

The screenshot shows the 'Security > ACL' configuration page. At the top, it indicates 'Step: 2. Configure ACL' and 'Action: Add Rule'. The 'Type' section has radio buttons for 'IP Standard', 'IP Extended', 'MAC', 'IPv6 Standard', 'IPv6 Extended', and 'ARP', with 'ARP' selected. The 'Name' field is set to 'R&F#7ARP'. The 'Action' is set to 'Permit'. The 'Packet Type' is set to 'IP'. The 'Source IP Address Type' is 'Any', and the 'Destination IP Address Type' is 'Any'. Both source and destination IP addresses and subnet masks are set to '0.0.0.0'. The 'Source MAC Address Type' is 'Any', and the 'Destination MAC Address Type' is 'Any'. Both source and destination MAC addresses and bit masks are set to '00-00-00-00-00-00'. There is a 'Log' checkbox which is unchecked. At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons.

**Binding a Port to an Access Control List** After configuring ACLs, use the Security > ACL (Configure Interface – Configure) page to bind the ports that need to filter ingress traffic to the appropriate ACLs.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Type** – Selects the type of ACLs to bind to a port.
- ◆ **Port** – Port identifier.
- ◆ **ACL** – ACL used for ingress packets.
- ◆ **Time Range** – Name of a time range.
- ◆ **Counter** – Enables counter for ACL statistics.

### Web Interface

To bind an ACL to a port:

1. Click Security, ACL.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select Configure from the Action list.
4. Select IP, MAC or IPv6 from the Type options.
5. Select a port.



6. Select the name of an ACL from the ACL list.
7. Click Apply.

**Figure 177: Binding a Port to an ACL**

**Showing ACL Hardware Counters** Use the Security > ACL > Configure Interface (Show Hardware Counters) page to show statistics for ACL hardware counters.

#### Selection Criteria

Select the setting criteria for the data you wish to view:

- ◆ **Port** – Port identifier. (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **Type** – Selects the type of ACL. (IP Standard, IP Extended, MAC, IPv6 Standard, or IPv6 Extended)
- ◆ **Direction** – Select Ingress (the only option).



**Note:** ACLs that apply to Egress traffic are **not** available.

- ◆ **Query** – Click to display the statistics for selected criteria.

#### IP Standard Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **ACL Name** – The ACL bound to this port.
- ◆ **Action** – Shows if action is to permit or deny specified packets.
- ◆ **Source IP Address** - The source IP address or IP address range the ACL matches.
- ◆ **Time-Range** – Name of a time range.

- ◆ **Hit** – Shows the number of packets matching this ACL.
- ◆ **Clear Counter** – Clears the hit counter for the specified ACL.

#### IP Extended Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **ACL Name** – The ACL bound to this port.
- ◆ **Action** – Shows if action is to permit or deny specified packets.
- ◆ **Source IP Address** - The source IP address or source IP address range the ACL matches.
- ◆ **Destination IP Address** - The destination IP address or destination IP address range the ACL matches.
- ◆ **Source Port** - The source port number for the protocol type.
- ◆ **Destination Port**- The destination port number for the protocol type.
- ◆ **Control Code** – The TCP control code - byte 14 flag bits (0-63). See [page 279](#)
- ◆ **Precedence** – The IP Precedence level
- ◆ **DSCP** – The DSCP priority level
- ◆ **Hit** – Shows the number of packets matching this ACL.
- ◆ **Clear Counter** – Clears the hit counter for the specified ACL.

#### MAC Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **ACL Name** – The ACL bound to this port.
- ◆ **Action** – Shows if action is to permit or deny specified packets.
- ◆ **Source MAC Address** - The source MAC address the ACL matches.
- ◆ **Destination MAC Address** - The destination MAC address the ACL matches.
- ◆ **Packet Format** - The packet type the ACL matches.
- ◆ **VID**- The VLAN ID
- ◆ **Ethernet Type** – The Ethernet protocol type per RFC 1060.

- ◆ **Hit** – Shows the number of packets matching this ACL.
- ◆ **Clear Counter** – Clears the hit counter for the specified ACL.

#### IPv6 Standard Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **ACL Name** – The ACL bound to this port.
- ◆ **Action** – Shows if action is to permit or deny specified packets.
- ◆ **Source IPv6 Address** - The source IPv6 address or IPv6 address range the ACL matches.
- ◆ **Hit** – Shows the number of packets matching this ACL.
- ◆ **Clear Counter** – Clears the hit counter for the specified ACL.

#### IPv6 Extended Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **ACL Name** – The ACL bound this port.
- ◆ **Action** – Shows if action is to permit or deny specified packets.
- ◆ **Destination IPv6 Address** - The destination IPv6 address or IPv6 address range the ACL matches.
- ◆ **Hit** – Shows the number of packets matching this ACL.
- ◆ **Clear Counter** – Clears the hit counter for the specified ACL.

#### Web Interface

To show statistics for ACL hardware counters:

1. Click Security, ACL.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select Show Hardware Counters from the Action list.
4. Select a port.
5. Select a Type of ACL.
6. Select ingress.

Figure 178: Showing ACL Statistics

The screenshot shows the 'Security > ACL' configuration page. At the top, it indicates 'Step: 2. Configure Interface' and 'Action: Show Hardware Counter'. Below this, there are dropdown menus for 'Port' (set to 1), 'Type' (set to IP Standard), and 'Direction' (set to Ingress). A 'Query' button is located to the right of the ACL Name field. The ACL Name is 'rd2'. Below the configuration fields, it says 'Total: 2'. A table displays the ACL statistics:

Action	Source IP Address	Time-Range	Hit	Clear Counter
Deny	47.0.0.1 / 255.0.0.0			
Deny	192.168.2.222			

## Filtering IP Addresses for Management Access

Use the Security > IP Filter page to create a list of up to 15 IP addresses or IP address groups that are allowed management access to the switch through the web interface, SNMP, or Telnet.

### Command Usage

- ◆ The management interfaces are open to all IP addresses by default. Once you add an entry to a filter list, access to that interface is restricted to the specified addresses.
- ◆ If anyone tries to access a management interface on the switch from an invalid address, the switch will reject the connection, enter an event message in the system log, and send a trap message to the trap manager.
- ◆ IP address can be configured for SNMP, web and Telnet access respectively. Each of these groups can include up to five different sets of addresses, either individual addresses or address ranges.
- ◆ When entering addresses for the same group (i.e., SNMP, web or Telnet), the switch will not accept overlapping address ranges. When entering addresses for different groups, the switch will accept overlapping address ranges.
- ◆ You cannot delete an individual address from a specified range. You must delete the entire range, and reenter the addresses.
- ◆ You can delete an address range just by specifying the start address, or by specifying both the start address and end address.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Mode**
  - **Web** – Configures IP address(es) for the web group.

- **SNMP** – Configures IP address(es) for the SNMP group.
  - **Telnet** – Configures IP address(es) for the Telnet group.
  - **All** – Configures IP address(es) for all groups.
- ◆ **Start IP Address** – A single IP address, or the starting address of a range.
  - ◆ **End IP Address** – The end address of a range.

### Web Interface

To create a list of IP addresses authorized for management access:

1. Click Security, IP Filter.
2. Select Add from the Action list.
3. Select the management interface to filter (Web, SNMP, Telnet, All).
4. Enter the IP addresses or range of addresses that are allowed management access to an interface.
5. Click Apply

**Figure 179: Creating an IP Address Filter for Management Access**

Security > IP Filter

Action: Add

Mode  Web  SNMP  Telnet  All

Start IP Address 10.1.2.3

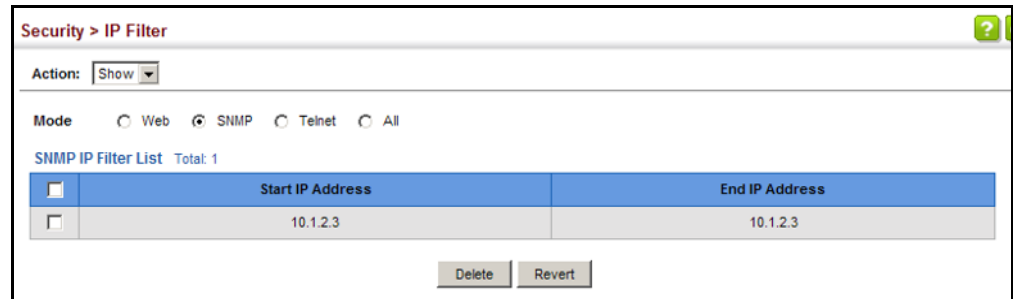
End IP Address

Apply Revert

To show a list of IP addresses authorized for management access:

1. Click Security, IP Filter.
2. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 180: Showing IP Addresses Authorized for Management Access**



## Configuring Port Security

Use the Security > Port Security page to configure the maximum number of device MAC addresses that can be learned by a switch port, stored in the address table, and authorized to access the network.

When port security is enabled on a port, the switch stops learning new MAC addresses on the specified port when it has reached a configured maximum number. Only incoming traffic with source addresses already stored in the address table will be authorized to access the network through that port. If a device with an unauthorized MAC address attempts to use the switch port, the intrusion will be detected and the switch can automatically take action by disabling the port and sending a trap message.

### Command Usage

- ◆ The default maximum number of MAC addresses allowed on a secure port is zero (that is, disabled). To use port security, you must configure the maximum number of addresses allowed on a port.
- ◆ To configure the maximum number of address entries which can be learned on a port, and then specify the maximum number of dynamic addresses allowed. The switch will learn up to the maximum number of allowed address pairs <source MAC address, VLAN> for frames received on the port. When the port has reached the maximum number of MAC addresses, the port will stop learning new addresses. The MAC addresses already in the address table will be retained and will not be aged out.

Note that you can manually add additional secure addresses to a port using the Static Address Table (page 172).

- ◆ When the port security state is changed from enabled to disabled, all dynamically learned entries are cleared from the address table.
- ◆ If port security is enabled, and the maximum number of allowed addresses are set to a non-zero value, any device not in the address table that attempts to use the port will be prevented from accessing the switch.
- ◆ If a port is disabled (shut down) due to a security violation, it must be manually re-enabled from the Interface > Port > General page ([page 102](#)).
- ◆ A secure port has the following restrictions:
  - It cannot be used as a member of a static or dynamic trunk.
  - It should not be connected to a network interconnection device.
  - RSPAN and port security are mutually exclusive functions. If port security is enabled on a port, that port cannot be set as an RSPAN uplink port. Also, when a port is configured as an RSPAN uplink port, source port, or destination port, port security cannot be enabled on that port.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** – Port identifier.
- ◆ **Security Status** – Enables or disables port security on a port. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Port Status** – The operational status:
  - Secure/Down – Port security is disabled.
  - Secure/Up – Port security is enabled.
  - Shutdown – Port is shut down due to a response to a port security violation.
- ◆ **Action** – Indicates the action to be taken when a port security violation is detected:
  - **None:** No action should be taken. (This is the default.)
  - **Trap:** Send an SNMP trap message.
  - **Shutdown:** Disable the port.
  - **Trap and Shutdown:** Send an SNMP trap message and disable the port.
- ◆ **Max MAC Count** – The maximum number of MAC addresses that can be learned on a port. (Range: 0 - 1024, where 0 means disabled)  
The maximum address count is effective when port security is enabled or disabled.

- ◆ **Current MAC Count** – The number of MAC addresses currently associated with this interface.
- ◆ **MAC Filter** – Shows if MAC address filtering has been set under Security > Network Access (Configure MAC Filter) as described on [page 258](#).
- ◆ **MAC Filter ID** – The identifier for a MAC address filter.
- ◆ **Last Intrusion MAC** – The last unauthorized MAC address detected.
- ◆ **Last Time Detected Intrusion MAC** – The last time an unauthorized MAC address was detected.

### Web Interface

To configure port security:

1. Click Security, Port Security.
2. Mark the check box in the Security Status column to enable security, set the action to take when an invalid address is detected on a port, and set the maximum number of MAC addresses allowed on the port.
3. Click Apply

**Figure 181: Configuring Port Security**

Port	Security Status	Port Status	Action	Max MAC Count (0-1024)	Current MAC Count	MAC Filter	MAC Filter ID	Last Intrusion MAC	Last Time Detected Intrusion MAC
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Secure/Down	Trap and Shutdown	0	1	Disabled	0	NA	NA
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Secure/Down	Trap	0	0	Disabled	1	NA	NA
3	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Secure/Down	None	0	0	Disabled	0	NA	NA

## Configuring 802.1X Port Authentication

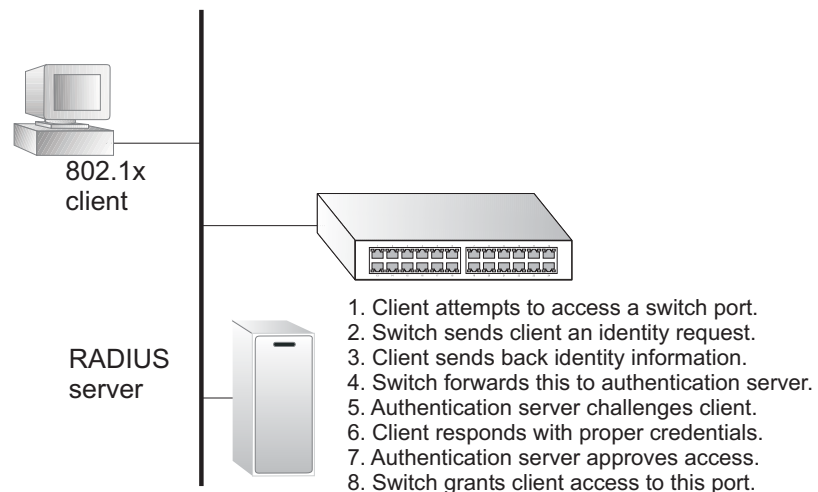
Network switches can provide open and easy access to network resources by simply attaching a client PC. Although this automatic configuration and access is a desirable feature, it also allows unauthorized personnel to easily intrude and possibly gain access to sensitive network data.

The IEEE 802.1X (dot1X) standard defines a port-based access control procedure that prevents unauthorized access to a network by requiring users to first submit credentials for authentication. Access to all switch ports in a network can be centrally controlled from a server, which means that authorized users can use the same credentials for authentication from any point within the network.



This switch uses the Extensible Authentication Protocol over LANs (EAPOL) to exchange authentication protocol messages with the client, and a remote RADIUS authentication server to verify user identity and access rights. When a client (i.e., Supplicant) connects to a switch port, the switch (i.e., Authenticator) responds with an EAPOL identity request. The client provides its identity (such as a user name) in an EAPOL response to the switch, which it forwards to the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server verifies the client identity and sends an access challenge back to the client. The EAP packet from the RADIUS server contains not only the challenge, but the authentication method to be used. The client can reject the authentication method and request another, depending on the configuration of the client software and the RADIUS server. The encryption method used to pass authentication messages can be MD5 (Message-Digest 5), TLS (Transport Layer Security), PEAP (Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol), or TTLS (Tunneled Transport Layer Security). The client responds to the appropriate method with its credentials, such as a password or certificate. The RADIUS server verifies the client credentials and responds with an accept or reject packet. If authentication is successful, the switch allows the client to access the network. Otherwise, non-EAP traffic on the port is blocked or assigned to a guest VLAN based on the “intrusion-action” setting. In “multi-host” mode, only one host connected to a port needs to pass authentication for all other hosts to be granted network access. Similarly, a port can become unauthorized for all hosts if one attached host fails re-authentication or sends an EAPOL logoff message.

**Figure 182: Configuring Port Authentication**



The operation of 802.1X on the switch requires the following:

- ◆ The switch must have an IP address assigned.
- ◆ RADIUS authentication must be enabled on the switch and the IP address of the RADIUS server specified.
- ◆ 802.1X must be enabled globally for the switch.
- ◆ Each switch port that will be used must be set to dot1X “Auto” mode.

- ◆ Each client that needs to be authenticated must have dot1X client software installed and properly configured.
- ◆ The RADIUS server and 802.1X client support EAP. (The switch only supports EAPOL in order to pass the EAP packets from the server to the client.)
- ◆ The RADIUS server and client also have to support the same EAP authentication type – MD5, PEAP, TLS, or TTLS. (Native support for these encryption methods is provided in Windows 8, 7, Vista and XP, and in Windows 2000 with Service Pack 4. To support these encryption methods in Windows 95 and 98, you can use the AEGIS dot1x client or other comparable client software)

### Configuring 802.1X Global Settings

Use the Security > Port Authentication (Configure Global) page to configure IEEE 802.1X port authentication. The 802.1X protocol must be enabled globally for the switch system before port settings are active.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

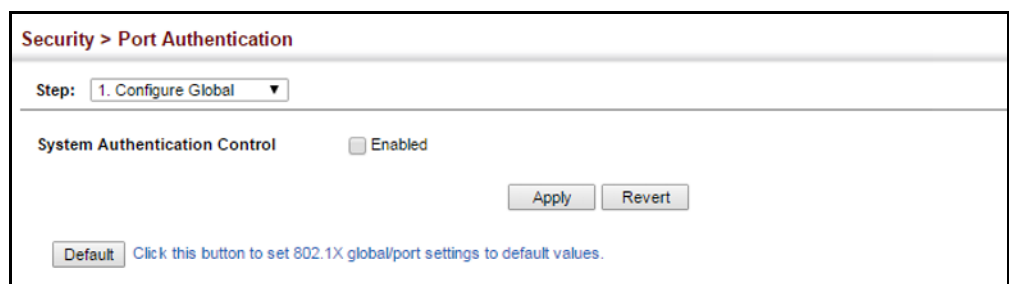
- ◆ **System Authentication Control** – Sets the global setting for 802.1X. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Default** – Sets all configurable 802.1X global and port settings to their default values.

#### Web Interface

To configure global settings for 802.1X:

1. Click Security, Port Authentication.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Enable 802.1X globally for the switch.
4. Click Apply

**Figure 183: Configuring Global Settings for 802.1X Port Authentication**



## Configuring Port Authenticator Settings for 802.1X

Use the Security > Port Authentication (Configure Interface – Authenticator) page to configure 802.1X port settings for the switch as the local authenticator. When 802.1X is enabled, you need to configure the parameters for the authentication process that runs between the client and the switch (i.e., authenticator), as well as the client identity lookup process that runs between the switch and authentication server.

### Command Usage

- ◆ When the switch functions as a local authenticator between supplicant devices attached to the switch and the authentication server, configure the parameters for the exchange of EAP messages between the authenticator and clients on the Authenticator configuration page.
- ◆ This switch can be configured to serve as the authenticator on selected ports by setting the Control Mode to Auto on this configuration page, and as a supplicant on other ports by the setting the control mode to Force-Authorized on this page and enabling the PAE supplicant on the Supplicant configuration page.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** – Port number.
- ◆ **Status** – Indicates if authentication is enabled or disabled on the port. The status is disabled if the control mode is set to Force-Authorized.
- ◆ **Authorized** – Displays the 802.1X authorization status of connected clients.
  - **Yes** – Connected client is authorized.
  - **N/A** – Connected client is not authorized, or port is not connected.
- ◆ **Control Mode** – Sets the authentication mode to one of the following options:
  - **Auto** – Requires a dot1x-aware client to be authorized by the authentication server. Clients that are not dot1x-aware will be denied access.
  - **Force-Authorized** – Forces the port to grant access to all clients, either dot1x-aware or otherwise. (This is the default setting.)
  - **Force-Unauthorized** – Forces the port to deny access to all clients, either dot1x-aware or otherwise.
- ◆ **Operation Mode** – Allows single or multiple hosts (clients) to connect to an 802.1X-authorized port. (Default: Single-Host)
  - **Single-Host** – Allows only a single host to connect to this port.

- **Multi-Host** – Allows multiple host to connect to this port.  
In this mode, only one host connected to a port needs to pass authentication for all other hosts to be granted network access. Similarly, a port can become unauthorized for all hosts if one attached host fails re-authentication or sends an EAPOL logoff message.
- **MAC-Based** – Allows multiple hosts to connect to this port, with each host needing to be authenticated.  
In this mode, each host connected to a port needs to pass authentication. The number of hosts allowed access to a port operating in this mode is limited only by the available space in the secure address table (i.e., up to 1024 addresses).

- ◆ **Max Count** – The maximum number of hosts that can connect to a port when the Multi-Host operation mode is selected. (Range: 1-1024; Default: 5)
- ◆ **Max Request** – Sets the maximum number of times the switch port will retransmit an EAP request packet to the client before it times out the authentication session. (Range: 1-10; Default 2)
- ◆ **Quiet Period** – Sets the time that a switch port waits after the Max Request Count has been exceeded before attempting to acquire a new client. (Range: 1-65535 seconds; Default: 60 seconds)
- ◆ **Tx Period** – Sets the time period during an authentication session that the switch waits before re-transmitting an EAP packet. (Range: 1-65535; Default: 30 seconds)
- ◆ **Supplicant Timeout** – Sets the time that a switch port waits for a response to an EAP request from a client before re-transmitting an EAP packet. (Range: 1-65535; Default: 30 seconds)

This command attribute sets the timeout for EAP-request frames other than EAP-request/identity frames. If dot1x authentication is enabled on a port, the switch will initiate authentication when the port link state comes up. It will send an EAP-request/identity frame to the client to request its identity, followed by one or more requests for authentication information. It may also send other EAP-request frames to the client during an active connection as required for reauthentication.

- ◆ **Server Timeout** – Sets the time that a switch port waits for a response to an EAP request from an authentication server before re-transmitting an EAP packet. (Default: 0 seconds)

A RADIUS server must be set before the correct operational value of 10 seconds will be displayed in this field. (See [“Configuring Remote Logon Authentication Servers”](#) on page 234.)

- ◆ **Re-authentication Status** – Sets the client to be re-authenticated after the interval specified by the Re-authentication Period. Re-authentication can be used to detect if a new device is plugged into a switch port. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Re-authentication Period** – Sets the time period after which a connected client must be re-authenticated. (Range: 1-65535 seconds; Default: 3600 seconds)
- ◆ **Re-authentication Max Retries** – The maximum number of times the switch port will retransmit an EAP request/identity packet to the client before it times out the authentication session. (Range: 1-10; Default: 2)
- ◆ **Intrusion Action** – Sets the port's response to a failed authentication.
  - **Block Traffic** – Blocks all non-EAP traffic on the port. (This is the default setting.)
  - **Guest VLAN** – All traffic for the port is assigned to a guest VLAN. The guest VLAN must be separately configured (See [“Configuring VLAN Groups” on page 149](#)) and mapped on each port (See [“Configuring Network Access for Ports” on page 256](#)).

#### *Supplicant List*

- ◆ **Supplicant** – MAC address of authorized client.

#### *Authenticator PAE State Machine*

- ◆ **State** – Current state (including initialize, disconnected, connecting, authenticating, authenticated, aborting, held, force\_authorized, force\_unauthorized).
- ◆ **Reauth Count** – Number of times connecting state is re-entered.
- ◆ **Current Identifier** – Identifier sent in each EAP Success, Failure or Request packet by the Authentication Server.

#### *Backend State Machine*

- ◆ **State** – Current state (including request, response, success, fail, timeout, idle, initialize).
- ◆ **Request Count** – Number of EAP Request packets sent to the Supplicant without receiving a response.
- ◆ **Identifier (Server)** – Identifier carried in the most recent EAP Success, Failure or Request packet received from the Authentication Server.

#### *Reauthentication State Machine*

- ◆ **State** – Current state (including initialize, reauthenticate).

**Web Interface**

To configure port authenticator settings for 802.1X:

1. Click Security, Port Authentication.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Modify the authentication settings for each port as required.
4. Click Apply

**Figure 184: Configuring Interface Settings for 802.1X Port Authenticator**

**Security > Port Authentication**

Step: 2. Configure interface

Type:  Authenticator

Port: 1

Status: Disabled

Authorized: Yes

Control Mode: Force-Authorized

Operation Mode: Single-Host

Max Count (1-1024): 5

Max Request (1-10): 2

Quiet Period (1-65535): 60 sec

Tx Period (1-65535): 30 sec

Supplicant Timeout (1-65535): 30 sec

Server Timeout: 0 sec

Re-authentication Status:  Enabled

Re-authentication Period (1-65535): 3600 sec

Re-authentication Max Retries (1-10): 2

Intrusion Action: Block Traffic

Supplicant List Total: 1

Supplicant	Authenticator PAE State Machine			Backend State Machine			Reauthentication State Machine
	State	Reauth Count	Current Identifier	State	Request Count	Identifier (Server)	State
00-00-00-00-00-00	Initialize	0	0	Initialize	0	0	Initialize

Apply Revert

**Displaying 802.1X Statistics** Use the Security > Port Authentication (Show Statistics) page to display statistics for dot1x protocol exchanges for any port.

**Parameters**

These parameters are displayed:

**Table 14: 802.1X Statistics**

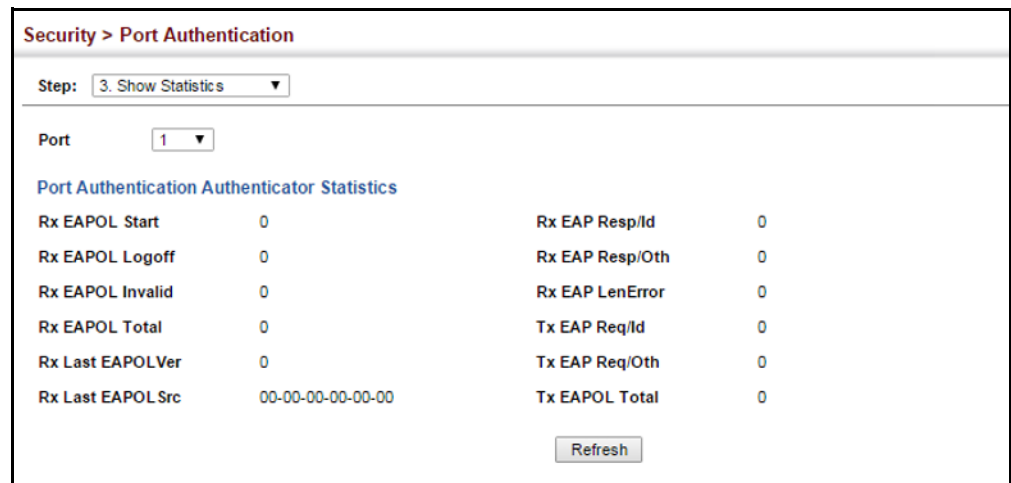
Parameter	Description
<i>Authenticator</i>	
Rx EAPOL Start	The number of EAPOL Start frames that have been received by this Authenticator.
Rx EAPOL Logoff	The number of EAPOL Logoff frames that have been received by this Authenticator.
Rx EAPOL Invalid	The number of EAPOL frames that have been received by this Authenticator in which the frame type is not recognized.
Rx EAPOL Total	The number of valid EAPOL frames of any type that have been received by this Authenticator.
Rx Last EAPOLVer	The protocol version number carried in the most recent EAPOL frame received by this Authenticator.
Rx Last EAPOLSrc	The source MAC address carried in the most recent EAPOL frame received by this Authenticator.
Rx EAP Resp/Id	The number of EAP Resp/Id frames that have been received by this Authenticator.
Rx EAP Resp/Oth	The number of valid EAP Response frames (other than Resp/Id frames) that have been received by this Authenticator.
Rx EAP LenError	The number of EAPOL frames that have been received by this Authenticator in which the Packet Body Length field is invalid.
Tx EAP Req/Id	The number of EAP Req/Id frames that have been transmitted by this Authenticator.
Tx EAP Req/Oth	The number of EAP Request frames (other than Rq/Id frames) that have been transmitted by this Authenticator.
Tx EAPOL Total	The number of EAPOL frames of any type that have been transmitted by this Authenticator.

### Web Interface

To display port authenticator statistics for 802.1X:

1. Click Security, Port Authentication.
2. Select Show Statistics from the Step list.

**Figure 185: Showing Statistics for 802.1X Port Authenticator**



## DoS Protection

Use the Security > DoS Protection page to protect against denial-of-service (DoS) attacks. A DoS attack is an attempt to block the services provided by a computer or network resource. This kind of attack tries to prevent an Internet site or service from functioning efficiently or at all. In general, DoS attacks are implemented by either forcing the target to reset, to consume most of its resources so that it can no longer provide its intended service, or to obstruct the communication media between the intended users and the target so that they can no longer communicate adequately. This section describes how to protect against DoS attacks.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Echo/Chargen Attack** – Attacks in which the echo service repeats anything sent to it, and the chargen (character generator) service generates a continuous stream of data. When used together, they create an infinite loop and result in a denial-of-service. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Echo/Chargen Attack Rate** – Maximum allowed rate. (Range: 64-2000 kbits/second; Default: 1000 kbits/second)
- ◆ **Smurf Attack** – Attacks in which a perpetrator generates a large amount of spoofed ICMP Echo Request traffic to the broadcast destination IP address (255.255.255.255), all of which uses a spoofed source address of the intended



victim. The victim should crash due to the many interrupts required to send ICMP Echo response packets. (Default: Enabled)

- ◆ **TCP Flooding Attack** – Attacks in which a perpetrator sends a succession of TCP SYN requests (with or without a spoofed-Source IP) to a target and never returns ACK packets. These half-open connections will bind resources on the target, and no new connections can be made, resulting in a denial of service. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **TCP Flooding Attack Rate** – Maximum allowed rate. (Range: 64-2000 kbits/second; Default: 1000 kbits/second)
- ◆ **TCP Null Scan** – A TCP NULL scan message is used to identify listening TCP ports. The scan uses a series of strangely configured TCP packets which contain a sequence number of 0 and no flags. If the target's TCP port is closed, the target replies with a TCP RST (reset) packet. If the target TCP port is open, it simply discards the TCP NULL scan. (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **TCP-SYN/FIN Scan** – A TCP SYN/FIN scan message is used to identify listening TCP ports. The scan uses a series of strangely configured TCP packets which contain SYN (synchronize) and FIN (finish) flags. If the target's TCP port is closed, the target replies with a TCP RST (reset) packet. If the target TCP port is open, it simply discards the TCP SYN FIN scan. (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **TCP Xmas Scan** – A so-called TCP XMAS scan message is used to identify listening TCP ports. This scan uses a series of strangely configured TCP packets which contain a sequence number of 0 and the URG, PSH and FIN flags. If the target's TCP port is closed, the target replies with a TCP RST packet. If the target TCP port is open, it simply discards the TCP XMAS scan. (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **UDP Flooding Attack** – Attacks in which a perpetrator sends a large number of UDP packets (with or without a spoofed-Source IP) to random ports on a remote host. The target will determine that application is listening at that port, and reply with an ICMP Destination Unreachable packet. It will be forced to send many ICMP packets, eventually leading it to be unreachable by other clients. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **UDP Flooding Attack Rate** – Maximum allowed rate. (Range: 64-2000 kbits/second; Default: 1000 kbits/second)
- ◆ **WinNuke Attack** – Attacks in which affected the Microsoft Windows 3.1x/95/NT operating systems. In this type of attack, the perpetrator sends the string of OOB out-of-band (OOB) packets contained a TCP URG flag to the target computer on TCP port 139 (NetBIOS), casing it to lock up and display a “Blue Screen of Death.” This did not cause any damage to, or change data on, the computer's hard disk, but any unsaved data would be lost. Microsoft made patches to prevent the WinNuke attack, but the OOB packets. (Default: Disabled)

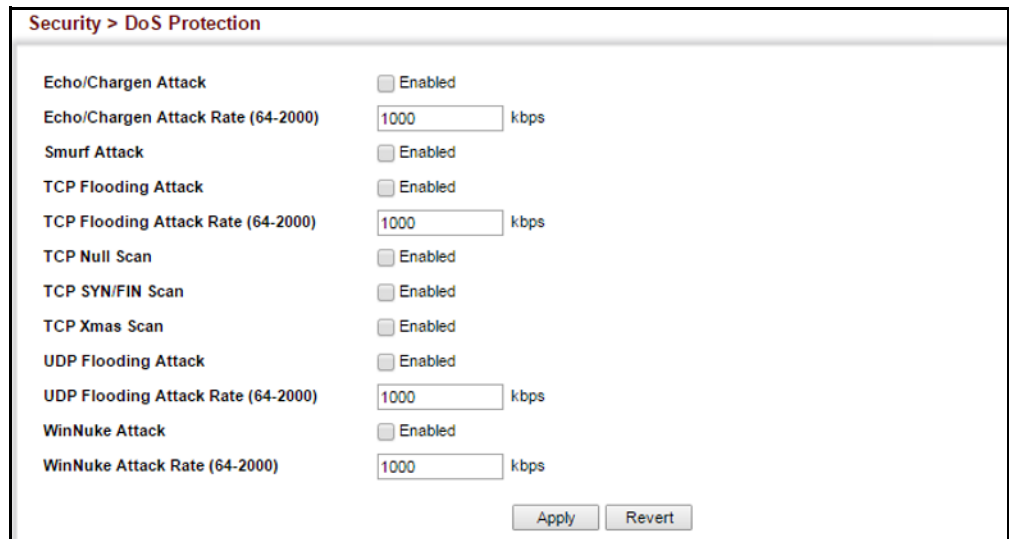
- ◆ **WinNuke Attack Rate** – Maximum allowed rate. (Range: 64-2000 kbits/second; Default: 1000 kbits/second)

### Web Interface

To protect against DoS attacks:

1. Click Security, DoS Protection.
2. Enable protection for specific DoS attacks, and set the maximum allowed rate as required.
3. Click Apply

**Figure 186: Protecting Against DoS Attacks**



## DHCP Snooping

The addresses assigned to DHCP clients on insecure ports can be carefully controlled using the dynamic bindings registered with DHCP Snooping (or using the static bindings configured with IP Source Guard). DHCP snooping allows a switch to protect a network from rogue DHCP servers or other devices which send port-related information to a DHCP server. This information can be useful in tracking an IP address back to a physical port.

### Command Usage

#### *DHCP Snooping Process*

- ◆ Network traffic may be disrupted when malicious DHCP messages are received from an outside source. DHCP snooping is used to filter DHCP messages received on a non-secure interface from outside the network or fire wall. When DHCP snooping is enabled globally and enabled on a VLAN interface, DHCP

messages received on an untrusted interface from a device not listed in the DHCP snooping table will be dropped.

- ◆ Table entries are only learned for trusted interfaces. An entry is added or removed dynamically to the DHCP snooping table when a client receives or releases an IP address from a DHCP server. Each entry includes a MAC address, IP address, lease time, VLAN identifier, and port identifier.
- ◆ The rate limit for the number of DHCP messages that can be processed by the switch is 100 packets per second. Any DHCP packets in excess of this limit are dropped.
- ◆ When DHCP snooping is enabled, DHCP messages entering an untrusted interface are filtered based upon dynamic entries learned via DHCP snooping.
- ◆ Filtering rules are implemented as follows:
  - If the global DHCP snooping is disabled, all DHCP packets are forwarded.
  - If DHCP snooping is enabled globally, and also enabled on the VLAN where the DHCP packet is received, all DHCP packets are forwarded for a *trusted* port. If the received packet is a DHCP ACK message, a dynamic DHCP snooping entry is also added to the binding table.
  - If DHCP snooping is enabled globally, and also enabled on the VLAN where the DHCP packet is received, but the port is *not trusted*, it is processed as follows:
    - If the DHCP packet is a reply packet from a DHCP server (including OFFER, ACK or NAK messages), the packet is dropped.
    - If the DHCP packet is from a client, such as a DECLINE or RELEASE message, the switch forwards the packet only if the corresponding entry is found in the binding table.
    - If the DHCP packet is from a client, such as a DISCOVER, REQUEST, INFORM, DECLINE or RELEASE message, the packet is forwarded if MAC address verification is disabled. However, if MAC address verification is enabled, then the packet will only be forwarded if the client's hardware address stored in the DHCP packet is the same as the source MAC address in the Ethernet header.
    - If the DHCP packet is not a recognizable type, it is dropped.
  - If a DHCP packet from a client passes the filtering criteria above, it will only be forwarded to trusted ports in the same VLAN.
  - If a DHCP packet is from server is received on a trusted port, it will be forwarded to both trusted and untrusted ports in the same VLAN.
  - If the DHCP snooping is globally disabled, all dynamic bindings are removed from the binding table.

- *Additional considerations when the switch itself is a DHCP client* – The port(s) through which the switch submits a client request to the DHCP server must be configured as trusted. Note that the switch will not add a dynamic entry for itself to the binding table when it receives an ACK message from a DHCP server. Also, when the switch sends out DHCP client packets for itself, no filtering takes place. However, when the switch receives any messages from a DHCP server, any packets received from untrusted ports are dropped.

#### *DHCP Snooping Option 82*

- ◆ DHCP provides a relay mechanism for sending information about its DHCP clients or the relay agent itself to the DHCP server. Also known as DHCP Option 82, it allows compatible DHCP servers to use the information when assigning IP addresses, or to set other services or policies for clients. It is also an effective tool in preventing malicious network attacks from attached clients on DHCP services, such as IP Spoofing, Client Identifier Spoofing, MAC Address Spoofing, and Address Exhaustion.
- ◆ DHCP Snooping must be enabled for Option 82 information to be inserted into request packets.
- ◆ When the DHCP Snooping Information Option 82 is enabled, the requesting client (or an intermediate relay agent that has used the information fields to describe itself) can be identified in the DHCP request packets forwarded by the switch and in reply packets sent back from the DHCP server. This information may specify the MAC address or IP address of the requesting device (that is, the switch in this context).

By default, the switch also fills in the Option 82 circuit-id field with information indicating the local interface over which the switch received the DHCP client request, including the port and VLAN ID. This allows DHCP client-server exchange messages to be forwarded between the server and client without having to flood them to the entire VLAN.

- ◆ If DHCP Snooping Information Option 82 is enabled on the switch, information may be inserted into a DHCP request packet received over any VLAN (depending on DHCP snooping filtering rules). The information inserted into the relayed packets includes the circuit-id and remote-id, as well as the gateway Internet address.
- ◆ When the switch receives DHCP packets from clients that already include DHCP Option 82 information, the switch can be configured to set the action policy for these packets. The switch can either drop the DHCP packets, keep the existing information, or replace it with the switch's relay information.

**DHCP Snooping Global Configuration** Use the Security > DHCP Snooping (Configure Global) page to enable DHCP Snooping globally on the switch, or to configure MAC Address Verification.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### General

- ◆ **DHCP Snooping Status** – Enables DHCP snooping globally. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **DHCP Snooping MAC-Address Verification** – Enables or disables MAC address verification. If the source MAC address in the Ethernet header of the packet is not same as the client's hardware address in the DHCP packet, the packet is dropped. (Default: Enabled)

#### Information

- ◆ **DHCP Snooping Information Option Status** – Enables or disables DHCP Option 82 information relay. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **DHCP Snooping Information Option Sub-option Format** – Select either to include (Extra Subtype Included) or exclude (No Extra Subtype Included) the extra subtype (Default: Extra Subtype Included)
- ◆ **DHCP Snooping Information Option Remote ID** – Specifies the MAC address, IP address, or arbitrary identifier of the requesting device (i.e., the switch in this context).
  - **MAC Address** – Inserts a MAC address in the remote ID sub-option for the DHCP snooping agent (i.e., the MAC address of the switch's CPU). This attribute can be encoded in Hexadecimal or ASCII.
  - **IP Address** – Inserts an IP address in the remote ID sub-option for the DHCP snooping agent (i.e., the IP address of the management interface). This attribute can be encoded in Hexadecimal or ASCII.
  - *string* - An arbitrary string inserted into the remote identifier field. (Range: 1-32 characters)
- ◆ **DHCP Snooping Information Option Remote ID TR101 VLAN Field** – Adds ":VLAN" in TR101 field for untagged packets.

The format for TR101 option 82 is: "<IP> eth <SID>/<PORT>[:<VLAN>]". Note that the SID (Switch ID) is always 0. By default the PVID is added to the end of the TR101 field for untagged packets. For tagged packets, the VLAN ID is always added.

- ◆ **DHCP Snooping Information Option TR101 Board ID** – Sets the board identifier used in Option 82 information based on TR-101 syntax. (Range: 0-9; Default: undefined)
- ◆ **DHCP Snooping Information Option Policy** – Specifies how to handle DHCP client request packets which already contain Option 82 information.
  - **Drop** – Drops the client’s request packet instead of relaying it.
  - **Keep** – Retains the Option 82 information in the client request, and forwards the packets to trusted ports.
  - **Replace** – Replaces the Option 82 information circuit-id and remote-id fields in the client’s request with information about the relay agent itself, inserts the relay agent’s address (when DHCP snooping is enabled), and forwards the packets to trusted ports. (This is the default policy.)

### Web Interface

To configure global settings for DHCP Snooping:

1. Click Security, DHCP Snooping.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Select the required options for the general DHCP snooping process and for the DHCP snooping information option.
4. Click Apply

**Figure 187: Configuring Global Settings for DHCP Snooping**

The screenshot shows the 'Security > DHCP Snooping' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail and a 'Step:' dropdown menu set to '1. Configure Global'. The page is divided into two main sections: 'General' and 'Information'.  
In the 'General' section, 'DHCP Snooping Status' is set to 'Enabled' (checkbox), and 'DHCP Snooping MAC-Address Verification' is set to 'Enabled' (checkbox).  
In the 'Information' section, 'DHCP Snooping Information Option Status' is set to 'Enabled' (checkbox). 'DHCP Snooping Information Option Sub-option Format' is set to 'Extra Subtype Included' (dropdown). 'DHCP Snooping Information Option Remote ID' is set to 'MAC Address (Hex Encoded)' (dropdown). 'DHCP Snooping Information Option Remote ID TR101 VLAN Field' is set to 'Enabled' (checkbox). 'DHCP Snooping Information Option TR101 Board ID' is set to 'none' (text input). 'DHCP Snooping Information Option Policy' is set to 'Replace' (dropdown). At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons.

**DHCP Snooping VLAN Configuration** Use the Security > DHCP Snooping (Configure VLAN) page to enable or disable DHCP snooping on specific VLANs.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ When DHCP snooping is enabled globally on the switch, and enabled on the specified VLAN, DHCP packet filtering will be performed on any untrusted ports within the VLAN.
- ◆ When the DHCP snooping is globally disabled, DHCP snooping can still be configured for specific VLANs, but the changes will not take effect until DHCP snooping is globally re-enabled.
- ◆ When DHCP snooping is globally enabled, and DHCP snooping is then disabled on a VLAN, all dynamic bindings learned for this VLAN are removed from the binding table.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN** – ID of a configured VLAN. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **DHCP Snooping Status** – Enables or disables DHCP snooping for the selected VLAN. When DHCP snooping is enabled globally on the switch, and enabled on the specified VLAN, DHCP packet filtering will be performed on any untrusted ports within the VLAN. (Default: Disabled)

#### Web Interface

To configure global settings for DHCP Snooping:

1. Click Security, DHCP Snooping.
2. Select Configure VLAN from the Step list.
3. Enable DHCP Snooping on any existing VLAN.
4. Click Apply

**Figure 188: Configuring DHCP Snooping on a VLAN**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring DHCP Snooping. The breadcrumb is "Security > DHCP Snooping". Below the breadcrumb is a "Step:" dropdown menu set to "2. Configure VLAN". The main configuration area has two fields: "VLAN" with a dropdown menu set to "1", and "DHCP Snooping Status" with a checked checkbox and the text "Enabled". At the bottom right of the configuration area are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

**Configuring Ports for DHCP Snooping** Use the Security > DHCP Snooping (Configure Interface) page to configure switch ports as trusted or untrusted.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ A trusted interface is an interface that is configured to receive only messages from within the network. An untrusted interface is an interface that is configured to receive messages from outside the network or fire wall.
- ◆ When DHCP snooping is enabled both globally and on a VLAN, DHCP packet filtering will be performed on any untrusted ports within the VLAN.
- ◆ When an untrusted port is changed to a trusted port, all the dynamic DHCP snooping bindings associated with this port are removed.
- ◆ Set all ports connected to DHCP servers within the local network or fire wall to trusted state. Set all other ports outside the local network or fire wall to untrusted state.
- ◆ The format for TR101 option 82 is: "<IP> eth <SID>/<PORT>[:<VLAN>]". Note that the SID (Switch ID) is always 0. By default the PVID is added to the end of the TR101 field for untagged packets. For tagged packets, the VLAN ID is always added.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Trust Status** – Enables or disables a port as trusted. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Max Number** – The maximum number of DHCP clients which can be supported per interface. (Range: 1-32; Default: 16)
- ◆ **Circuit ID** – Specifies DHCP Option 82 circuit ID suboption information.
  - **Mode** – Specifies the default string "VLAN-Unit-Port" or an arbitrary string. (Default: VLAN-Unit-Port)
  - **Value** – An arbitrary string inserted into the circuit identifier field. (Range: 1-32 characters)
  - **TR101 VLAN Field** – Adds ":VLAN" in TR101 field for untagged packets.

#### Web Interface

To configure global settings for DHCP Snooping:

1. Click Security, DHCP Snooping.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Set any ports within the local network or firewall to trusted.



4. Specify the mode used for sending circuit ID information, and an arbitrary string if required.
5. Click Apply

**Figure 189: Configuring the Port Mode for DHCP Snooping**

Security > DHCP Snooping

Step: 3. Configure Interface

Interface:  Port  Trunk

DHCP Snooping Port List Total: 26

Port	Trust Status	Max Number (1-32)	Circuit ID		
			Mode	Value	TR101 VLAN Field
1	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	16	VLAN-Unit-Port		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
2	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	16	VLAN-Unit-Port		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
3	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	16	VLAN-Unit-Port		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
4	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	16	VLAN-Unit-Port		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
5	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	16	VLAN-Unit-Port		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled

### Displaying DHCP Snooping Binding Information

Use the Security > DHCP Snooping (Show Information) page to display entries in the binding table.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

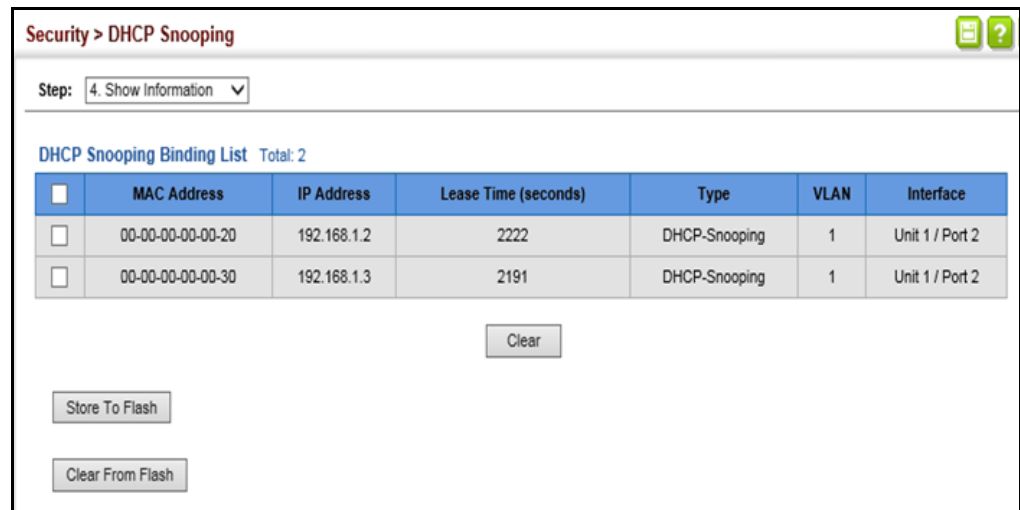
- ◆ **MAC Address** – Physical address associated with the entry.
- ◆ **IP Address** – IP address corresponding to the client.
- ◆ **Lease Time** – The time for which this IP address is leased to the client.
- ◆ **Type** – Entry types include:
  - **DHCP-Snooping** – Dynamically snooped.
  - **Static-DHCP-SNP** – Statically configured.
- ◆ **VLAN** – VLAN to which this entry is bound.
- ◆ **Interface** – Port or trunk to which this entry is bound.
- ◆ **Store** – Writes all dynamically learned snooping entries to flash memory. This function can be used to store the currently learned dynamic DHCP snooping entries to flash memory. These entries will be restored to the snooping table when the switch is reset. However, note that the lease time shown for a dynamic entry that has been restored from flash memory will no longer be valid.
- ◆ **Clear** – Removes all dynamically learned snooping entries from flash memory.

### Web Interface

To display the binding table for DHCP Snooping:

1. Click Security DHCP Snooping.
2. Select Show Information from the Step list.
3. Use the “Store to Flash” or “Clear from Flash” function if required.

**Figure 190: Displaying the Binding Table for DHCP Snooping**



## IPv4 Source Guard

IPv4 Source Guard is a security feature that filters IP traffic on network interfaces based on manually configured entries in the IP Source Guard table, or dynamic entries in the DHCP Snooping table when enabled (see “[DHCP Snooping](#)” on [page 306](#)). IP source guard can be used to prevent traffic attacks caused when a host tries to use the IPv4 address of a neighbor to access the network. This section describes how to configure IPv4 Source Guard.

### Configuring Ports for IPv4 Source Guard

Use the Security > IP Source Guard > General page to set the filtering type based on source IP address, or source IP address and MAC address pairs. It also specifies lookup within the ACL binding table or the MAC address binding table, as well as the maximum number of allowed binding entries for the lookup tables.

IP Source Guard is used to filter traffic on an insecure port which receives messages from outside the network or fire wall, and therefore may be subject to traffic attacks caused by a host trying to use the IP address of a neighbor.

### Command Usage

*Filter Type*

- ◆ Setting source guard mode to SIP (Source IP) or SIP-MAC (Source IP and MAC) enables this function on the selected port. Use the SIP option to check the VLAN ID, source IP address, and port number against all entries in the binding table. Use the SIP-MAC option to check these same parameters, plus the source MAC address. If no matching entry is found, the packet is dropped.



**Note:** Multicast addresses cannot be used by IP Source Guard.

- ◆ When enabled, traffic is filtered based upon dynamic entries learned via DHCP snooping (see “[DHCP Snooping](#)” on page 306), or static addresses configured in the source guard binding table.
- ◆ If IP source guard is enabled, an inbound packet’s IP address (SIP option) or both its IP address and corresponding MAC address (SIP-MAC option) will be checked against the binding table. If no matching entry is found, the packet will be dropped.
- ◆ An entry with same MAC address and a different VLAN ID cannot be added to the binding table.
- ◆ Filtering rules are implemented as follows:
  - If DHCP snooping is disabled (see [page 309](#)), IP source guard will check the VLAN ID, source IP address, port number, and source MAC address (for the SIP-MAC option). If a matching entry is found in the binding table and the entry type is static IP source guard binding, the packet will be forwarded.
  - If DHCP snooping is enabled, IP source guard will check the VLAN ID, source IP address, port number, and source MAC address (for the SIP-MAC option). If a matching entry is found in the binding table and the entry type is static IP source guard binding, or dynamic DHCP snooping binding, the packet will be forwarded.
  - If IP source guard is enabled on an interface for which IP source bindings have not yet been configured (neither by static configuration in the IP source guard binding table nor dynamically learned from DHCP snooping), the switch will drop all IP traffic on that port, except for DHCP packets allowed by DHCP snooping.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Filter Type** – Configures the switch to filter inbound traffic based source IP address, or source IP address and corresponding MAC address. (Default: None)
  - **Disabled** – Disables IP source guard filtering on the port.
  - **SIP** – Enables traffic filtering based on IP addresses stored in the binding table.

- **SIP-MAC** – Enables traffic filtering based on IP addresses and corresponding MAC addresses stored in the binding table.
- ◆ **Filter Table** – Sets the source guard learning model to search for addresses in the ACL binding table or the MAC address binding table. (Default: ACL binding table)
- ◆ **Max Binding Entry** – The maximum number of entries that can be bound to an interface. (ACL Table: 1-5, default: 5; MAC Table: 1-32, default: 16)

This parameter sets the maximum number of address entries that can be mapped to an interface in the binding table, including both dynamic entries discovered by DHCP snooping (see “[DHCP Snooping](#)” on page 306) and static entries set by IP source guard (see “[Configuring Static Bindings for IPv4 Source Guard](#)” on page 316).

### Web Interface

To set the IP Source Guard filter for ports:

1. Click Security, IP Source Guard, General.
2. Set the required filtering type, set the table type to use ACL or MAC address binding, and then set the maximum binding entries for each port.
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 191: Setting the Filter Type for IPv4 Source Guard**

Port	Filter Type	Filter Table	ACL Table Max Binding Entry (1-5)	MAC Table Max Binding Entry (1-1024)
1	SIP	ACL	5	1024
2	SIP-MAC	ACL	5	1024
3	DISABLED	ACL	5	1024
4	DISABLED	ACL	5	1024
5	DISABLED	ACL	5	1024

### Configuring Static Bindings for IPv4 Source Guard

Use the Security > IP Source Guard > Static Binding (Configure ACL Table and Configure MAC Table) pages to bind a static address to a port. Table entries include a MAC address, IP address, VLAN identifier, and port identifier. All static entries are configured with an infinite lease time, which is indicated with a value of zero in the table.

### Command Usage

- ◆ Table entries include a MAC address, IP address, Dynamic-DHCP-Binding), VLAN identifier, and port identifier.
- ◆ Static addresses entered in the source guard binding table are automatically configured with an infinite lease time.

- ◆ When source guard is enabled, traffic is filtered based upon dynamic entries learned via DHCP snooping, or static addresses configured in the source guard binding table.
- ◆ An entry with same MAC address and a different VLAN ID cannot be added to the binding table.
- ◆ Static bindings are processed as follows:
  - A valid static IP source guard entry will be added to the binding table in ACL mode if one of the following conditions is true:
    - If there is no entry with the same VLAN ID and MAC address, a new entry is added to the binding table using the type “static IP source guard binding.”
    - If there is an entry with the same VLAN ID and MAC address, and the type of entry is static IP source guard binding, then the new entry will replace the old one.
    - If there is an entry with the same VLAN ID and MAC address, and the type of the entry is dynamic DHCP snooping binding, then the new entry will replace the old one and the entry type will be changed to static IP source guard binding.
  - A valid static IP source guard entry will be added to the binding table in MAC mode if one of the following conditions are true:
    - If there is no binding entry with the same IP address and MAC address, a new entry will be added to the binding table using the type of static IP source guard binding entry.
    - If there is a binding entry with same IP address and MAC address, then the new entry shall replace the old one.
  - Only unicast addresses are accepted for static bindings.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### *Add – Configure ACL Table*

- ◆ **Port** – The port to which a static entry is bound.
- ◆ **VLAN** – ID of a configured VLAN (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **MAC Address** – A valid unicast MAC address.
- ◆ **IP Address** – A valid unicast IP address, including classful types A, B or C.

#### *Add – Configure MAC Table*

- ◆ **MAC Address** – A valid unicast MAC address.

- ◆ **VLAN** – ID of a configured VLAN or a range of VLANs. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **IP Address** – A valid unicast IP address, including classful types A, B or C.
- ◆ **Port** – The port to which a static entry is bound. Specify a physical port number or list of port numbers. Separate nonconsecutive port numbers with a comma and no spaces; or use a hyphen to designate a range of port numbers. (Range: 1-10/28)

*Show*

- ◆ **MAC Address** – Physical address associated with the entry.
- ◆ **IP Address** – IP address corresponding to the client.
- ◆ **VLAN** – VLAN to which this entry is bound.
- ◆ **Interface** – The port to which this entry is bound.

#### Web Interface

To configure static bindings for IP Source Guard:

1. Click Security, IP Source Guard, Static Binding.
2. Select Configure ACL Table or Configure MAC Table from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Enter the required bindings for each port.
5. Click Apply

**Figure 192: Configuring Static Bindings for IPv4 Source Guard**

Security > IP Source Guard > Static Binding

Step: 1. Configure ACL Table Action: Add

Port 1

VLAN 1

MAC Address 00-10-b5-f4-d0-01 (xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx or xxxxxxxxxxxx)

IP Address 10.2.44.95

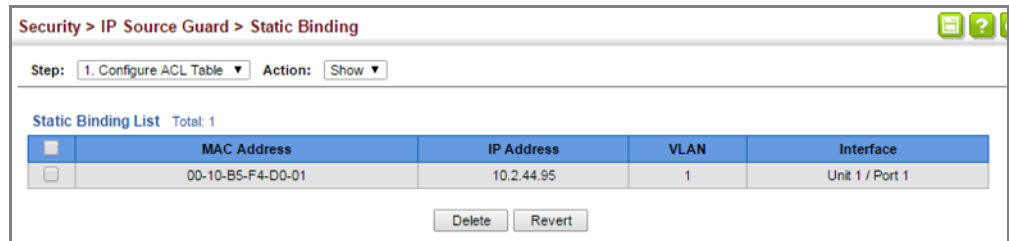
Apply Revert

To display static bindings for IP Source Guard:

1. Click Security, IP Source Guard, Static Binding.
2. Select Configure ACL Table or Configure MAC Table from the Step list.

3. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 193: Displaying Static Bindings for IPv4 Source Guard**



### Displaying Information for Dynamic IPv4 Source Guard Bindings

Use the Security > IP Source Guard > Dynamic Binding page to display the source-guard binding table for a selected interface.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### Query by

- ◆ **Port** – A port on this switch.
- ◆ **VLAN** – ID of a configured VLAN (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **MAC Address** – A valid unicast MAC address.
- ◆ **IP Address** – A valid unicast IP address, including classful types A, B or C.

#### Dynamic Binding List

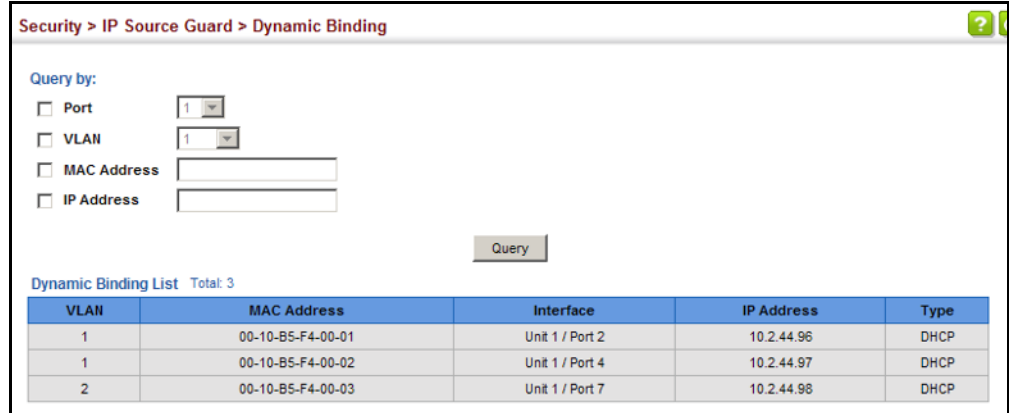
- ◆ **VLAN** – VLAN to which this entry is bound.
- ◆ **MAC Address** – Physical address associated with the entry.
- ◆ **Interface** – Port to which this entry is bound.
- ◆ **IP Address** – IP address corresponding to the client.
- ◆ **Type** – Entry types include DHCP-Snooping or BOOTP-Snooping.

#### Web Interface

To display the binding table for IP Source Guard:

1. Click Security, IP Source Guard, Dynamic Binding.
2. Mark the search criteria, and enter the required values.
3. Click Query

Figure 194: Showing the IPv4 Source Guard Binding Table



Security > IP Source Guard > Dynamic Binding

Query by:

- Port: 1
- VLAN: 1
- MAC Address:
- IP Address:

Query

Dynamic Binding List Total: 3

VLAN	MAC Address	Interface	IP Address	Type
1	00-10-B5-F4-00-01	Unit 1 / Port 2	10.2.44.96	DHCP
1	00-10-B5-F4-00-02	Unit 1 / Port 4	10.2.44.97	DHCP
2	00-10-B5-F4-00-03	Unit 1 / Port 7	10.2.44.98	DHCP

## ARP Inspection

ARP Inspection is a security feature that validates the MAC Address bindings for Address Resolution Protocol packets. It provides protection against ARP traffic with invalid MAC-to-IP address bindings, which forms the basis for certain “man-in-the-middle” attacks. This is accomplished by intercepting all ARP requests and responses and verifying each of these packets before the local ARP cache is updated or the packet is forwarded to the appropriate destination. Invalid ARP packets are dropped.

ARP Inspection determines the validity of an ARP packet based on valid IP-to-MAC address bindings stored in a trusted database – the DHCP snooping binding database (see “[DHCP Snooping Global Configuration](#)” on page 309). This database is built by DHCP snooping if it is enabled on globally on the switch and on the required VLANs. ARP Inspection can also validate ARP packets against user-configured ARP access control lists (ACLs) for hosts with statically configured addresses (see “[Configuring an ARP ACL](#)” on page 286).

### Command Usage

#### *Enabling & Disabling ARP Inspection*

- ◆ ARP Inspection is controlled on a global and VLAN basis.
- ◆ By default, ARP Inspection is disabled both globally and on all VLANs.
  - If ARP Inspection is globally enabled, then it becomes active only on the VLANs where it has been enabled.
  - When ARP Inspection is enabled globally, all ARP request and reply packets on inspection-enabled VLANs are redirected to the CPU and their switching behavior handled by the ARP Inspection engine.



- If ARP Inspection is disabled globally, then it becomes inactive for all VLANs, including those where inspection is enabled.
  - When ARP Inspection is disabled, all ARP request and reply packets will bypass the ARP Inspection engine and their switching behavior will match that of all other packets.
  - Disabling and then re-enabling global ARP Inspection will not affect the ARP Inspection configuration of any VLANs.
  - When ARP Inspection is disabled globally, it is still possible to configure ARP Inspection for individual VLANs. These configuration changes will only become active after ARP Inspection is enabled globally again.
- ◆ The ARP Inspection engine in the current firmware version does not support ARP Inspection on trunk ports.

### Configuring Global Settings for ARP Inspection

Use the Security > ARP Inspection (Configure General) page to enable ARP inspection globally for the switch, to validate address information in each packet, and configure logging.

#### Command Usage

##### *ARP Inspection Validation*

- ◆ By default, ARP Inspection Validation is disabled.
- ◆ Specifying at least one of the following validations enables ARP Inspection Validation globally. Any combination of the following checks can be active concurrently.
  - Destination MAC – Checks the destination MAC address in the Ethernet header against the target MAC address in the ARP body. This check is performed for ARP responses. When enabled, packets with different MAC addresses are classified as invalid and are dropped.
  - IP – Checks the ARP body for invalid and unexpected IP addresses. These addresses include 0.0.0.0, 255.255.255.255, and all IP multicast addresses. Sender IP addresses are checked in all ARP requests and responses, while target IP addresses are checked only in ARP responses.
  - Source MAC – Checks the source MAC address in the Ethernet header against the sender MAC address in the ARP body. This check is performed on both ARP requests and responses. When enabled, packets with different MAC addresses are classified as invalid and are dropped.

### *ARP Inspection Logging*

- ◆ By default, logging is active for ARP Inspection, and cannot be disabled.
- ◆ The administrator can configure the log facility rate.
- ◆ When the switch drops a packet, it places an entry in the log buffer, then generates a system message on a rate-controlled basis. After the system message is generated, the entry is cleared from the log buffer.
- ◆ Each log entry contains flow information, such as the receiving VLAN, the port number, the source and destination IP addresses, and the source and destination MAC addresses.
- ◆ If multiple, identical invalid ARP packets are received consecutively on the same VLAN, then the logging facility will only generate one entry in the log buffer and one corresponding system message.
- ◆ If the log buffer is full, the oldest entry will be replaced with the newest entry.

### **Parameters**

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **ARP Inspection Status** – Enables ARP Inspection globally. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **ARP Inspection Validation** – Enables extended ARP Inspection Validation if any of the following options are enabled. (Default: Disabled)
  - **Dst-MAC** – Validates the destination MAC address in the Ethernet header against the target MAC address in the body of ARP responses.
  - **IP** – Checks the ARP body for invalid and unexpected IP addresses. Sender IP addresses are checked in all ARP requests and responses, while target IP addresses are checked only in ARP responses.
  - **Allow Zeros** – Allows sender IP address to be 0.0.0.0.
  - **Src-MAC** – Validates the source MAC address in the Ethernet header against the sender MAC address in the ARP body. This check is performed on both ARP requests and responses.
- ◆ **Log Message Number** – The maximum number of entries saved in a log message. (Range: 0-256; Default: 20)
- ◆ **Log Interval** – The interval at which log messages are sent. (Range: 0-86400 seconds; Default: 10 second)

### Web Interface

To configure global settings for ARP Inspection:

1. Click Security, ARP Inspection.
2. Select Configure General from the Step list.
3. Enable ARP inspection globally, enable any of the address validation options, and adjust any of the logging parameters if required.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 195: Configuring Global Settings for ARP Inspection**

### Configuring VLAN Settings for ARP Inspection

Use the Security > ARP Inspection (Configure VLAN) page to enable ARP inspection for any VLAN and to specify the ARP ACL to use.

#### Command Usage

##### *ARP Inspection VLAN Filters (ACLs)*

- ◆ By default, no ARP Inspection ACLs are configured and the feature is disabled.
- ◆ ARP Inspection ACLs are configured within the ARP ACL configuration page (see [page 286](#)).
- ◆ ARP Inspection ACLs can be applied to any configured VLAN.
- ◆ ARP Inspection uses the DHCP snooping bindings database for the list of valid IP-to-MAC address bindings. ARP ACLs take precedence over entries in the DHCP snooping bindings database. The switch first compares ARP packets to any specified ARP ACLs.
- ◆ If *Static* is specified, ARP packets are only validated against the selected ACL – packets are filtered according to any matching rules, packets not matching any rules are dropped, and the DHCP snooping bindings database check is bypassed.

- ◆ If *Static* is not specified, ARP packets are first validated against the selected ACL; if no ACL rules match the packets, then the DHCP snooping bindings database determines their validity.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN** – VLAN identifier. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **DAI Status** – Enables Dynamic ARP Inspection for the selected VLAN. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **ACL Name** – Allows selection of any configured ARP ACLs. (Default: None)
- ◆ **ACL Status** – When an ARP ACL is selected, and static mode also selected, the switch only performs ARP Inspection and bypasses validation against the DHCP Snooping Bindings database. When an ARP ACL is selected, but static mode is not selected, the switch first performs ARP Inspection and then validation against the DHCP Snooping Bindings database. (Default: Static)

### Web Interface

To configure VLAN settings for ARP Inspection:

1. Click Security, ARP Inspection.
2. Select Configure VLAN from the Step list.
3. Enable ARP inspection for the required VLANs, select an ARP ACL filter to check for configured addresses, and select the Static option to bypass checking the DHCP snooping bindings database if required.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 196: Configuring VLAN Settings for ARP Inspection**

VLAN	DAI Status	ACL Name	ACL Status
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> R&D	<input type="checkbox"/> Static
2	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> R&D	<input type="checkbox"/> Static
3	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> R&D	<input type="checkbox"/> Static
4	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> R&D	<input type="checkbox"/> Static
5	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> R&D	<input type="checkbox"/> Static

## Configuring Interface Settings for ARP Inspection

Use the Security > ARP Inspection (Configure Interface) page to specify the ports that require ARP inspection, and to adjust the packet inspection rate. \$\$\$

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Interface** – Port or trunk identifier.
- ◆ **Trust Status** – Configures the port as trusted or untrusted. (Default: Untrusted)

By default, all untrusted ports are subject to ARP packet rate limiting, and all trusted ports are exempt from ARP packet rate limiting.

Packets arriving on trusted interfaces bypass all ARP Inspection and ARP Inspection Validation checks and will always be forwarded, while those arriving on untrusted interfaces are subject to all configured ARP inspection tests.

- ◆ **Packet Rate Limit** – Sets the maximum number of ARP packets that can be processed by CPU per second on trusted or untrusted ports. (Range: 0-2048; Default: 15)

Setting the rate limit to “0” means that there is no restriction on the number of ARP packets that can be processed by the CPU.

The switch will drop all ARP packets received on a port which exceeds the configured ARP-packets-per-second rate limit.

### Web Interface

To configure interface settings for ARP Inspection:

1. Click Security, ARP Inspection.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Specify any untrusted ports which require ARP inspection, and adjust the packet inspection rate.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 197: Configuring Interface Settings for ARP Inspection**

Port	Trust Status	Packet Rate Limit (0-2048 pps)
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 15
2	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 15
3	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 15
4	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 15
5	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 15

**Displaying ARP Inspection Statistics** Use the Security > ARP Inspection (Show Information - Show Statistics) page to display statistics about the number of ARP packets processed, or dropped for various reasons.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

**Table 15: ARP Inspection Statistics**

Parameter	Description
Received ARP packets before ARP inspection rate limit	Count of ARP packets received but not exceeding the ARP Inspection rate limit.
Dropped ARP packets in the process of ARP inspection rate limit	Count of ARP packets exceeding (and dropped by) ARP rate limiting.
ARP packets dropped by additional validation (IP)	Count of ARP packets that failed the IP address test.
ARP packets dropped by additional validation (Dst-MAC)	Count of packets that failed the destination MAC address test.
Total ARP packets processed by ARP inspection	Count of all ARP packets processed by the ARP Inspection engine.
ARP packets dropped by additional validation (Src-MAC)	Count of packets that failed the source MAC address test.
ARP packets dropped by ARP ACLs	Count of ARP packets that failed validation against ARP ACL rules.
ARP packets dropped by DHCP snooping	Count of packets that failed validation against the DHCP Snooping Binding database.

### Web Interface

To display statistics for ARP Inspection:

1. Click Security, ARP Inspection.
2. Select Show Information from the Step list.
3. Select Show Statistics from the Action list.

**Figure 198: Displaying Statistics for ARP Inspection**

Security > ARP Inspection	
Step:	4. Show Information
Action:	Show Statistics
Received ARP packets before ARP inspection rate limit	1000
Dropped ARP packets in processing ARP inspection rate limit	5
Total ARP packets processed by ARP inspection	200
ARP packets dropped by additional validation (Src-MAC)	300
ARP packets dropped by additional validation (Dst-MAC)	2000
ARP packets dropped by additional validation (IP)	100
ARP packets dropped by ARP ACLs	5
ARP packets dropped by DHCP snooping	5

### Displaying the ARP Inspection Log

Use the Security > ARP Inspection (Show Information - Show Log) page to show information about entries stored in the log, including the associated VLAN, port, and address components.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

**Table 16: ARP Inspection Log**

Parameter	Description
VLAN ID	The VLAN where this packet was seen.
Port	The port where this packet was seen.
Src. IP Address	The source IP address in the packet.
Dst. IP Address	The destination IP address in the packet.
Src. MAC Address	The source MAC address in the packet.
Dst. MAC Address	The destination MAC address in the packet.

#### Web Interface

To display the ARP Inspection log:

1. Click Security, ARP Inspection.
2. Select Show Information from the Step list.
3. Select Show Log from the Action list.

Figure 199: Displaying the ARP Inspection Log

Security > ARP Inspection

Step: 4. Show Information Action: Show Log

ARP Inspection Log List Total: 2

VLAN ID	Port	Src. IP Address	Dst. IP Address	Src. MAC Address	Dst. MAC Address
1	15	192.168.1.1	192.168.1.5	11-22-33-44-55-66	AA-BB-CC-DD-EE-FF
1	17	192.168.1.3	192.168.1.23	11-4E-33-75-55-BB	A0-3B-C9-DD-4E-1F



---

# Basic Administration Protocols

This chapter describes basic administration tasks including:

- ◆ **Event Logging** – Sets conditions for logging event messages to system memory or flash memory, configures conditions for sending trap messages to remote log servers, and configures trap reporting to remote hosts using Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP).
- ◆ **Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP)** – Configures advertisement of basic information about the local switch, or discovery of information about neighboring devices on the local broadcast domain.
- ◆ **Power over Ethernet<sup>7</sup>** – Sets the priority and power budget for each port.
- ◆ **Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)** – Configures switch management through SNMPv1, SNMPv2c or SNMPv3.
- ◆ **Remote Monitoring (RMON)** – Configures local collection of detailed statistics or events which can be subsequently retrieved through SNMP.
- ◆ **Switch Clustering** – Configures centralized management by a single unit over a group of switches connected to the same local network.
- ◆ **Time Range** – Sets a time range during which various functions are applied, including applied ACLs or PoE.
- ◆ **Loopback Detection (LBD)** – Detects general loopback conditions caused by hardware problems or faulty protocol settings.

---

7. ECS2100-10PE/10P/28P/28PP

## Configuring Event Logging

The switch allows you to control the logging of error messages, including the type of events that are recorded in switch memory, logging to a remote System Log (syslog) server, and displays a list of recent event messages.

**System Log Configuration** Use the Administration > Log > System (Configure Global) page to enable or disable event logging, and specify which levels are logged to RAM or flash memory.

Severe error messages that are logged to flash memory are permanently stored in the switch to assist in troubleshooting network problems. Up to 4096 log entries can be stored in the flash memory, with the oldest entries being overwritten first when the available log memory (256 kilobytes) has been exceeded.

The System Logs page allows you to configure and limit system messages that are logged to flash or RAM memory. The default is for event levels 0 to 3 to be logged to flash and levels 0 to 7 to be logged to RAM.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Status** – Enables/disables the logging of debug or error messages to the logging process. (Default: Enabled - checked)
- ◆ **History Flash Level** – Limits log messages saved to the switch's permanent flash memory for all levels up to the specified level. For example, if level 3 is specified, all messages from level 0 to level 3 will be logged to flash. (Range: 0-7, Default: 3)

**Table 17: Logging Levels**

Level	Severity Name	Description
7	Debug	Debugging messages
6	Informational	Informational messages only
5	Notice	Normal but significant condition, such as cold start
4	Warning	Warning conditions (e.g., return false, unexpected return)
3	Error	Error conditions (e.g., invalid input, default used)
2	Critical	Critical conditions (e.g., memory allocation, or free memory error - resource exhausted)
1	Alert	Immediate action needed
0	Emergency	System unusable

\* There are only Level 2, 5 and 6 error messages for the current firmware release.

- ◆ **History RAM Level** – Limits log messages saved to the switch’s temporary RAM memory for all levels up to the specified level. For example, if level 7 is specified, all messages from level 0 to level 7 will be logged to RAM. (Range: 0-7, Default: 7)



**Note:** The Flash Level must be equal to or less than the RAM Level.

**Note:** All log messages are retained in RAM and Flash after a warm restart (i.e., power is reset through the command interface).

**Note:** All log messages are retained in Flash and purged from RAM after a cold restart (i.e., power is turned off and then on through the power source).

- ◆ **Command Log Status** – Records the commands executed from the CLI, including the execution time and information about the CLI user including the user name, user interface (console port, telnet or SSH), and user IP address. The severity level for this record type is 6 (a number that indicates the facility used by the syslog server to dispatch log messages to an appropriate service).

### Web Interface

To configure the logging of error messages to system memory:

1. Click Administration, Log, System.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Enable or disable system logging, set the level of event messages to be logged to flash memory and RAM.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 200: Configuring Settings for System Memory Logs**

Administration > Log > System

Step: 1. Configure Global

Status  Enabled

History Flash Level 3 - Error

History RAM Level 7 - Debugging

Command Log Status  Enabled

Note: The Flash Level must be equal to or less than the RAM Level.

Apply Revert

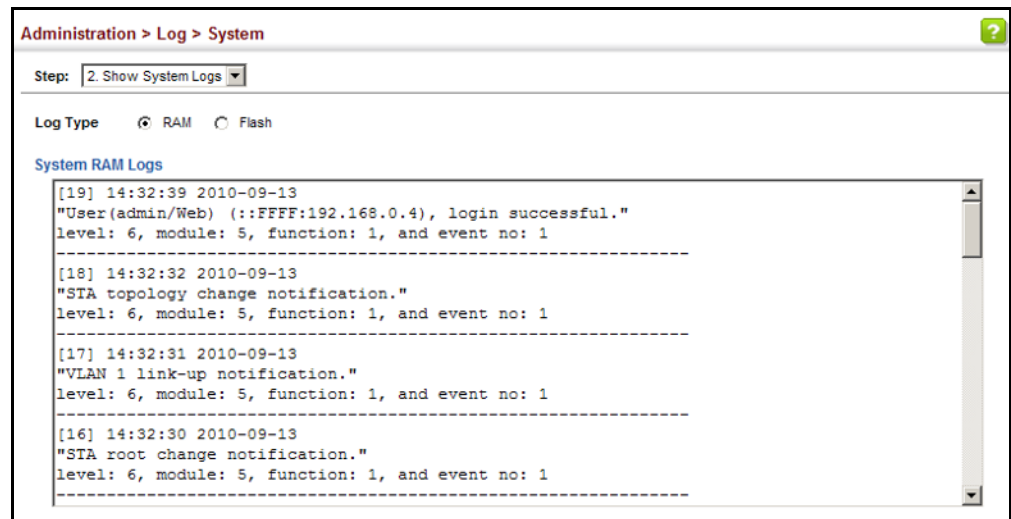
To show the error messages logged to system or flash memory:

1. Click Administration, Log, System.
2. Select Show System Logs from the Step list.

3. Click RAM to display log messages stored in system memory, or Flash to display messages stored in flash memory.

This page allows you to scroll through the logged system and event messages. The switch can store up to 2048 log entries in temporary random access memory (RAM; i.e., memory flushed on power reset) and up to 4096 entries in permanent flash memory.

**Figure 201: Showing Error Messages Logged to System Memory**



### Remote Log Configuration

Use the Administration > Log > Remote page to send log messages to syslog servers or other management stations. You can also limit the event messages sent to only those messages below a specified level.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Remote Log Status** – Enables/disables the logging of debug or error messages to the remote logging process. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Logging Facility** – Sets the facility type for remote logging of syslog messages. There are eight facility types specified by values of 16 to 23. The facility type is used by the syslog server to dispatch log messages to an appropriate service.  
  
The attribute specifies the facility type tag sent in syslog messages (see RFC 3164). This type has no effect on the kind of messages reported by the switch. However, it may be used by the syslog server to process messages, such as sorting or storing messages in the corresponding database. (Range: 16-23, Default: 23)
- ◆ **Logging Trap Level** – Limits log messages that are sent to the remote syslog server for all levels up to the specified level. For example, if level 3 is specified, all messages from level 0 to level 3 will be sent to the remote server. (Range: 0-7, Default: 7)

- ◆ **Server IP Address** – Specifies the IPv4 or IPv6 address of a remote server which will be sent syslog messages.
- ◆ **Port** - Specifies the UDP port number used by the remote server. (Range: 1-65535; Default: 514)

### Web Interface

To configure the logging of error messages to remote servers:

1. Click Administration, Log, Remote.
2. Enable remote logging, specify the facility type to use for the syslog messages. and enter the IP address of the remote servers.
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 202: Configuring Settings for Remote Logging of Error Messages**

Administration > Log > Remote

Remote Log Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled		
Logging Facility	23 - Local use 7		
Logging Trap Level	0 - System unusable		
Server IP Address 1	192.168.0.4	Port	514
Server IP Address 2		Port	
Server IP Address 3		Port	
Server IP Address 4		Port	
Server IP Address 5		Port	

Apply Revert

### Sending Simple Mail Transfer Protocol Alerts

Use the Administration > Log > SMTP page to alert system administrators of problems by sending SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) email messages when triggered by logging events of a specified level. The messages are sent to specified SMTP servers on the network and can be retrieved using POP or IMAP clients.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **SMTP Status** – Enables/disables the SMTP function. (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **Severity** – Sets the syslog severity threshold level (see table on [page 330](#)) used to trigger alert messages. All events at this level or higher will be sent to the configured email recipients. For example, using Level 7 will report all events from level 7 to level 0. (Default: Level 7)

- ◆ **Email Source Address** – Sets the email address used for the “From” field in alert messages. You may use a symbolic email address that identifies the switch, or the address of an administrator responsible for the switch. (Range: 1-41 characters)
- ◆ **Email Destination Address** – Specifies the email recipients of alert messages. You can specify up to five recipients.
- ◆ **Server IP Address** – Specifies a list of up to three recipient SMTP servers. IPv4 or IPv6 addresses may be specified. The switch attempts to connect to the listed servers in sequential order if the first server fails to respond.

### Web Interface

To configure SMTP alert messages:

1. Click Administration, Log, SMTP.
2. Enable SMTP, specify a source email address, and select the minimum severity level. Specify the source and destination email addresses, and one or more SMTP servers.
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 203: Configuring SMTP Alert Messages**

The screenshot shows the 'Administration > Log > SMTP' configuration page. It includes the following fields and controls:

- SMTP Status:** A checkbox labeled 'Enabled' which is checked.
- Severity:** A dropdown menu currently set to '3 - Error'.
- E-mail Source Address:** A text input field containing 'big-wheels@matel.com'.
- E-mail Destination Address 1:** A text input field containing 'chris@matel.com'.
- E-mail Destination Address 2:** An empty text input field.
- E-mail Destination Address 3:** An empty text input field.
- E-mail Destination Address 4:** An empty text input field.
- E-mail Destination Address 5:** An empty text input field.
- Server IP Address 1:** A text input field containing '192.168.1.4'.
- Server IP Address 2:** An empty text input field.
- Server IP Address 3:** An empty text input field.

At the bottom right of the form are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

## Link Layer Discovery Protocol

Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) is used to discover basic information about neighboring devices on the local broadcast domain. LLDP is a Layer 2 protocol that uses periodic broadcasts to advertise information about the sending device. Advertised information is represented in Type Length Value (TLV) format according to the IEEE 802.1AB standard, and can include details such as device identification, capabilities and configuration settings. LLDP also defines how to store and maintain information gathered about the neighboring network nodes it discovers.

Link Layer Discovery Protocol - Media Endpoint Discovery (LLDP-MED) is an extension of LLDP intended for managing endpoint devices such as Voice over IP phones and network switches. The LLDP-MED TLVs advertise information such as network policy, power, inventory, and device location details. LLDP and LLDP-MED information can be used by SNMP applications to simplify troubleshooting, enhance network management, and maintain an accurate network topology.

### Setting LLDP Timing Attributes

Use the Administration > LLDP (Configure Global) page to set attributes for general functions such as globally enabling LLDP on the switch, setting the message ageout time, and setting the frequency for broadcasting general advertisements or reports about changes in the LLDP MIB.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **LLDP** – Enables LLDP globally on the switch. (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **Transmission Interval** – Configures the periodic transmit interval for LLDP advertisements. (Range: 5-32768 seconds; Default: 30 seconds)
- ◆ **Hold Time Multiplier** – Configures the time-to-live (TTL) value sent in LLDP advertisements as shown in the formula below. (Range: 2-10; Default: 4)

The time-to-live tells the receiving LLDP agent how long to retain all information pertaining to the sending LLDP agent if it does not transmit updates in a timely manner.

TTL in seconds is based on the following rule:  
minimum value ((Transmission Interval \* Holdtime Multiplier), or 65535)

Therefore, the default TTL is  $4 * 30 = 120$  seconds.

- ◆ **Delay Interval** – Configures a delay between the successive transmission of advertisements initiated by a change in local LLDP MIB variables. (Range: 1-8192 seconds; Default: 2 seconds)

The transmit delay is used to prevent a series of successive LLDP transmissions during a short period of rapid changes in local LLDP MIB objects, and to

increase the probability that multiple, rather than single changes, are reported in each transmission.

This attribute must comply with the rule:  
 $(4 * \text{Delay Interval}) \leq \text{Transmission Interval}$

- ◆ **Reinitialization Delay** – Configures the delay before attempting to re-initialize after LLDP ports are disabled or the link goes down. (Range: 1-10 seconds; Default: 2 seconds)

When LLDP is re-initialized on a port, all information in the remote systems LLDP MIB associated with this port is deleted.

- ◆ **Notification Interval** – Configures the allowed interval for sending SNMP notifications about LLDP MIB changes. (Range: 5-3600 seconds; Default: 5 seconds)

This parameter only applies to SNMP applications which use data stored in the LLDP MIB for network monitoring or management.

Information about changes in LLDP neighbors that occur between SNMP notifications is not transmitted. Only state changes that exist at the time of a notification are included in the transmission. An SNMP agent should therefore periodically check the value of `IldpStatsRemTableLastChangeTime` to detect any `IldpRemTablesChange` notification-events missed due to throttling or transmission loss.

- ◆ **MED Fast Start Count** – Configures the amount of LLDP MED Fast Start LLDPDUs to transmit during the activation process of the LLDP-MED Fast Start mechanism. (Range: 1-10 packets; Default: 4 packets)

The MED Fast Start Count parameter is part of the timer which ensures that the LLDP-MED Fast Start mechanism is active for the port. LLDP-MED Fast Start is critical to the timely startup of LLDP, and therefore integral to the rapid availability of Emergency Call Service.

### Web Interface

To configure LLDP timing attributes:

1. Click Administration, LLDP.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Enable LLDP, and modify any of the timing parameters as required.
4. Click Apply.



**Figure 204: Configuring LLDP Timing Attributes**

Administration > LLDP

Step: 1. Configure Global

LLDP  Enabled

Transmission Interval (5-32768)  sec

Hold Time Multiplier (2-10)

Delay Interval (1-8192)  sec

Reinitialization Delay (1-10)  sec

Notification Interval (5-3600)  sec

MED Fast Start Count (1-10)

Note: The Transmission Interval must be greater than or equal to 4 times the Delay Interval.

Apply Revert

### Configuring LLDP Interface Attributes

Use the Administration > LLDP (Configure Interface - Configure General) page to specify the message attributes for individual interfaces, including whether messages are transmitted, received, or both transmitted and received, whether SNMP notifications are sent, and the type of information advertised.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Admin Status** – Enables LLDP message transmit and receive modes for LLDP Protocol Data Units. (Options: Tx only, Rx only, TxRx, Disabled; Default: TxRx)
- ◆ **SNMP Notification** – Enables the transmission of SNMP trap notifications about LLDP and LLDP-MED changes. (Default: Enabled)

This option sends out SNMP trap notifications to designated target stations at the interval specified by the Notification Interval in the preceding section. Trap notifications include information about state changes in the LLDP MIB (IEEE 802.1AB), the LLDP-MED MIB (ANSI/TIA-1057), or vendor-specific LLDP-EXT-DOT1 and LLDP-EXT-DOT3 MIBs.

For information on defining SNMP trap destinations, see [“Specifying Trap Managers”](#) on page 380.

Information about additional changes in LLDP neighbors that occur between SNMP notifications is not transmitted. Only state changes that exist at the time of a trap notification are included in the transmission. An SNMP agent should therefore periodically check the value of `IldpStatsRemTableLastChangeTime` to detect any `IldpRemTablesChange` notification-events missed due to throttling or transmission loss.

- ◆ **MED Notification** – Enables the transmission of SNMP trap notifications about LLDP-MED changes. (Default: Disabled)

◆ **Basic Optional TLVs** – Configures basic information included in the TLV field of advertised messages.

- **Management Address** – The management address protocol packet includes the IPv4 address of the switch. If no management address is available, the address should be the MAC address for the CPU or for the port sending this advertisement. (Default: Enabled)

The management address TLV may also include information about the specific interface associated with this address, and an object identifier indicating the type of hardware component or protocol entity associated with this address. The interface number and OID are included to assist SNMP applications in the performance of network discovery by indicating enterprise specific or other starting points for the search, such as the Interface or Entity MIB.

Since there are typically a number of different addresses associated with a Layer 3 device, an individual LLDP PDU may contain more than one management address TLV.

Every management address TLV that reports an address that is accessible on a port and protocol VLAN through the particular port should be accompanied by a port and protocol VLAN TLV that indicates the VLAN identifier (VID) associated with the management address reported by this TLV.

- **Port Description** – The port description is taken from the ifDescr object in RFC 2863, which includes information about the manufacturer, the product name, and the version of the interface hardware/software. (Default: Enabled)
- **System Capabilities** – The system capabilities identifies the primary function(s) of the system and whether or not these primary functions are enabled. The information advertised by this TLV is described in IEEE 802.1AB. (Default: Enabled)
- **System Description** – The system description is taken from the sysDescr object in RFC 3418, which includes the full name and version identification of the system's hardware type, software operating system, and networking software. (Default: Enabled)
- **System Name** – The system name is taken from the sysName object in RFC 3418, which contains the system's administratively assigned name. To configure the system name, see [“Displaying System Information” on page 68](#). (Default: Enabled)

◆ **802.1 Organizationally Specific TLVs** – Configures IEEE 802.1 information included in the TLV field of advertised messages.

- **Protocol Identity** – The protocols that are accessible through this interface (see [“Protocol VLANs” on page 162](#)). (Default: Enabled)

- **VLAN ID** – The port’s default VLAN identifier (PVID) indicates the VLAN with which untagged or priority-tagged frames are associated (see [“IEEE 802.1Q VLANs” on page 147](#)). (Default: Enabled)
  - **VLAN Name** – The name of all VLANs to which this interface has been assigned (see [“IEEE 802.1Q VLANs” on page 147](#)). (Default: Enabled)
  - **Port and Protocol VLAN ID** – The port-based protocol VLANs configured on this interface (see [“Protocol VLANs” on page 162](#)). (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **802.3 Organizationally Specific TLVs** – Configures IEEE 802.3 information included in the TLV field of advertised messages.
- **Link Aggregation** – The link aggregation capabilities, aggregation status of the link, and the IEEE 802.3 aggregated port identifier if this interface is currently a link aggregation member. (Default: Enabled)
  - **Max Frame Size** – The maximum frame size. (See [“Configuring Support for Jumbo Frames” on page 70](#) for information on configuring the maximum frame size for this switch. (Default: Enabled)
  - **MAC/PHY Configuration/Status** – The MAC/PHY configuration and status which includes information about auto-negotiation support/capabilities, and operational Multistation Access Unit (MAU) type. (Default: Enabled)
  - **PoE<sup>8</sup>** – Power-over-Ethernet capabilities, including whether or not PoE is supported, currently enabled, if the port pins through which power is delivered can be controlled, the port pins selected to deliver power, and the power class. (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **MED TLVs** – Configures general information included in the MED TLV field of advertised messages.
- **Capabilities** – This option advertises LLDP-MED TLV capabilities, allowing Media Endpoint and Connectivity Devices to efficiently discover which LLDP-MED related TLVs are supported on the switch. (Default: Enabled)
  - **Extended Power<sup>8</sup>** – This option advertises extended Power-over-Ethernet capability details, such as power availability from the switch, and power state of the switch, including whether the switch is operating from primary or backup power (the Endpoint Device could use this information to decide to enter power conservation mode). (Default: Enabled)
  - **Inventory** – This option advertises device details useful for inventory management, such as manufacturer, model, software version and other pertinent information. (Default: Enabled)
  - **Location** – This option advertises location identification details. (Default: Enabled)

---

8. ECS2100-10PE/10P/28P/28PP

- **Network Policy** – This option advertises network policy configuration information, aiding in the discovery and diagnosis of VLAN configuration mismatches on a port. Improper network policy configurations frequently result in voice quality degradation or complete service disruption. (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **MED-Location Civic Address** – Configures information for the location of the attached device included in the MED TLV field of advertised messages, including the country and the device type.
  - **Country** – The two-letter ISO 3166 country code in capital ASCII letters. (Example: DK, DE or US)
  - **Device entry refers to** – The type of device to which the location applies:
    - Location of DHCP server.
    - Location of network element closest to client.
    - Location of client. (This is the default.)

#### Web Interface

To configure LLDP interface attributes:

1. Click Administration, LLDP.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select Configure General from the Action list.
4. Select an interface from the Port or Trunk list.
5. Set the LLDP transmit/receive mode, specify whether or not to send SNMP trap messages, and select the information to advertise in LLDP messages.
6. Click Apply.

**Figure 205: Configuring LLDP Interface Attributes**

The screenshot shows the 'Administration > LLDP' configuration page. The 'Step' is '2. Configure Interface' and the 'Action' is 'Configure General'. The interface is set to 'Port 1'. Under 'Admin Status', 'Tx Rx' is selected. 'SNMP Notification' and 'MED Notification' are both disabled. Under 'Basic Optional TLVs', 'Management Address', 'Port Description', 'System Capabilities', 'System Description', and 'System Name' are all disabled. Under '802.1 Organizationally Specific TLVs', 'Protocol Identity', 'VLAN ID', 'VLAN Name', and 'Port and Protocol VLAN ID' are all enabled. Under '802.3 Organizationally Specific TLVs', 'Link Aggregation', 'Max Frame Size', 'MAC/PHY Configuration/Status', and 'PoE' are all disabled. Under 'MED TLVs', 'Capabilities', 'Extended Power', 'Inventory', 'Location', and 'Network Policy' are all disabled. The 'MED-Location Civic Address' section has 'Country' set to 'US' and 'Device entry refers to' set to 'Location of the client'. A note at the bottom states: 'Note: The country string shall be a two-letter ISO 3166 country code, e.g. US'. 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons are at the bottom right.

### Configuring LLDP Interface Civic-Address

Use the Administration > LLDP (Configure Interface – Add CA-Type) page to specify the physical location of the device attached to an interface.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ Use the Civic Address type (CA-Type) to advertise the physical location of the device attached to an interface, including items such as the city, street number, building and room information. The address location is specified as a type and value pair, with the civic address type defined in RFC 4776. The following table describes some of the CA type numbers and provides examples.

**Table 18: LLDP MED Location CA Types**

CA Type	Description	CA Value Example
1	National subdivisions (state, canton, province)	California
2	County, parish	Orange
3	City, township	Irvine
4	City division, borough, city district	West Irvine
5	Neighborhood, block	Riverside
6	Group of streets below the neighborhood level	Exchange
18	Street suffix or type	Avenue
19	House number	320
20	House number suffix	A

Table 18: LLDP MED Location CA Types (Continued)

CA Type	Description	CA Value Example
21	Landmark or vanity address	Tech Center
26	Unit (apartment, suite)	Apt 519
27	Floor	5
28	Room	509B

- ◆ Any number of CA type and value pairs can be specified for the civic address location, as long as the total does not exceed 250 characters.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **CA-Type** – Descriptor of the data civic address value. (Range: 0-255)
- ◆ **CA-Value** – Description of a location. (Range: 1-32 characters)

### Web Interface

To specify the physical location of the attached device:

1. Click Administration, LLDP.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select Add CA-Type from the Action list.
4. Select an interface from the Port or Trunk list.
5. Specify a CA-Type and CA-Value pair.
6. Click Apply.

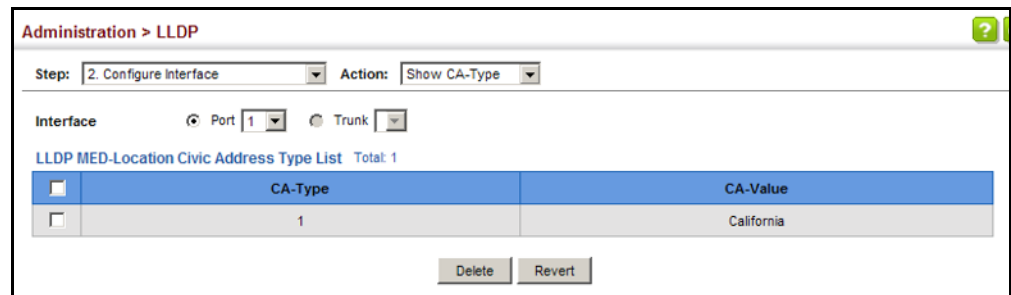
Figure 206: Configuring the Civic Address for an LLDP Interface

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Administration > LLDP". At the top, there are two dropdown menus: "Step:" set to "2. Configure Interface" and "Action:" set to "Add CA-Type". Below this, there are two radio buttons for "Interface": "Port" (selected) and "Trunk". Under "Port", there is a dropdown menu showing "1". Below the interface selection, there are two text input fields: "CA-Type (0-255)" with the value "1" and "CA-Value" with the value "California". At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

To show the physical location of the attached device:

1. Click Administration, LLDP.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select Show CA-Type from the Action list.
4. Select an interface from the Port or Trunk list.

**Figure 207: Showing the Civic Address for an LLDP Interface**



### Displaying LLDP Local Device Information

Use the Administration > LLDP (Show Local Device Information) page to display information about the switch, such as its MAC address, chassis ID, management IP address, and port information.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### General Settings

- ◆ **Chassis Type** – Identifies the chassis containing the IEEE 802 LAN entity associated with the transmitting LLDP agent. There are several ways in which a chassis may be identified and a chassis ID subtype is used to indicate the type of component being referenced by the chassis ID field.

**Table 19: Chassis ID Subtype**

ID Basis	Reference
Chassis component	EntPhysicalAlias when entPhysClass has a value of 'chassis(3)' (IETF RFC 2737)
Interface alias	IfAlias (IETF RFC 2863)
Port component	EntPhysicalAlias when entPhysicalClass has a value 'port(10)' or 'backplane(4)' (IETF RFC 2737)
MAC address	MAC address (IEEE Std 802-2001)
Network address	networkAddress
Interface name	ifName (IETF RFC 2863)
Locally assigned	locally assigned

- ◆ **Chassis ID** – An octet string indicating the specific identifier for the particular chassis in this system.
- ◆ **System Name** – A string that indicates the system’s administratively assigned name (see “[Displaying System Information](#)” on page 68).
- ◆ **System Description** – A textual description of the network entity. This field is also displayed by the **show system** command.
- ◆ **System Capabilities Supported** – The capabilities that define the primary function(s) of the system.

Table 20: System Capabilities

ID Basis	Reference
Other	—
Repeater	IETF RFC 2108
Bridge	IETF RFC 2674
WLAN Access Point	IEEE 802.11 MIB
Router	IETF RFC 1812
Telephone	IETF RFC 2011
DOCSIS cable device	IETF RFC 2669 and IETF RFC 2670
End Station Only	IETF RFC 2011

- ◆ **System Capabilities Enabled** – The primary function(s) of the system which are currently enabled. Refer to the preceding table.
- ◆ **Management Address** – The management address associated with the local system. If no management address is available, the address should be the MAC address for the CPU or for the port sending this advertisement.

#### Interface Settings

The attributes listed below apply to both port and trunk interface types. When a trunk is listed, the descriptions apply to the first port of the trunk.

- ◆ **Port/Trunk Description** – A string that indicates the port or trunk description. If RFC 2863 is implemented, the ifDescr object should be used for this field.
- ◆ **Port/Trunk ID** – A string that contains the specific identifier for the port or trunk from which this LLDPDU was transmitted.

#### Interface Details

The attributes listed below apply to both port and trunk interface types. When a trunk is listed, the descriptions apply to the first port of the trunk.

- ◆ **Local Port/Trunk** – Local interface on this switch.



- ◆ **Port/Trunk ID Type** – There are several ways in which a port may be identified. A port ID subtype is used to indicate how the port is being referenced in the Port ID TLV.

**Table 21: Port ID Subtype**

ID Basis	Reference
Interface alias	IfAlias (IETF RFC 2863)
Chassis component	EntPhysicalAlias when entPhysClass has a value of 'chassis(3)' (IETF RFC 2737)
Port component	EntPhysicalAlias when entPhysicalClass has a value 'port(10)' or 'backplane(4)' (IETF RFC 2737)
MAC address	MAC address (IEEE Std 802-2001)
Network address	networkAddress
Interface name	ifName (IETF RFC 2863)
Agent circuit ID	agent circuit ID (IETF RFC 3046)
Locally assigned	locally assigned

- ◆ **Port/Trunk ID** – A string that contains the specific identifier for the local interface based on interface subtype used by this switch.
- ◆ **Port/Trunk Description** – A string that indicates the port or trunk description. If RFC 2863 is implemented, the ifDescr object should be used for this field.
- ◆ **MED Capability** – The supported set of capabilities that define the primary function(s) of the interface:
  - LLDP-MED Capabilities
  - Network Policy
  - Location Identification
  - Extended Power via MDI – PSE
  - Extended Power via MDI – PD
  - Inventory

#### Web Interface

To display LLDP information for the local device:

1. Click Administration, LLDP.
2. Select Show Local Device Information from the Step list.
3. Select General, Port, Port Details, Trunk, or Trunk Details.

**Figure 208: Displaying Local Device Information for LLDP (General)**

Administration > LLDP

Step: 3. Show Local Device Information

General
  Port
  Port Details
  Trunk
  Trunk Details

LLDP Local Device Information

Chassis Type	MAC Address
Chassis ID	70-72-CF-83-34-66
System Name	
System Description	ECS4620-52T
System Capabilities Supported	Bridge, Router
System Capabilities Enabled	Bridge, Router
Management Address	192.168.0.2 (IPv4)

**Figure 209: Displaying Local Device Information for LLDP (Port)**

Administration > LLDP

Step: 3. Show Local Device Information

General
  Port
  Port Details
  Trunk
  Trunk Details

LLDP Local Device Port List Total: 28

Port	Port Description	Port ID
1	Ethernet Port on unit 1, port 1	00-00-E8-94-40-01
2	Ethernet Port on unit 1, port 2	00-00-E8-94-40-02
3	Ethernet Port on unit 1, port 3	00-00-E8-94-40-03
4	Ethernet Port on unit 1, port 4	00-00-E8-94-40-04
5	Ethernet Port on unit 1, port 5	00-00-E8-94-40-05

**Figure 210: Displaying Local Device Information for LLDP (Port Details)**

Administration > LLDP

Step: 3. Show Local Device Information

General
  Port
  Port Details
  Trunk
  Trunk Details

Port: 1

LLDP Local Port Information Details

Local Port	1
Port ID Type	MAC Address
Port ID	00-00-E8-94-40-01
Port Description	Ethernet Port on unit 1, port 1
MED Capability	LLDP-MED Capabilities, Network Policy, Location Identification, Inventory

**Displaying LLDP Remote Device Information** Use the Administration > LLDP (Show Remote Device Information) page to display information about devices connected directly to the switch's ports which are advertising information through LLDP, or to display detailed information about an LLDP-enabled device connected to a specific port on the local switch.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

##### *Port*

- ◆ **Local Port** – The local port to which a remote LLDP-capable device is attached.
- ◆ **Chassis ID** – An octet string indicating the specific identifier for the particular chassis in this system.
- ◆ **Port ID** – A string that contains the specific identifier for the port from which this LLDPDU was transmitted.
- ◆ **System Name** – A string that indicates the system's administratively assigned name.

##### *Port Details*

- ◆ **Port** – Port identifier on local switch.
- ◆ **Remote Index** – Index of remote device attached to this port.
- ◆ **Local Port** – The local port to which a remote LLDP-capable device is attached.
- ◆ **Chassis Type** – Identifies the chassis containing the IEEE 802 LAN entity associated with the transmitting LLDP agent. There are several ways in which a chassis may be identified and a chassis ID subtype is used to indicate the type of component being referenced by the chassis ID field. (See [Table 19, "Chassis ID Subtype," on page 343.](#))
- ◆ **Chassis ID** – An octet string indicating the specific identifier for the particular chassis in this system.
- ◆ **System Name** – A string that indicates the system's assigned name.
- ◆ **System Description** – A textual description of the network entity.
- ◆ **Port Type** – Indicates the basis for the identifier that is listed in the Port ID field. See [Table 21, "Port ID Subtype," on page 345.](#)
- ◆ **Port Description** – A string that indicates the port's description. If RFC 2863 is implemented, the ifDescr object should be used for this field.
- ◆ **Port ID** – A string that contains the specific identifier for the port from which this LLDPDU was transmitted.

- ◆ **System Capabilities Supported** – The capabilities that define the primary function(s) of the system. (See Table 20, "System Capabilities," on page 344.)
- ◆ **System Capabilities Enabled** – The primary function(s) of the system which are currently enabled. (See Table 20, "System Capabilities," on page 344.)
- ◆ **Management Address List** – The management addresses for this device. Since there are typically a number of different addresses associated with a Layer 3 device, an individual LLDP PDU may contain more than one management address TLV.  
  
If no management address is available, the address should be the MAC address for the CPU or for the port sending this advertisement.

*Port Details – 802.1 Extension Information*

- ◆ **Remote Port VID** – The port’s default VLAN identifier (PVID) indicates the VLAN with which untagged or priority-tagged frames are associated.
- ◆ **Remote Port-Protocol VLAN List** – The port-based protocol VLANs configured on this interface, whether the given port (associated with the remote system) supports port-based protocol VLANs, and whether the port-based protocol VLANs are enabled on the given port associated with the remote system.
- ◆ **Remote VLAN Name List** – VLAN names associated with a port.
- ◆ **Remote Protocol Identity List** – Information about particular protocols that are accessible through a port. This object represents an arbitrary local integer value used by this agent to identify a particular protocol identity, and an octet string used to identify the protocols associated with a port of the remote system.

*Port Details – 802.3 Extension Port Information*

- ◆ **Remote Port Auto-Neg Supported** – Shows whether the given port (associated with remote system) supports auto-negotiation.
- ◆ **Remote Port Auto-Neg Adv-Capability** – The value (bitmap) of the ifMauAutoNegCapAdvertisedBits object (defined in IETF RFC 3636) which is associated with a port on the remote system.

**Table 22: Remote Port Auto-Negotiation Advertised Capability**

Bit	Capability
0	other or unknown
1	10BASE-T half duplex mode
2	10BASE-T full duplex mode
3	100BASE-T4
4	100BASE-TX half duplex mode

**Table 22: Remote Port Auto-Negotiation Advertised Capability** (Continued)

Bit	Capability
5	100BASE-TX full duplex mode
6	100BASE-T2 half duplex mode
7	100BASE-T2 full duplex mode
8	PAUSE for full-duplex links
9	Asymmetric PAUSE for full-duplex links
10	Symmetric PAUSE for full-duplex links
11	Asymmetric and Symmetric PAUSE for full-duplex links
12	1000BASE-X, -LX, -SX, -CX half duplex mode
13	1000BASE-X, -LX, -SX, -CX full duplex mode
14	1000BASE-T half duplex mode
15	1000BASE-T full duplex mode

- ◆ **Remote Port Auto-Neg Status** – Shows whether port auto-negotiation is enabled on a port associated with the remote system.
- ◆ **Remote Port MAU Type** – An integer value that indicates the operational MAU type of the sending device. This object contains the integer value derived from the list position of the corresponding dot3MauType as listed in IETF RFC 3636 and is equal to the last number in the respective dot3MauType OID.

*Port Details – 802.3 Extension Power Information*

- ◆ **Remote Power Class** – The port Class of the given port associated with the remote system (PSE – Power Sourcing Equipment or PD – Powered Device).
- ◆ **Remote Power MDI Status** – Shows whether MDI power is enabled on the given port associated with the remote system.
- ◆ **Remote Power Pairs** – “Signal” means that the signal pairs only are in use, and “Spare” means that the spare pairs only are in use.
- ◆ **Remote Power MDI Supported** – Shows whether MDI power is supported on the given port associated with the remote system.
- ◆ **Remote Power Pair Controllable** – Indicates whether the pair selection can be controlled for sourcing power on the given port associated with the remote system.
- ◆ **Remote Power Classification** – This classification is used to tag different terminals on the Power over LAN network according to their power consumption. Devices such as IP telephones, WLAN access points and others, will be classified according to their power requirements.

*Port Details – 802.3 Extension Trunk Information*

- ◆ **Remote Link Aggregation Capable** – Shows if the remote port is not in link aggregation state and/or it does not support link aggregation.
- ◆ **Remote Link Aggregation Status** – The current aggregation status of the link.
- ◆ **Remote Link Port ID** – This object contains the IEEE 802.3 aggregated port identifier, aAggPortID (IEEE 802.3-2002, 30.7.2.1.1), derived from the ifNumber of the ifIndex for the port component associated with the remote system. If the remote port is not in link aggregation state and/or it does not support link aggregation, this value should be zero.

*Port Details – 802.3 Extension Frame Information*

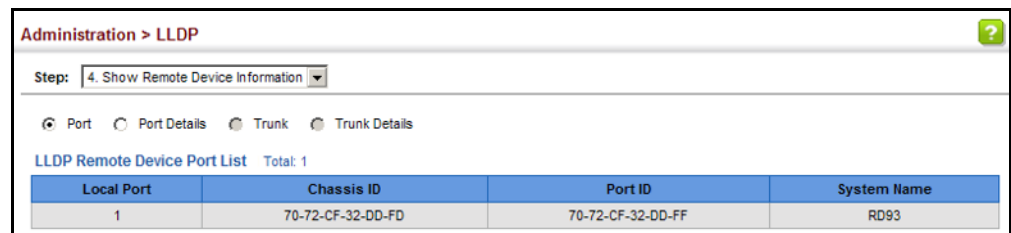
- ◆ **Remote Max Frame Size** – An integer value indicating the maximum supported frame size in octets on the port component associated with the remote system.

**Web Interface**

To display LLDP information for a remote port:

1. Click Administration, LLDP.
2. Select Show Remote Device Information from the Step list.
3. Select Port, Port Details, Trunk, or Trunk Details.
4. When the next page opens, select a port on this switch and the index for a remote device attached to this port.
5. Click Query.

**Figure 211: Displaying Remote Device Information for LLDP (Port)**



Administration > LLDP

Step: 4. Show Remote Device Information

Port  Port Details  Trunk  Trunk Details

LLDP Remote Device Port List Total: 1

Local Port	Chassis ID	Port ID	System Name
1	70-72-CF-32-DD-FD	70-72-CF-32-DD-FF	RD93

**Administration > LLDP**

Step: 4. Show Remote Device Information ▾

Port  Port Details  Trunk  Trunk Details

Port  ▾

Remote Index  ▾

Figure 212: Displaying Remote Device Information for LLDP (Port Details)

Administration > LLDP ?

Step: 4. Show Remote Device Information

Port
  Port Details
  Trunk
  Trunk Details

Port: 23

Remote Index: 4

Query

**LLDP Remote Device Port Information**

Local Port	23	Port Type	MAC Address
Chassis Type	MAC Address	Port Description	Ethernet Port on unit 1, port 1
Chassis ID	00-E0-00-00-00-01	Port ID	00-E0-00-00-00-02
System Name		System Capabilities Supported	Bridge
System Description	ES3528MV2	System Capabilities Enabled	Bridge

**Management Address List** Total: 1

Address	Address Type
192.168.0.3	IPv4 Address

**802.1 Extension Information**

Remote Port VID: 1

**Remote Port-Protocol VLAN List** Total: 1

VLAN	Support	Status
1	Yes	Enabled

**Remote VLAN Name List** Total: 1

VLAN	Name
1	DefaultVlan

**Remote Protocol Identity List** Total: 1

Remote Protocol Identity (Hex)
88-CC

**802.3 Extension Port Information**

Remote Port Auto-Neg Supported	Yes	Remote Port Auto-Neg Status	Enabled
Remote Port Auto-Neg Adv-Capability	0000	Remote Port MAU Type	6

**802.3 Extension Power Information**

Remote Power Class	PSE	Remote Power MDI Supported	Yes
Remote Power MDI Status	Enabled	Remote Power Pair Controlable	No
Remote Power Pairs	Spare	Remote Power Classification	Class1

**802.3 Extension Trunk Information**

Remote Link Aggregation Capable	Yes	Remote Link Aggregation Status	Disabled
Remote Link Port ID	0		

**802.3 Extension Frame Information**

Remote Max Frame Size	1518
-----------------------	------



**Displaying Device Statistics** Use the Administration > LLDP (Show Device Statistics) page to display statistics for LLDP-capable devices attached to the switch, and for LLDP protocol messages transmitted or received on all local interfaces.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

##### *General Statistics on Remote Devices*

- ◆ **Neighbor Entries List Last Updated** – The time the LLDP neighbor entry list was last updated.
- ◆ **New Neighbor Entries Count** – The number of LLDP neighbors for which the remote TTL has not yet expired.
- ◆ **Neighbor Entries Deleted Count** – The number of LLDP neighbors which have been removed from the LLDP remote systems MIB for any reason.
- ◆ **Neighbor Entries Dropped Count** – The number of times which the remote database on this switch dropped an LLDPDU because of insufficient resources.
- ◆ **Neighbor Entries Age-out Count** – The number of times that a neighbor's information has been deleted from the LLDP remote systems MIB because the remote TTL timer has expired.

##### *Port/Trunk*

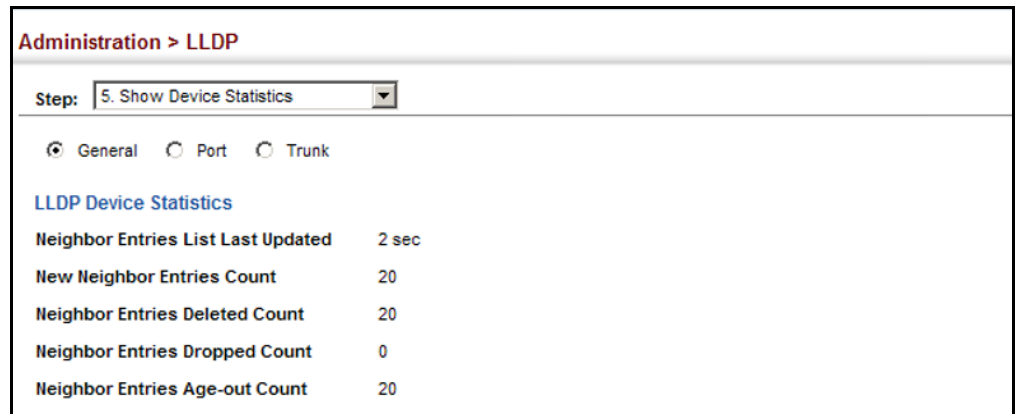
- ◆ **Frames Discarded** – Number of frames discarded because they did not conform to the general validation rules as well as any specific usage rules defined for the particular TLV.
- ◆ **Frames Invalid** – A count of all LLDPDUs received with one or more detectable errors.
- ◆ **Frames Received** – Number of LLDP PDUs received.
- ◆ **Frames Sent** – Number of LLDP PDUs transmitted.
- ◆ **TLVs Unrecognized** – A count of all TLVs not recognized by the receiving LLDP local agent.
- ◆ **TLVs Discarded** – A count of all LLDPDUs received and then discarded due to insufficient memory space, missing or out-of-sequence attributes, or any other reason.
- ◆ **Neighbor Ageouts** – A count of the times that a neighbor's information has been deleted from the LLDP remote systems MIB because the remote TTL timer has expired.

### Web Interface

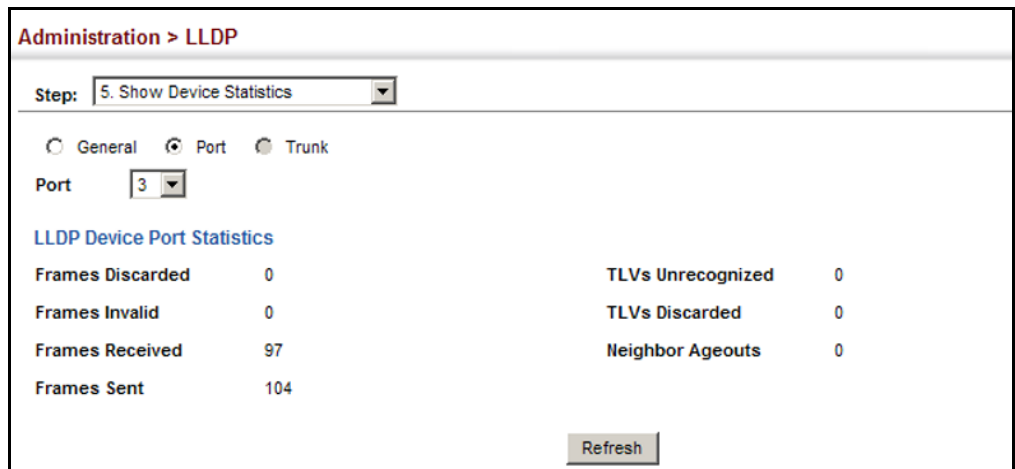
To display statistics for LLDP-capable devices attached to the switch:

1. Click Administration, LLDP.
2. Select Show Device Statistics from the Step list.
3. Select General, Port, or Trunk.

**Figure 213: Displaying LLDP Device Statistics (General)**



**Figure 214: Displaying LLDP Device Statistics (Port)**



---

## Power over Ethernet

The ECS2100-10PE/10P and ECS2100-28P/28PP switches can provide DC power to a wide range of connected devices, eliminating the need for an additional power source and cutting down on the amount of cables attached to each device. Once configured to supply power, an automatic detection process is initialized by the switch that is authenticated by a PoE signature from the connected device. Detection and authentication prevent damage to non-compliant devices (prior to IEEE 802.3af).

The switch's power management enables individual port power to be controlled within the switch's power budget. Port power can be automatically turned on and off for connected devices, and a per-port power priority can be set so that the switch never exceeds its power budget. When a device is connected to a switch port, its power requirements are detected by the switch before power is supplied. If the power required by a device exceeds the power budget of the port or the whole switch, power is not supplied.

Ports can be set to one of three power priority levels, critical, high, or low. To control the power supply within the switch's budget, ports set at critical to high priority have power enabled in preference to those ports set at low priority. For example, when a device connected to a port is set to critical priority, the switch supplies the required power, if necessary by denying power to ports set for a lower priority during bootup.



**Note:** For more information on using the PoE provided by this switch refer to the *Installation Guide*.

---

### Setting the Switch's Overall PoE Power Budget

Use the Administration > PoE > PSE (Configure Global) page to set the maximum PoE power budget for the switch (power available to all Gigabit Ethernet ports). If the power demand from devices connected to the switch exceeds the power budget, the switch uses port power priority settings to limit the supplied power.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **PoE Maximum Available Power** – The power budget for the switch (i.e., power available to all switch ports). If devices connected to the switch require more power than the switch budget, the port power priority settings are used to control the supplied power.
- ◆ **PoE Maximum Allocation Power** – Sets a power budget for the switch.  
(ECS2100-10PE: 50000-65000 milliwatts; Default: 65000 mW  
ECS2100-10P: 50000-125000 milliwatts; Default: 125000 mW  
ECS2100-28P: 50000-200000 milliwatts; Default: 200000 mW  
ECS2100-28PP: 50000-370000 milliwatts without external power supply,

Default: 370000 milliwatts  
ECS2100-28PP: 50000-740000 milliwatts with external power supply,  
Default: 740000 milliwatts)

- ◆ **System Operation Status** – Status of the PoE power service provided to the switch ports.
- ◆ **PoE Power Consumption** – The amount of power being consumed by PoE devices connected to the switch.
- ◆ **Software Version** – The version of software running on the PoE controller subsystem in the switch.
- ◆ **Compatible Mode** – Allows the switch to detect and provide power to powered devices that were designed prior to the IEEE 802.3af PoE standard. (Default: Disabled)

The switch automatically detects attached PoE devices by periodically transmitting test voltages that over the Gigabit Ethernet copper-media ports. When an IEEE 802.3af or 802.3at compatible device is plugged into one of these ports, the powered device reflects the test voltage back to the switch, which may then turn on the power to this device. When the compatibility mode is enabled, this switch can detect IEEE 802.3af or 802.3at compliant devices and the more recent 802.3af non-compliant devices that also reflect the test voltages back to the switch. It cannot detect other legacy devices that do not reflect back the test voltages.

For legacy devices to be supported by this switch, they must be able to accept power over the data pairs connected to the RJ-45 ports.

- ◆ **Maximum Allocation Mode** – Sets the maximum power allocation mode based on PD (powered device) class or user configuration. (Default: Class)
  - **Class** – Power allocation is based on device classification.

The IEEE standard does not define the maximum power of each PD class. The following table is an example from Microsem's PoE IC implementation.

**Table 23: Maximum PoE Based on PD Classification**

PD Class	Maximum Power (Watts)
Class 0 (AF)	16.1
Class 0 (AT)	33.6
Class 1	4.2
Class 2	7.3
Class 3	16.1
Class 4	33.6

- **User** – Power allocation is based on user configuration as defined in the PoE Maximum Allocation Power setting on this page or as defined on the Administration > PoE > PSE (Configure Interface) page.

### Web Interface

To set the overall PoE power budget for switch:

1. Click Administration, PoE, PSE.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Set the maximum PoE power provided by the switch, enable the compatible mode, and set the maximum allocation mode if required.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 215: Setting the Switch’s PoE Budget**

Administration > PoE > PSE

Step: 1. Configure Global

PoE Maximum Available Power	125000 milliwatts using internal power
PoE Maximum Allocation Power (50000-125000)	125000 milliwatts
System Operation Status	On
PoE Power Consumption	0 milliwatts
Software Version	Version 0x00A1 (Hex), Build 0x09 (Hex)
Compatible Mode	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Maximum Allocation Mode	Class

Apply Revert



**Note:** This page shows the maximum PoE power for the ECS2100-10P because the same source code is used for all of the switches in this series. However, note that the actual maximum setting for each PoE switch model differs.

### Setting the Port PoE Power Budget

Use the Administration > PoE > PSE page to set the maximum power provided to a port.

### Command Usage

- ◆ This switch supports both the IEEE 802.3af PoE and IEEE 802.3at-2009 PoE Plus standards. To ensure that the correct power is supplied to powered devices (PD) compliant with these standards, the first detection pulse from the switch is based on 802.3af to which the 802.3af PDs will respond normally. It then sends a second PoE Plus pulse that causes an 802.3at PD to respond as a Class 4 device and draw Class 4 current. Afterwards, the switch exchanges information with the PD such as duty-cycle, peak and average power needs.
- ◆ The number of ports which can supply maximum power simultaneously to connected devices is listed in the following table. In this table, EPS refers to the optional external power supply.

**Table 24: Maximum Number of Ports Providing Simultaneous Power**

Switch	30W (802.3at)	15.4W (802.3af)	7.5W (802.3af)
ECS2100-10PE	2	4	8
ECS2100-10P	4	8	8
ECS2100-28P	6	12	24
ECS2100-28PP (without EPS)	12	24	24
ECS2100-28PP (with EPS)	24	24	24

- ◆ If a device is connected to a switch port and the switch detects that it requires more than the power budget set for the port or to the overall switch, no power is supplied to the device (i.e., port power remains off).
- ◆ If the power demand from devices connected to all switch ports exceeds the power budget set for the switch, the port power priority settings are used to control the supplied power. For example:
  - If a device is connected to a low-priority port and causes the switch to exceed its budget, power to this port is not turned on.
  - If a device is connected to a critical or high-priority port and would cause the switch to exceed its power budget as determined during bootup, power is provided to the port only if the switch can drop power to one or more lower-priority ports and thereby remain within its overall budget.
  - If a device is connected to a port after the switch has finished booting up and would cause the switch to exceed its budget, power will not be provided to that port regardless of its priority setting.
  - If priority is not set for any ports, and there is not sufficient power to supply all of the ports, port priority defaults to Port 1, Port 2, Port 3 ... Port 24, with available power being supplied in that sequence.
  - If priority is not set for any ports, and PoE consumption exceeds the maximum power provided by the switch, power is shut down in the reverse sequence, starting from Port 24.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** – The port number on the switch.
- ◆ **Admin Status** – Enables PoE power on a port. Power is automatically supplied when a device is detected on a port, providing that the power demanded does not exceed the switch or port power budget. (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **Mode** – Shows whether or not PoE power is being supplied to a port. Note that if power is turned off due to an overload, administrative status will still display enabled.

- ◆ **Time Range Name** – Name of a time range. If a time range is set, then PoE will be provided to an interface during the specified period.
- ◆ **Time Range Status** – Indicates if a time range has been applied to an interface, and whether it is currently active or inactive.
- ◆ **Class** – Shows the maximum power allocation class as defined by the Maximum Allocation Mode setting on the PoE>PSE (Configure Global) page. Class information is shown only when Mode = on.
- ◆ **Priority** – Sets the power priority for a port. (Options: Low, High or Critical; Default: Low)
- ◆ **Power Allocation** – Sets the power budget for a port. (Range: 3000-33600 milliwatts; Default: 33600 milliwatts)
- ◆ **Power Consumption** – Current power consumption on a port.

### Web Interface

To set the PoE power budget for a port:

1. Click Administration, PoE, PSE.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Enable PoE power on selected ports. Set the priority and the power budget. Specify a time range during which PoE will be provided to an interface.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 216: Setting a Port’s PoE Budget**

Port	Admin Status	Mode	Time-Range Name	Time-Range Status	Class	Priority	Power Allocation	Power Consumption (milliwatts)
1	✓ Enabled	off	<input type="checkbox"/> ▼	NA	-	Low ▼	Class	0
2	✓ Enabled	off	<input type="checkbox"/> ▼	NA	-	Low ▼	Class	0
3	✓ Enabled	off	<input type="checkbox"/> ▼	NA	-	Low ▼	Class	0
4	✓ Enabled	off	<input type="checkbox"/> ▼	NA	-	Low ▼	Class	0
5	✓ Enabled	off	<input type="checkbox"/> ▼	NA	-	Low ▼	Class	0
6	✓ Enabled	off	<input type="checkbox"/> ▼	NA	-	Low ▼	Class	0
7	✓ Enabled	off	<input type="checkbox"/> ▼	NA	-	Low ▼	Class	0
8	✓ Enabled	off	<input type="checkbox"/> ▼	NA	-	Low ▼	Class	0
9	✓ Enabled	off	<input type="checkbox"/> ▼	NA	-	Low ▼	Class	0
10	✓ Enabled	off	<input type="checkbox"/> ▼	NA	-	Low ▼	Class	0

## Simple Network Management Protocol

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is a communication protocol designed specifically for managing devices on a network. Equipment commonly managed with SNMP includes switches, routers and host computers. SNMP is typically used to configure these devices for proper operation in a network environment, as well as to monitor them to evaluate performance or detect potential problems.

Managed devices supporting SNMP contain software, which runs locally on the device and is referred to as an agent. A defined set of variables, known as managed objects, is maintained by the SNMP agent and used to manage the device. These objects are defined in a Management Information Base (MIB) that provides a standard presentation of the information controlled by the agent. SNMP defines both the format of the MIB specifications and the protocol used to access this information over the network.

The switch includes an onboard agent that supports SNMP versions 1, 2c, and 3. This agent continuously monitors the status of the switch hardware, as well as the traffic passing through its ports. A network management station can access this information using network management software. Access to the onboard agent from clients using SNMP v1 and v2c is controlled by community strings. To communicate with the switch, the management station must first submit a valid community string for authentication.

Access to the switch from clients using SNMPv3 provides additional security features that cover message integrity, authentication, and encryption; as well as controlling user access to specific areas of the MIB tree.

The SNMPv3 security structure consists of security models, with each model having its own security levels. There are three security models defined, SNMPv1, SNMPv2c, and SNMPv3. Users are assigned to "groups" that are defined by a security model and specified security levels. Each group also has a defined security access to set of MIB objects for reading and writing, which are known as "views." The switch has a default view (all MIB objects) and default groups defined for security models v1 and v2c. The following table shows the security models and levels available and the system default settings.



**Table 25: SNMPv3 Security Models and Levels**

Model	Level	Group	Read View	Write View	Notify View	Security
v1	noAuthNoPriv	public (read only)	defaultview	none	none	Community string only
v1	noAuthNoPriv	private (read/write)	defaultview	defaultview	none	Community string only
v1	noAuthNoPriv	<i>user defined</i>	<i>user defined</i>	<i>user defined</i>	<i>user defined</i>	Community string only
v2c	noAuthNoPriv	public (read only)	defaultview	none	none	Community string only
v2c	noAuthNoPriv	private (read/write)	defaultview	defaultview	none	Community string only
v2c	noAuthNoPriv	<i>user defined</i>	<i>user defined</i>	<i>user defined</i>	<i>user defined</i>	Community string only
v3	noAuthNoPriv	<i>user defined</i>	<i>user defined</i>	<i>user defined</i>	<i>user defined</i>	A user name match only
v3	AuthNoPriv	<i>user defined</i>	<i>user defined</i>	<i>user defined</i>	<i>user defined</i>	Provides user authentication via MD5 or SHA algorithms
v3	AuthPriv	<i>user defined</i>	<i>user defined</i>	<i>user defined</i>	<i>user defined</i>	Provides user authentication via MD5 or SHA algorithms and data privacy using DES 56-bit encryption



**Note:** The predefined default groups and view can be deleted from the system. You can then define customized groups and views for the SNMP clients that require access.

### Command Usage

#### *Configuring SNMPv1/2c Management Access*

To configure SNMPv1 or v2c management access to the switch, follow these steps:

1. Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure Global) page to enable SNMP on the switch, and to enable trap messages.
2. Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure User - Add Community) page to configure the community strings authorized for management access.
3. Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure Trap) page to specify trap managers so that key events are reported by this switch to your management station.

#### *Configuring SNMPv3 Management Access*

1. Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure Global) page to enable SNMP on the switch, and to enable trap messages.
2. Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure Trap) page to specify trap managers so that key events are reported by this switch to your management station.

3. Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure Engine) page to change the local engine ID. If you want to change the default engine ID, it must be changed before configuring other parameters.
4. Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure View) page to specify read and write access views for the switch MIB tree.
5. Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure User) page to configure SNMP user groups with the required security model (i.e., SNMP v1, v2c or v3) and security level (i.e., authentication and privacy).
6. Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure Group) page to assign SNMP users to groups, along with their specific authentication and privacy passwords.

### Configuring Global Settings for SNMP

Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure Global) page to enable SNMPv3 service for all management clients (i.e., versions 1, 2c, 3), and to enable trap messages.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

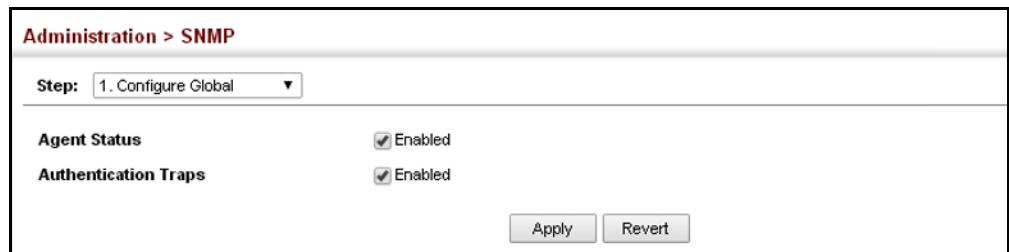
- ◆ **Agent Status** – Enables SNMP on the switch. (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **Authentication Traps**<sup>9</sup> – Issues a notification message to specified IP trap managers whenever an invalid community string is submitted during the SNMP access authentication process. (Default: Enabled)

#### Web Interface

To configure global settings for SNMP:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Enable SNMP and the required trap types.
4. Click Apply

**Figure 217: Configuring Global Settings for SNMP**



Administration > SNMP

Step: 1. Configure Global

Agent Status  Enabled

Authentication Traps  Enabled

Apply Revert

9. These are legacy notifications and therefore when used for SNMPv3 hosts, they must be enabled in conjunction with the corresponding entries in the Notification View (page 365).

## Setting the Local Engine ID

Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure Engine - Set Engine ID) page to change the local engine ID. An SNMPv3 engine is an independent SNMP agent that resides on the switch. This engine protects against message replay, delay, and redirection. The engine ID is also used in combination with user passwords to generate the security keys for authenticating and encrypting SNMPv3 packets.

### Command Usage

A local engine ID is automatically generated that is unique to the switch. This is referred to as the default engine ID. If the local engine ID is deleted or changed, all SNMP users will be cleared. You will need to reconfigure all existing users.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Engine ID** – A new engine ID can be specified by entering 9 to 64 hexadecimal characters (5 to 32 octets in hexadecimal format). If an odd number of characters are specified, a trailing zero is added to the value to fill in the last octet. For example, the value “123456789” is equivalent to “1234567890”.
- ◆ **Engine Boots** – The number of times that the engine has (re-)initialized since the SNMP Engine ID was last configured.

### Web Interface

To configure the local SNMP engine ID:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure Engine from the Step list.
3. Select Set Engine ID from the Action list.
4. Enter an ID of a least 9 hexadecimal characters.
5. Click Apply

**Figure 218: Configuring the Local Engine ID for SNMP**

The screenshot shows the 'Administration > SNMP' configuration page. At the top, there are two dropdown menus: 'Step:' set to '2. Configure Engine' and 'Action:' set to 'Set Engine ID'. Below these, there are two input fields: 'Engine ID' with the value '800001030300000c0000fd0000' and 'Engine Boots' with the value '5'. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Default' and 'Save'.

## Specifying a Remote Engine ID

Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure Engine - Add Remote Engine) page to configure a engine ID for a remote management station. To allow management access from an SNMPv3 user on a remote device, you must first specify the engine identifier for the SNMP agent on the remote device where the user resides. The remote engine ID is used to compute the security digest for authentication and encryption of packets passed between the switch and a user on the remote host.

### Command Usage

SNMP passwords are localized using the engine ID of the authoritative agent. For informs, the authoritative SNMP agent is the remote agent. You therefore need to configure the remote agent's SNMP engine ID before you can send proxy requests or informs to it. (See "Configuring Remote SNMPv3 Users" on page 377.)

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Remote Engine ID** – The engine ID can be specified by entering 9 to 64 hexadecimal characters (5 to 32 octets in hexadecimal format). If an odd number of characters are specified, a trailing zero is added to the value to fill in the last octet. For example, the value "123456789" is equivalent to "1234567890".
- ◆ **Remote IP Host** – The IPv4 address of a remote management station which is using the specified engine ID.

### Web Interface

To configure a remote SNMP engine ID:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure Engine from the Step list.
3. Select Add Remote Engine from the Action list.
4. Enter an ID of a least 9 hexadecimal characters, and the IP address of the remote host.
5. Click Apply

**Figure 219: Configuring a Remote Engine ID for SNMP**

The screenshot shows the 'Administration > SNMP' configuration page. At the top, there are two dropdown menus: 'Step:' set to '2. Configure Engine' and 'Action:' set to 'Add Remote Engine'. Below these are two input fields: 'Remote Engine ID' with the value '5432100000' and 'Remote IP Host' with the value '192.168.1.19'. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

To show the remote SNMP engine IDs:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure Engine from the Step list.
3. Select Show Remote Engine from the Action list.

**Figure 220: Showing Remote Engine IDs for SNMP**

The screenshot shows a web interface for 'Administration > SNMP'. At the top, there are two dropdown menus: 'Step: 2. Configure Engine' and 'Action: Show Remote Engine'. Below this is a table titled 'SNMPv3 Remote Engine List' with a 'Total: 1' indicator. The table has two columns: 'Remote Engine ID' and 'Remote IP Host'. There is one row with the values '5432100000' and '192.168.1.19'. Below the table are 'Delete' and 'Revert' buttons.

	Remote Engine ID	Remote IP Host
<input type="checkbox"/>	5432100000	192.168.1.19

**Setting SNMPv3 Views** Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure View) page to configure SNMPv3 views which are used to restrict user access to specified portions of the MIB tree. The predefined view “defaultview” includes access to the entire MIB tree.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### Add View

- ◆ **View Name** – The name of the SNMP view. (Range: 1-32 characters)
- ◆ **OID Subtree** – Specifies the initial object identifier of a branch within the MIB tree. Wild cards can be used to mask a specific portion of the OID string. Use the Add OID Subtree page to configure additional object identifiers. (Range: 1-64 characters)
- ◆ **Type** – Indicates if the object identifier of a branch within the MIB tree is included or excluded from the SNMP view.

#### Add OID Subtree

- ◆ **View Name** – Lists the SNMP views configured in the Add View page. (Range: 1-32 characters)
- ◆ **OID Subtree** – Adds an additional object identifier of a branch within the MIB tree to the selected View. Wild cards can be used to mask a specific portion of the OID string. (Range: 1-64 characters)
- ◆ **Type** – Indicates if the object identifier of a branch within the MIB tree is included or excluded from the SNMP view.

### Web Interface

To configure an SNMP view of the switch's MIB database:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure View from the Step list.
3. Select Add View from the Action list.
4. Enter a view name and specify the initial OID subtree in the switch's MIB database to be included or excluded in the view. Use the Add OID Subtree page to add additional object identifier branches to the view.
5. Click Apply

**Figure 221: Creating an SNMP View**

The screenshot shows the 'Administration > SNMP' configuration page. At the top, there are two dropdown menus: 'Step:' set to '3. Configure View' and 'Action:' set to 'Add View'. Below these are three input fields: 'View Name' with the value 'ifEntry.a', 'OID Subtree' with the value '1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.1.\*', and 'Type' set to 'Included'. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

To show the SNMP views of the switch's MIB database:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure View from the Step list.
3. Select Show View from the Action list.

**Figure 222: Showing SNMP Views**

The screenshot shows the 'Administration > SNMP' configuration page with the 'Action:' dropdown set to 'Show View'. Below the dropdowns, there is a table titled 'SNMPv3 View List' with a 'Total: 2' indicator. The table has two columns: a checkbox column and a 'View Name' column. The first row is highlighted in blue and shows a checked checkbox and the view name 'ifEntry.a'. The second row shows an unchecked checkbox and the view name 'defaultview'. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Delete' and 'Revert'.

	View Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ifEntry.a
<input type="checkbox"/>	defaultview

To add an object identifier to an existing SNMP view of the switch's MIB database:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure View from the Step list.
3. Select Add OID Subtree from the Action list.
4. Select a view name from the list of existing views, and specify an additional OID subtree in the switch's MIB database to be included or excluded in the view.
5. Click Apply

**Figure 223: Adding an OID Subtree to an SNMP View**

Administration > SNMP

Step: 3. Configure View Action: Add OID Subtree

View Name: ifEntry.a

OID Subtree: 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.2.\*

Type: Included

Apply Revert

To show the OID branches configured for the SNMP views of the switch's MIB database:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure View from the Step list.
3. Select Show OID Subtree from the Action list.
4. Select a view name from the list of existing views.

**Figure 224: Showing the OID Subtree Configured for SNMP Views**

Administration > SNMP

Step: 3. Configure View Action: Show OID Subtree

View Name: ifEntry.a

SNMPv3 View OID Subtree List Total: 2

<input type="checkbox"/>	OID Subtree	Type
<input type="checkbox"/>	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.1.*	Included
<input type="checkbox"/>	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.2.*	Included

Delete Revert

**Configuring SNMPv3 Groups** Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure Group) page to add an SNMPv3 group which can be used to set the access policy for its assigned users, restricting them to specific read, write, and notify views. You can use the pre-defined default groups or create new groups to map a set of SNMP users to SNMP views.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Group Name** – The name of the SNMP group to which the user is assigned. (Range: 1-32 characters)
- ◆ **Model** – The user security model; SNMP v1, v2c or v3.
- ◆ **Level** – The following security levels are only used for the groups assigned to the SNMP security model:
  - **noAuthNoPriv** – There is no authentication or encryption used in SNMP communications. (This is the default security level.)
  - **AuthNoPriv** – SNMP communications use authentication, but the data is not encrypted.
  - **AuthPriv** – SNMP communications use both authentication and encryption.
- ◆ **Read View** – The configured view for read access. (Range: 1-32 characters)
- ◆ **Write View** – The configured view for write access. (Range: 1-32 characters)
- ◆ **Notify View** – The configured view for notifications. (Range: 1-32 characters)



**Table 26: Supported Notification Messages**

Model	Level	Group
<i>RFC 1493 Traps</i>		
newRoot	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.1	The newRoot trap indicates that the sending agent has become the new root of the Spanning Tree; the trap is sent by a bridge soon after its election as the new root, e.g., upon expiration of the Topology Change Timer immediately subsequent to its election.
topologyChange	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.2	A topologyChange trap is sent by a bridge when any of its configured ports transitions from the Learning state to the Forwarding state, or from the Forwarding state to the Discarding state. The trap is not sent if a newRoot trap is sent for the same transition.
<i>SNMPv2 Traps</i>		
coldStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.1	A coldStart trap signifies that the SNMPv2 entity, acting in an agent role, is reinitializing itself and that its configuration may have been altered.
warmStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.2	A warmStart trap signifies that the SNMPv2 entity, acting in an agent role, is reinitializing itself such that its configuration is unaltered.
linkDown*	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3	A linkDown trap signifies that the SNMP entity, acting in an agent role, has detected that the ifOperStatus object for one of its communication links is about to enter the down state from some other state (but not from the notPresent state). This other state is indicated by the included value of ifOperStatus.
linkUp*	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4	A linkUp trap signifies that the SNMP entity, acting in an agent role, has detected that the ifOperStatus object for one of its communication links left the down state and transitioned into some other state (but not into the notPresent state). This other state is indicated by the included value of ifOperStatus.
authenticationFailure*	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5	An authenticationFailure trap signifies that the SNMPv2 entity, acting in an agent role, has received a protocol message that is not properly authenticated. While all implementations of the SNMPv2 must be capable of generating this trap, the snmpEnableAuthenTraps object indicates whether this trap will be generated.
<i>RMON Events (V2)</i>		
risingAlarm	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.0.1	The SNMP trap that is generated when an alarm entry crosses its rising threshold and generates an event that is configured for sending SNMP traps.
fallingAlarm	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.0.2	The SNMP trap that is generated when an alarm entry crosses its falling threshold and generates an event that is configured for sending SNMP traps.

**Table 26: Supported Notification Messages** (Continued)

Model	Level	Group
<i>Private Traps</i>		
swPowerStatusChangeTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.1	This trap is sent when the power state changes.
swPortSecurityTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.44.2.1.0.36	This trap is sent when the port is being intruded. This trap will only be sent when the portSecActionTrap is enabled.
swIpFilterRejectTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.40	This trap is sent when an incorrect IP address is rejected by the IP Filter.
pethPsePortOnOffNotification	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.43	This notification indicates if a PSE Port is delivering power to the PD. This notification should be sent on every status change except in searching mode.
pethMainPowerUsageOnNotification	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.45	This notification indicates PSE Threshold usage indication is on; the power usage is above the threshold.
pethMainPowerUsageOffNotification	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.46	This notification indicates that the PSE Threshold usage indication is off; the usage power is below the threshold.
swAtcBcastStormAlarmFireTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.70	When broadcast traffic is detected as a storm, this trap is fired.
swAtcBcastStormAlarmClearTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.71	When a broadcast storm is detected as normal traffic, this trap is fired.
swAtcBcastStormTcApplyTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.72	When ATC is activated, this trap is fired.
swAtcBcastStormTcReleaseTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.73	When ATC is released, this trap is fired.
swAtcMcastStormAlarmFireTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.74	When multicast traffic is detected as the storm, this trap is fired.
swAtcMcastStormAlarmClearTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.75	When multicast storm is detected as normal traffic, this trap is fired.
swAtcMcastStormTcApplyTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.76	When ATC is activated, this trap is fired.
swAtcMcastStormTcReleaseTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.77	When ATC is released, this trap is fired.
stpBpduGuardPortShutdownTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.91	This trap will be sent when an interface is shut down because of BPDU guard.
swLoopbackDetectionTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.95	This trap is sent when loopback BPDUs have been detected.
autoUpgradeTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.104	This trap is sent when auto upgrade is executed.
swCpuUtiRisingNotification	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.120.2.1.0.107	This notification indicates that the CPU utilization has risen from cpuUtiFallingThreshold to cpuUtiRisingThreshold.
swCpuUtiFallingNotification	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.108	This notification indicates that the CPU utilization has fallen from cpuUtiRisingThreshold to cpuUtiFallingThreshold.
swMemoryUtiRisingThreshold Notification	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.109	This notification indicates that the memory utilization has risen from memoryUtiFallingThreshold to memoryUtiRisingThreshold.

**Table 26: Supported Notification Messages** (Continued)

Model	Level	Group
swMemoryUtiFallingThreshold Notification	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.110	This notification indicates that the memory utilization has fallen from memoryUtiRisingThreshold to memoryUtiFallingThreshold.
dhcpRougeServerAttackTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.114	This trap is sent when receiving a DHCP packet from a rouge server.
macNotificationTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.138	This trap is sent when there are changes of the dynamic MAC addresses on the switch.
lbdDetectionTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.141	This trap is sent when a loopback condition is detected by LBD.
lbdRecoveryTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.142	This trap is sent when a recovery is done by LBD.
sfpThresholdAlarmWarnTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.189	This trap is sent when the sfp's A/D quantity is not within alarm/warning thresholds.
userAuthenticationFailureTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.199	This trap will be triggered if authentication fails.
userAuthenticationSuccessTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.200	This trap will be triggered if authentication is successful.
loginTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.201	This trap is sent when user logs in.
logoutTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.202	This trap is sent when user logs out.
fileCopyTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.208	This trap is sent when file copy is executed. If the copy action is triggered by the system, the login user information (trapVarLoginUserName/ trapVarSessionType/ trapVarLoginInetAddressTypes/ trapVarLoginInetAddress) will be a null value.
userauthCreateUserTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.209	This trap is sent when a user account is created.
userauthDeleteUserTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.210	This trap is sent when a user account is deleted.
userauthModifyUserPrivilegeTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.211	This trap is sent when user privilege is modified.
cpuGuardControlTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.213	This trap is sent when CPU utilization rises above the high-watermark the first time or when CPU utilization rises from below the low-watermark to above the high-watermark.
cpuGuardReleaseTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.259.10.1.43.2.1.0.214	This trap is sent when CPU utilization falls from above the high-watermark to below the low-watermark.

\* These are legacy notifications and therefore must be enabled in conjunction with the corresponding traps on the SNMP Configuration menu.

### Web Interface

To configure an SNMP group:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure Group from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Enter a group name, assign a security model and level, and then select read, write, and notify views.
5. Click Apply

**Figure 225: Creating an SNMP Group**

To show SNMP groups:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure Group from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 226: Showing SNMP Groups**

	Group Name	Model	Level	Read View	Write View	Notify View
<input type="checkbox"/>	public	v1	noAuthNoPriv	defaultview	No writeview specified	No notifyview specified
<input type="checkbox"/>	public	v2c	noAuthNoPriv	defaultview	No writeview specified	No notifyview specified
<input type="checkbox"/>	private	v1	noAuthNoPriv	defaultview	defaultview	No notifyview specified
<input type="checkbox"/>	private	v2c	noAuthNoPriv	defaultview	defaultview	No notifyview specified

## Setting Community Access Strings

Use the Administration > SNMP (Add Community) page to configure up to five community strings authorized for management access by clients using SNMP v1 and v2c. For security reasons, you should consider removing the default strings.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Community String** – A community string that acts like a password and permits access to the SNMP protocol.  
Range: 1-32 characters, case sensitive  
Default strings: “public” (Read-Only), “private” (Read/Write)
- ◆ **Access Mode** – Specifies the access rights for the community string:
  - **Read-Only** – Authorized management stations are only able to retrieve MIB objects.
  - **Read/Write** – Authorized management stations are able to both retrieve and modify MIB objects.

### Web Interface

To set a community access string:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure Community from the Step list.
3. Select Add Community from the Action list.
4. Add new community strings as required, and select the corresponding access rights from the Access Mode list.
5. Click Apply

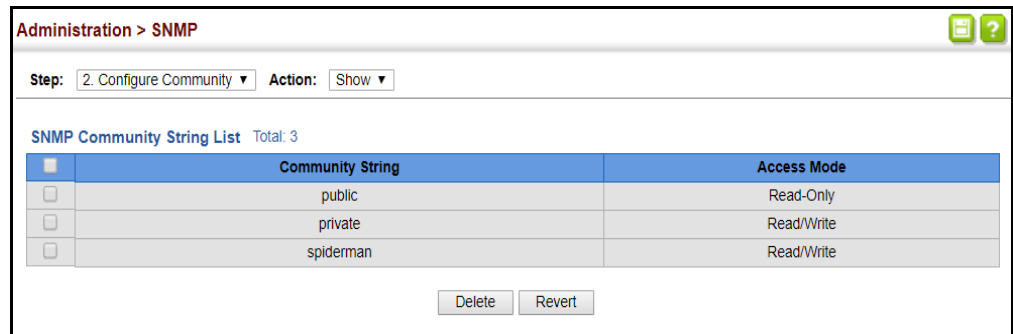
**Figure 227: Setting Community Access Strings**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring SNMP community strings. The breadcrumb navigation is "Administration > SNMP". The current step is "2. Configure Community" and the action is "Add". The "Community String" field contains the text "spiderman" and the "Access Mode" dropdown menu is set to "Read/Write". At the bottom right, there are "Apply" and "Revert" buttons.

To show the community access strings:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure Community from the Step list.
3. Select Show Community from the Action list.

**Figure 228: Showing Community Access Strings**



### Configuring Local SNMPv3 Users

Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure User - Add SNMPv3 Local User) page to authorize management access for SNMPv3 clients, or to identify the source of SNMPv3 trap messages sent from the local switch. Each SNMPv3 user is defined by a unique name. Users must be configured with a specific security level and assigned to a group. The SNMPv3 group restricts users to a specific read, write, and notify view.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **User Name** – The name of user connecting to the SNMP agent. (Range: 1-32 characters)
- ◆ **Group Name** – The name of the SNMP group to which the user is assigned. (Range: 1-32 characters)
- ◆ **Security Model** – The user security model; SNMP v1, v2c or v3.
- ◆ **Security Level** – The following security levels are only used for the groups assigned to the SNMP security model:
  - **noAuthNoPriv** – There is no authentication or encryption used in SNMP communications. (This is the default security level.)
  - **AuthNoPriv** – SNMP communications use authentication, but the data is not encrypted.

- **AuthPriv** – SNMP communications use both authentication and encryption.
- ◆ **Authentication Protocol** – The method used for user authentication. (Options: MD5, SHA; Default: MD5)
- ◆ **Authentication Password** – A minimum of eight plain text characters is required. (Range: 8-32 characters)
- ◆ **Privacy Protocol** – The encryption algorithm use for data privacy; only 56-bit DES is currently available.
- ◆ **Privacy Password** – A minimum of eight plain text characters is required.

#### Web Interface

To configure a local SNMPv3 user:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure User from the Step list.
3. Select Add SNMPv3 Local User from the Action list.
4. Enter a name and assign it to a group. If the security model is set to SNMPv3 and the security level is authNoPriv or authPriv, then an authentication protocol and password must be specified. If the security level is authPriv, a privacy password must also be specified.
5. Click Apply

**Figure 229: Configuring Local SNMPv3 Users**

Administration > SNMP

Step: 5. Configure User Action: Add SNMPv3 Local User

**SNMPv3 User**

User Name: chris

Group Name:  public  r&d

Security Model: v3

Security Level: authPriv

**User Authentication**

Authentication Protocol: MD5

Authentication Password: greenpeace

**Data Privacy**

Privacy Protocol: DES56

Privacy Password: einstien

Apply Revert

To show local SNMPv3 users:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure User from the Step list.
3. Select Show SNMPv3 Local User from the Action list.

**Figure 230: Showing Local SNMPv3 Users**

Administration > SNMP

Step: 5. Configure User Action: Show SNMPv3 Local User

SNMPv3 Local User List Total: 1

<input type="checkbox"/>	User Name	Group Name	Model	Level	Authentication	Privacy
<input type="checkbox"/>	chris	r&d	v3	authPriv	MD5	DES56

Delete Revert

To change a local SNMPv3 local user group:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Change SNMPv3 Local User Group from the Action list.
3. Select the User Name.
4. Enter a new group name.



5. Click Apply

**Figure 231: Changing a Local SNMPv3 User Group**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring SNMPv3 users. At the top, it says 'Administration > SNMP'. Below that, there are two dropdown menus: 'Step: 5. Configure User' and 'Action: Change SNMPv3 Local User Group'. The main configuration area has two sections: 'User Name' with a dropdown menu showing 'chris', and 'Group Name' with a radio button selected for 'bart' and another radio button for 'public'. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

**Configuring Remote SNMPv3 Users**

Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure User - Add SNMPv3 Remote User) page to identify the source of SNMPv3 inform messages sent from the local switch. Each SNMPv3 user is defined by a unique name. Users must be configured with a specific security level and assigned to a group. The SNMPv3 group restricts users to a specific read, write, and notify view.

**Command Usage**

- ◆ To grant management access to an SNMPv3 user on a remote device, you must first specify the engine identifier for the SNMP agent on the remote device where the user resides. The remote engine ID is used to compute the security digest for authentication and encryption of packets passed between the switch and the remote user. (See [“Specifying Trap Managers” on page 380](#) and [“Specifying a Remote Engine ID” on page 364.](#))

**Parameters**

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **User Name** – The name of user connecting to the SNMP agent. (Range: 1-32 characters)
- ◆ **Group Name** – The name of the SNMP group to which the user is assigned. (Range: 1-32 characters)
- ◆ **Remote IP** – IPv4 address of the remote device where the user resides.
- ◆ **Security Model** – The user security model; SNMP v1, v2c or v3. (Default: v3)
- ◆ **Security Level** – The following security levels are only used for the groups assigned to the SNMP security model:
  - **noAuthNoPriv** – There is no authentication or encryption used in SNMP communications. (This is the default security level.)
  - **AuthNoPriv** – SNMP communications use authentication, but the data is not encrypted.

- **AuthPriv** – SNMP communications use both authentication and encryption.
- ◆ **Authentication Protocol** – The method used for user authentication. (Options: MD5, SHA; Default: MD5)
- ◆ **Authentication Password** – A minimum of eight plain text characters is required.
- ◆ **Privacy Protocol** – The encryption algorithm use for data privacy; only 56-bit DES is currently available.
- ◆ **Privacy Password** – A minimum of eight plain text characters is required.

### Web Interface

To configure a remote SNMPv3 user:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure User from the Step list.
3. Select Add SNMPv3 Remote User from the Action list.
4. Enter a name and assign it to a group. Enter the IP address to identify the source of SNMPv3 inform messages sent from the local switch. If the security model is set to SNMPv3 and the security level is authNoPriv or authPriv, then an authentication protocol and password must be specified. If the security level is authPriv, a privacy password must also be specified.
5. Click Apply

**Figure 232: Configuring Remote SNMPv3 Users**

Administration > SNMP

Step: 5. Configure User Action: Add SNMPv3 Remote User

**SNMPv3 User**

User Name: mark

Group Name:  public  r&d

Remote IP: 192.168.1.19

Security Model: v3

Security Level: authPriv

**User Authentication**

Authentication Protocol: MD5

Authentication Password: greenpeace

**Data Privacy**

Privacy Protocol: DES56

Privacy Password: einstien

Apply Revert

To show remote SNMPv3 users:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure User from the Step list.
3. Select Show SNMPv3 Remote User from the Action list.

**Figure 233: Showing Remote SNMPv3 Users**

Administration > SNMP

Step: 5. Configure User Action: Show SNMPv3 Remote User

SNMPv3 Remote User List Total: 1

<input type="checkbox"/>	User Name	Group Name	Engine ID	Model	Level	Authentication	Privacy
<input type="checkbox"/>	mark	r&d	5432100000	v3	authPriv	MD5	DES56

Delete Revert

## Specifying Trap Managers

Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure Trap) page to specify the host devices to be sent traps and the types of traps to send. Traps indicating status changes are issued by the switch to the specified trap managers. You must specify trap managers so that key events are reported by this switch to your management station (using network management software). You can specify up to five management stations that will receive authentication failure messages and other trap messages from the switch.

### Command Usage

- ◆ Notifications are issued by the switch as trap messages by default. The recipient of a trap message does not send a response to the switch. Traps are therefore not as reliable as inform messages, which include a request for acknowledgement of receipt. Informs can be used to ensure that critical information is received by the host. However, note that informs consume more system resources because they must be kept in memory until a response is received. Informs also add to network traffic. You should consider these effects when deciding whether to issue notifications as traps or informs.

To send an inform to a SNMPv2c host, complete these steps:

1. Enable the SNMP agent ([page 362](#)).
2. Create a view with the required notification messages ([page 365](#)).
3. Configure the group (matching the community string specified on the Configure Trap - Add page) to include the required notify view ([page 368](#)).
4. Enable trap informs as described in the following pages.

To send an inform to a SNMPv3 host, complete these steps:

1. Enable the SNMP agent ([page 362](#)).
2. Create a remote SNMPv3 user to use in the message exchange process ([page 374](#)). If the user specified in the trap configuration page does not exist, an SNMPv3 group will be automatically created using the name of the specified remote user, and default settings for the read, write, and notify view.
3. Create a view with the required notification messages ([page 365](#)).
4. Create a group that includes the required notify view ([page 368](#)).
5. Enable trap informs as described in the following pages.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### *SNMP Version 1*

- ◆ **IP Address** – IPv4 or IPv6 address of a new management station to receive notification message (i.e., the targeted recipient).
- ◆ **Version** – Specifies whether to send notifications as SNMP v1, v2c, or v3 traps. (Default: v1)

- ◆ **Community String** – Specifies a valid community string for the new trap manager entry. (Range: 1-32 characters, case sensitive)

Although you can set this string in the Configure Trap – Add page, we recommend defining it in the Configure User – Add Community page.

- ◆ **UDP Port** – Specifies the UDP port number used by the trap manager. (Default: 162)

#### *SNMP Version 2c*

- ◆ **IP Address** – IPv4 or IPv6 address of a new management station to receive notification message (i.e., the targeted recipient).
- ◆ **Version** – Specifies whether to send notifications as SNMP v1, v2c, or v3 traps.
- ◆ **Notification Type**

- **Traps** – Notifications are sent as trap messages.
- **Inform** – Notifications are sent as inform messages. Note that this option is only available for version 2c and 3 hosts. (Default: traps are used)
  - **Timeout** – The number of seconds to wait for an acknowledgment before resending an inform message. (Range: 0-2147483647 centiseconds; Default: 1500 centiseconds)
  - **Retry times** – The maximum number of times to resend an inform message if the recipient does not acknowledge receipt. (Range: 0-255; Default: 3)

- ◆ **Community String** – Specifies a valid community string for the new trap manager entry. (Range: 1-32 characters, case sensitive)

Although you can set this string in the Configure Trap – Add page, we recommend defining it in the Configure User – Add Community page.

- ◆ **UDP Port** – Specifies the UDP port number used by the trap manager. (Default: 162)

#### *SNMP Version 3*

- ◆ **IP Address** – IPv4 or IPv6 address of a new management station to receive notification message (i.e., the targeted recipient).
- ◆ **Version** – Specifies whether to send notifications as SNMP v1, v2c, or v3 traps.
- ◆ **Notification Type**
  - **Traps** – Notifications are sent as trap messages.

- **Inform** – Notifications are sent as inform messages. Note that this option is only available for version 2c and 3 hosts. (Default: traps are used)
  - **Timeout** – The number of seconds to wait for an acknowledgment before resending an inform message. (Range: 0-2147483647 centiseconds; Default: 1500 centiseconds)
  - **Retry times** – The maximum number of times to resend an inform message if the recipient does not acknowledge receipt. (Range: 0-255; Default: 3)
- ◆ **Local User Name** – The name of a local user which is used to identify the source of SNMPv3 trap messages sent from the local switch. (Range: 1-32 characters)
- If an account for the specified user has not been created ([page 374](#)), one will be automatically generated.
- ◆ **Remote User Name** – The name of a remote user which is used to identify the source of SNMPv3 inform messages sent from the local switch. (Range: 1-32 characters)
- If an account for the specified user has not been created ([page 377](#)), one will be automatically generated.
- ◆ **UDP Port** – Specifies the UDP port number used by the trap manager. (Default: 162)
- ◆ **Security Level** – When trap version 3 is selected, you must specify one of the following security levels. (Default: noAuthNoPriv)
- **noAuthNoPriv** – There is no authentication or encryption used in SNMP communications.
  - **AuthNoPriv** – SNMP communications use authentication, but the data is not encrypted.
  - **AuthPriv** – SNMP communications use both authentication and encryption.

### Web Interface

To configure trap managers:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure Trap from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Fill in the required parameters based on the selected SNMP version.

5. Click Apply

Figure 234: Configuring Trap Managers (SNMPv1)

Administration > SNMP

Step: 6. Configure Trap Action: Add

IP Address: 192.168.0.3

Version: v1

Community String: private

UDP Port (1-65535): 162

Apply Revert

Figure 235: Configuring Trap Managers (SNMPv2c)

Administration > SNMP

Step: 6. Configure Trap Action: Add

IP Address: 192.168.2.9

Version: v2c

Notification Type: Inform

Timeout (0-2147483647): centiseconds

Retry Times (0-255):

Community String: venus

UDP Port (1-65535):

Apply Revert

Figure 236: Configuring Trap Managers (SNMPv3)

Administration > SNMP

Step: 6. Configure Trap Action: Add

IP Address: 192.168.2.9

Version: v3

Notification Type: Inform

Timeout (0-2147483647): centiseconds

Retry Times (0-255):

Remote User Name:

UDP Port (1-65535):

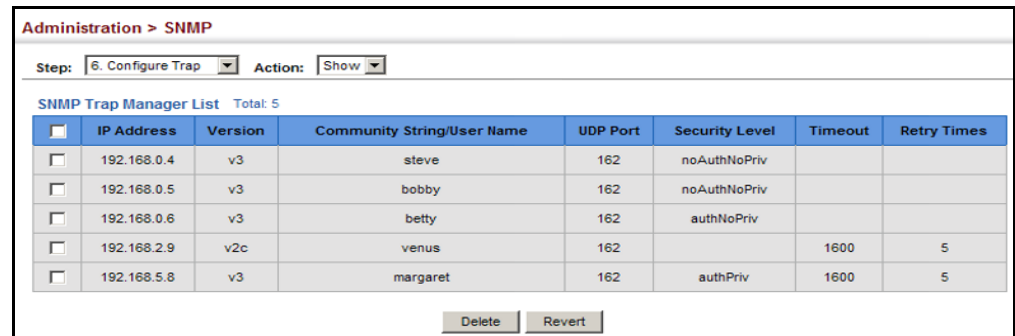
Security Level: authPriv

Apply Revert

To show configured trap managers:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure Trap from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 237: Showing Trap Managers**



The screenshot shows the 'Administration > SNMP' configuration page. At the top, there are two dropdown menus: 'Step: 6. Configure Trap' and 'Action: Show'. Below this is a table titled 'SNMP Trap Manager List' with a 'Total: 5' indicator. The table has the following columns: a checkbox, IP Address, Version, Community String/User Name, UDP Port, Security Level, Timeout, and Retry Times. The data rows are as follows:

<input type="checkbox"/>	IP Address	Version	Community String/User Name	UDP Port	Security Level	Timeout	Retry Times
<input type="checkbox"/>	192.168.0.4	v3	steve	162	noAuthNoPriv		
<input type="checkbox"/>	192.168.0.5	v3	bobby	162	noAuthNoPriv		
<input type="checkbox"/>	192.168.0.6	v3	betty	162	authNoPriv		
<input type="checkbox"/>	192.168.2.9	v2c	venus	162		1600	5
<input type="checkbox"/>	192.168.5.8	v3	margaret	162	authPriv	1600	5

At the bottom of the table, there are two buttons: 'Delete' and 'Revert'.

### Creating SNMP Notification Logs

Use the Administration > SNMP (Configure Notify Filter - Add) page to create an SNMP notification log.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ Systems that support SNMP often need a mechanism for recording Notification information as a hedge against lost notifications, whether there are Traps or Informs that may be exceeding retransmission limits. The Notification Log MIB (NLM, RFC 3014) provides an infrastructure in which information from other MIBs may be logged.
- ◆ Given the service provided by the NLM, individual MIBs can now bear less responsibility to record transient information associated with an event against the possibility that the Notification message is lost, and applications can poll the log to verify that they have not missed any important Notifications.
- ◆ If notification logging is not configured, when the switch reboots, some SNMP traps (such as warm start) cannot be logged.
- ◆ To avoid this problem, notification logging should be configured as described in this section, and these commands stored in the startup configuration file using the System > File (Copy – Running-Config) page as described on [page 75](#). Then when the switch reboots, SNMP traps (such as warm start) can now be logged.
- ◆ Based on the default settings used in RFC 3014, a notification log can contain up to 256 entries, and the entry aging time is 1440 minutes. Information recorded in a notification log, and the entry aging time can only be configured using SNMP from a network management station.



- ◆ When a trap host is created using the Administration > SNMP (Configure Trap – Add) page described on [page 380](#), a default notify filter will be created.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **IP Address** – The IPv4 or IPv6 address of a remote device. The specified target host must already have been configured using the Administration > SNMP (Configure Trap – Add) page.

The notification log is stored locally. It is not sent to a remote device. This remote host parameter is only required to complete mandatory fields in the SNMP Notification MIB.

- ◆ **Filter Profile Name** – Notification log profile name. (Range: 1-32 characters)

### Web Interface

To create an SNMP notification log:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure Notify Filter from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Fill in the IP address of a configured trap manager and the filter profile name.
5. Click Apply

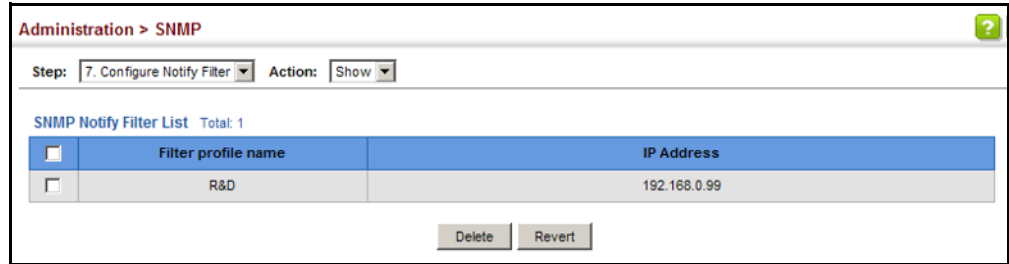
**Figure 238: Creating SNMP Notification Logs**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring SNMP notification logs. At the top, it says "Administration > SNMP". Below that, there are two dropdown menus: "Step:" with "7. Configure Notify Filter" selected, and "Action:" with "Add" selected. Below these are two text input fields: "IP Address" with "192.168.0.99" entered, and "Filter Profile Name" with "R&D" entered. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

To show configured SNMP notification logs:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Configure Notify Filter from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

Figure 239: Showing SNMP Notification Logs



### Showing SNMP Statistics

Use the Administration > SNMP (Show Statistics) page to show counters for SNMP input and output protocol data units.

#### Parameters

The following counters are displayed:

- ◆ **SNMP packets input** – The total number of messages delivered to the SNMP entity from the transport service.
- ◆ **Bad SNMP version errors** – The total number of SNMP messages which were delivered to the SNMP entity and were for an unsupported SNMP version.
- ◆ **Unknown community name** – The total number of SNMP messages delivered to the SNMP entity which used a SNMP community name not known to said entity.
- ◆ **Illegal operation for community name supplied** – The total number of SNMP messages delivered to the SNMP entity which represented an SNMP operation which was not allowed by the SNMP community named in the message.
- ◆ **Encoding errors** – The total number of ASN.1 or BER errors encountered by the SNMP entity when decoding received SNMP messages.
- ◆ **Number of requested variables** – The total number of MIB objects which have been retrieved successfully by the SNMP protocol entity as the result of receiving valid SNMP Get-Request and Get-Next PDUs.
- ◆ **Number of altered variables** – The total number of MIB objects which have been altered successfully by the SNMP protocol entity as the result of receiving valid SNMP Set-Request PDUs.
- ◆ **Get-request PDUs** – The total number of SNMP Get-Request PDUs which have been accepted and processed, or generated, by the SNMP protocol entity.
- ◆ **Get-next PDUs** – The total number of SNMP Get-Next PDUs which have been accepted and processed, or generated, by the SNMP protocol entity.
- ◆ **Set-request PDUs** – The total number of SNMP Set-Request PDUs which have been accepted and processed, or generated, by the SNMP protocol entity.

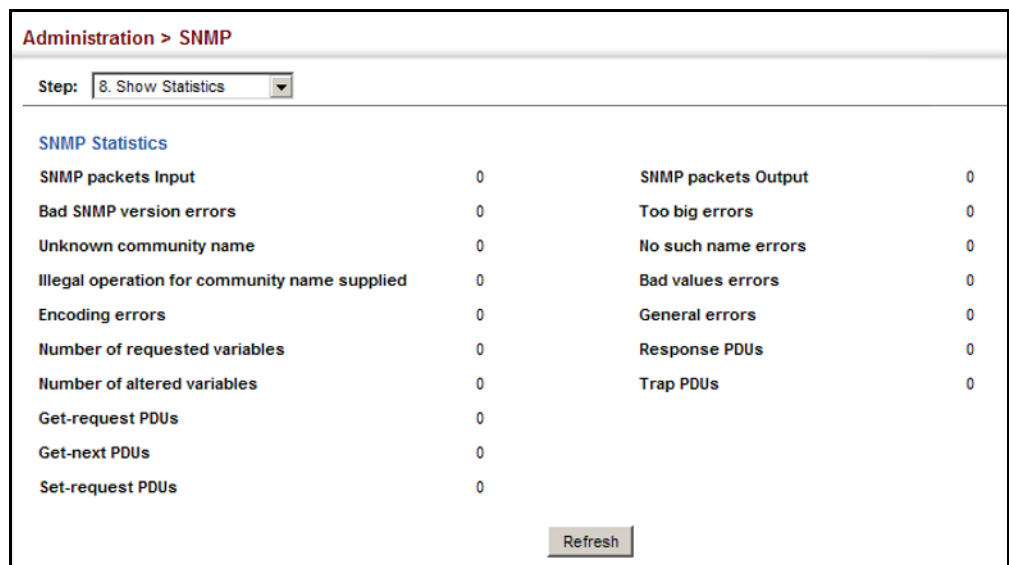
- ◆ **SNMP packets output** – The total number of SNMP Messages which were passed from the SNMP protocol entity to the transport service.
- ◆ **Too big errors** – The total number of SNMP PDUs which were generated by the SNMP protocol entity and for which the value of the error-status field is “tooBig.”
- ◆ **No such name errors** – The total number of SNMP PDUs which were delivered to, or generated by, the SNMP protocol entity and for which the value of the error-status field is “noSuchName.”
- ◆ **Bad values errors** – The total number of SNMP PDUs which were delivered to, or generated by, the SNMP protocol entity and for which the value of the error-status field is “badValue.”
- ◆ **General errors** – The total number of SNMP PDUs which were delivered to, or generated by, the SNMP protocol entity and for which the value of the error-status field is “genErr.”
- ◆ **Response PDUs** – The total number of SNMP Get-Response PDUs which have been accepted and processed by, or generated by, the SNMP protocol entity.
- ◆ **Trap PDUs** – The total number of SNMP Trap PDUs which have been accepted and processed by, or generated by, the SNMP protocol entity.

### Web Interface

To show SNMP statistics:

1. Click Administration, SNMP.
2. Select Show Statistics from the Step list.

**Figure 240: Showing SNMP Statistics**



## Remote Monitoring

Remote Monitoring allows a remote device to collect information or respond to specified events on an independent basis. This switch is an RMON-capable device which can independently perform a wide range of tasks, significantly reducing network management traffic. It can continuously run diagnostics and log information on network performance. If an event is triggered, it can automatically notify the network administrator of a failure and provide historical information about the event. If it cannot connect to the management agent, it will continue to perform any specified tasks and pass data back to the management station the next time it is contacted.

The switch supports mini-RMON, which consists of the Statistics, History, Event and Alarm groups. When RMON is enabled, the system gradually builds up information about its physical interfaces, storing this information in the relevant RMON database group. A management agent then periodically communicates with the switch using the SNMP protocol. However, if the switch encounters a critical event, it can automatically send a trap message to the management agent which can then respond to the event if so configured.

### Configuring RMON Alarms

Use the Administration > RMON (Configure Global - Add - Alarm) page to define specific criteria that will generate response events. Alarms can be set to test data over any specified time interval, and can monitor absolute or changing values (such as a statistical counter reaching a specific value, or a statistic changing by a certain amount over the set interval). Alarms can be set to respond to rising or falling thresholds. (However, note that after an alarm is triggered it will not be triggered again until the statistical value crosses the opposite bounding threshold and then back across the trigger threshold.)

#### Command Usage

- ◆ If an alarm is already defined for an index, the entry must be deleted before any changes can be made.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Index** – Index to this entry. (Range: 1-65535)
- ◆ **Variable** – The object identifier of the MIB variable to be sampled. Only variables of the type etherStatsEntry.n.n may be sampled.

Note that etherStatsEntry.n uniquely defines the MIB variable, and etherStatsEntry.n.n defines the MIB variable, plus the etherStatsIndex. For example, 1.3.6.1.2.1.16.1.1.6.1 denotes etherStatsBroadcastPkts, plus the etherStatsIndex of 1.

- ◆ **Interval** – The polling interval. (Range: 1-31622400 seconds)

- ◆ **Sample Type** – Tests for absolute or relative changes in the specified variable.
  - **Absolute** – The variable is compared directly to the thresholds at the end of the sampling period.
  - **Delta** – The last sample is subtracted from the current value and the difference is then compared to the thresholds.
- ◆ **Rising Threshold** – If the current value is greater than or equal to the rising threshold, and the last sample value was less than this threshold, then an alarm will be generated. After a rising event has been generated, another such event will not be generated until the sampled value has fallen below the rising threshold, reaches the falling threshold, and again moves back up to the rising threshold. (Range: 0-2147483647)
- ◆ **Rising Event Index** – The index of the event to use if an alarm is triggered by monitored variables reaching or crossing above the rising threshold. If there is no corresponding entry in the event control table, then no event will be generated. (Range: 0-65535)
- ◆ **Falling Threshold** – If the current value is less than or equal to the falling threshold, and the last sample value was greater than this threshold, then an alarm will be generated. After a falling event has been generated, another such event will not be generated until the sampled value has risen above the falling threshold, reaches the rising threshold, and again moves back down to the falling threshold. (Range: 0-2147483647)
- ◆ **Falling Event Index** – The index of the event to use if an alarm is triggered by monitored variables reaching or crossing below the falling threshold. If there is no corresponding entry in the event control table, then no event will be generated. (Range: 0-65535)
- ◆ **Owner** – Name of the person who created this entry. (Range: 1-32 characters)

#### Web Interface

To configure an RMON alarm:

1. Click Administration, RMON.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Click Alarm.
5. Enter an index number, the MIB object to be polled (etherStatsEntry.n.n), the polling interval, the sample type, the thresholds, and the event to trigger.
6. Click Apply

Figure 241: Configuring an RMON Alarm

The screenshot shows the 'Administration > RMON' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail and a header. Below the header, there are two dropdown menus: 'Step: 1. Configure Global' and 'Action: Add'. The main configuration area has two radio buttons: 'Alarm' (selected) and 'Event'. Below these are several input fields and a dropdown menu:

- Index (1-65535): 1
- Variable: 6.1
- Interval (1-31622400): 15 sec
- Sample Type: Delta
- Rising Threshold (0-2147483647): 100
- Rising Event Index (0-65535): 30
- Falling Threshold (0-2147483647): 1
- Falling Event Index (0-65535): 2
- Owner: bill

At the bottom right of the form are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

To show configured RMON alarms:

1. Click Administration, RMON.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.
4. Click Alarm.



**Note:** The RMON show page includes the **Status** parameter indicating the condition of the configured alarm.



**Note:** The RMON show page includes the following parameters:

- ◆ **Type** - this is the Sample Type set on the configuration page.
- ◆ **Last Value** - This is the last measured value of the variable being measured.

Figure 242: Showing Configured RMON Alarms

Administration > RMON

Step: 1. Configure Global Action: Show

Alarm  Event

RMON Alarm List Total: 28

<input type="checkbox"/>	Index	Status	Variable	Interval	Type	Last Value	Rising Threshold	Rising Event Index	Falling Threshold	Falling Event Index	Owner
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Valid	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.1.1.1.6.1	30	Delta	0	892800	0	446400	0	
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Valid	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.1.1.1.6.2	30	Delta	0	892800	0	446400	0	
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	Valid	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.1.1.1.6.3	30	Delta	0	892800	0	446400	0	
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	Valid	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.1.1.1.6.4	30	Delta	0	892800	0	446400	0	
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	Valid	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.1.1.1.6.5	30	Delta	0	892800	0	446400	0	

### Configuring RMON Events

Use the Administration > RMON (Configure Global - Add - Event) page to set the action to take when an alarm is triggered. The response can include logging the alarm or sending a message to a trap manager. Alarms and corresponding events provide a way of immediately responding to critical network problems.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ If an alarm is already defined for an index, the entry must be deleted before any changes can be made.
- ◆ One default event is configured as follows:
  - event Index = 1
  - Description: RMON\_TRAP\_LOG
  - Event type: log & trap
  - Event community name is public
  - Owner is RMON\_SNMP

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Index** – Index to this entry. (Range: 1-65535)
- ◆ **Type** – Specifies the type of event to initiate:
  - **None** – No event is generated.
  - **Log** – Generates an RMON log entry when the event is triggered. Log messages are processed based on the current configuration settings for event logging (see “System Log Configuration” on page 330).
  - **Trap** – Sends a trap message to all configured trap managers (see “Specifying Trap Managers” on page 380).
  - **Log and Trap** – Logs the event and sends a trap message.

- ◆ **Description** – A comment that describes this event. (Range: 1-127 characters)
- ◆ **Owner** – Name of the person who created this entry. (Range: 1-32 characters)

### Web Interface

To configure an RMON event:

1. Click Administration, RMON.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Click Event.
5. Enter an index number, the type of event to initiate, the community string to send with trap messages, the name of the person who created this event, and a brief description of the event.
6. Click Apply

**Figure 243: Configuring an RMON Event**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring an RMON event. The breadcrumb navigation is "Administration > RMON". At the top, there are two dropdown menus: "Step:" with "1. Configure Global" selected, and "Action:" with "Add" selected. Below these are two radio buttons: "Alarm" (unselected) and "Event" (selected). The form contains the following fields:

- Index (1-65535):** A text input field containing the value "2".
- Type:** A dropdown menu with "None" selected.
- Description:** A text input field containing the value "for software group".
- Owner:** A text input field containing the value "david".

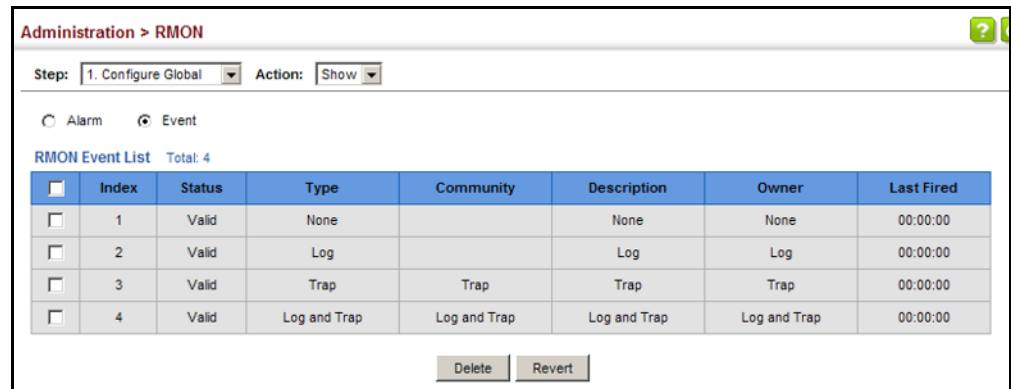
At the bottom right of the form are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

To show configured RMON events:

1. Click Administration, RMON.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.
4. Click Event.



**Figure 244: Showing Configured RMON Events**



### Configuring RMON History Samples

Use the Administration > RMON (Configure Interface - Add - History) page to collect statistics on a physical interface to monitor network utilization, packet types, and errors. A historical record of activity can be used to track down intermittent problems. The record can be used to establish normal baseline activity, which may reveal problems associated with high traffic levels, broadcast storms, or other unusual events. It can also be used to predict network growth and plan for expansion before your network becomes too overloaded.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ Each index number equates to a port on the switch.
- ◆ If history collection is already enabled on an interface, the entry must be deleted before any changes can be made.
- ◆ The information collected for each sample includes:  
input octets, packets, broadcast packets, multicast packets, undersize packets, oversize packets, fragments, jabbers, CRC alignment errors, collisions, drop events, and network utilization.  
For a description of the statistics displayed on the Show Details page, refer to ["Showing Port or Trunk Statistics" on page 106](#).
- ◆ The switch reserves two index entries for each port. If a default index entry is re-assigned to another port using the Add page, this index will not appear in the Show nor Show Details page for the port to which is normally assigned. For example, if control entry 15 is assigned to port 5, this index entry will be removed from the Show and Show Details page for port 8.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** – The port number on the switch.
- ◆ **Index** - Index to this entry. (Range: 1-65535)

- ◆ **Interval** - The polling interval. (Range: 1-3600 seconds; Default: 1800 seconds)
- ◆ **Buckets** - The number of buckets requested for this entry. (Range: 1-65536; Default: 8)  
The number of buckets granted are displayed on the Show page.
- ◆ **Owner** - Name of the person who created this entry. (Range: 1-32 characters)

### Web Interface

To periodically sample statistics on a port:

1. Click Administration, RMON.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Click History.
5. Select a port from the list as the data source.
6. Enter an index number, the sampling interval, the number of buckets to use, and the name of the owner for this entry.
7. Click Apply

**Figure 245: Configuring an RMON History Sample**

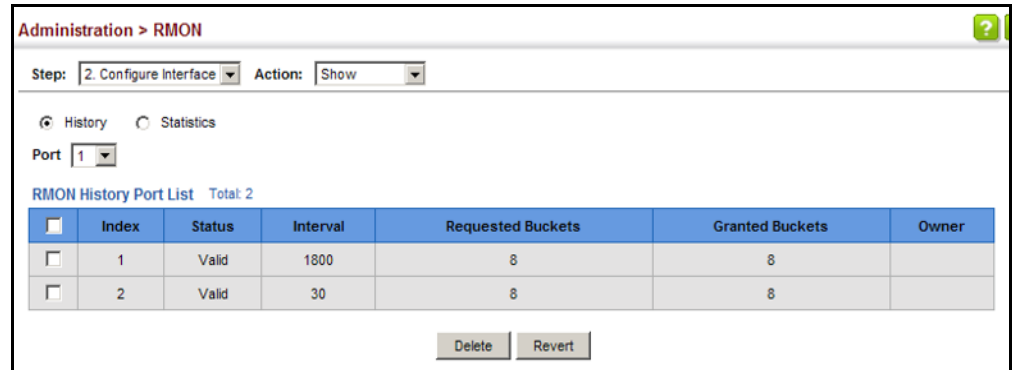
The screenshot shows the 'Administration > RMON' configuration page. At the top, there are two dropdown menus: 'Step' set to '2. Configure Interface' and 'Action' set to 'Add'. Below these are two radio buttons: 'History' (selected) and 'Statistics'. A 'Port' dropdown menu is set to '2'. The main configuration area contains several input fields: 'Index (1-65535)' with the value '100', 'Interval (1-3600)' with the value '60' and a 'sec' label, 'Buckets (1-65535)' with the value '10', and 'Owner' with the value 'david'. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

To show configured RMON history samples:

1. Click Administration, RMON.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

4. Select a port from the list.
5. Click History.

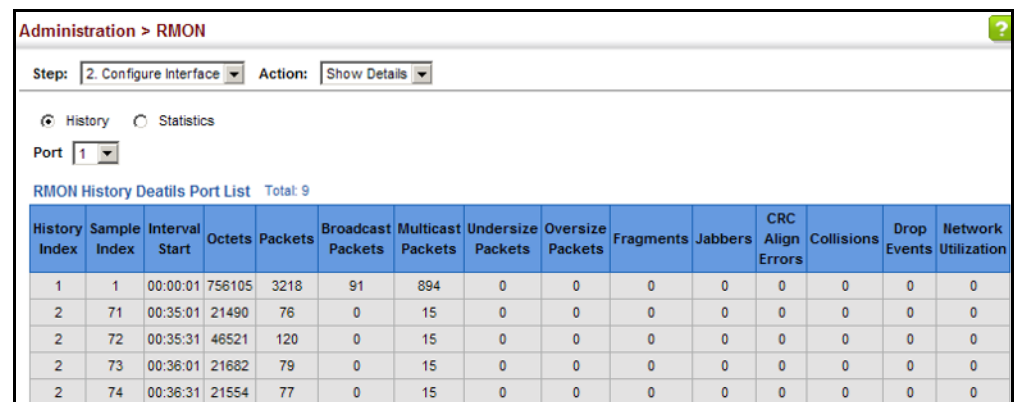
**Figure 246: Showing Configured RMON History Samples**



To show collected RMON history samples:

1. Click Administration, RMON.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select Show Details from the Action list.
4. Select a port from the list.
5. Click History.

**Figure 247: Showing Collected RMON History Samples**



**Configuring RMON Statistical Samples** Use the Administration > RMON (Configure Interface - Add - Statistics) page to collect statistics on a port, which can subsequently be used to monitor the network for common errors and overall traffic rates.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ If statistics collection is already enabled on an interface, the entry must be deleted before any changes can be made.
- ◆ The information collected for each entry includes:  
input octets, packets, broadcast packets, multicast packets, undersize packets, oversize packets, CRC alignment errors, jabbers, fragments, collisions, drop events, and frames of various sizes.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** – The port number on the switch.
- ◆ **Index** - Index to this entry. (Range: 1-65535)
- ◆ **Owner** - Name of the person who created this entry. (Range: 1-32 characters)

#### Web Interface

To enable regular sampling of statistics on a port:

1. Click Administration, RMON.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Click Statistics.
5. Select a port from the list as the data source.
6. Enter an index number, and the name of the owner for this entry
7. Click Apply

**Figure 248: Configuring an RMON Statistical Sample**

Administration > RMON

Step: 2. Configure Interface Action: Add

History  Statistics

Port 2

Index (1-65535) 100

Owner mary

Apply Revert

To show configured RMON statistical samples:

1. Click Administration, RMON.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.
4. Select a port from the list.
5. Click Statistics.

**Figure 249: Showing Configured RMON Statistical Samples**

Administration > RMON

Step: 2. Configure Interface Action: Show

History  Statistics

Port 2

RMON Statistics Port List Total: 2

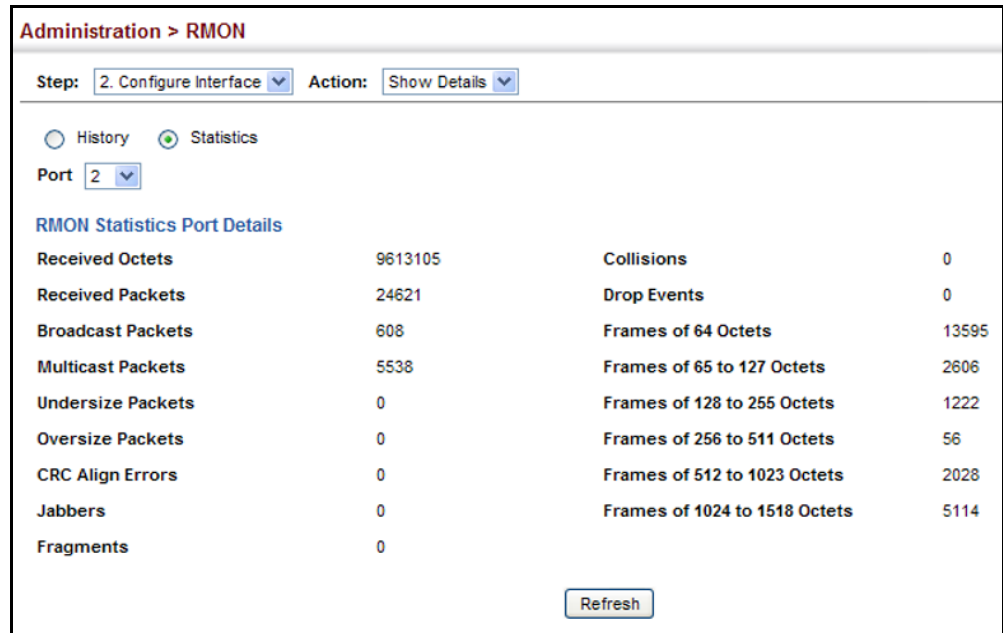
<input type="checkbox"/>	Index	Status	Owner
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Valid	abc
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Valid	test

Delete Revert

To show collected RMON statistical samples:

1. Click Administration, RMON.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select Show Details from the Action list.
4. Select a port from the list.
5. Click Statistics.

Figure 250: Showing Collected RMON Statistical Samples



## Switch Clustering

Switch clustering is a method of grouping switches together to enable centralized management through a single unit. Switches that support clustering can be grouped together regardless of physical location or switch type, as long as they are connected to the same local network.

### Command Usage

- ◆ A switch cluster has a primary unit called the “Commander” which is used to manage all other “Member” switches in the cluster. The management station can use either Telnet or the web interface to communicate directly with the Commander through its IP address, and then use the Commander to manage Member switches through the cluster’s “internal” IP addresses.
- ◆ Clustered switches must be in the same Ethernet broadcast domain. In other words, clustering only functions for switches which can pass information between the Commander and potential Candidates or active Members through VLAN 4093.
- ◆ Once a switch has been configured to be a cluster Commander, it automatically discovers other cluster-enabled switches in the network. These “Candidate” switches only become cluster Members when manually selected by the administrator through the management station.
- ◆ There can be up to 100 candidates and 36 member switches in one cluster.
- ◆ A switch can only be a member of one cluster.

- ◆ The cluster VLAN 4093 is not configured by default. Before using clustering, take the following actions to set up this VLAN:
  1. Create VLAN 4093 (see “Configuring VLAN Groups” on page 149).
  2. Add the participating ports to this VLAN (see “Adding Static Members to VLANs” on page 152), and set them to hybrid mode, tagged members, PVID = 1, and acceptable frame type = all.
- ◆ After the Commander and Members have been configured, any switch in the cluster can be managed from the web agent by choosing the desired Member ID from the Show Member page.

### Configuring General Settings for Clusters

Use the Administration > Cluster (Configure Global) page to create a switch cluster.

#### Command Usage

First be sure that clustering is enabled on the switch (the default is disabled), then set the switch as a Cluster Commander. Set a Cluster IP Pool that does not conflict with the network IP subnet. Cluster IP addresses are assigned to switches when they become Members and are used for communication between Member switches and the Commander.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Cluster Status** – Enables or disables clustering on the switch. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Commander Status** – Enables or disables the switch as a cluster Commander. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **IP Pool** – An “internal” IP address pool that is used to assign IP addresses to Member switches in the cluster. Internal cluster IP addresses are in the form 10.x.x.member-ID. Only the base IP address of the pool needs to be set since Member IDs can only be between 1 and 36. Note that you cannot change the cluster IP pool when the switch is currently in Commander mode. Commander mode must first be disabled. (Default: 10.254.254.1)
- ◆ **Role** – Indicates the current role of the switch in the cluster; either Commander, Member, or Candidate. (Default: Candidate)
- ◆ **Number of Members** – The current number of Member switches in the cluster.
- ◆ **Number of Candidates** – The current number of Candidate switches discovered in the network that are available to become Members.

### Web Interface

To configure a switch cluster:

1. Click Administration, Cluster.
2. Select Configure Global from the Step list.
3. Set the required attributes for a Commander or a managed candidate.
4. Click Apply

**Figure 251: Configuring a Switch Cluster**

The screenshot shows the 'Administration > Cluster' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'Administration > Cluster' and a 'Step:' dropdown menu set to '1. Configure Global'. Below this, there are several configuration options:

Cluster Status	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Commander Status	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
IP Pool	<input type="text" value="10.254.254.1"/>
Role	Commander
Number of Members	2
Number of Candidates	3

At the bottom right of the form, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

**Cluster Member Configuration** Use the Administration > Cluster (Configure Member - Add) page to add Candidate switches to the cluster as Members.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Member ID** – Specify a Member ID number for the selected Candidate switch. (Range: 1-36)
- ◆ **MAC Address** – Select a discovered switch MAC address from the Candidate Table, or enter a specific MAC address of a known switch.



### Web Interface

To configure cluster members:

1. Click Administration, Cluster.
2. Select Configure Member from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Select one of the cluster candidates discovered by this switch, or enter the MAC address of a candidate.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 252: Configuring a Cluster Members**

To show the cluster members:

1. Click Administration, Cluster.
2. Select Configure Member from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

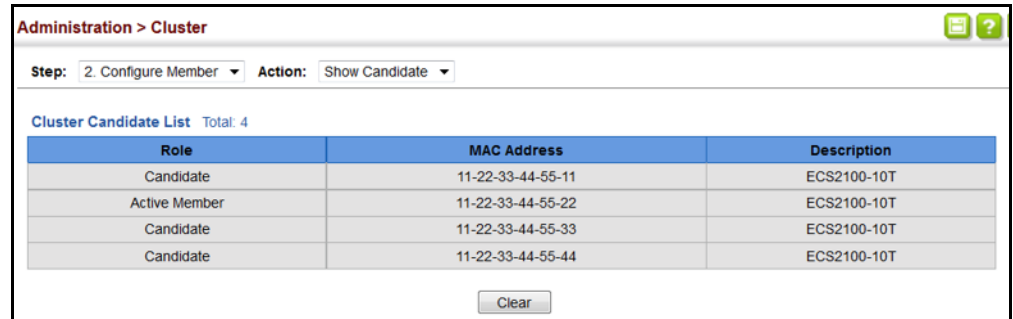
**Figure 253: Showing Cluster Members**

Member ID	Role	IP Address	MAC Address	Description
1	Active Member	10.254.254.2	11-22-33-44-55-33	ECS2100-10T
2	Candidate	10.254.254.3	11-22-33-44-55-77	ECS2100-10T

To show cluster candidates:

1. Click Administration, Cluster.
2. Select Configure Member from the Step list.
3. Select Show Candidate from the Action list.

**Figure 254: Showing Cluster Candidates**



The screenshot shows the 'Administration > Cluster' page. At the top, there are two dropdown menus: 'Step: 2. Configure Member' and 'Action: Show Candidate'. Below these is a table titled 'Cluster Candidate List' with a total of 4 candidates. The table has three columns: Role, MAC Address, and Description. The data rows are as follows:

Role	MAC Address	Description
Candidate	11-22-33-44-55-11	ECS2100-10T
Active Member	11-22-33-44-55-22	ECS2100-10T
Candidate	11-22-33-44-55-33	ECS2100-10T
Candidate	11-22-33-44-55-44	ECS2100-10T

Below the table is a 'Clear' button.

**Managing Cluster Members** Use the Administration > Cluster (Show Member) page to manage another switch in the cluster.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

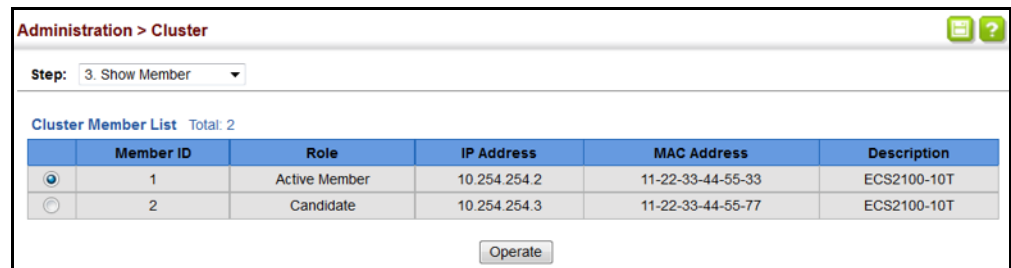
- ◆ **Member ID** – The ID number of the Member switch. (Range: 1-36)
- ◆ **Role** – Indicates the current status of the switch in the cluster.
- ◆ **IP Address** – The internal cluster IP address assigned to the Member switch.
- ◆ **MAC Address** – The MAC address of the Member switch.
- ◆ **Description** – The system description string of the Member switch.
- ◆ **Operate** – Click to remotely manage a cluster member.

### Web Interface

To manage a cluster member:

1. Click Administration, Cluster.
2. Select Show Member from the Step list.
3. Select an entry from the Cluster Member List.
4. Click Operate.

**Figure 255: Managing a Cluster Member**



## Setting a Time Range

Use the Administration > Time Range page to set a time range during which various functions are applied, including applied ACLs or PoE.

### Command Usage

- ◆ If both an absolute rule and one or more periodic rules are configured for the same time range (i.e., named entry), that entry will only take effect if the current time is within the absolute time range and one of the periodic time ranges.
- ◆ A maximum of eight rules can be configured for a time range.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### Add

- ◆ **Time-Range Name** – Name of a time range. (Range: 1-32 characters)

#### Add Rule

- ◆ **Time-Range** – Name of a time range.

◆ **Mode**

- **Absolute** – Specifies a specific time or time range.
  - **Start/End** – Specifies the hours, minutes, month, day, and year at which to start or end.
- **Periodic** – Specifies a periodic interval.
  - **Start/To** – Specifies the days of the week, hours, and minutes at which to start or end.

**Web Interface**

To configure a time range:

1. Click Administration, Time Range.
2. Select Add from the Action list.
3. Enter the name of a time range.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 256: Setting the Name of a Time Range**

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Administration > Time Range". At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail. Below it, an "Action:" dropdown menu is set to "Add". Underneath, a "Time-Range Name" label is followed by a text input field containing the text "r&d". At the bottom right of the form, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

To show a list of time ranges:

1. Click Administration, Time Range.
2. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 257: Showing a List of Time Ranges**

The screenshot shows the same web interface as Figure 256, but the "Action:" dropdown menu is now set to "Show". Below the form, there is a table titled "Time-Range List" with a "Total: 1" indicator. The table has two columns: a checkbox column and a "Time-Range Name" column. The first row has an unchecked checkbox and the text "r&d". At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "Delete" and "Revert".

To configure a rule for a time range:

1. Click Administration, Time Range.
2. Select Add Rule from the Action list.
3. Select the name of time range from the drop-down list.
4. Select a mode option of Absolute or Periodic.
5. Fill in the required parameters for the selected mode.
6. Click Apply.

**Figure 258: Add a Rule to a Time Range**

The screenshot shows the 'Administration > Time Range' configuration page. At the top, the breadcrumb 'Administration > Time Range' is visible. Below it, the 'Action:' dropdown is set to 'Add Rule'. The 'Time-Range' dropdown is set to 'r&d'. The 'Mode' dropdown is set to 'Periodic'. The 'Start' section includes 'Days of the week' set to 'Weekend', 'Hours (0-23)' set to '5', and 'Minutes (0-59)' set to '0'. The 'To' section includes 'Days of the week' set to 'Sunday', 'Hours (0-23)' set to '6', and 'Minutes (0-59)' set to '0'. At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons.

To show the rules configured for a time range:

1. Click Administration, Time Range.
2. Select Show Rule from the Action list.

**Figure 259: Showing the Rules Configured for a Time Range**

The screenshot shows the 'Administration > Time Range' configuration page with the 'Action:' dropdown set to 'Show Rule'. The 'Time-Range' dropdown is set to 'r&d'. Below the form, there is a table titled 'Time-Range Rule List' with a 'Total: 1' indicator. The table has columns for 'Mode', 'Start', and 'End'. A single rule is listed with 'Mode' as 'Periodic', 'Start' as 'Weekend 05:00', and 'End' as 'Weekend 06:00'. At the bottom right, there are 'Delete' and 'Revert' buttons.

	Mode	Start	End
<input type="checkbox"/>	Periodic	Weekend 05:00	Weekend 06:00

---

## LBD Configuration

The switch can be configured to detect general loopback conditions caused by hardware problems or faulty protocol settings. When loopback detection (LBD) is enabled, a control frame is transmitted on the participating ports, and the switch monitors inbound traffic to see if the frame is looped back.

### Usage Guidelines

- ◆ The default settings for the control frame transmit interval and recover time may be adjusted to improve performance for your specific environment. The shutdown mode may also need to be changed once you determine what kind of packets are being looped back.
- ◆ General loopback detection provided by the commands described in this section and loopback detection provided by the spanning tree protocol cannot both be enabled at the same time. If loopback detection is enabled for the spanning tree protocol, general loopback detection cannot be enabled on the same interface.
- ◆ When a loopback event is detected on an interface or when an interface is released from a shutdown state caused by a loopback event, a trap message is sent and the event recorded in the system log.
- ◆ Loopback detection must be enabled both globally and on an interface for loopback detection to take effect.

### Configuring Global Settings for LBD

Use the Administration > LBD (Configure Global) page to enable loopback detection globally, specify the interval at which to transmit control frames, the interval to wait before releasing an interface from shutdown state, the response to a detected loopback, and the traps to send.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Global Status** – Enables loopback detection globally on the switch. (Default: Enabled)
- ◆ **Transmit Interval** – Specifies the interval at which to transmit loopback detection control frames. (Range: 1-32767 seconds; Default: 10 seconds)
- ◆ **Recover Time** – Specifies the interval to wait before the switch automatically releases an interface from shutdown state. (Range: 60-1,000,000 seconds; Default: 60 seconds)

When the loopback detection mode is changed (enabled or disabled), any ports placed in shutdown state by the loopback detection process will be immediately restored to operation regardless of the remaining recover time.

If the recover time is not enabled (checkbox unmarked), all ports placed in shutdown state can be restored to operation using the Release button. To restore a specific port, re-enable Admin status on the Configure Interface page.

The recover-time is the maximum time when recovery is triggered after a loop is detected. The actual interval between recovery and detection will be less than or equal to the recover-time.

- ◆ **Action** – Specifies the protective action the switch takes when a loopback condition is detected. (Options: Block, None, Shutdown; Default: Shutdown)
  - **Block** – When the response to a detected loopback condition is set to block user traffic, and a loopback is detected on a port which is a member of a specific VLAN, packets belonging to that VLAN are dropped at the offending port. Under these conditions, loopback detection control frames may be untagged or tagged depending on the port's VLAN membership type. Ingress filtering for the port is enabled automatically if not already enabled by other commands. The port's original setting for ingress filtering will be restored when loopback detection is disabled.
  - **None** - No action is taken.
  - **Shutdown** – When the response to a detected loopback condition is set to shut down a port, and a port receives a control frame sent by itself, this means that the port is in looped state, and the VLAN in the frame payload is also in looped state with the wrong VLAN tag. The looped port is therefore shut down.

When the loopback detection response is changed, any ports placed in shutdown state by the loopback detection process will be immediately restored to operation regardless of the remaining recover time.

- ◆ **Trap** – Sends a trap when a loopback condition is detected, or when the switch recovers from a loopback condition. (Options: Both, Detect, None, Recover; Default: None)
  - **Both** – Sends an SNMP trap message when a loopback condition is detected, or when the switch recovers from a loopback condition.
  - **Detect** – Sends an SNMP trap message when a loopback condition is detected.
  - **None** – Does not send an SNMP trap for loopback detection or recovery.
  - **Recover** – Sends an SNMP trap message when the switch recovers from a loopback condition.
- ◆ **Release** – Releases all interfaces currently shut down by the loopback detection feature.

### Web Interface

To configure global settings for LBD:

1. Click Administration, LBD, Configure Global.
2. Make the required configuration changes.
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 260: Configuring Global Settings for LBD**

The screenshot shows the 'Administration > LBD' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'Administration > LBD' and a 'Step: 1. Configure Global' dropdown. The main configuration area includes: 'Global Status' with an unchecked 'Enabled' checkbox; 'Transmit Interval (1-32767)' with a text input field containing '10' and 'sec' to its right; 'Recover Time (60-1000000)' with a checked checkbox, a text input field containing '60', and 'sec' to its right; 'Action' with a dropdown menu showing 'Shutdown'; and 'Trap' with a dropdown menu showing 'None'. At the bottom right are 'Apply' and 'Revert' buttons. At the bottom left is a 'Release' button with the text 'Click this button to release all looped ports manually'.

### Configuring Interface Settings for LBD

Use the Administration > LBD (Configure Interface) page to enable loopback detection on an interface, to display the loopback operational state, and the VLANs which are looped back.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Port** (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **Trunk** (Range: 1-8)
- ◆ **Admin State**
- ◆ **Operation State**
- ◆ **Looped VLAN**

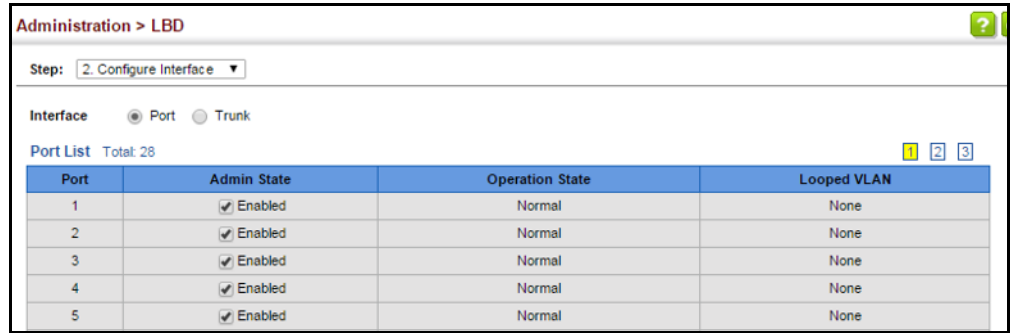
### Web Interface

To configure interface settings for LBD:

1. Click Administration, LBD, Configure Interface.
2. Make the required configuration changes.
3. Click Apply.



Figure 261: Configuring Interface Settings for LBD



The screenshot shows a web-based configuration interface for LBD. At the top, it says "Administration > LBD". Below that, there is a "Step:" dropdown menu set to "2. Configure Interface". Underneath, there are radio buttons for "Interface" type, with "Port" selected and "Trunk" unselected. Below the radio buttons, it says "Port List Total: 28" and has three numbered tabs (1, 2, 3), with tab 1 being active. A table with four columns is displayed: "Port", "Admin State", "Operation State", and "Looped VLAN". The table contains five rows of data, all showing "Enabled" for Admin State, "Normal" for Operation State, and "None" for Looped VLAN.

Port	Admin State	Operation State	Looped VLAN
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Normal	None
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Normal	None
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Normal	None
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Normal	None
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Normal	None



# Multicast Filtering

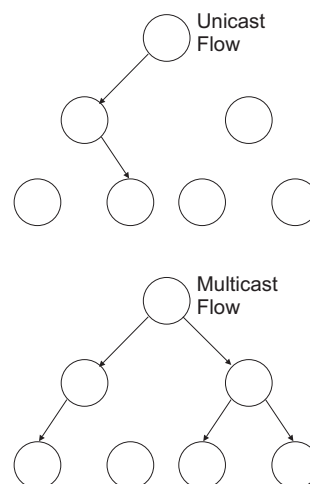
This chapter describes how to configure the following multicast services:

- ◆ **IGMP Snooping** – Configures snooping and query parameters.
- ◆ **Filtering and Throttling** – Filters specified multicast service, or throttles the maximum of multicast groups allowed on an interface.
- ◆ **MLD Snooping** – Configures snooping and query parameters for IPv6.
- ◆ **MLD Filtering and Throttling** – Filters specified multicast service, or throttles the maximum of multicast groups allowed on an interface.
- ◆ **Filtering MLD Query Packets on an Interface** – Configures the interface to drop MLD query packets.

## Overview

Multicasting is used to support real-time applications such as video conferencing or streaming audio. A multicast server does not have to establish a separate connection with each client. It merely broadcasts its service to the network, and any hosts that want to receive the multicast register with their local multicast switch/router. Although this approach reduces the network overhead required by a multicast server, the broadcast traffic must be carefully pruned at every multicast switch/router it passes through to ensure that traffic is only passed on to the hosts which subscribed to this service.

**Figure 262: Multicast Filtering Concept**



This switch can use Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) to filter multicast traffic. IGMP Snooping can be used to passively monitor or “snoop” on exchanges between attached hosts and an IGMP-enabled device, most commonly a multicast router. In this way, the switch can discover the ports that want to join a multicast group, and set its filters accordingly.

If there is no multicast router attached to the local subnet, multicast traffic and query messages may not be received by the switch. In this case (Layer 2) IGMP Query can be used to actively ask the attached hosts if they want to receive a specific multicast service. IGMP Query thereby identifies the ports containing hosts requesting to join the service and sends data out to those ports only. It then propagates the service request up to any neighboring multicast switch/router to ensure that it will continue to receive the multicast service.

The purpose of IP multicast filtering is to optimize a switched network’s performance, so multicast packets will only be forwarded to those ports containing multicast group hosts or multicast routers/switches, instead of flooding traffic to all ports in the subnet (VLAN).



---

**Note:** Only ASM (any-source multicast) mode is supported on IGMPv3 and MLDv2. SSM (source-specific multicast) on IGMPv3 and MLDv2 is **not supported**. If a client sends an SSM report to the switch, the client will not join the multicast group

---

---

## Layer 2 IGMP (Snooping and Query for IPv4)

IGMP Snooping and Query – If multicast routing is not supported on other switches in your network, you can use IGMP Snooping and IGMP Query ([page 414](#)) to monitor IGMP service requests passing between multicast clients and servers, and dynamically configure the switch ports which need to forward multicast traffic. IGMP Snooping conserves bandwidth on network segments where no node has expressed interest in receiving a specific multicast service. For switches that do not support multicast routing, or where multicast routing is already enabled on other switches in the local network segment, IGMP Snooping is the only service required to support multicast filtering.

When using IGMPv3 snooping, service requests from IGMP Version 1, 2 or 3 hosts are all forwarded to the upstream router as IGMPv3 reports. The primary enhancement provided by IGMPv3 snooping is in keeping track of information about the specific multicast sources which downstream IGMPv3 hosts have requested or refused. The switch maintains information about both multicast groups and channels, where a group indicates a multicast flow for which the hosts have *not* requested a specific source (the only option for IGMPv1 and v2 hosts unless statically configured on the switch), and a channel indicates a flow for which the hosts have requested service from a specific source. For IGMPv1/v2 hosts, the source address of a channel is always null (indicating that any source is acceptable), but for IGMPv3 hosts, it may include a specific address when requested.

Only IGMPv3 hosts can request service from a specific multicast source. When downstream hosts request service from a specific source for a multicast service, these sources are all placed in the Include list, and traffic is forwarded to the hosts from each of these sources. IGMPv3 hosts may also request that service be forwarded from any source except for those specified. In this case, traffic is filtered from sources in the Exclude list, and forwarded from all other available sources.



**Note:** When the switch is configured to use IGMPv3 snooping, the snooping version may be downgraded to version 2 or version 1, depending on the version of the IGMP query packets detected on each VLAN.

**Note:** IGMP snooping will not function unless a multicast router port is enabled on the switch. This can be accomplished in one of two ways. A static router port can be manually configured (see [“Specifying Static Interfaces for a Multicast Router” on page 418](#)). Using this method, the router port is never timed out, and will continue to function until explicitly removed. The other method relies on the switch to dynamically create multicast routing ports whenever multicast routing protocol packets or IGMP query packets are detected on a port.

**Note:** A maximum of up to 1023 multicast entries can be maintained for IGMP snooping. Once the table is full, no new entries are learned. Any subsequent multicast traffic not found in the table is dropped if unregistered-flooding is disabled (default behavior) and no router port is configured in the attached VLAN, or flooded throughout the VLAN if unregistered-flooding is enabled (see [“Configuring IGMP Snooping and Query Parameters” on page 414](#)).

**Static IGMP Router Interface** – If IGMP snooping cannot locate the IGMP querier, you can manually designate a known IGMP querier (i.e., a multicast router/switch) connected over the network to an interface on your switch ([page 418](#)). This interface will then join all the current multicast groups supported by the attached router/switch to ensure that multicast traffic is passed to all appropriate interfaces within the switch.

**Static IGMP Host Interface** – For multicast applications that you need to control more carefully, you can manually assign a multicast service to specific interfaces on the switch ([page 420](#)).

**IGMP Snooping with Proxy Reporting** – The switch supports last leave, and query suppression (as defined in DSL Forum TR-101, April 2006):

- ◆ When proxy reporting is disabled, all IGMP reports received by the switch are forwarded natively to the upstream multicast routers.
- ◆ Last Leave: Intercepts, absorbs and summarizes IGMP leaves coming from IGMP hosts. IGMP leaves are relayed upstream only when necessary, that is, when the last user leaves a multicast group.
- ◆ Query Suppression: Intercepts and processes IGMP queries in such a way that IGMP specific queries are never sent to client ports.

The only deviation from TR-101 is that the marking of IGMP traffic initiated by the switch with priority bits as defined in R-250 is not supported.

### Configuring IGMP Snooping and Query Parameters

Use the Multicast > IGMP Snooping > General page to configure the switch to forward multicast traffic intelligently. Based on the IGMP query and report messages, the switch forwards multicast traffic only to the ports that request it. This prevents the switch from broadcasting the traffic to all ports and possibly disrupting network performance.

#### Command Usage

◆ **IGMP Snooping** – This switch can passively snoop on IGMP Query and Report packets transferred between IP multicast routers/switches and IP multicast host groups to identify the IP multicast group members. It simply monitors the IGMP packets passing through it, picks out the group registration information, and configures the multicast filters accordingly.



**Note:** If unknown multicast traffic enters a VLAN which has been configured with a router port, the traffic is forwarded to that port. However, if no router port exists on the VLAN, the traffic is dropped if unregistered data flooding is disabled (default behavior), or flooded throughout the VLAN if unregistered data flooding is enabled (see “Unregistered Data Flooding” in the Command Attributes section).

---

◆ **IGMP Querier** – A router, or multicast-enabled switch, can periodically ask their hosts if they want to receive multicast traffic. If there is more than one router/switch on the LAN performing IP multicasting, one of these devices is elected “querier” and assumes the role of querying the LAN for group members. It then propagates the service requests on to any upstream multicast switch/router to ensure that it will continue to receive the multicast service.



**Note:** Multicast routers use this information from IGMP snooping and query reports, along with a multicast routing protocol such as DVMRP or PIM, to support IP multicasting across the Internet.

---

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

◆ **IGMP Snooping Status** – When enabled, the switch will monitor network traffic to determine which hosts want to receive multicast traffic. This is referred to as IGMP Snooping. (Default: Disabled)

When IGMP snooping is enabled globally, the per VLAN interface settings for IGMP snooping take precedence (see “[Setting IGMP Snooping Status per Interface](#)” on page 422).

When IGMP snooping is disabled globally, snooping can still be configured per VLAN interface, but the interface settings will not take effect until snooping is re-enabled globally.

- ◆ **Proxy Reporting Status** – Enables IGMP Snooping with Proxy Reporting. (Default: Disabled)

When proxy reporting is enabled with this command, the switch performs “IGMP Snooping with Proxy Reporting” (as defined in DSL Forum TR-101, April 2006), including last leave, and query suppression.

Last leave sends out a proxy query when the last member leaves a multicast group, and query suppression means that specific queries are not forwarded from an upstream multicast router to hosts downstream from this device.

When proxy reporting is disabled, all IGMP reports received by the switch are forwarded natively to the upstream multicast routers.

- ◆ **TCN Flood** – Enables flooding of multicast traffic if a spanning tree topology change notification (TCN) occurs. (Default: Disabled)

When a spanning tree topology change occurs, the multicast membership information learned by switch may be out of date. For example, a host linked to one port before the topology change (TC) may be moved to another port after the change. To ensure that multicast data is delivered to all receivers, by default, a switch in a VLAN (with IGMP snooping enabled) that receives a Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU) with TC bit set (by the root bridge) will enter into “multicast flooding mode” for a period of time until the topology has stabilized and the new locations of all multicast receivers are learned.

If a topology change notification (TCN) is received, and all the uplink ports are subsequently deleted, a time out mechanism is used to delete all of the currently learned multicast channels.

When a new uplink port starts up, the switch sends unsolicited reports for all currently learned channels out the new uplink port.

By default, the switch immediately enters into “multicast flooding mode” when a spanning tree topology change occurs. In this mode, multicast traffic will be flooded to all VLAN ports. If many ports have subscribed to different multicast groups, flooding may cause excessive packet loss on the link between the switch and the end host. Flooding may be disabled to avoid this, causing multicast traffic to be delivered only to those ports on which multicast group members have been learned. Otherwise, the time spent in flooding mode can be manually configured to reduce excessive loading.

When the spanning tree topology changes, the root bridge sends a proxy query to quickly re-learn the host membership/port relations for multicast channels. The root bridge also sends an unsolicited Multicast Router Discover (MRD) request to quickly locate the multicast routers in this VLAN.

The proxy query and unsolicited MRD request are flooded to all VLAN ports except for the receiving port when the switch receives such packets.

- ◆ **TCN Query Solicit** – Sends out an IGMP general query solicitation when a spanning tree topology change notification (TCN) occurs. (Default: Disabled)

When the root bridge in a spanning tree receives a TCN for a VLAN where IGMP snooping is enabled, it issues a global IGMP leave message (or query solicitation). When a switch receives this solicitation, it floods it to all ports in the VLAN where the spanning tree change occurred. When an upstream multicast router receives this solicitation, it immediately issues an IGMP general query.

A query solicitation can be sent whenever the switch notices a topology change, even if it is not the root bridge in spanning tree.

- ◆ **Router Alert Option** – Discards any IGMPv2/v3 packets that do not include the Router Alert option. (Default: Disabled)

As described in Section 9.1 of RFC 3376 for IGMP Version 3, the Router Alert Option can be used to protect against DOS attacks. One common method of attack is launched by an intruder who takes over the role of querier, and starts overloading multicast hosts by sending a large number of group-and-source-specific queries, each with a large source list and the Maximum Response Time set to a large value.

To protect against this kind of attack, (1) routers should not forward queries. This is easier to accomplish if the query carries the Router Alert option. (2) Also, when the switch is acting in the role of a multicast host (such as when using proxy routing), it should ignore version 2 or 3 queries that do not contain the Router Alert option.

- ◆ **Unregistered Data Flooding** – Floods unregistered multicast traffic into the attached VLAN. (Default: Disabled)

Once the table used to store multicast entries for IGMP snooping and multicast routing is filled, no new entries are learned. If no router port is configured in the attached VLAN, and unregistered-flooding is disabled, any subsequent multicast traffic not found in the table is dropped, otherwise it is flooded throughout the VLAN.

- ◆ **Version Exclusive** – Discards any received IGMP messages which use a version different to that currently configured by the IGMP Version attribute. (Default: Disabled)

- ◆ **IGMP Unsolicited Report Interval** – Specifies how often the upstream interface should transmit unsolicited IGMP reports when proxy reporting is enabled. (Range: 1-65535 seconds, Default: 400 seconds)

When a new upstream interface (that is, uplink port) starts up, the switch sends unsolicited reports for all currently learned multicast channels via the new upstream interface.

This command only applies when proxy reporting is enabled.



- ◆ **Router Port Expire Time** – The time the switch waits after the previous querier stops before it considers it to have expired. (Range: 1-65535, Recommended Range: 300-500 seconds, Default: 300)
- ◆ **IGMP Snooping Version** – Sets the protocol version for compatibility with other devices on the network. This is the IGMP Version the switch uses to send snooping reports. (Range: 1-3; Default: 2)  

This attribute configures the IGMP report/query version used by IGMP snooping. Versions 1 - 3 are all supported, and versions 2 and 3 are backward compatible, so the switch can operate with other devices, regardless of the snooping version employed.
- ◆ **Querier Status** – When enabled, the switch can serve as the Querier, which is responsible for asking hosts if they want to receive multicast traffic. (Default: Disabled)

### Web Interface

To configure general settings for IGMP Snooping and Query:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, General.
2. Adjust the IGMP settings as required.
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 263: Configuring General Settings for IGMP Snooping**

The screenshot shows the configuration page for IGMP Snooping General settings. The breadcrumb trail is "Multicast > IGMP Snooping > General". The settings are as follows:

Setting	Value
IGMP Snooping Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Proxy Reporting Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
TCN Flood	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
TCN Query Solicit	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Router Alert Option	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Unregistered Data Flooding	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Version Exclusive	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
IGMP Unsolicited Report Interval (1-65535)	400 seconds
Router Port Expire Time (1-65535)	300 seconds
IGMP Snooping Version (1-3)	2
Querier Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

Buttons: Apply, Revert

**Specifying Static Interfaces for a Multicast Router** Use the Multicast > IGMP Snooping > Multicast Router (Add Static Multicast Router) page to statically attach an interface to a multicast router/switch.

Depending on network connections, IGMP snooping may not always be able to locate the IGMP querier. Therefore, if the IGMP querier is a known multicast router/switch connected over the network to an interface (port or trunk) on the switch, the interface (and a specified VLAN) can be manually configured to join all the current multicast groups supported by the attached router. This can ensure that multicast traffic is passed to all the appropriate interfaces within the switch.

#### Command Usage

IGMP Snooping must be enabled globally on the switch (see [“Configuring IGMP Snooping and Query Parameters” on page 414](#)) before a multicast router port can take effect.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

##### *Add Static Multicast Router*

- ◆ **VLAN** – Selects the VLAN which is to propagate all multicast traffic coming from the attached multicast router. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **Interface** – Activates the Port or Trunk scroll down list.
- ◆ **Port or Trunk** – Specifies the interface attached to a multicast router.

##### *Show Static Multicast Router*

- ◆ **VLAN** – Selects the VLAN for which to display any configured static multicast routers.
- ◆ **Interface** – Shows the interface to which the specified static multicast routers are attached.

##### *Show Current Multicast Router*

- ◆ **VLAN** – Selects the VLAN for which to display any currently active multicast routers.
- ◆ **Interface** – Shows the interface to which an active multicast router is attached.
- ◆ **Type** – Shows if this entry is static or dynamic.
- ◆ **Expire** – Time until this dynamic entry expires.

### Web Interface

To specify a static interface attached to a multicast router:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Multicast Router.
2. Select Add Static Multicast Router from the Action list.
3. Select the VLAN which will forward all the corresponding multicast traffic, and select the port or trunk attached to the multicast router.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 264: Configuring a Static Interface for a Multicast Router**

The screenshot shows the configuration page for a Multicast Router. The breadcrumb is "Multicast > IGMP Snooping > Multicast Router". The "Action" dropdown is set to "Add Static Multicast Router". The "VLAN" dropdown is set to "1". The "Interface" section has radio buttons for "Port" (selected) and "Trunk", with a dropdown menu set to "1". There are "Apply" and "Revert" buttons at the bottom right.

To show the static interfaces attached to a multicast router:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Multicast Router.
2. Select Show Static Multicast Router from the Action list.
3. Select the VLAN for which to display this information.

**Figure 265: Showing Static Interfaces Attached a Multicast Router**

The screenshot shows the configuration page for a Multicast Router. The breadcrumb is "Multicast > IGMP Snooping > Multicast Router". The "Action" dropdown is set to "Show Static Multicast Router". The "VLAN" dropdown is set to "1". Below the dropdowns, the text "Static Multicast Router Interface List Total: 6" is displayed. A table lists the interfaces with checkboxes in the first column:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Interface
<input type="checkbox"/>	Unit 1 / Port 1
<input type="checkbox"/>	Unit 1 / Port 2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Unit 1 / Port 3
<input type="checkbox"/>	Trunk 2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Trunk 5
<input type="checkbox"/>	Unit 1 / Port 4

There are "Delete" and "Revert" buttons at the bottom right.

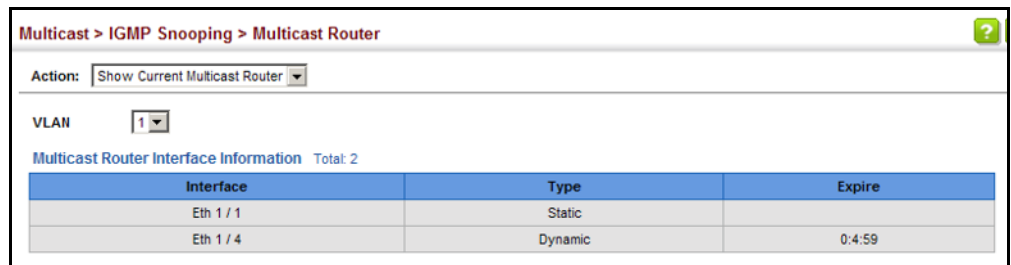
Multicast routers that are attached to ports on the switch use information obtained from IGMP, along with a multicast routing protocol (such as PIM) to support IP

multicasting across the Internet. These routers may be dynamically discovered by the switch or statically assigned to an interface on the switch.

To show the all interfaces attached to a multicast router:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Multicast Router.
2. Select Current Multicast Router from the Action list.
3. Select the VLAN for which to display this information. Ports in the selected VLAN which are attached to a neighboring multicast router/switch are displayed.

**Figure 266: Showing Current Interfaces Attached a Multicast Router**



The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring Multicast Router. The breadcrumb is "Multicast > IGMP Snooping > Multicast Router". The "Action" dropdown is set to "Show Current Multicast Router". The "VLAN" dropdown is set to "1". Below this, there is a table titled "Multicast Router Interface Information" with a "Total: 2" indicator. The table has three columns: "Interface", "Type", and "Expire".

Interface	Type	Expire
Eth 1 / 1	Static	
Eth 1 / 4	Dynamic	0:4:59

**Assigning Interfaces to Multicast Services** Use the Multicast > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Member (Add Static Member) page to statically assign a multicast service to an interface.

Multicast filtering can be dynamically configured using IGMP Snooping and IGMP Query messages (see [“Configuring IGMP Snooping and Query Parameters” on page 414](#)). However, for certain applications that require tighter control, it may be necessary to statically configure a multicast service on the switch. First add all the ports attached to participating hosts to a common VLAN, and then assign the multicast service to that VLAN group.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ Static multicast addresses are never aged out.
- ◆ When a multicast address is assigned to an interface in a specific VLAN, the corresponding traffic can only be forwarded to ports within that VLAN.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN** – Specifies the VLAN which is to propagate the multicast service. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **Interface** – Activates the Port or Trunk scroll down list.
- ◆ **Port or Trunk** – Specifies the interface assigned to a multicast group.

- ◆ **Multicast IP** – The IP address for a specific multicast service.

### Web Interface

To statically assign an interface to a multicast service:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, IGMP Member.
2. Select Add Static Member from the Action list.
3. Select the VLAN that will propagate the multicast service, specify the interface attached to a multicast service (through an IGMP-enabled switch or multicast router), and enter the multicast IP address.
4. Click Apply.

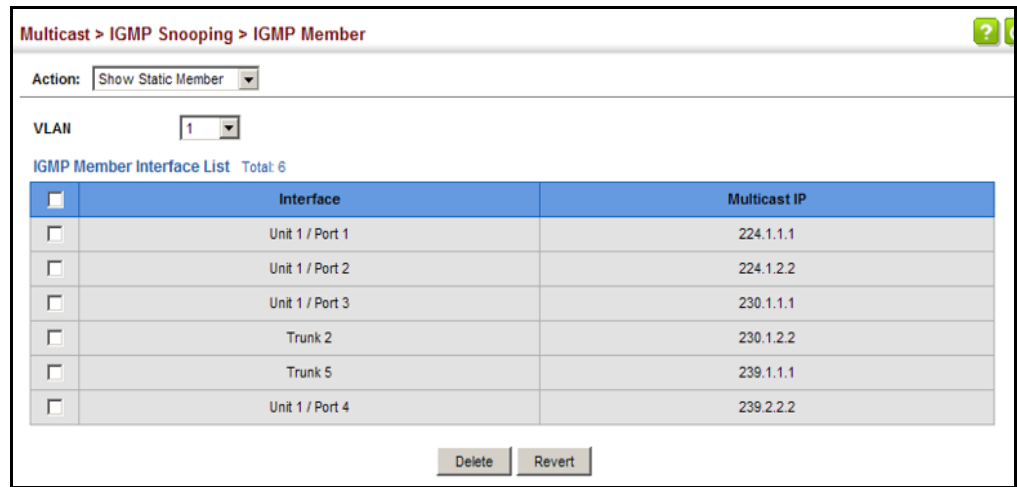
**Figure 267: Assigning an Interface to a Multicast Service**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring IGMP Member settings. The breadcrumb path is "Multicast > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Member". The "Action" dropdown is set to "Add Static Member". The "VLAN" dropdown is set to "1". The "Interface" section has two options: "Port 1" (selected with a radio button) and "Trunk 1" (unselected). The "Multicast IP" text input field contains "224.1.1.1". At the bottom right, there are "Apply" and "Revert" buttons.

To show the static interfaces assigned to a multicast service:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, IGMP Member.
2. Select Show Static Member from the Action list.
3. Select the VLAN for which to display this information.

Figure 268: Showing Static Interfaces Assigned to a Multicast Service



### Setting IGMP Snooping Status per Interface

Use the Multicast > IGMP Snooping > Interface (Configure VLAN) page to configure IGMP snooping attributes for a VLAN. To configure snooping globally, refer to “Configuring IGMP Snooping and Query Parameters” on page 414.

### Command Usage

#### Multicast Router Discovery

There have been many mechanisms used in the past to identify multicast routers. This has led to interoperability issues between multicast routers and snooping switches from different vendors. In response to this problem, the Multicast Router Discovery (MRD) protocol has been developed for use by IGMP snooping and multicast routing devices. MRD is used to discover which interfaces are attached to multicast routers, allowing IGMP-enabled devices to determine where to send multicast source and group membership messages. (MRD is specified in draft-ietf-magma-mrdisc-07.)

Multicast source data and group membership reports must be received by all multicast routers on a segment. Using the group membership protocol query messages to discover multicast routers is insufficient due to query suppression. MRD therefore provides a standardized way to identify multicast routers without relying on any particular multicast routing protocol.



**Note:** The default values recommended in the MRD draft are implemented in the switch.

Multicast Router Discovery uses the following three message types to discover multicast routers:

- ◆ Multicast Router Advertisement – Advertisements are sent by routers to advertise that IP multicast forwarding is enabled. These messages are sent

unsolicited periodically on all router interfaces on which multicast forwarding is enabled. They are sent upon the occurrence of these events:

- Upon the expiration of a periodic (randomized) timer.
  - As a part of a router's start up procedure.
  - During the restart of a multicast forwarding interface.
  - On receipt of a Solicitation message.
- ◆ **Multicast Router Solicitation** – Devices send Solicitation messages in order to solicit Advertisement messages from multicast routers. These messages are used to discover multicast routers on a directly attached link. Solicitation messages are also sent whenever a multicast forwarding interface is initialized or re-initialized. Upon receiving a solicitation on an interface with IP multicast forwarding and MRD enabled, a router will respond with an Advertisement.
  - ◆ **Multicast Router Termination** – These messages are sent when a router stops IP multicast routing functions on an interface. Termination messages are sent by multicast routers when:
    - Multicast forwarding is disabled on an interface.
    - An interface is administratively disabled.
    - The router is gracefully shut down.

Advertisement and Termination messages are sent to the All-Snoopers multicast address. Solicitation messages are sent to the All-Routers multicast address.



**Note:** MRD messages are flooded to all ports in a VLAN where IGMP snooping or routing has been enabled. To ensure that older switches which do not support MRD can also learn the multicast router port, the switch floods IGMP general query packets, which do not have a null source address (0.0.0.0), to all ports in the attached VLAN. IGMP packets with a null source address are only flooded to all ports in the VLAN if the system is operating in multicast flooding mode, such as when a new VLAN or new router port is being established, or an spanning tree topology change has occurred. Otherwise, this kind of packet is only forwarded to known multicast routing ports.

---

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN** – ID of configured VLANs. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **IGMP Snooping Status** – When enabled, the switch will monitor network traffic on the indicated VLAN interface to determine which hosts want to receive multicast traffic. This is referred to as IGMP Snooping. (Default: Disabled)

When IGMP snooping is enabled globally (see [page 414](#)), the per VLAN interface settings for IGMP snooping take precedence.

When IGMP snooping is disabled globally, snooping can still be configured per VLAN interface, but the interface settings will not take effect until snooping is re-enabled globally.

- ◆ **Version Exclusive** – Discards any received IGMP messages (except for multicast protocol packets) which use a version different to that currently configured by the IGMP Version attribute. (Options: Enabled, Using Global Status; Default: Using Global Status)

If version exclusive is disabled on a VLAN, then this setting is based on the global setting configured on the Multicast > IGMP Snooping > General page. If it is enabled on a VLAN, then this setting takes precedence over the global setting.

- ◆ **Immediate Leave Status** – Immediately deletes a member port of a multicast service if a leave packet is received at that port and immediate leave is enabled for the parent VLAN. (Default: Disabled)

If immediate leave is not used, a multicast router (or querier) will send a group-specific query message when an IGMPv2 group leave message is received. The router/querier stops forwarding traffic for that group only if no host replies to the query within the specified time out period. Note that this time out is set to Last Member Query Interval \* Robustness Variable (fixed at 2) as defined in RFC 2236.

If immediate leave is enabled, the switch assumes that only one host is connected to the interface. Therefore, immediate leave should only be enabled on an interface if it is connected to only one IGMP-enabled device, either a service host or a neighbor running IGMP snooping.

This attribute is only effective if IGMP snooping is enabled, and IGMPv2 or IGMPv3 snooping is used.

If immediate leave is enabled, the following options are provided:

- **By Group** – The switch assumes that only one host is connected to the interface. Therefore, immediate leave should only be enabled on an interface if it is connected to only one IGMP-enabled device, either a service host or a neighbor running IGMP snooping.
- **By Host IP** – The switch will not send out a group-specific query when an IGMPv2/v3 leave message is received. But will check if there are other hosts joining the multicast group. Only when all hosts on that port leave the group will the member port be deleted.

- ◆ **Multicast Router Discovery** – MRD is used to discover which interfaces are attached to multicast routers. (Default: Disabled)

- ◆ **General Query Suppression** – Suppresses general queries except for ports attached to downstream multicast hosts. (Default: Disabled)

By default, general query messages are flooded to all ports, except for the multicast router through which they are received.



If general query suppression is enabled, then these messages are forwarded only to downstream ports which have joined a multicast service.

- ◆ **Proxy Reporting** – Enables IGMP Snooping with Proxy Reporting. (Options: Enabled, Disabled, Using Global Status; Default: Using Global Status)

When proxy reporting is enabled with this command, the switch performs “IGMP Snooping with Proxy Reporting” (as defined in DSL Forum TR-101, April 2006), including last leave, and query suppression.

Last leave sends out a proxy query when the last member leaves a multicast group, and query suppression means that specific queries are not forwarded from an upstream multicast router to hosts downstream from this device.

#### *Rules Used for Proxy Reporting*

When IGMP Proxy Reporting is disabled, the switch will use a null IP address for the source of IGMP query and report messages unless a proxy query address has been set.

When IGMP Proxy Reporting is enabled, the source address is based on the following criteria:

- If a proxy query address is configured, the switch will use that address as the source IP address in general and group-specific query messages sent to downstream hosts, and in report and leave messages sent upstream from the multicast router port.
- If a proxy query address is not configured, the switch will use the VLAN's IP address as the IP source address in general and group-specific query messages sent downstream, and use the source address of the last IGMP message received from a downstream host in report and leave messages sent upstream from the multicast router port.

- ◆ **Interface Version** – Sets the protocol version for compatibility with other devices on the network. This is the IGMP Version the switch uses to send snooping reports. (Options: 1-3, Using Global Version; Default: Using Global Version)

This attribute configures the IGMP report/query version used by IGMP snooping. Versions 1 - 3 are all supported, and versions 2 and 3 are backward compatible, so the switch can operate with other devices, regardless of the snooping version employed.

- ◆ **Query Interval** – The interval between sending IGMP general queries. (Range: 2-31744 seconds; Default: 125 seconds)

An IGMP general query message is sent by the switch at the interval specified by this attribute. When this message is received by downstream hosts, all receivers build an IGMP report for the multicast groups they have joined.

This attribute applies when the switch is serving as the querier ([page 414](#)), or as a proxy host when IGMP snooping proxy reporting is enabled ([page 414](#)).

- ◆ **Query Response Interval** – The maximum time the system waits for a response to general queries. (Range: 10-31740 tenths of a second in multiples of 10; Default: 10 seconds)  
  
This attribute applies when the switch is serving as the querier (page 414), or as a proxy host when IGMP snooping proxy reporting is enabled (page 414).
  
- ◆ **Last Member Query Interval** – The interval to wait for a response to a group-specific or group-and-source-specific query message. (Range: 1-31744 tenths of a second in multiples of 10; Default: 1 second)  
  
When a multicast host leaves a group, it sends an IGMP leave message. When the leave message is received by the switch, it checks to see if this host is the last to leave the group by sending out an IGMP group-specific or group-and-source-specific query message, and starts a timer. If no reports are received before the timer expires, the group record is deleted, and a report is sent to the upstream multicast router.  
  
A reduced value will result in reduced time to detect the loss of the last member of a group or source, but may generate more burst traffic.  
  
This attribute will take effect only if IGMP snooping proxy reporting is enabled (page 414) or IGMP querier is enabled (page 414).
  
- ◆ **Last Member Query Count** – The number of IGMP proxy group-specific or group-and-source-specific query messages that are sent out before the system assumes there are no more local members. (Range: 1-255; Default: 2)  
  
This attribute will take effect only if IGMP snooping proxy reporting or IGMP querier is enabled.
  
- ◆ **Proxy (Query) Address** – A static source address for locally generated query and report messages used by IGMP Proxy Reporting. (Range: Any valid IP unicast address; Default: 0.0.0.0)  
  
IGMP Snooping uses a null IP address of 0.0.0.0 for the source of IGMP query messages which are proxied to downstream hosts to indicate that it is not the elected querier, but is only proxying these messages as defined in RFC 4541. The switch also uses a null address in IGMP reports sent to upstream ports.  
  
Many hosts do not implement RFC 4541, and therefore do not understand query messages with the source address of 0.0.0.0. These hosts will therefore not reply to the queries, causing the multicast router to stop sending traffic to them.  
  
To resolve this problem, the source address in proxied IGMP query messages can be replaced with any valid unicast address (other than the router's own address).

### Web Interface

To configure IGMP snooping on a VLAN:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Interface.
2. Select Configure VLAN from the Action list.

3. Select the VLAN to configure and update the required parameters.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 269: Configuring IGMP Snooping on a VLAN**

To show the interface settings for IGMP snooping:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Interface.
2. Select Show VLAN Information from the Action list.

**Figure 270: Showing Interface Settings for IGMP Snooping**

VLAN	IGMP Snooping Status	Immediate Leave Status	Query Interval	Query Response Interval	Last Member Query Interval	Last Member Query Count	Proxy (Query) Address	Proxy Reporting	Multicast Router Discovery	General Query Suppression	Version Exclusive	Interface Version
1	Enabled	Disabled	10	100	10	2	10.1.1.1	Enabled	Enabled	Disabled	Enabled	1
2	Disabled	Disabled	10	100	10	2	20.2.2.2	Disabled	Disabled	Enabled	Disabled	3
3	Disabled	Disabled	10	100	10	2	30.3.3.3	Disabled	Enabled	Disabled	Disabled	2
10	Disabled	Disabled	10	100	10	2	100.10.10.10	Disabled	Disabled	Enabled	Disabled	1

### Filtering IGMP Query Packets and Multicast Data

Use the Multicast > IGMP Snooping > Interface (Configure Interface) page to configure an interface to drop IGMP query packets.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Interface** – Port or Trunk identifier.
- ◆ **IGMP Query Drop** – Configures an interface to drop any IGMP query packets received on the specified interface. If this switch is acting as a Querier, this prevents it from being affected by messages received from another Querier.
- ◆ **Multicast Data Drop** - Configures an interface to drop UDP multicast packets received on the specified interface. To prevent clients from injecting UDP multicast packets, check this box. Once checked for a port or trunk, any UDP multicast packet received will be dropped.

#### Web Interface

To drop IGMP query packets or multicast data packets:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Interface.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Action list.
3. Select Port or Trunk interface.
4. Enable the required drop functions for any interface.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 271: Dropping IGMP Query or Multicast Data Packets**

Port	IGMP Query Drop	Multicast Data Drop
1	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
2	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
3	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
4	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
5	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

## Displaying Multicast Groups Discovered by IGMP Snooping

Use the Multicast > IGMP Snooping > Forwarding Entry page to display the forwarding entries learned through IGMP Snooping.

### Command Usage

To display information about multicast groups, IGMP Snooping must first be enabled on the switch (see [page 414](#)).

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN** – An interface on the switch that is forwarding traffic to downstream ports for the specified multicast group address.
- ◆ **Group Address** – IP multicast group address with subscribers directly attached or downstream from the switch, or a static multicast group assigned to this interface.
- ◆ **Interface** – A downstream port or trunk that is receiving traffic for the specified multicast group. This field may include both dynamically and statically configured multicast router ports.
- ◆ **Up Time** – Time that this multicast group has been known.
- ◆ **Expire** – Time until this entry expires.
- ◆ **Count** – The number of times this address has been learned by IGMP snooping.
- ◆ **Clear** - This button clears multicast group information dynamically learned through IGMP snooping.

### Web Interface

To show multicast groups learned through IGMP snooping:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Forwarding Entry.

**Figure 272: Showing Multicast Groups Learned by IGMP Snooping**

Multicast > IGMP Snooping > Forwarding Entry

IGMP Snooping Forwarding Entry List Total: 10

VLAN	Group Address	Source Address	Interface	Up Time	Expire	Count
1	224.1.1.1	*	Eth 1 / 9 (Router Port)	00:00:06:46		2 (Port)
			Eth 1 / 11 (Member Port)	00:00:06:46	03:46	1 (Host)
1	224.1.1.2	192.168.1.2	Eth 1 / 9 (Router Port)		02:24	1 (Port)
2	224.1.1.3	*	Eth 1 / 9 (Router Port)	00:00:16:14		1 (Port)
2	239.255.255.250	*	Eth 1 / 9 (Router Port)	00:00:08:47		2 (Port)
			Eth 1 / 11 (Member Port)	00:00:08:47	03:46	1 (Host)

Click this button to clear all IGMP Snooping dynamic groups.

**Displaying IGMP Snooping Statistics** Use the Multicast > IGMP Snooping > Statistics pages to display IGMP snooping protocol-related statistics for the specified interface.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN** – VLAN identifier. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **Port** – Port identifier. (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **Trunk** – Trunk identifier. (Range: 1-8)

#### Query Statistics

- ◆ **Other Querier** – IP address of remote querier on this interface.
- ◆ **Other Querier Expire** – Time after which remote querier is assumed to have expired.
- ◆ **Other Querier Uptime** – Time remote querier has been up.
- ◆ **Self Querier** – IP address of local querier on this interface.
- ◆ **Self Querier Expire** – Time after which local querier is assumed to have expired.
- ◆ **Self Querier Uptime** – Time local querier has been up.
- ◆ **General Query Received** – The number of general queries received on this interface.
- ◆ **General Query Sent** – The number of general queries sent from this interface.
- ◆ **Specific Query Received** – The number of specific queries received on this interface.
- ◆ **Specific Query Sent** – The number of specific queries sent from this interface.
- ◆ **Warn Rate Limit** – The rate at which received query messages of the wrong version type cause the Vx warning count to increment. Note that “0 sec” means that the Vx warning count is incremented for each wrong message version received.
- ◆ **V1 Warning Count** – The number of times the query version received (Version 1) does not match the version configured for this interface.
- ◆ **V2 Warning Count** – The number of times the query version received (Version 2) does not match the version configured for this interface.

- ◆ **V3 Warning Count** – The number of times the query version received (Version 3) does not match the version configured for this interface.
- ◆ **Clear All** - Click this button to reset all IGMP snooping statistics.

#### *VLAN, Port, and Trunk Statistics*

##### *Input Statistics*

- ◆ **Report** – The number of IGMP membership reports received on this interface.
- ◆ **Leave** – The number of leave messages received on this interface.
- ◆ **G Query** – The number of general query messages received on this interface.
- ◆ **G(-S)-S Query** – The number of group specific or group-and-source specific query messages received on this interface.
- ◆ **Drop** – The number of times a report, leave or query was dropped. Packets may be dropped due to invalid format, rate limiting, packet content not allowed, or IGMP group report received.
- ◆ **Join Success** – The number of times a multicast group was successfully joined.
- ◆ **Group** – The number of IGMP groups active on this interface.

##### *Output Statistics*

- ◆ **Report** – The number of IGMP membership reports sent from this interface.
- ◆ **Leave** – The number of leave messages sent from this interface.
- ◆ **G Query** – The number of general query messages sent from this interface.
- ◆ **G(-S)-S Query** – The number of group specific or group-and-source specific query messages sent from this interface.
- ◆ **Clear** - Click the Clear button to reset the statistics.
- ◆ **Refresh** - Click the Refresh button to update the statistics.

#### **Web Interface**

To display statistics for IGMP snooping query-related messages:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Statistics.
2. Select Show Query Statistics from the Action list.
3. Select a VLAN.

**Figure 273: Displaying IGMP Snooping Statistics – Query**

Action: Show Query Statistics

VLAN: 1

**Query Statistics**

Other Querier	None
Other Querier Expire	00(m):00(s)
Other Querier Uptime	00(h):00(m):00(s)
Self Querier	192.168.1.1
Self Querier Expire	00(m):00(s)
Self Querier Uptime	00(h):00(m):00(s)
General Query Received	0
General Query Sent	0
Specific Query Received	0
Specific Query Sent	0
Warn Rate Limit	0 sec.
V1 Warning Count	0
V2 Warning Count	0
V3 Warning Count	0

Clear All [Click this button to clear all IGMP Snooping statistics.](#)

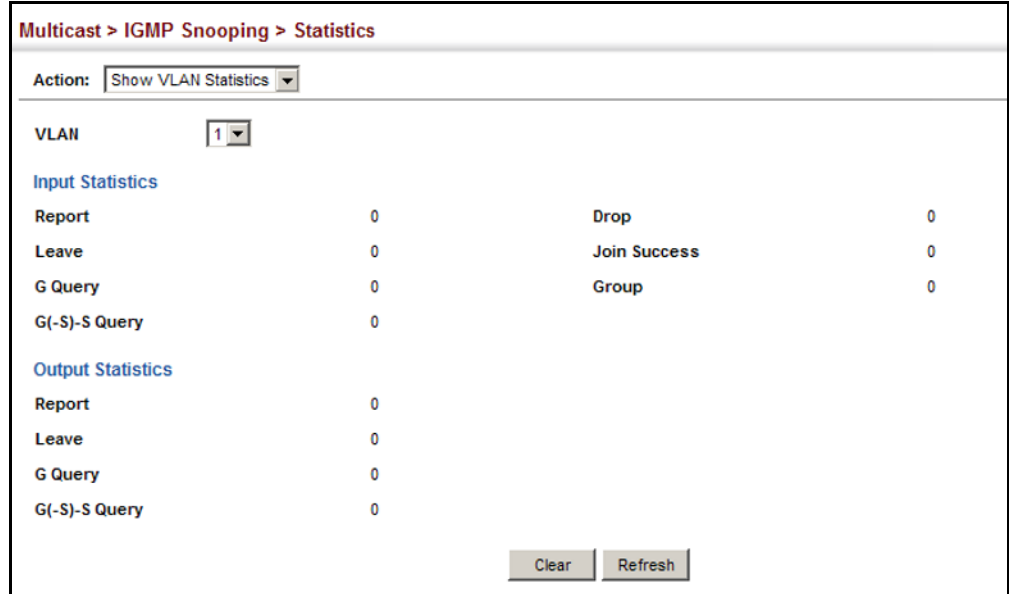
Refresh

To display IGMP snooping protocol-related statistics for a VLAN:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Statistics.
2. Select Show VLAN Statistics from the Action list.
3. Select a VLAN.



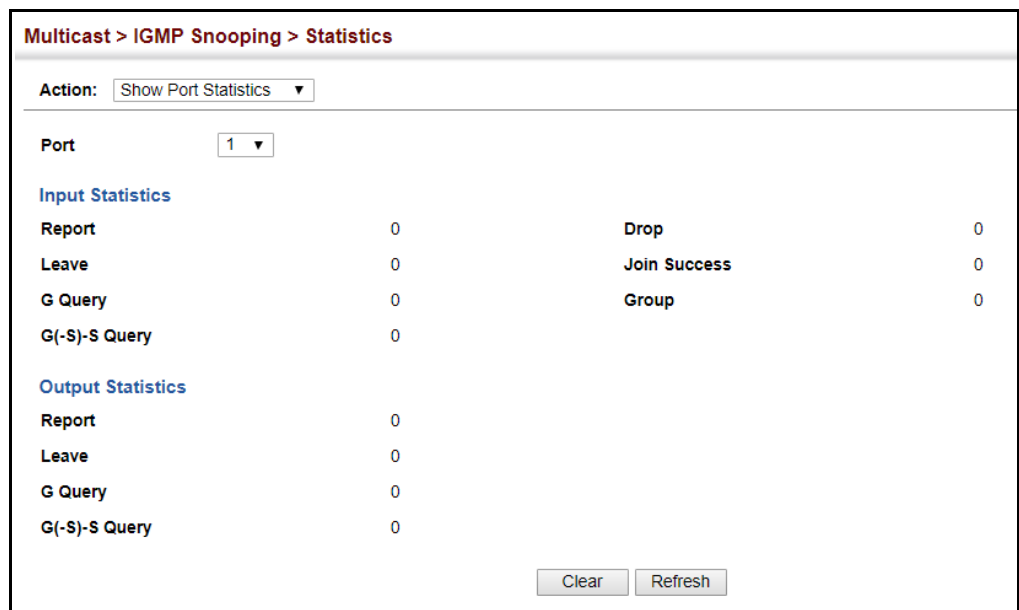
**Figure 274: Displaying IGMP Snooping Statistics – VLAN**



To display IGMP snooping protocol-related statistics for a port:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Statistics.
2. Select Show Port Statistics from the Action list.
3. Select a Port.

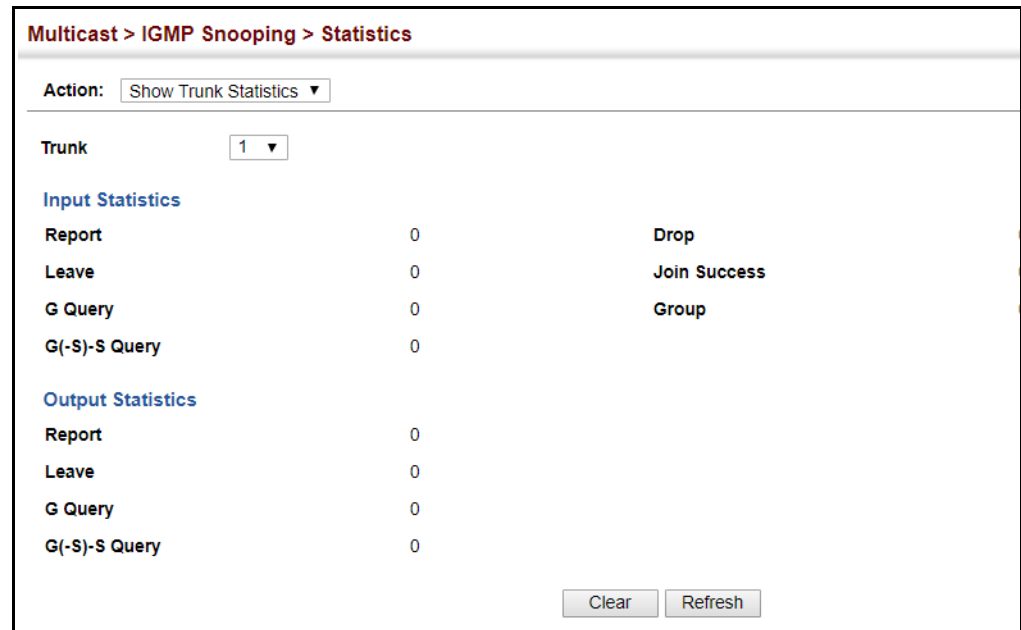
**Figure 275: Displaying IGMP Snooping Statistics – Port**



To display IGMP snooping protocol-related statistics for a trunk:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Statistics.
2. Select Show Trunk Statistics from the Action list.
3. Select a Trunk.

**Figure 276: Displaying IGMP Snooping Statistics – Port**



## Filtering and Throttling IGMP Groups

In certain switch applications, the administrator may want to control the multicast services that are available to end users. For example, an IP/TV service based on a specific subscription plan. The IGMP filtering feature fulfills this requirement by restricting access to specified multicast services on a switch port, and IGMP throttling limits the number of simultaneous multicast groups a port can join.

IGMP filtering enables you to assign a profile to a switch port that specifies multicast groups that are permitted or denied on the port. An IGMP filter profile can contain one or more addresses, or a range of multicast addresses; but only one profile can be assigned to a port. When enabled, IGMP join reports received on the port are checked against the filter profile. If a requested multicast group is permitted, the IGMP join report is forwarded as normal. If a requested multicast group is denied, the IGMP join report is dropped.

IGMP throttling sets a maximum number of multicast groups that a port can join at the same time. When the maximum number of groups is reached on a port, the switch can take one of two actions; either "deny" or "replace." If the action is set to

deny, any new IGMP join reports will be dropped. If the action is set to replace, the switch randomly removes an existing group and replaces it with the new multicast group.

### Enabling IGMP Filtering and Throttling

Use the Multicast > IGMP Snooping > Filter (Configure General) page to enable IGMP filtering and throttling globally on the switch.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

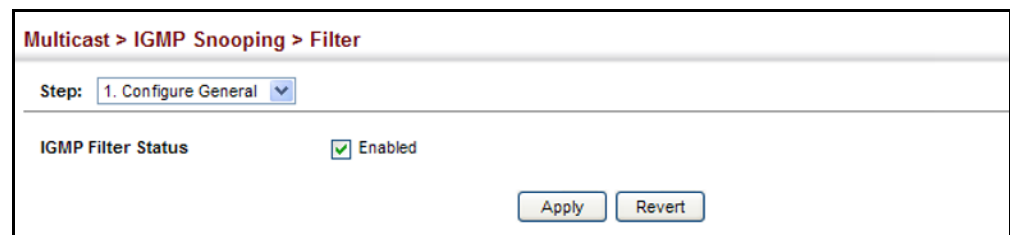
- ◆ **IGMP Filter Status** – Enables IGMP filtering and throttling globally for the switch. (Default: Disabled)

#### Web Interface

To enable IGMP filtering and throttling on the switch:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Filter.
2. Select Configure General from the Step list.
3. Enable IGMP Filter Status.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 277: Enabling IGMP Filtering and Throttling**



### Configuring IGMP Filter Profiles

Use the Multicast > IGMP Snooping > Filter (Configure Profile – Add) page to create an IGMP profile and set its access mode. Then use the (Add Multicast Group Range) page to configure the multicast groups to filter.

#### Command Usage

Specify a range of multicast groups by entering a start and end IP address; or specify a single multicast group by entering the same IP address for the start and end of the range.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

*Add*

- ◆ **Profile ID** – Creates an IGMP profile. (Range: 1-4294967295)
- ◆ **Access Mode** – Sets the access mode of the profile; either permit or deny. (Default: Deny)

When the access mode is set to permit, IGMP join reports are processed when a multicast group falls within the controlled range. When the access mode is set to deny, IGMP join reports are only processed when the multicast group is not in the controlled range.

*Add Multicast Group Range*

- ◆ **Profile ID** – Selects an IGMP profile to configure.
- ◆ **Start Multicast IP Address** – Specifies the starting address of a range of multicast groups.
- ◆ **End Multicast IP Address** – Specifies the ending address of a range of multicast groups.

### Web Interface

To create an IGMP filter profile and set its access mode:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Filter.
2. Select Configure Profile from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Enter the number for a profile, and set its access mode.
5. Click Apply.

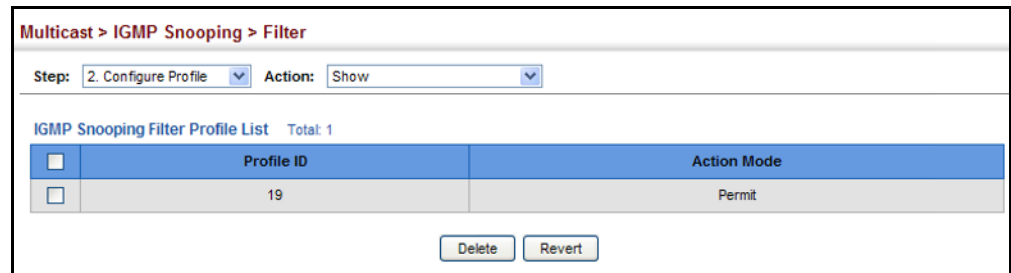
**Figure 278: Creating an IGMP Filtering Profile**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring an IGMP filter profile. The breadcrumb path is "Multicast > IGMP Snooping > Filter". The "Step" dropdown is set to "2. Configure Profile" and the "Action" dropdown is set to "Add". The "Profile ID (1-4294967295)" field contains the value "19". The "Access Mode" dropdown is set to "Permit". At the bottom right, there are "Apply" and "Revert" buttons.

To show the IGMP filter profiles:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Filter.
2. Select Configure Profile from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

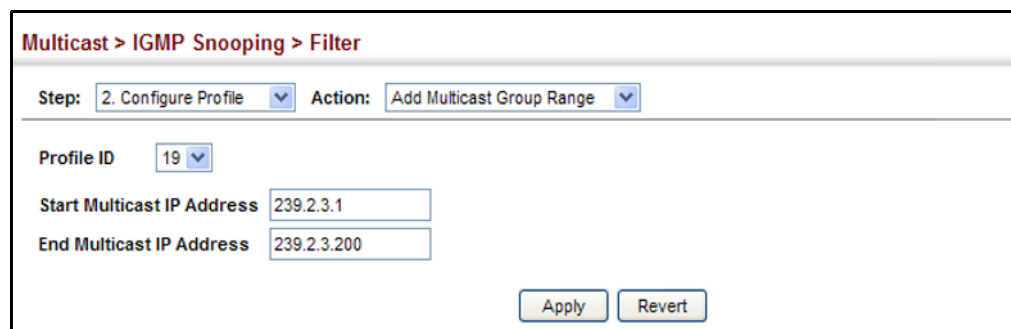
**Figure 279: Showing the IGMP Filtering Profiles Created**



To add a range of multicast groups to an IGMP filter profile:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Filter.
2. Select Configure Profile from the Step list.
3. Select Add Multicast Group Range from the Action list.
4. Select the profile to configure, and add a multicast group address or range of addresses.
5. Click Apply.

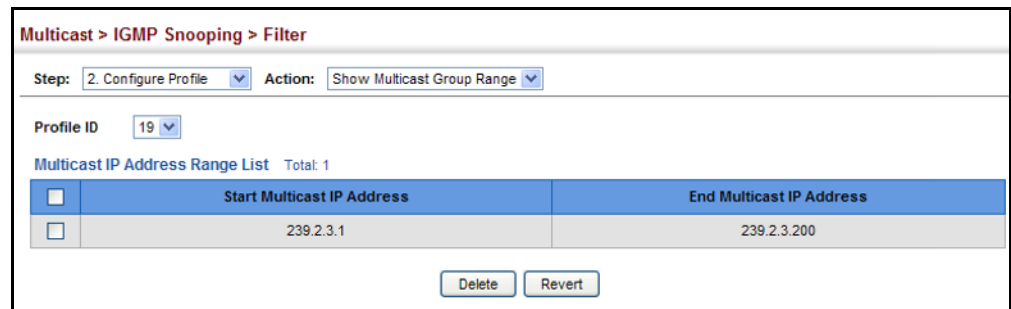
**Figure 280: Adding Multicast Groups to an IGMP Filtering Profile**



To show the multicast groups configured for an IGMP filter profile:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Filter.
2. Select Configure Profile from the Step list.
3. Select Show Multicast Group Range from the Action list.
4. Select the profile for which to display this information.

**Figure 281: Showing the Groups Assigned to an IGMP Filtering Profile**



### Configuring IGMP Filtering and Throttling for Interfaces

Use the Multicast > IGMP Snooping > Filter (Configure Interface) page to assign and IGMP filter profile to interfaces on the switch, or to throttle multicast traffic by limiting the maximum number of multicast groups an interface can join at the same time.



**Note:** A single table maintains a maximum of 511 entries learned for both IGMP and MLD snooping.

### Command Usage

- ◆ IGMP throttling sets a maximum number of multicast groups that a port can join at the same time. When the maximum number of groups is reached on a port, the switch can take one of two actions; either “deny” or “replace.” If the action is set to deny, any new IGMP join reports will be dropped. If the action is set to replace, the switch randomly removes an existing group and replaces it with the new multicast group.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Interface** – Port or trunk identifier.

An IGMP profile or throttling setting can be applied to a port or trunk. When ports are configured as trunk members, the trunk uses the settings applied to the first port member in the trunk.

- ◆ **Profile ID** – Selects an existing profile to assign to an interface.
- ◆ **Max Multicast Groups** – Sets the maximum number of multicast groups an interface can join at the same time. (Range: 1-511; Default: 511)
- ◆ **Current Multicast Groups** – Displays the current multicast groups the interface has joined.
- ◆ **Throttling Action Mode** – Sets the action to take when the maximum number of multicast groups for the interface has been exceeded. (Default: Deny)
  - **Deny** - The new multicast group join report is dropped.
  - **Replace** - The new multicast group replaces an existing group.
- ◆ **Throttling Status** – Indicates if the throttling action has been implemented on the interface. (Options: True or False)

### Web Interface

To configure IGMP filtering or throttling for a port or trunk:

1. Click Multicast, IGMP Snooping, Filter.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select a profile to assign to an interface, then set the maximum number of allowed multicast groups and the throttling response.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 282: Configuring IGMP Filtering and Throttling Interface Settings**

Port	IGMP Query Drop	Multicast Data Drop
1	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
2	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
3	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
4	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
5	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
6	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

## MLD Snooping (Snooping and Query for IPv6)

Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) snooping operates on IPv6 traffic and performs a similar function to IGMP snooping for IPv4. That is, MLD snooping dynamically configures switch ports to limit IPv6 multicast traffic so that it is forwarded only to ports with users that want to receive it. This reduces the flooding of IPv6 multicast packets in the specified VLANs.

There are two versions of the MLD protocol, version 1 and version 2. MLDv1 control packets include Listener Query, Listener Report, and Listener Done messages (equivalent to IGMPv2 query, report, and leave messages). MLDv2 control packets include MLDv2 query and report messages, as well as MLDv1 report and done messages.

Remember that IGMP Snooping and MLD Snooping are independent functions, and can therefore both function at the same time.

### Configuring MLD Snooping and Query Parameters

Use the Multicast > MLD Snooping > General page to configure the switch to forward multicast traffic intelligently. Based on the MLD query and report messages, the switch forwards multicast traffic only to the ports that request it. This prevents the switch from broadcasting the traffic to all ports and possibly disrupting network performance.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **MLD Snooping Status** – When enabled, the switch will monitor network traffic to determine which hosts want to receive multicast traffic. (Default: Disabled)

- ◆ **Querier Status** – When enabled, the switch can serve as the querier for MLDv2 snooping if elected. The querier is responsible for asking hosts if they want to receive multicast traffic. (Default: Disabled)

An IPv6 address must be configured on the VLAN interface from which the querier will act if elected. When serving as the querier, the switch uses this IPv6 address as the query source address.

The querier will not start or will disable itself after having started if it detects an IPv6 multicast router on the network.

- ◆ **Robustness** – MLD Snooping robustness variable. A port will be removed from the receiver list for a multicast service when no MLD reports are detected in response to a number of MLD queries. The robustness variable sets the number of queries on ports for which there is no report. (Range: 2-10 Default: 2)

- ◆ **Query Interval** – The interval between sending MLD general queries. (Range: 60-125 seconds; Default: 125 seconds)

This attribute applies when the switch is serving as the querier.

An MLD general query message is sent by the switch at the interval specified by this attribute. When this message is received by downstream hosts, all receivers build an MLD report for the multicast groups they have joined.

- ◆ **Query Max Response Time** – The maximum response time advertised in MLD general queries. (Range: 5-25 seconds; Default: 10 seconds)

This attribute controls how long the host has to respond to an MLD Query message before the switch deletes the group if it is the last member.



- ◆ **Router Port Expiry Time** – The time the switch waits after the previous querier stops before it considers the router port (i.e., the interface that had been receiving query packets) to have expired. (Range: 300-500 seconds; Default: 300 seconds)
- ◆ **MLD Snooping Version** – The protocol version used for compatibility with other devices on the network. This is the MLD version the switch uses to send snooping reports. (Range: 1-2; Default: 2)
- ◆ **Unknown Multicast Mode** – The action for dealing with unknown multicast packets. Options include:
  - **Flood** – Floods any received IPv6 multicast packets that have not been requested by a host to all ports in the VLAN.
  - **To Router Port** – Forwards any received IPv6 multicast packets that have not been requested by a host to ports that are connected to a detected multicast router. (This is the default action.)
- ◆ **Proxy Reporting** – Enable proxy reporting to receive reports from downstream hosts that are summarized and can build internal membership states. Proxy-reporting devices may use the IPv6 address configured on this VLAN or the Source IP address from a received report message as the source address when forwarding any summarized reports upstream. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Unsolicited Report Interval (1-65536)** – If proxy reporting is enabled, this timer sets how often the upstream interface should transmit unsolicited IGMP reports. (Default: 400 seconds)

#### Web Interface

To configure general settings for MLD Snooping:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, General.
2. Adjust the settings as required.
3. Click Apply.

Figure 283: Configuring General Settings for MLD Snooping

Multicast > MLD Snooping > General

MLD Snooping Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Querier Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Robustness (2-10)	<input type="text" value="2"/>
Query Interval (60-125)	<input type="text" value="125"/> seconds
Query Max Response Time (5-25)	<input type="text" value="10"/> seconds
Router Port Expiry Time (300-500)	<input type="text" value="300"/> seconds
MLD Snooping Version (1-2)	<input type="text" value="2"/>
Unknown Multicast Mode	To Router Port ▾
Proxy Reporting	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Unsolicited Report Interval (1-65535)	<input type="text" value="400"/> seconds

### Setting Immediate Leave Status for MLD Snooping per Interface

Use the Multicast > MLD Snooping > Interface page to configure Immediate Leave status for a VLAN.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN** – A VLAN identification number. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **Immediate Leave** – Immediately deletes a member port of an IPv6 multicast service when a leave packet is received at that port and immediate leave is enabled for the parent VLAN. (Default: Disabled)

If MLD immediate-leave is *not* used, a multicast router (or querier) will send a group-specific query message when an MLD group leave message is received. The router/querier stops forwarding traffic for that group only if no host replies to the query within the specified timeout period.

If MLD immediate-leave is enabled, the switch assumes that only one host is connected to the interface. Therefore, immediate leave should only be enabled on an interface if it is connected to only one MLD-enabled device, either a service host or a neighbor running MLD snooping.

- ◆ **Immediate Leave by Host** - This additional parameter if enabled specifies to wait to delete the member port until all hosts have left the group. (Default: Disabled)

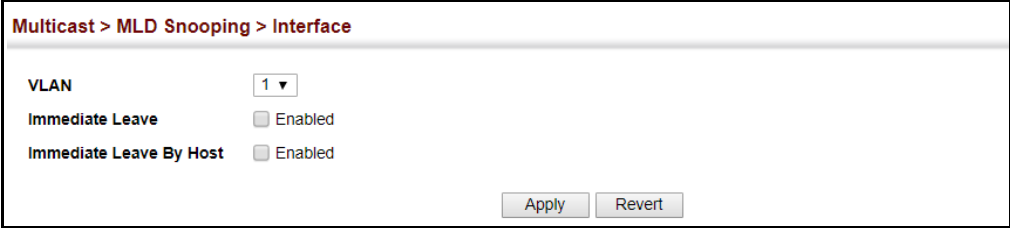
#### Web Interface

To configure immediate leave for MLD Snooping:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Interface.
2. Select a VLAN, and set the status for immediate leave.

3. Click Apply.

Figure 284: Configuring Immediate Leave for MLD Snooping



Multicast > MLD Snooping > Interface

VLAN

Immediate Leave  Enabled

Immediate Leave By Host  Enabled

Apply Revert

### Specifying Static Interfaces for an IPv6 Multicast Router

Use the Multicast > MLD Snooping > Multicast Router (Add Static Multicast Router) page to statically attach an interface to an IPv6 multicast router/switch.

Depending on your network connections, MLD snooping may not always be able to locate the MLD querier. Therefore, if the MLD querier is a known multicast router/switch connected over the network to an interface (port or trunk) on the switch, you can manually configure that interface to join all the current multicast groups.

#### Command Usage

MLD Snooping must be enabled globally on the switch (see [“Configuring MLD Snooping and Query Parameters” on page 440](#)) before a multicast router port can take effect.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

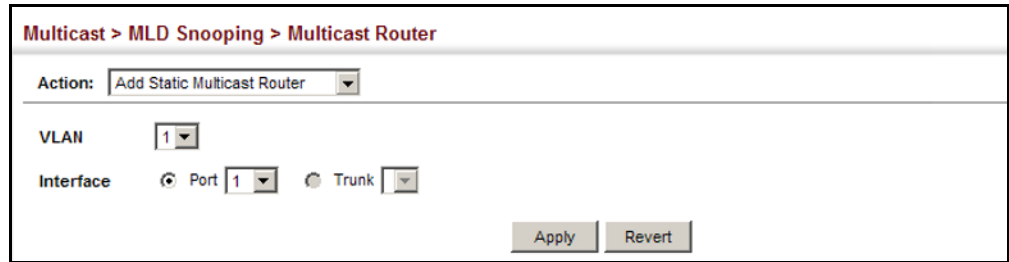
- ◆ **VLAN** – Selects the VLAN which is to propagate all IPv6 multicast traffic coming from the attached multicast router. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **Interface** – Activates the Port or Trunk scroll down list.
- ◆ **Port or Trunk** – Specifies the interface attached to a multicast router.

#### Web Interface

To specify a static interface attached to a multicast router:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Multicast Router.
2. Select Add Static Multicast Router from the Action list.
3. Select the VLAN which will forward all the corresponding IPv6 multicast traffic, and select the port or trunk attached to the multicast router.
4. Click Apply.

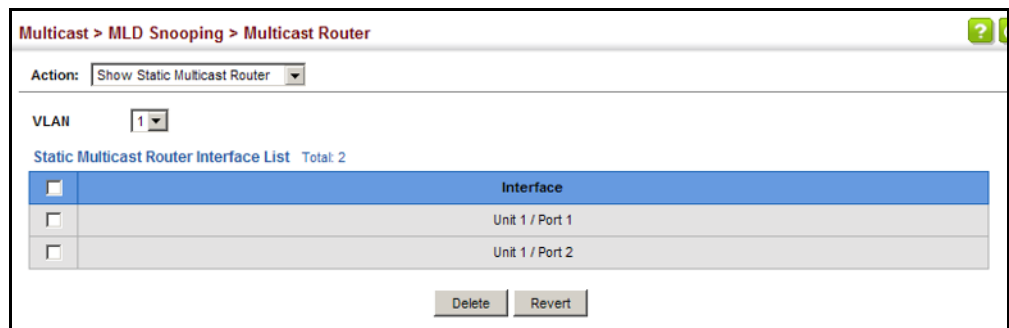
Figure 285: Configuring a Static Interface for an IPv6 Multicast Router



To show the static interfaces attached to a multicast router:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Multicast Router.
2. Select Show Static Multicast Router from the Action list.
3. Select the VLAN for which to display this information.

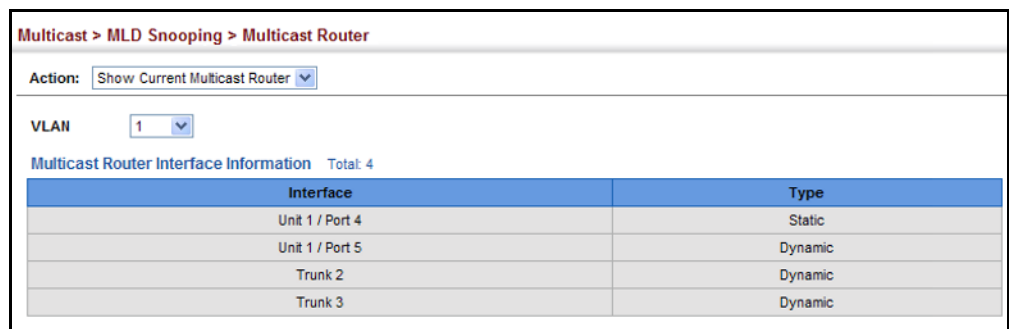
Figure 286: Showing Static Interfaces Attached an IPv6 Multicast Router



To show all the interfaces attached to a multicast router:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Multicast Router.
2. Select Current Multicast Router from the Action list.
3. Select the VLAN for which to display this information. Ports in the selected VLAN which are attached to a neighboring multicast router/switch are displayed.

Figure 287: Showing Current Interfaces Attached an IPv6 Multicast Router



## Assigning Interfaces to IPv6 Multicast Services

Use the Multicast > MLD Snooping > MLD Member (Add Static Member) page to statically assign an IPv6 multicast service to an interface.

Multicast filtering can be dynamically configured using MLD snooping and query messages (see “[Configuring MLD Snooping and Query Parameters](#)” on page 440). However, for certain applications that require tighter control, it may be necessary to statically configure a multicast service on the switch. First add all the ports attached to participating hosts to a common VLAN, and then assign the multicast service to that VLAN group.

### Command Usage

- ◆ Static multicast addresses are never aged out.
- ◆ When a multicast address is assigned to an interface in a specific VLAN, the corresponding traffic can only be forwarded to ports within that VLAN.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN** – Specifies the VLAN which is to propagate the multicast service. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **Multicast IPv6 Address** – The IP address for a specific multicast service.
- ◆ **Interface** – Activates the Port or Trunk scroll down list.
- ◆ **Port or Trunk** – Specifies the interface assigned to a multicast group.
- ◆ **Type** (Show Current Member) – Shows if this multicast stream was statically configured by the user, discovered by MLD Snooping, or is a data stream to which no other ports are subscribing (i.e., the stream is flooded onto VLAN instead of being trapped to the CPU for processing, or is being processed by MVR6).

### Web Interface

To statically assign an interface to an IPv6 multicast service:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, MLD Member.
2. Select Add Static Member from the Action list.
3. Select the VLAN that will propagate the multicast service, specify the interface attached to a multicast service (through an MLD-enabled switch or multicast router), and enter the multicast IP address.
4. Click Apply.

Figure 288: Assigning an Interface to an IPv6 Multicast Service

Multicast > MLD Snooping > MLD Member

Action: Add Static Member

VLAN: 1

Multicast IPv6 Address: FF00:0:0:0:0:10C

Interface: Port 1

Apply Revert

To show the static interfaces assigned to an IPv6 multicast service:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, MLD Member.
2. Select Show Static Member from the Action list.
3. Select the VLAN for which to display this information.

Figure 289: Showing Static Interfaces Assigned to an IPv6 Multicast Service

Multicast > MLD Snooping > MLD Member

Action: Show Static Member

VLAN: 1

MLD Member Interface List Total: 8

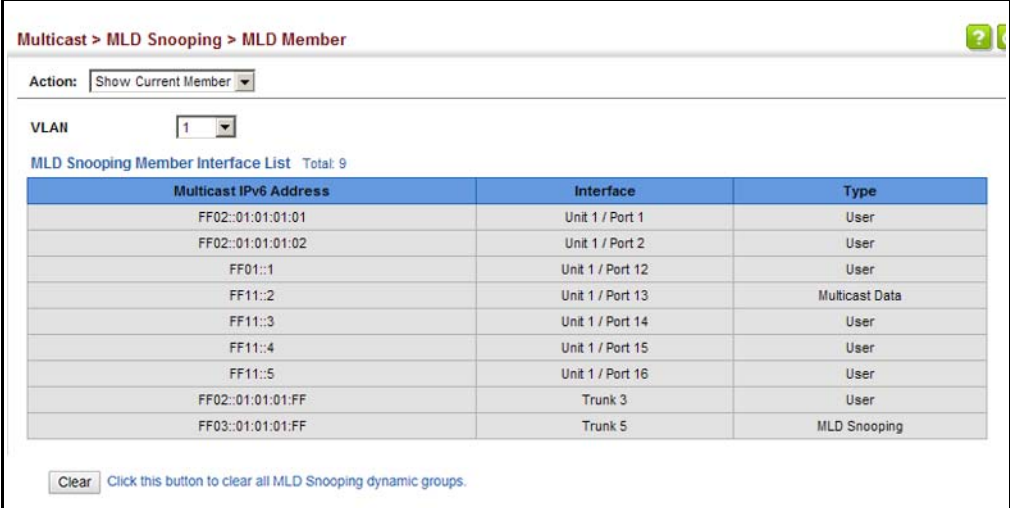
	Multicast IPv6 Address	Interface
<input type="checkbox"/>	FF02::01:01:01:01	Unit 1 / Port 1
<input type="checkbox"/>	FF02::01:01:01:02	Unit 1 / Port 2
<input type="checkbox"/>	FF01::1	Unit 1 / Port 12
<input type="checkbox"/>	FF01::2	Unit 1 / Port 13
<input type="checkbox"/>	FF01::3	Unit 1 / Port 14
<input type="checkbox"/>	FF01::4	Unit 1 / Port 15
<input type="checkbox"/>	FF01::5	Unit 1 / Port 16
<input type="checkbox"/>	FF02::01:01:01:FF	Trunk 3

Delete Revert

To display information about all IPv6 multicast groups, MLD Snooping or multicast routing must first be enabled on the switch. To show all of the interfaces statically or dynamically assigned to an IPv6 multicast service:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, MLD Member.
2. Select Show Current Member from the Action list.
3. Select the VLAN for which to display this information.
4. To delete the learned dynamic group members from the switch- click Clear.

Figure 290: Showing Current Interfaces Assigned to an IPv6 Multicast Service



Multicast > MLD Snooping > MLD Member

Action: Show Current Member

VLAN: 1

MLD Snooping Member Interface List Total: 9

Multicast IPv6 Address	Interface	Type
FF02::01:01:01:01	Unit 1 / Port 1	User
FF02::01:01:01:02	Unit 1 / Port 2	User
FF01::1	Unit 1 / Port 12	User
FF11::2	Unit 1 / Port 13	Multicast Data
FF11::3	Unit 1 / Port 14	User
FF11::4	Unit 1 / Port 15	User
FF11::5	Unit 1 / Port 16	User
FF02::01:01:01:FF	Trunk 3	User
FF03::01:01:01:FF	Trunk 5	MLD Snooping

Clear Click this button to clear all MLD Snooping dynamic groups.

### Showing MLD Snooping Groups and Source List

Use the Multicast > MLD Snooping > Group Information page to display known multicast groups, member ports, the means by which each group was learned, and the corresponding source list.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN** – VLAN identifier. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **Interface** – Port or trunk identifier.
- ◆ **Group Address** – The IP address for a specific multicast service.
- ◆ **Type** – The means by which each group was learned – MLD Snooping or Multicast Data.
- ◆ **Filter Mode** – The filter mode is used to summarize the total listening state of a multicast address to a minimum set such that all nodes' listening states are respected. In Include mode, the router only uses the request list, indicating that the reception of packets sent to the specified multicast address is requested only from those IP source addresses listed in the hosts' source-list. In Exclude mode, the router uses both the request list and exclude list, indicating that the reception of packets sent to the given multicast address is requested from all IP source addresses, except for those listed in the exclude source-list and for any other sources where the source timer status has expired.
- ◆ **Filter Timer Elapse** – The Filter timer is only used when a specific multicast address is in Exclude mode. It represents the time for the multicast address filter mode to expire and change to Include mode.
- ◆ **Request List** – Sources included on the router's request list.

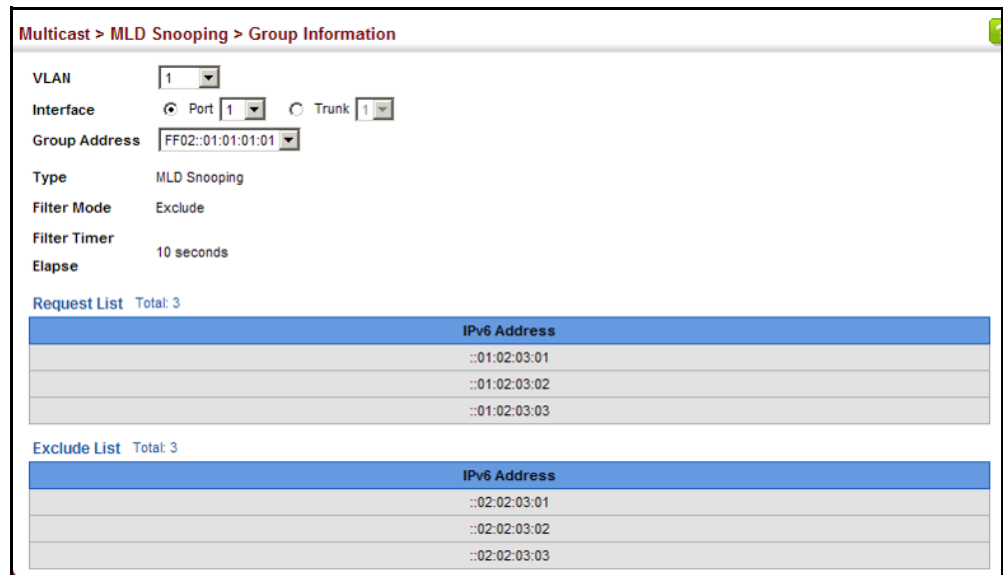
- ◆ **Exclude List** – Sources included on the router’s exclude list.

### Web Interface

To display known MLD multicast groups:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Group Information.
2. Select the port or trunk, and then select a multicast service assigned to that interface.

Figure 291: Showing IPv6 Multicast Services and Corresponding Sources



**Displaying MLD Snooping Statistics** Use the Multicast > IGMP Snooping > Statistics pages to display MLD snooping protocol-related statistics.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### Input

- ◆ **Interface** – The unit/port, Trunk number or VLAN interface.
- ◆ **Report** – The number of MLD membership reports received on this interface.
- ◆ **Leave** – The number of leave messages received on this interface.
- ◆ **G Query** – The number of general query messages received on this interface.
- ◆ **G(-S)-S Query** – The number of group specific or group-and-source specific query messages received on this interface.



- ◆ **Drop** – The number of times a report, leave or query was dropped. Packets may be dropped due to invalid format, rate limiting, packet content not allowed, or MLD group report received.
- ◆ **Join Success** – The number of times a multicast group was successfully joined.
- ◆ **Group** – The number of MLD groups active on this interface.

#### *Output*

Same as input parameters listed above, except that the direction of transmission is outbound.

#### *Query*

- ◆ **Other Querier Address** – IP address of remote querier on this interface.
- ◆ **Other Querier Expire** – Time after which remote querier is assumed to have expired.
- ◆ **Other Querier Uptime** – Time remote querier has been up.
- ◆ **Self Querier Address** – IP address of local querier on this interface.
- ◆ **Self Querier Expire Time** – Time after which local querier is assumed to have expired.
- ◆ **Self Querier Uptime** – Time local querier has been up.
- ◆ **General Query Received** – The number of general queries received on this interface.
- ◆ **General Query Sent** – The number of general queries sent from this interface.
- ◆ **Specific Query Received** – The number of group specific queries received on this interface.
- ◆ **Specific Query Sent** – The number of group specific queries sent from this interface.

#### *Summary*

- ◆ **Number of Groups** – Number of active MLD groups active on the specified interface.

*Physical Interface (Port/Trunk)*

◆ *Querier*

- *Transmit*
  - **General** – The number of general queries sent from this interface.
  - **Group Specific** – The number of group specific queries sent from this interface.
- *Received*
  - **General** – The number of general queries received on this interface.
  - **Group Specific** – The number of group specific queries received on this interface.

◆ *Report & Leave*

- *Transmit*
  - **Report** – The number of MLD membership reports sent from this interface.
  - **Leave** – The number of leave messages sent from this interface.
- *Received*
  - **Report** – The number of MLD membership reports received on this interface.
  - **Leave** – The number of leave messages received on this interface.
  - **Join Success** – The number of times a multicast group was successfully joined.
  - **Filter Drop** – The number of messages dropped by an MLD filtering profile.
  - **Source Port Drop** – The number of dropped messages that are received on MVR source port or mrouter port.
  - **Others Drop** – The number of received invalid messages.

*Logical Interface (VLAN)* – The following parameters are included for a VLAN.

◆ *Querier*

- **Other Querier** – IPv6 address of remote querier on this interface.

- **Other Uptime** – Time remote querier has been up.
- **Other Expire** – Time after which remote querier is assumed to have expired.
- **Self Addr** – IPv6 address of local querier on this interface.
- **Self Expire** – Time after which local querier is assumed to have expired.
- **Self Uptime** – Time local querier has been up.
- *Transmit*
  - **General** – The number of general queries sent from this interface.
  - **Group Specific** – The number of group specific queries sent from this interface.
- *Receive*
  - **General** – The number of general queries received on this interface.
  - **Group Specific** – The number of group specific queries received on this interface.
- ◆ *Report & Leave*
  - **Host Addr** – The link-local or global IPv6 address that is assigned on that VLAN.
  - **Unsolicit Expire** – The number of group leaves resulting from timeouts instead of explicit leave messages.
- ◆ *Report & Leave*
  - *Transmit*
    - **Report** – The number of MLD membership reports sent from this VLAN.
    - **Leave** – The number of leave messages sent from this VLAN.
  - *Received*
    - **Report** – The number of MLD membership reports received on this VLAN.
    - **Leave** – The number of leave messages received on this VLAN.
    - **Join Success** – The number of times a multicast group was successfully joined.

- **Filter Drop** - The number of messages dropped by an MLD filtering profile.
- **Source Port Drop** – The number of dropped messages that are received on MVR source port or mrouter port.
- **Others Drop** - The number of received invalid messages.

**Others Drop** – The number of received invalid messages.

Clear

**Parameters**

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **All** – Clears statistics for all MLD messages.
- ◆ **VLAN** – VLAN identifier. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **Unit** – Stack unit. (Range: 1)
- ◆ **Port** – Port identifier. (Range: 1-10/28)
- ◆ **Trunk** – Trunk identifier. (Range: 1-8)

**Web Interface**

To display MLD snooping input-related message statistics:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Statistics.
2. Select Input.

**Figure 292: Displaying MLD Snooping Statistics – Input**

Multicast > MLD Snooping > Statistics

Type  Input  Output  Query  Summary  Clear

Input Statistics Total: 11

Interface	Report	Leave	G Query	G(-S)-S Query	Drop	Join Success	Group
Eth 1/1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/9	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
VLAN 1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

To display MLD snooping output-related message statistics:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Statistics.
2. Select Output.

**Figure 293: Displaying MLD Snooping Statistics – Output**

Multicast > MLD Snooping > Statistics

Type  Input  Output  Query  Summary  Clear

Output Statistics Total: 11

Interface	Report	Leave	G Query	G(-S)-S Query	Drop	Group
Eth 1/1	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/2	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/3	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/4	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/5	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/6	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/7	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/8	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/9	0	0	0	0	0	0
Eth 1/10	0	0	0	0	0	0
VLAN 1	0	0	0	0	0	0

To display MLD query message statistics:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Statistics.
2. Select Query.

**Figure 294: Displaying MLD Snooping Statistics – Query**

Multicast > MLD Snooping > Statistics

Type  Input  Output  Query  Summary  Clear

VLAN

Query Statistics

Other Querier Address	None
Other Querier Expire	0(m):0(s)
Other Querier Uptime	0(h):0(m):0(s)
Self Querier Address	::
Self Querier Expire Time	0(m):0(s)
Self Querier Uptime	0(h):0(m):0(s)
General Query Received	0
General Query Sent	0
Specific Query Received	0
Specific Query Sent	0

To display MLD summary statistics for a port or trunk:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Statistics.
2. Select Summary.
3. Select a port or trunk.

**Figure 295: Displaying MLD Snooping Statistics – Summary (Port/Trunk)**

**Multicast > MLD Snooping > Statistics**

**Type**     Input     Output     Query     Summary     Clear

**Interface**     VLAN  ▼

Unit  ▼ / Port  ▼

Trunk  ▼

**Summary Statistics**

<b>Number of Groups</b>		0		
<b>Querier</b>			<b>Report &amp; Leave</b>	
<b>Transmit</b>			<b>Transmit</b>	
General	0		Report	0
Group Specific	0		Leave	0
<b>Recieved</b>			<b>Recieved</b>	
General	0		Report	0
Group Specific	0		Leave	0
			Join Success	0
			Filter Drop	0
			Source Port Drop	0
			Others Drop	0

To display MLD summary statistics for a VLAN:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Statistics.
2. Select Summary.
3. Select a VLAN.

**Figure 296: Displaying MLD Snooping Statistics – Summary (VLAN)**

**Multicast > MLD Snooping > Statistics**

Type  Input  Output  Query  Summary  Clear

Interface  VLAN 1 ▼

Unit 1 ▼ / Port 1 ▼

Trunk ▼

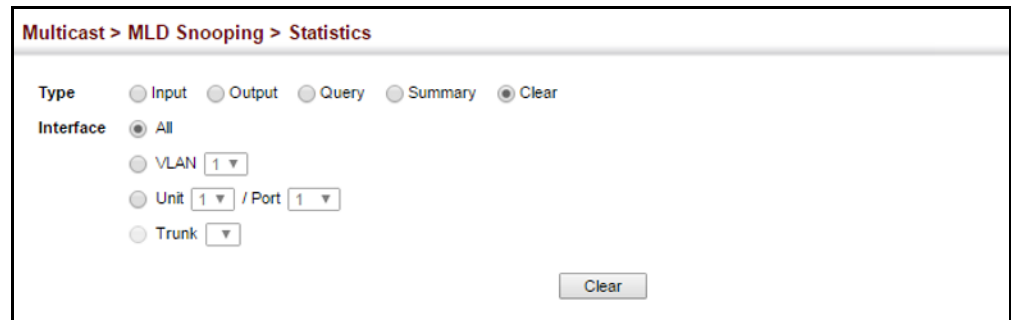
**Summary Statistics**

<b>Number of Groups</b>		0	
<b>Querier</b>		<b>Report &amp; Leave</b>	
Other Querier	None	Host Addr	None
Other Uptime	0(h):0(m):0(s)	Unsolicit Expire	0 sec
Other Expire	0(m):0(s)		
Self Addr	None		
Self Expire	0(m): 0(s)		
Self Uptime	0(h):0(m):0(s)		
<b>Transmit</b>		<b>Transmit</b>	
General	0	Report	0
Group Specific	0	Leave	0
<b>Recieved</b>		<b>Recieved</b>	
General	0	Report	0
Group Specific	0	Leave	0
		Join Success	0
		Filter Drop	0
		Source Port Drop	0
		Others Drop	0

To clear MLD statistics:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Statistics.
2. Select Clear.
3. Select All or enter the required interface.
4. Click Clear.

**Figure 297: Clearing MLD Snooping Statistics**



## Filtering and Throttling MLD Groups

In certain switch applications, the administrator may want to control the multicast services that are available to end users. For example, an IP/TV service based on a specific subscription plan. The MLD filtering feature fulfills this requirement by restricting access to specified multicast services on a switch port, and MLD throttling limits the number of simultaneous multicast groups a port can join.

MLD filtering enables you to assign a profile to a switch port that specifies multicast groups that are permitted or denied on the port. An MLD filter profile can contain one or more addresses, or a range of multicast addresses; but only one profile can be assigned to a port. When enabled, MLD join reports received on the port are checked against the filter profile. If a requested multicast group is permitted, the MLD join report is forwarded as normal. If a requested multicast group is denied, the MLD join report is dropped.

MLD throttling sets a maximum number of multicast groups that a port can join at the same time. When the maximum number of groups is reached on a port, the switch can take one of two actions; either "deny" or "replace." If the action is set to deny, any new MLD join reports will be dropped. If the action is set to replace, the switch randomly removes an existing group and replaces it with the new multicast group.



**Enabling MLD Filtering and Throttling** Use the Multicast > MLD Snooping > Filter (Configure General) page to enable IGMP filtering and throttling globally on the switch.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

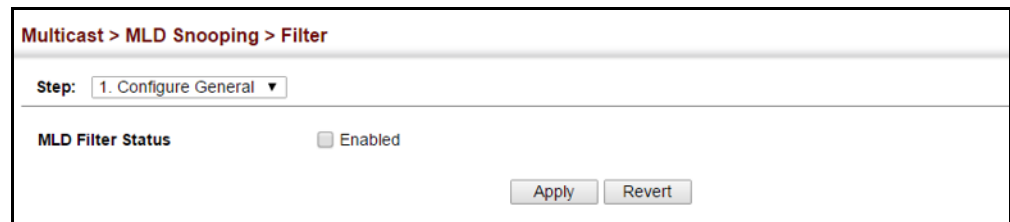
- ◆ **MLD Filter Status** – Enables MLD filtering and throttling globally for the switch. (Default: Disabled)

#### Web Interface

To enable MLD filtering and throttling on the switch:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Filter.
2. Select Configure General from the Step list.
3. Enable MLD Filter Status.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 298: Enabling MLD Filtering and Throttling**



**Configuring MLD Filter Profiles** Use the Multicast > MLD Snooping > Filter (Configure Profile – Add) page to create an MLD profile and set its access mode. Then use the (Add Multicast Group Range) page to configure the multicast groups to filter.

#### Command Usage

Specify a range of multicast groups by entering a start and end IPv6 address; or specify a single multicast group by entering the same IPv6 address for the start and end of the range.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

*Add*

- ◆ **Profile ID** – Creates an IGMP profile. (Range: 1-4294967295)
- ◆ **Access Mode** – Sets the access mode of the profile; either permit or deny. (Default: Deny)

When the access mode is set to permit, MLD join reports are processed when a multicast group falls within the controlled range. When the access mode is set to deny, MLD join reports are only processed when the multicast group is not in the controlled range.

#### *Add Multicast Group Range*

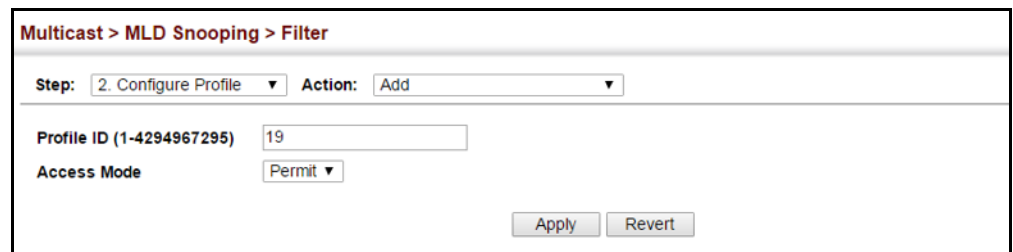
- ◆ **Profile ID** – Selects an IGMP profile to configure.
- ◆ **Start Multicast IPv6 Address** – Specifies the starting address of a range of multicast groups.
- ◆ **End Multicast IPv6 Address** – Specifies the ending address of a range of multicast groups.

#### **Web Interface**

To create an MLD filter profile and set its access mode:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Filter.
2. Select Configure Profile from the Step list.
3. Select Add from the Action list.
4. Enter the number for a profile, and set its access mode.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 299: Creating an MLD Filtering Profile**

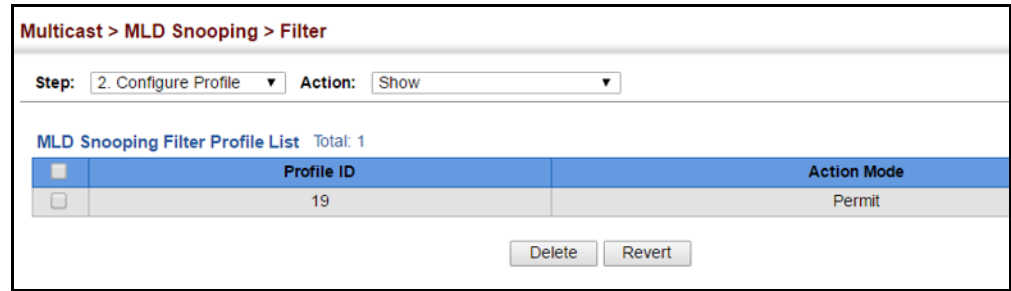


The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring an MLD filter profile. The breadcrumb navigation at the top reads "Multicast > MLD Snooping > Filter". Below this, there are two dropdown menus: "Step:" set to "2. Configure Profile" and "Action:" set to "Add". The "Profile ID (1-4294967295)" field contains the value "19". The "Access Mode" dropdown is set to "Permit". At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

To show the MLD filter profiles:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Filter.
2. Select Configure Profile from the Step list.
3. Select Show from the Action list.

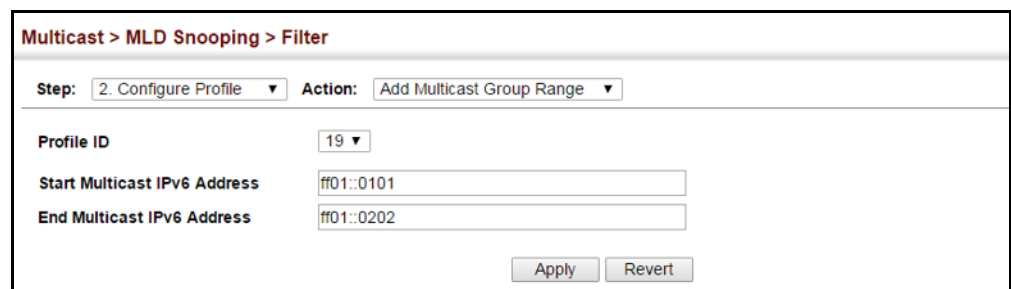
**Figure 300: Showing the MLD Filtering Profiles Created**



To add a range of multicast groups to an MLD filter profile:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Filter.
2. Select Configure Profile from the Step list.
3. Select Add Multicast Group Range from the Action list.
4. Select the profile to configure, and add a multicast group address or range of addresses.
5. Click Apply.

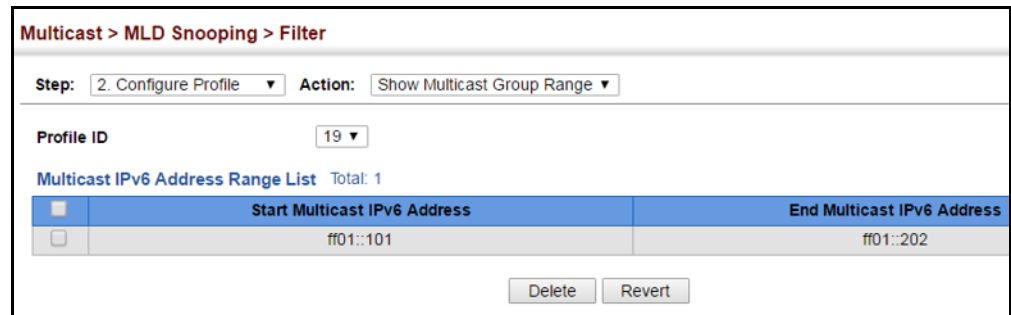
**Figure 301: Adding Multicast Groups to an MLD Filtering Profile**



To show the multicast groups configured for an MLD filter profile:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Filter.
2. Select Configure Profile from the Step list.
3. Select Show Multicast Group Range from the Action list.
4. Select the profile for which to display this information.

**Figure 302: Showing the Groups Assigned to an MLD Filtering Profile**



### Configuring MLD Filtering and Throttling for Interfaces

Use the Multicast > MLD Snooping > Filter (Configure Interface) page to assign an MLD filter profile to interfaces on the switch, or to throttle multicast traffic by limiting the maximum number of multicast groups an interface can join at the same time.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ MLD throttling sets a maximum number of multicast groups that a port can join at the same time. When the maximum number of groups is reached on a port, the switch can take one of two actions; either “deny” or “replace.” If the action is set to deny, any new MLD join reports will be dropped. If the action is set to replace, the switch randomly removes an existing group and replaces it with the new multicast group.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Interface** – Port or trunk identifier.  
An MLD profile or throttling setting can be applied to a port or trunk. When ports are configured as trunk members, the trunk uses the settings applied to the first port member in the trunk.
- ◆ **Profile ID** – Selects an existing profile to assign to an interface.
- ◆ **Max Multicast Groups** – Sets the maximum number of multicast groups an interface can join at the same time. (Range: 1-255; Default: 255)

- ◆ **Current Multicast Groups** – Displays the current multicast groups the interface has joined.
- ◆ **Throttling Action Mode** – Sets the action to take when the maximum number of multicast groups for the interface has been exceeded. (Default: Deny)
  - **Deny** - The new multicast group join report is dropped.
  - **Replace** - The new multicast group replaces an existing group.
- ◆ **Throttling Status** – Indicates if the throttling action has been implemented on the interface. (Options: True or False)

### Web Interface

To configure MLD filtering or throttling for a port or trunk:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Filter.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Step list.
3. Select a profile to assign to an interface, then set the maximum number of allowed multicast groups and the throttling response.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 303: Configuring MLD Filtering and Throttling Interface Settings**

Multicast > MLD Snooping > Filter

Step: 3. Configure Interface

Interface  Port  Trunk

MLD Filter and Throttling Port List Total: 27

Port	Profile ID	Max Multicast Groups (1-255)	Current Multicast Groups	Throttling Action Mode	Throttling Status
1	▼	255	0	Deny ▼	False
2	▼	255	0	Deny ▼	False
4	▼	255	0	Deny ▼	False
5	▼	255	0	Deny ▼	False
6	▼	255	0	Deny ▼	False
7	▼	255	0	Deny ▼	False
8	▼	255	0	Deny ▼	False
9	▼	255	0	Deny ▼	False
10	▼	255	0	Deny ▼	False
11	▼	255	0	Deny ▼	False

Apply Revert

## Filtering MLD Query Packets on an Interface

Use the Multicast > MLD Snooping > Query Drop page to configure an interface to drop MLD query packets.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

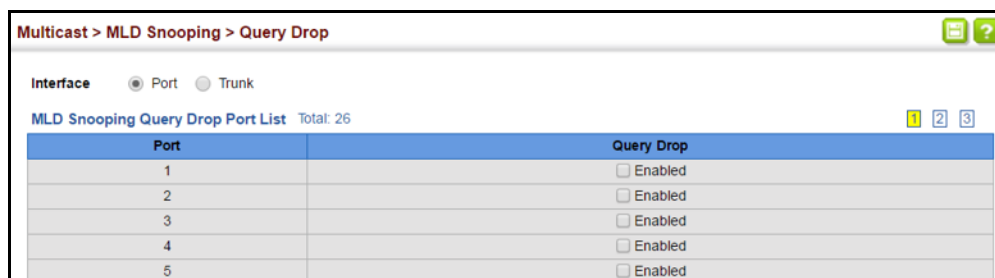
- ◆ **Interface** – Port or trunk identifier.
- ◆ **Query Drop** – Drops any received MLD query packets. (Default: Disabled)  
This feature can be used to drop any query packets received on the specified interface. If this switch is acting as a Querier, this prevents it from being affected by messages received from another Querier.

### Web Interface

To drop IGMP query packets:

1. Click Multicast, MLD Snooping, Query Drop.
2. Select Port or Trunk interface.
3. Enable query drop for any interface.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 304: Dropping MLD Query Packets**



This chapter provides information on network functions including:

- ◆ **Ping** – Sends ping message to another node on the network.
- ◆ **Trace Route** – Sends ICMP echo request packets to another node on the network.
- ◆ **Address Resolution Protocol** – Describes how to configure proxy ARP or static addresses, and how to display entries in the ARP cache.

---

## Using the Ping Function

Use the Tools > Ping page to send ICMP echo request packets to another node on the network.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Host Name/IP Address** – Alias or IPv4/IPv6 address of the host.
- ◆ **Probe Count** – Number of packets to send. (Range: 1-16)
- ◆ **Packet Size** – Number of bytes in a packet. (Range: 32-512 bytes for IPv4, 0-1500 bytes for IPv6)

The actual packet size will be eight bytes larger than the size specified because the switch adds header information.

### Command Usage

- ◆ Use the ping command to see if another site on the network can be reached.
- ◆ The following are some results of the **ping** command:
  - *Normal response* - The normal response occurs in one to ten seconds, depending on network traffic.
  - *Destination does not respond* - If the host does not respond, a “timeout” appears in ten seconds.
  - *Destination unreachable* - The gateway for this destination indicates that the destination is unreachable.

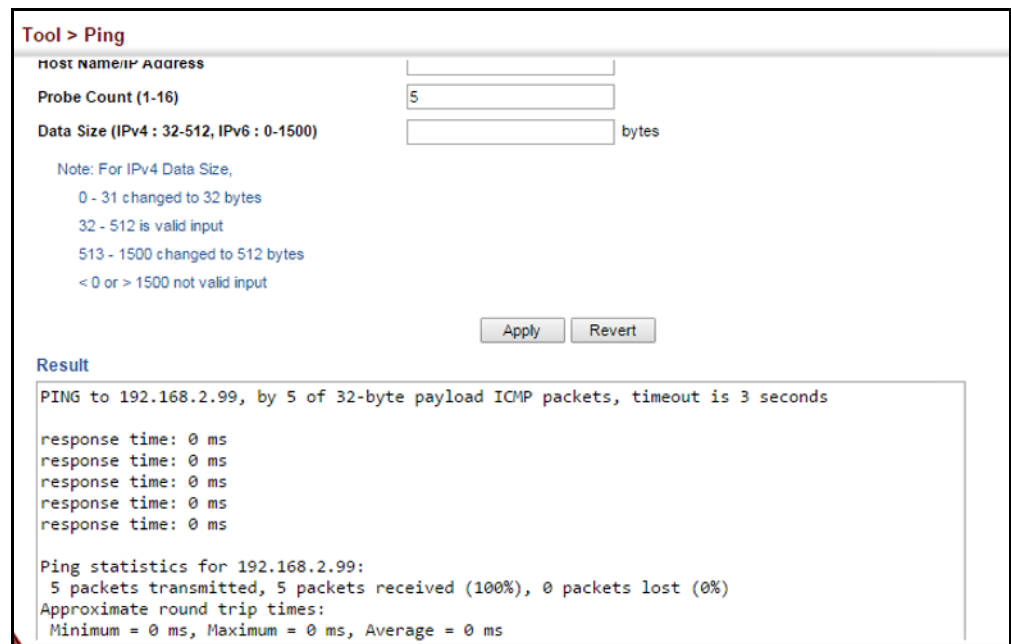
- *Network or host unreachable* - The gateway found no corresponding entry in the route table.
- ◆ The same link-local address may be used by different interfaces/nodes in different zones (RFC 4007). Therefore, when specifying a link-local address, include zone-id information indicating the VLAN identifier after the % delimiter. For example, FE80::7272%1 identifies VLAN 1 as the interface.

### Web Interface

To ping another device on the network:

1. Click Tools, Ping.
2. Specify the target device and ping parameters.
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 305: Pinging a Network Device**



## Using the Trace Route Function

Use the Tools > Trace Route page to show the route packets take to the specified destination.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

**Destination IP Address** – Alias or IPv4/IPv6 address of the host.



- ◆ **IPv4 Max Failures** – The maximum number of failures before which the trace route is terminated. (Fixed: 5)
- ◆ **IPv6 Max Failures** – The maximum number of failures before which the trace route is terminated. (Range: 1-255; Default: 5)

### Command Usage

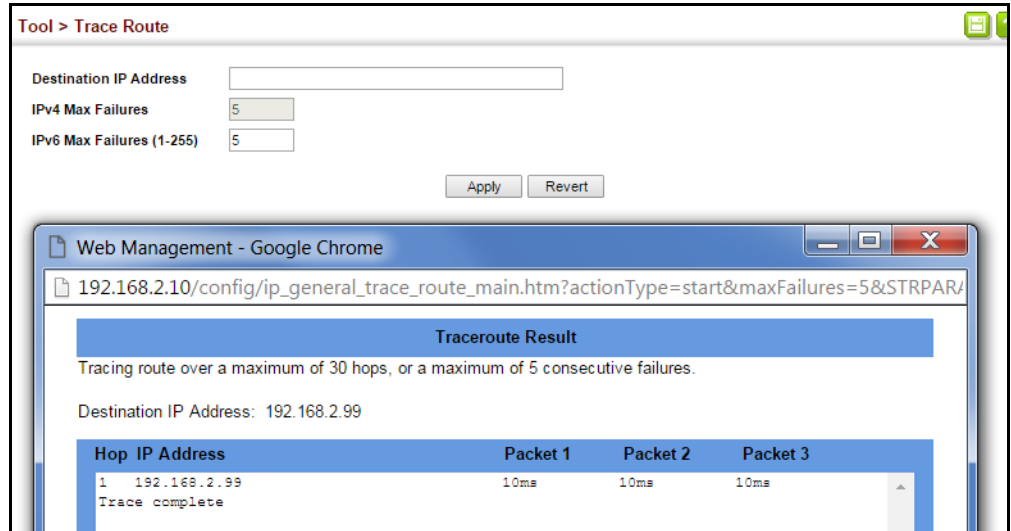
- ◆ Use the trace route function to determine the path taken to reach a specified destination.
- ◆ A trace terminates when the destination responds, when the maximum timeout (TTL) is exceeded, or the maximum number of hops is exceeded.
- ◆ The trace route function first sends probe datagrams with the TTL value set at one. This causes the first router to discard the datagram and return an error message. The trace function then sends several probe messages at each subsequent TTL level and displays the round-trip time for each message. Not all devices respond correctly to probes by returning an “ICMP port unreachable” message. If the timer goes off before a response is returned, the trace function prints a series of asterisks and the “Request Timed Out” message. A long sequence of these messages, terminating only when the maximum timeout has been reached, may indicate this problem with the target device.
- ◆ The same link-local address may be used by different interfaces/nodes in different zones (RFC 4007). Therefore, when specifying a link-local address, include zone-id information indicating the VLAN identifier after the % delimiter. For example, FE80::7272%1 identifies VLAN 1 as the interface from which the trace route is sent..

### Web Interface

To trace the route to another device on the network:

1. Click Tools, Trace Route.
2. Specify the target device.
3. Click Apply.

Figure 306: Tracing the Route to a Network Device



## Address Resolution Protocol

If IP routing is enabled (page 499), the router uses its routing tables to make routing decisions, and uses Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) to forward traffic from one hop to the next. ARP is used to map an IP address to a physical layer (i.e., MAC) address. When an IP frame is received by this router (or any standards-based router), it first looks up the MAC address corresponding to the destination IP address in the ARP cache. If the address is found, the router writes the MAC address into the appropriate field in the frame header, and forwards the frame on to the next hop. IP traffic passes along the path to its final destination in this way, with each routing device mapping the destination IP address to the MAC address of the next hop toward the recipient, until the packet is delivered to the final destination.

If there is no entry for an IP address in the ARP cache, the router will broadcast an ARP request packet to all devices on the network. The ARP request contains the following fields similar to that shown in this example:

Table 27: Address Resolution Protocol

destination IP address	10.1.0.19
destination MAC address	xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx OR XXXXXXXXXXXX
source IP address	10.1.0.253
source MAC address	00-00-ab-cd-00-00

When devices receive this request, they discard it if their address does not match the destination IP address in the message. However, if it does match, they write their own hardware address into the destination MAC address field and send the message back to the source hardware address. When the source device receives a

reply, it writes the destination IP address and corresponding MAC address into its cache, and forwards the IP traffic on to the next hop. As long as this entry has not timed out, the router will be able forward traffic directly to the next hop for this destination without having to broadcast another ARP request.

Also, if the switch receives a request for its own IP address, it will send back a response, and also cache the MAC of the source device's IP address.

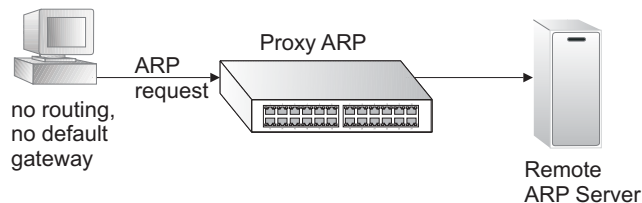
**Basic ARP Configuration** Use the Tools > ARP (Configure General) page to specify the timeout for ARP cache entries, or to enable Proxy ARP for specific VLAN interfaces.

### Command Usage

#### *Proxy ARP*

When a node in the attached subnetwork does not have routing or a default gateway configured, Proxy ARP can be used to forward ARP requests to a remote subnetwork. When the router receives an ARP request for a remote network and Proxy ARP is enabled, it determines if it has the best route to the remote network, and then answers the ARP request by sending its own MAC address to the requesting node. That node then sends traffic to the router, which in turn uses its own routing table to forward the traffic to the remote destination.

**Figure 307: Proxy ARP**



### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Proxy ARP** – Enables or disables Proxy ARP for specified VLAN interfaces, allowing a non-routing device to determine the MAC address of a host on another subnet or network. (Default: Disabled)

End stations that require Proxy ARP must view the entire network as a single network. These nodes must therefore use a smaller subnet mask than that used by the router or other relevant network devices.

Extensive use of Proxy ARP can degrade router performance because it may lead to increased ARP traffic and increased search time for larger ARP address tables.

### Web Interface

To configure the timeout for the ARP cache or to enable Proxy ARP for a VLAN (i.e., IP subnetwork):

1. Click Tools, ARP.
2. Select Configure General from the Step List.
3. Enable Proxy ARP for subnetworks that do not have routing or a default gateway.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 308: Configuring General Settings for ARP**

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Tools > ARP". At the top, there is a "Step:" dropdown menu currently set to "1. Configure General". Below this, the "Proxy ARP" section is displayed. It includes a "VLAN" dropdown menu set to "1" and a "Status" checkbox labeled "Enabled" which is currently unchecked. At the bottom right of the interface, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

### Displaying Dynamic or Local ARP Entries

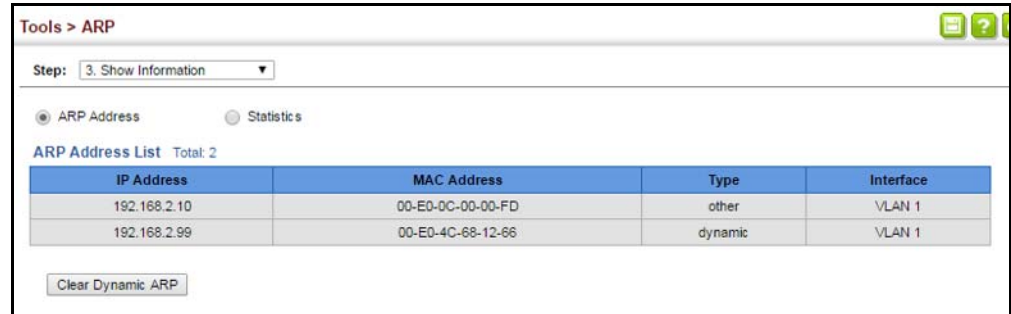
Use the Tools > ARP page to display dynamic or local entries in the ARP cache. The ARP cache contains static entries, and entries for local interfaces, including subnet, host, and broadcast addresses. However, most entries will be dynamically learned through replies to broadcast messages.

### Web Interface

To display all dynamic and local entries in the ARP cache:

1. Click Tools, ARP.
2. Select Show Information from the Step List.
3. Click ARP Addresses.

**Figure 309: Displaying ARP Entries**



**Displaying ARP Statistics** Use the Tools > ARP (Show Information) page to display statistics for ARP messages crossing all interfaces on this switch.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

**Table 28: ARP Statistics**

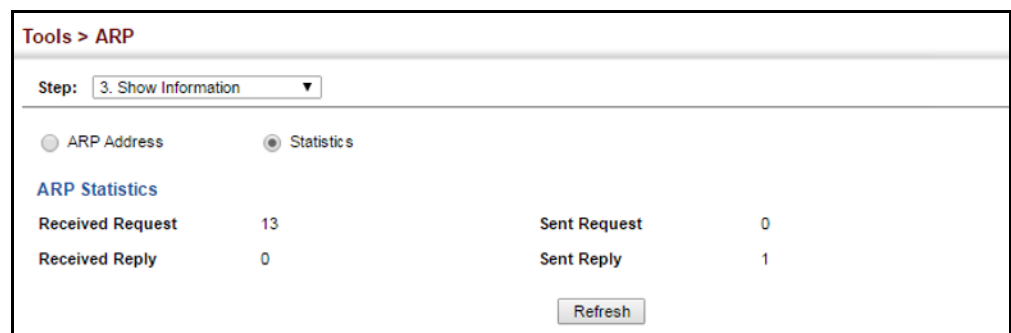
Parameter	Description
Received Request	Number of ARP Request packets received by the router.
Received Reply	Number of ARP Reply packets received by the router.
Sent Request	Number of ARP Request packets sent by the router.
Sent Reply	Number of ARP Reply packets sent by the router.

### Web Interface

To display ARP statistics:

1. Click Tools, ARP.
2. Select Show Information from the Step List.
3. Click Statistics.

**Figure 310: Displaying ARP Statistics**





---

# IP Configuration

This chapter describes how to configure an IP interface for management access to the switch over the network. This switch supports both IP Version 4 and Version 6, and can be managed simultaneously through either of these address types. You can manually configure a specific IPv4 or IPv6 address, or direct the switch to obtain an IPv4 address from a BOOTP or DHCP server. An IPv6 address can either be manually configured or dynamically generated.

This chapter provides information on network functions including:

- ◆ [IPv4 Configuration](#) – Sets an IPv4 address for management access.
- ◆ [IPv6 Configuration](#) – Sets an IPv6 address for management access.

---

## Setting the Switch's IP Address (IP Version 4)

This section describes how to configure an initial IPv4 interface for management access over the network, or how to create an interface to multiple subnets. This switch supports both IPv4 and IPv6, and can be managed through either of these address types. You can manually configure a specific IPv4 or IPv6 address or direct the switch to obtain an IPv4 address from a BOOTP or DHCP server. An IPv6 global unicast or link-local address can be manually configured, or a link-local address can be dynamically generated. For information on configuring the switch with an IPv6 address, see [“Setting the Switch's IP Address \(IP Version 6\)” on page 475](#).

### Configuring IPv4 Interface Settings

Use the IP > General > Routing Interface (Add Address) page to configure an IPv4 address for the switch. An IPv4 address is obtained via DHCP by default for VLAN 1. To configure a static address, you need to change the switch's default settings to values that are compatible with your network. You may also need to establish a default gateway between the switch and management stations that exist on another network segment. To configure this device as the default gateway, use the IP > Routing > Static Routes (Add) page, set the destination address to the required interface, and the next hop to null address 0.0.0.0.

You can direct the device to obtain an address from a BOOTP or DHCP server, or manually configure a static IP address. Valid IP addresses consist of four decimal numbers, 0 to 255, separated by periods. Anything other than this format will not be accepted.

### Command Usage



IP > Routing > Static Routes (Add) page (see [“Configuring Static Routes” on page 496](#)) or IP > IPv6 Configuration (Configure Global) page (see [“Configuring the IPv6 Default Gateway” on page 476](#))**Parameters**

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN** – ID of the configured VLAN (1-4094). By default, all ports on the switch are members of VLAN 1. However, the management station can be attached to a port belonging to any VLAN, as long as that VLAN has been assigned an IP address. (Default: VLAN 1)
- ◆ **IP Address Mode** – Specifies whether IP functionality is enabled via manual configuration (User Specified), Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), or Boot Protocol (BOOTP). If DHCP/BOOTP is enabled, IP will not function until a reply has been received from the server. Requests will be broadcast periodically by the switch for an IP address. DHCP/BOOTP responses can include the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway. (Default: DHCP)

- ◆ **IP Address Type** – Specifies a primary or secondary IP address. An interface can have only one primary IP address, but can have many secondary IP addresses. In other words, secondary addresses need to be specified if more than one IP subnet can be accessed through this interface. For initial configuration, set this parameter to Primary. (Options: Primary, Secondary; Default: Primary)

Note that a secondary address cannot be configured prior to setting the primary IP address, and the primary address cannot be removed if a secondary address is still present. Also, if any router or switch in a network segment uses a secondary address, all other routers/switches in that segment must also use a secondary address from the same network or subnet address space.

- ◆ **IP Address** – IP Address of the VLAN. Valid IP addresses consist of four numbers, 0 to 255, separated by periods. (Default: None)



**Note:** You can manage the switch through any configured IP interface.

---

- ◆ **Subnet Mask** – This mask identifies the host address bits used for routing to specific subnets. (Default: None)
- ◆ **Restart DHCP** – Requests a new IP address from the DHCP server.

### Web Interface

To set a static IPv4 address for the switch:

1. Click IP, General, Routing Interface.
2. Select Add Address from the Action list.
3. Select Add Address from the Action list.



4. Select any configured VLAN, set IP Address Mode to "User Specified," set IP Address Type to "Primary" if no address has yet been configured for this interface, and then enter the IP address and subnet mask.
5. Select Primary or Secondary Address Type.
6. Click Apply.

**Figure 311: Configuring a Static IPv4 Address**

IP > General > Routing Interface

Action: Add Address

VLAN: 1

IP Address Mode: User Specified

IP Address Type: Primary

IP Address: 192.168.0.2

Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

Restart DHCP [Click this button to restart DHCP service.](#)

Apply Revert

To obtain an dynamic IPv4 address through DHCP/BOOTP for the switch:

1. Click IP, General, Routing Interface.
2. Select Add Address from the Action list.
3. Select any configured VLAN, and set IP Address Mode to "BOOTP" or "DHCP."
4. Click Apply to save your changes.
5. Then click Restart DHCP to immediately request a new address.

IP will be enabled but will not function until a BOOTP or DHCP reply is received. Requests are broadcast every few minutes using exponential backoff until IP configuration information is obtained from a BOOTP or DHCP server.

Figure 312: Configuring a Dynamic IPv4 Address

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring a dynamic IPv4 address. The breadcrumb path is "IP > General > Routing Interface". The "Action" dropdown is set to "Add Address". The "VLAN" dropdown is set to "1". The "IP Address Mode" dropdown is set to "DHCP". The "IP Address Type" dropdown is set to "Primary". There are empty input fields for "IP Address" and "Subnet Mask". A "Restart DHCP" button is present with a tooltip that says "Click this button to restart DHCP service." At the bottom right, there are "Apply" and "Revert" buttons.



**Note:** The switch will also broadcast a request for IP configuration settings on each power reset.

**Note:** If you lose the management connection, make a console connection to the switch and enter "show ip interface" to determine the new switch address.

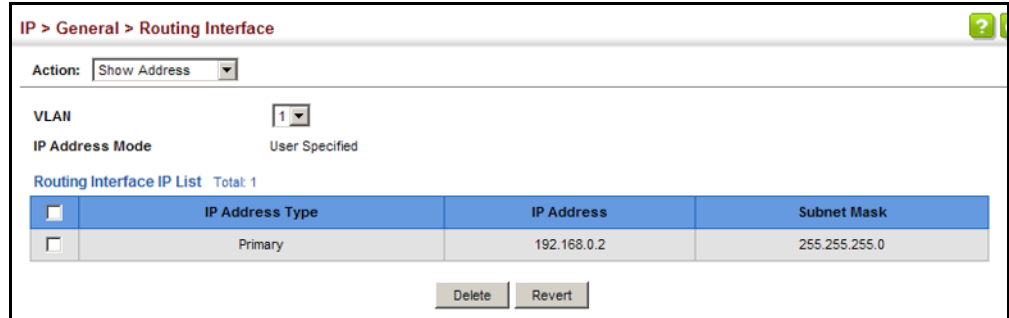
**Renewing DHCP** – DHCP may lease addresses to clients indefinitely or for a specific period of time. If the address expires or the switch is moved to another network segment, you will lose management access to the switch. In this case, you can reboot the switch or submit a client request to restart DHCP service via the CLI.

If the address assigned by DHCP is no longer functioning, you will not be able to renew the IP settings via the web interface. You can only restart DHCP service via the web interface if the current address is still available.

To show the IPv4 address configured for an interface:

1. Click IP, General, Routing Interface.
2. Select Show Address from the Action list.
3. Select an entry from the VLAN list.

Figure 313: Showing the Configured IPv4 Address for an Interface



## Setting the Switch's IP Address (IP Version 6)

This section describes how to configure an IPv6 interface for management access over the network, or for creating an interface to multiple subnets. This switch supports both IPv4 and IPv6, and can be managed through either of these address types. For information on configuring the switch with an IPv4 address, see [“Setting the Switch's IP Address \(IP Version 4\)” on page 471](#).

### Command Usage

- ◆ IPv6 includes two distinct address types – link-local unicast and global unicast. A link-local address makes the switch accessible over IPv6 for all devices attached to the same local subnet. Management traffic using this kind of address cannot be passed by any router outside of the subnet. A link-local address is easy to set up, and may be useful for simple networks or basic troubleshooting tasks. However, to connect to a larger network with multiple segments, the switch must be configured with a global unicast address. Both link-local and global unicast address types can either be dynamically assigned (using the Configure Interface page) or manually configured (using the Add IPv6 Address page).
- ◆ An IPv6 global unicast or link-local address can be manually configured (using the Add IPv6 Address page), or a link-local address can be dynamically generated (using the Configure Interface page).

**Configuring the IPv6 Default Gateway** Use the IP > IPv6 Configuration (Configure Global) page to configure an IPv6 default gateway for the switch.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

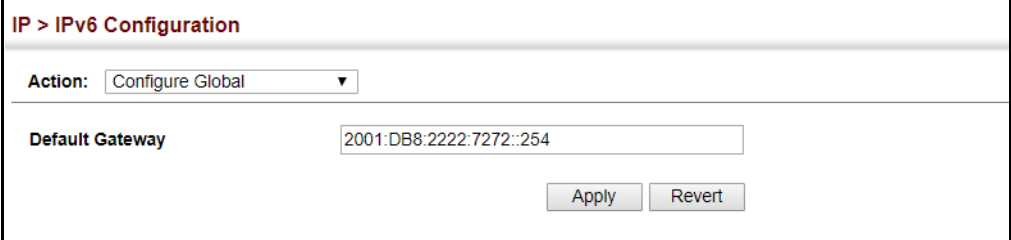
- ◆ **Default Gateway** – Sets the IPv6 address of the default next hop router to use when no routing information is known about an IPv6 address.
  - An IPv6 default gateway can only be successfully set when a network interface that directly connects to the gateway has been configured on the switch.
  - An IPv6 address must be configured according to RFC 2373 “IPv6 Addressing Architecture,” using 8 colon-separated 16-bit hexadecimal values. One double colon may be used in the address to indicate the appropriate number of zeros required to fill the undefined fields.

#### Web Interface

To configure an IPv6 default gateway for the switch:

1. Click IP, IPv6 Configuration.
2. Select Configure Global from the Action list.
3. Enter the IPv6 default gateway.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 314: Configuring the IPv6 Default Gateway**



The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring IPv6 settings. At the top, it says "IP > IPv6 Configuration". Below that, there is a dropdown menu for "Action" with "Configure Global" selected. Underneath, there is a text input field for "Default Gateway" containing the address "2001:DB8:2222:7272::254". At the bottom right of the form, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

**Configuring IPv6 Interface Settings** Use the IP > IPv6 Configuration (Configure Interface) page to configure general IPv6 settings for the selected VLAN, including auto-configuration of a global unicast interface address, and explicit configuration of a link local interface address, the MTU size, and neighbor discovery protocol settings for duplicate address detection and the neighbor solicitation interval.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ The switch must be configured with a link-local address. The switch's address auto-configuration function will automatically create a link-local address, as well as an IPv6 global address if router advertisements are detected on the local interface.

- ◆ The option to explicitly enable IPv6 creates a link-local address, but will not generate a global IPv6 address if auto-configuration is not enabled. In this case, you can manually configure a global unicast address (see [“Configuring an IPv6 Address” on page 481](#)).
- ◆ IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Protocol supersedes IPv4 Address Resolution Protocol in IPv6 networks. IPv6 nodes on the same network segment use Neighbor Discovery to discover each other's presence, to determine each other's link-layer addresses, to find routers and to maintain reachability information about the paths to active neighbors. The key parameters used to facilitate this process are the number of attempts made to verify whether or not a duplicate address exists on the same network segment, and the interval between neighbor solicitations used to verify reachability information.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN** – ID of a configured VLAN which is to be used for management access, or as a standard interface for a subnet. By default, all ports on the switch are members of VLAN 1. However, the management station can be attached to a port belonging to any VLAN, as long as that VLAN has been assigned an IP address. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **Address Autoconfig** – Enables stateless autoconfiguration of an IPv6 address on an interface and enables IPv6 functionality on that interface. The network portion of the address is based on prefixes received in IPv6 router advertisement messages, and the host portion is automatically generated using the modified EUI-64 form of the interface identifier (i.e., the switch's MAC address).
  - If a link local address has not yet been assigned to this interface, this command will dynamically generate one. The link-local address is made with an address prefix in the range of FE80~FEBF and a host portion based the switch's MAC address in modified EUI-64 format. It will also generate a global unicast address if a global prefix is included in received router advertisements.
  - When DHCPv6 is started, the switch may attempt to acquire an IP address prefix through stateful address autoconfiguration. If router advertisements have the “other stateful configuration” flag set, the switch will attempt to acquire other non-address configuration information (such as a default gateway).
  - If auto-configuration is not selected, then an address must be manually configured using the Add IPv6 Address page described below.
- ◆ **Enable IPv6 Explicitly** – Enables IPv6 on an interface and assigns it a link-local address. Note that when an explicit address is assigned to an interface, IPv6 is automatically enabled, and cannot be disabled until all assigned addresses have been removed. (Default: Disabled)

Disabling this parameter does not disable IPv6 for an interface that has been explicitly configured with an IPv6 address.

- ◆ **MTU** – Sets the size of the maximum transmission unit (MTU) for IPv6 packets sent on an interface. (Range: 1280-65535 bytes; Default: 1500 bytes)
  - The maximum value set in this field cannot exceed the MTU of the physical interface, which is currently fixed at 1500 bytes.
  - If a non-default value is configured, an MTU option is included in the router advertisements sent from this device. This option is provided to ensure that all nodes on a link use the same MTU value in cases where the link MTU is not otherwise well known.
  - IPv6 routers do not fragment IPv6 packets forwarded from other routers. However, traffic originating from an end-station connected to an IPv6 router may be fragmented.
  - All devices on the same physical medium must use the same MTU in order to operate correctly.
  - IPv6 must be enabled on an interface before the MTU can be set. If an IPv6 address has not been assigned to the switch, “N/A” is displayed in the MTU field.
  
- ◆ **ND DAD Attempts** – The number of consecutive neighbor solicitation messages sent on an interface during duplicate address detection. (Range: 0-600, Default: 3)
  - Configuring a value of 0 disables duplicate address detection.
  - Duplicate address detection determines if a new unicast IPv6 address already exists on the network before it is assigned to an interface.
  - Duplicate address detection is stopped on any interface that has been suspended (see [“Configuring VLAN Groups” on page 149](#)). While an interface is suspended, all unicast IPv6 addresses assigned to that interface are placed in a “pending” state. Duplicate address detection is automatically restarted when the interface is administratively re-activated.
  - An interface that is re-activated restarts duplicate address detection for all unicast IPv6 addresses on the interface. While duplicate address detection is performed on the interface’s link-local address, the other IPv6 addresses remain in a “tentative” state. If no duplicate link-local address is found, duplicate address detection is started for the remaining IPv6 addresses.
  - If a duplicate address is detected, it is set to “duplicate” state, and a warning message is sent to the console. If a duplicate link-local address is detected, IPv6 processes are disabled on the interface. If a duplicate global unicast address is detected, it is not used. All configuration commands associated with a duplicate address remain configured while the address is in “duplicate” state.
  - If the link-local address for an interface is changed, duplicate address detection is performed on the new link-local address, but not for any of the IPv6 global unicast addresses already associated with the interface.

- ◆ **ND NS Interval** – The interval between transmitting IPv6 neighbor solicitation messages on an interface. (Range: 1000-3600000 milliseconds)

Default: 1000 milliseconds is used for neighbor discovery operations,  
0 milliseconds is advertised in router advertisements.

This attribute specifies the interval between transmitting neighbor solicitation messages when resolving an address, or when probing the reachability of a neighbor. Therefore, avoid using very short intervals for normal IPv6 operations.

When a non-default value is configured, the specified interval is used both for router advertisements and by the router itself.

- ◆ **ND Reachable-Time** – The amount of time that a remote IPv6 node is considered reachable after some reachability confirmation event has occurred. (Range: 0-3600000 milliseconds)

Default: 30000 milliseconds is used for neighbor discovery operations,  
0 milliseconds is advertised in router advertisements.

- The time limit configured by this parameter allows the router to detect unavailable neighbors. During the neighbor discover process, an IPv6 node will multicast neighbor solicitation messages to search for neighbor nodes. For a neighbor node to be considered reachable, it must respond to the neighbor soliciting node with a neighbor advertisement message to become a confirmed neighbor, after which the reachable timer will be considered in effect for subsequent unicast IPv6 layer communications.
- This time limit is included in all router advertisements sent out through an interface, ensuring that nodes on the same link use the same time value.
- Setting the time limit to 0 means that the configured time is unspecified by this router.

- ◆ **Restart DHCPv6** – When DHCPv6 is restarted, the switch may attempt to acquire an IP address prefix through stateful address autoconfiguration. If the router advertisements have the “other stateful configuration” flag set, the switch may also attempt to acquire other non-address configuration information (such as a default gateway) when DHCPv6 is restarted.

Prior to submitting a client request to a DHCPv6 server, the switch should be configured with a link-local address using the Address Autoconfig option. The state of the Managed Address Configuration flag (M flag) and Other Stateful Configuration flag (O flag) received in Router Advertisement messages will determine the information this switch should attempt to acquire from the DHCPv6 server as described below.

- Both M and O flags are set to 1:

DHCPv6 is used for both address and other configuration settings.

This combination is known as DHCPv6 stateful autoconfiguration, in which a DHCPv6 server assigns stateful addresses to IPv6 hosts.

- The M flag is set to 0, and the O flag is set to 1:  
DHCPv6 is used only for other configuration settings.  
Neighboring routers are configured to advertise non-link-local address prefixes from which IPv6 hosts derive stateless addresses.  
This combination is known as DHCPv6 stateless autoconfiguration, in which a DHCPv6 server does not assign stateful addresses to IPv6 hosts, but does assign stateless configuration settings.

### Web Interface

To configure general IPv6 settings for the switch:

1. Click IP, IPv6 Configuration.
2. Select Configure Interface from the Action list.
3. Specify the VLAN to configure.
4. Enable address auto-configuration, or enable IPv6 explicitly to automatically configure a link-local address and enable IPv6 on the selected interface. (To manually configure the link-local address, use the Add IPv6 Address page.) Set the MTU size, the maximum number of duplicate address detection messages, the neighbor solicitation message interval, and the amount of time that a remote IPv6 node is considered reachable.
5. Click Apply.

**Figure 315: Configuring General Settings for an IPv6 Interface**

The screenshot shows the 'IP > IPv6 Configuration' web interface. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'IP > IPv6 Configuration' and an 'Action:' dropdown menu set to 'Configure Interface'. Below this, several configuration options are listed:

- VLAN:** A dropdown menu showing '1'.
- Address Autoconfig:** A checkbox labeled 'Enabled' which is currently unchecked.
- Enable IPv6 Explicitly:** A checkbox labeled 'Enabled' which is currently unchecked.
- MTU (1280-65535):** A text input field containing '1500' followed by the unit 'bytes'.
- ND DAD Attempts (0-600):** A text input field containing '3'.
- ND NS Interval (1000-3600000):** A text input field containing '1000' followed by the unit 'ms'.
- ND Reachable-Time (0-3600000):** A text input field containing '30000' followed by the unit 'ms'.

At the bottom left, there is a 'Restart DHCPv6' button with a link that says 'Click this button to restart DHCPv6 service.' At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.



**Configuring an IPv6 Address** Use the IP > IPv6 Configuration (Add IPv6 Address) page to configure an IPv6 interface for management access over the network, or for creating an interface to multiple subnets.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ All IPv6 addresses must be formatted according to RFC 2373 "IPv6 Addressing Architecture," using 8 colon-separated 16-bit hexadecimal values. One double colon may be used in the address to indicate the appropriate number of zeros required to fill the undefined fields.
- ◆ The switch must always be configured with a link-local address. Therefore any configuration process that enables IPv6 functionality, or assigns a global unicast address to the switch, including address auto-configuration or explicitly enabling IPv6 (see ["Configuring IPv6 Interface Settings" on page 476](#)), will also automatically generate a link-local unicast address. The prefix length for a link-local address is fixed at 64 bits, and the host portion of the default address is based on the modified EUI-64 (Extended Universal Identifier) form of the interface identifier (i.e., the physical MAC address). Alternatively, you can manually configure the link-local address by entering the full address with a network prefix in the range of FE80~FEBF.
- ◆ To connect to a larger network with multiple subnets, you must configure a global unicast address. There are several alternatives to configuring this address type:
  - The global unicast address can be automatically configured by taking the network prefix from router advertisements observed on the local interface, and using the modified EUI-64 form of the interface identifier to automatically create the host portion of the address (see ["Configuring IPv6 Interface Settings" on page 476](#)).
  - It can be manually configured by specifying the entire network prefix and prefix length, and using the EUI-64 form of the interface identifier to automatically create the low-order 64 bits in the host portion of the address.
  - You can also manually configure the global unicast address by entering the full address and prefix length.
- ◆ You can configure multiple IPv6 global unicast addresses per interface, but only one link-local address per interface.
- ◆ If a duplicate link-local address is detected on the local segment, this interface is disabled and a warning message displayed on the console. If a duplicate global unicast address is detected on the network, the address is disabled on this interface and a warning message displayed on the console.
- ◆ When an explicit address is assigned to an interface, IPv6 is automatically enabled, and cannot be disabled until all assigned addresses have been removed.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN** – ID of a configured VLAN which is to be used for management access, or for creating an interface to multiple subnets. By default, all ports on the switch are members of VLAN 1. However, the management station can be attached to a port belonging to any VLAN, as long as that VLAN has been assigned an IP address. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **Address Type** – Defines the address type configured for this interface.
  - **Global** – Configures an IPv6 global unicast address with a full IPv6 address including the network prefix and host address bits, followed by a forward slash, and a decimal value indicating how many contiguous bits (from the left) of the address comprise the prefix (i.e., the network portion of the address).
  - **EUI-64** (Extended Universal Identifier) – Configures an IPv6 address for an interface using an EUI-64 interface ID in the low order 64 bits.
    - When using EUI-64 format for the low-order 64 bits in the host portion of the address, the value entered in the IPv6 Address field includes the network portion of the address, and the prefix length indicates how many contiguous bits (starting at the left) of the address comprise the prefix (i.e., the network portion of the address). Note that the value specified in the IPv6 Address field may include some of the high-order host bits if the specified prefix length is less than 64 bits. If the specified prefix length exceeds 64 bits, then the bits used in the network portion of the address will take precedence over the interface identifier.
    - IPv6 addresses are 16 bytes long, of which the bottom 8 bytes typically form a unique host identifier based on the device's MAC address. The EUI-64 specification is designed for devices that use an extended 8-byte MAC address. For devices that still use a 6-byte MAC address (also known as EUI-48 format), it must be converted into EUI-64 format by inverting the universal/local bit in the address and inserting the hexadecimal number FFFE between the upper and lower three bytes of the MAC address.

For example, if a device had an EUI-48 address of 28-9F-18-1C-82-35, the global/local bit must first be inverted to meet EUI-64 requirements (i.e., 1 for globally defined addresses and 0 for locally defined addresses), changing 28 to 2A. Then the two bytes FFFE are inserted between the OUI (i.e., organizationally unique identifier, or company identifier) and the rest of the address, resulting in a modified EUI-64 interface identifier of 2A-9F-18-FF-FE-1C-82-35.
- This host addressing method allows the same interface identifier to be used on multiple IP interfaces of a single device, as long as those interfaces are attached to different subnets.

- **Link Local** – Configures an IPv6 link-local address.
  - The address prefix must be in the range of FE80~FEBF.
  - You can configure only one link-local address per interface.
  - The specified address replaces a link-local address that was automatically generated for the interface.
- ◆ **IPv6 Address** – IPv6 address assigned to this interface.

### Web Interface

To configure an IPv6 address:

1. Click IP, IPv6 Configuration.
2. Select Add IPv6 Address from the Action list.
3. Specify the VLAN to configure, select the address type, and then enter an IPv6 address and prefix length.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 316: Configuring an IPv6 Address**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring an IPv6 address. At the top, it says "IP > IPv6". Below that, there is a section for "Action:" with a dropdown menu set to "Add IPv6 Address". Underneath, there are three rows of configuration options: "VLAN" with a dropdown set to "1", "Address Type" with a dropdown set to "Global", and "IPv6 Address" with a text input field containing "2001:DB8:2222:7272::72/96". At the bottom right of the form, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

**Showing IPv6 Addresses** Use the IP > IPv6 Configuration (Show IPv6 Address) page to display the IPv6 addresses assigned to an interface.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN** – ID of a configured VLAN. By default, all ports on the switch are members of VLAN 1. However, the management station can be attached to a port belonging to any VLAN, as long as that VLAN has been assigned an IP address. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **IPv6 Address Type** – The address type (Global, EUI-64, Link Local).
- ◆ **IPv6 Address** – An IPv6 address assigned to this interface.

In addition to the unicast addresses assigned to an interface, a node is also required to listen to the all-nodes multicast addresses FF01::1 (interface-local scope) and FF02::1 (link-local scope).

FF01::1/16 is the transient interface-local multicast address for all attached IPv6 nodes, and FF02::1/16 is the link-local multicast address for all attached IPv6 nodes. The interface-local multicast address is only used for loopback transmission of multicast traffic. Link-local multicast addresses cover the same types as used by link-local unicast addresses, including all nodes (FF02::1), all routers (FF02::2), and solicited nodes (FF02::1:FFXX:XXXX) as described below.

A node is also required to compute and join the associated solicited-node multicast addresses for every unicast and anycast address it is assigned. IPv6 addresses that differ only in the high-order bits, e.g. due to multiple high-order prefixes associated with different aggregations, will map to the same solicited-node address, thereby reducing the number of multicast addresses a node must join. In this example, FF02::1:FF90:0/104 is the solicited-node multicast address which is formed by taking the low-order 24 bits of the address and appending those bits to the prefix.

Note that the solicited-node multicast address (link-local scope FF02) is used to resolve the MAC addresses for neighbor nodes since IPv6 does not support the broadcast method used by the Address Resolution Protocol in IPv4.

These additional addresses are displayed by the "show ip interface" command described in the *CLI Reference Guide*.

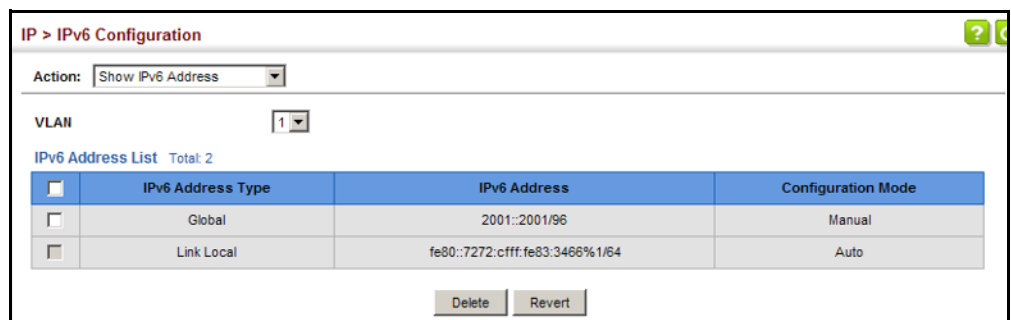
- ◆ **Configuration Mode** – Indicates if this address was automatically generated or manually configured.

### Web Interface

To show the configured IPv6 addresses:

1. Click IP, IPv6 Configuration.
2. Select Show IPv6 Address from the Action list.
3. Select a VLAN from the list.

**Figure 317: Showing Configured IPv6 Addresses**



**Showing the IPv6 Neighbor Cache** Use the IP > IPv6 Configuration (Show IPv6 Neighbor Cache) page to display the IPv6 addresses detected for neighbor devices.

**Parameters**

These parameters are displayed:

**Table 29: Show IPv6 Neighbors - display description**

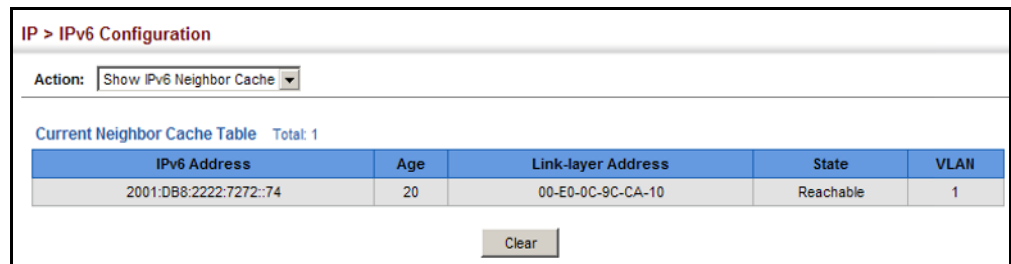
Field	Description
IPv6 Address	IPv6 address of neighbor.
Age	The time since the address was verified as reachable (in seconds). A static entry is indicated by the value "Permanent."
Link-layer Address	Physical layer MAC address.
State	<p>The following states are used for dynamic entries:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Incomplete - Address resolution is being carried out on the entry. A neighbor solicitation message has been sent to the multicast address of the target, but it has not yet returned a neighbor advertisement message.</li> <li>◆ Invalid - An invalidated mapping. Setting the state to invalid dis-associates the interface identified with this entry from the indicated mapping (RFC 4293).</li> <li>◆ Reachable - Positive confirmation was received within the last ReachableTime interval that the forward path to the neighbor was functioning. While in Reachable state, the device takes no special action when sending packets.</li> <li>◆ Stale - More than the ReachableTime interval has elapsed since the last positive confirmation was received that the forward path was functioning. While in Stale state, the device takes no action until a packet is sent.</li> <li>◆ Delay - More than the ReachableTime interval has elapsed since the last positive confirmation was received that the forward path was functioning. A packet was sent within the last DELAY_FIRST_PROBE_TIME interval. If no reachability confirmation is received within this interval after entering the Delay state, the switch will send a neighbor solicitation message and change the state to Probe.</li> <li>◆ Probe - A reachability confirmation is actively sought by re-sending neighbor solicitation messages every RetransTimer interval until confirmation of reachability is received.</li> <li>◆ Unknown - Unknown state.</li> </ul> <p>The following states are used for static entries:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Incomplete - The interface for this entry is down.</li> <li>◆ Permanent - Indicates a static entry.</li> <li>◆ Reachable - The interface for this entry is up. Reachability detection is not applied to static entries in the IPv6 neighbor discovery cache.</li> </ul>
VLAN	VLAN interface from which the address was reached.

### Web Interface

To show neighboring IPv6 devices:

1. Click IP, IPv6 Configuration.
2. Select Show IPv6 Neighbors from the Action list.

**Figure 318: Showing IPv6 Neighbors**



The screenshot shows the 'IP > IPv6 Configuration' page. At the top, there is an 'Action:' dropdown menu set to 'Show IPv6 Neighbor Cache'. Below this, a section titled 'Current Neighbor Cache Table' indicates a total of 1 entry. A table displays the following data:

IPv6 Address	Age	Link-layer Address	State	VLAN
2001:DB8:2222:7272::74	20	00-E0-0C-9C-CA-10	Reachable	1

At the bottom of the table area, there is a 'Clear' button.

**Showing IPv6 Statistics** Use the IP > IPv6 Configuration (Show Statistics) page to display statistics about IPv6 traffic passing through this switch.

### Command Usage

This switch provides statistics for the following traffic types:

- ◆ **IPv6** – The Internet Protocol for Version 6 addresses provides a mechanism for transmitting blocks of data (often called packets or frames) from a source to a destination, where these network devices (that is, hosts) are identified by fixed length addresses. The Internet Protocol also provides for fragmentation and reassembly of long packets, if necessary, for transmission through “small packet” networks.
- ◆ **ICMPv6** – Internet Control Message Protocol for Version 6 addresses is a network layer protocol that transmits message packets to report errors in processing IPv6 packets. ICMP is therefore an integral part of the Internet Protocol. ICMP messages may be used to report various situations, such as when a datagram cannot reach its destination, when the gateway does not have the buffering capacity to forward a datagram, and when the gateway can direct the host to send traffic on a shorter route. ICMP is also used by routers to feed back information about more suitable routes (that is, the next hop router) to use for a specific destination.
- ◆ **UDP** – User Datagram Protocol provides a datagram mode of packet switched communications. It uses IP as the underlying transport mechanism, providing access to IP-like services. UDP packets are delivered just like IP packets – connection-less datagrams that may be discarded before reaching their targets. UDP is useful when TCP would be too complex, too slow, or just unnecessary.

## Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

**Table 30: Show IPv6 Statistics - display description**

Field	Description
<b>IPv6 Statistics</b>	
<i>IPv6 Received</i>	
Total	The total number of input datagrams received by the interface, including those received in error.
Header Errors	The number of input datagrams discarded due to errors in their IPv6 headers, including version number mismatch, other format errors, hop count exceeded, IPv6 options, etc.
Too Big Errors	The number of input datagrams that could not be forwarded because their size exceeded the link MTU of outgoing interface.
No Routes	The number of input datagrams discarded because no route could be found to transmit them to their destination.
Address Errors	The number of input datagrams discarded because the IPv6 address in their IPv6 header's destination field was not a valid address to be received at this entity. This count includes invalid addresses (e.g., ::0) and unsupported addresses (e.g., addresses with unallocated prefixes). For entities which are not IPv6 routers and therefore do not forward datagrams, this counter includes datagrams discarded because the destination address was not a local address.
Unknown Protocols	The number of locally-addressed datagrams received successfully but discarded because of an unknown or unsupported protocol. This counter is incremented at the interface to which these datagrams were addressed which might not be necessarily the input interface for some of the datagrams.
Truncated Packets	The number of input datagrams discarded because datagram frame didn't carry enough data.
Discards	The number of input IPv6 datagrams for which no problems were encountered to prevent their continued processing, but which were discarded (e.g., for lack of buffer space). Note that this counter does not include any datagrams discarded while awaiting re-assembly.
Delivers	The total number of datagrams successfully delivered to IPv6 user-protocols (including ICMP). This counter is incremented at the interface to which these datagrams were addressed which might not be necessarily the input interface for some of the datagrams.
Reassembly Request Datagrams	The number of IPv6 fragments received which needed to be reassembled at this interface. Note that this counter is incremented at the interface to which these fragments were addressed which might not be necessarily the input interface for some of the fragments.
Reassembled Succeeded	The number of IPv6 datagrams successfully reassembled. Note that this counter is incremented at the interface to which these datagrams were addressed which might not be necessarily the input interface for some of the fragments.
Reassembled Failed	The number of failures detected by the IPv6 re-assembly algorithm (for whatever reason: timed out, errors, etc.). Note that this is not necessarily a count of discarded IPv6 fragments since some algorithms (notably the algorithm in RFC 815) can lose track of the number of fragments by combining them as they are received. This counter is incremented at the interface to which these fragments were addressed which might not be necessarily the input interface for some of the fragments.

**Table 30: Show IPv6 Statistics - display description** (Continued)

Field	Description
<i>IPv6 Transmitted</i>	
Forwards Datagrams	The number of output datagrams which this entity received and forwarded to their final destinations. In entities which do not act as IPv6 routers, this counter will include only those packets which were Source-Routed via this entity, and the Source-Route processing was successful. Note that for a successfully forwarded datagram the counter of the outgoing interface is incremented.
Requests	The total number of IPv6 datagrams which local IPv6 user-protocols (including ICMP) supplied to IPv6 in requests for transmission. Note that this counter does not include any datagrams counted in <code>ipv6IfStatsOutForwDatagrams</code> .
Discards	The number of output IPv6 datagrams for which no problem was encountered to prevent their transmission to their destination, but which were discarded (e.g., for lack of buffer space). Note that this counter would include datagrams counted in <code>ipv6IfStatsOutForwDatagrams</code> if any such packets met this (discretionary) discard criterion.
No Routes	The number of input datagrams discarded because no route could be found to transmit them to their destination.
Generated Fragments	The number of output datagram fragments that have been generated as a result of fragmentation at this output interface.
Fragment Succeeded	The number of IPv6 datagrams that have been successfully fragmented at this output interface.
Fragment Failed	The number of IPv6 datagrams that have been discarded because they needed to be fragmented at this output interface but could not be.
<b>ICMPv6 Statistics</b>	
<i>ICMPv6 received</i>	
Input	The total number of ICMP messages received by the interface which includes all those counted by <code>ipv6IfIcmpInErrors</code> . Note that this interface is the interface to which the ICMP messages were addressed which may not be necessarily the input interface for the messages.
Errors	The number of ICMP messages which the interface received but determined as having ICMP-specific errors (bad ICMP checksums, bad length, etc.).
Destination Unreachable Messages	The number of ICMP Destination Unreachable messages received by the interface.
Packet Too Big Messages	The number of ICMP Packet Too Big messages received by the interface.
Time Exceeded Messages	The number of ICMP Time Exceeded messages received by the interface.
Parameter Problem Messages	The number of ICMP Parameter Problem messages received by the interface.
Echo Request Messages	The number of ICMP Echo (request) messages received by the interface.
Echo Reply Messages	The number of ICMP Echo Reply messages received by the interface.
Router Solicit Messages	The number of ICMP Router Solicit messages received by the interface.
Router Advertisement Messages	The number of ICMP Router Advertisement messages received by the interface.
Neighbor Solicit Messages	The number of ICMP Neighbor Solicit messages received by the interface.



**Table 30: Show IPv6 Statistics - display description** (Continued)

Field	Description
Neighbor Advertisement Messages	The number of ICMP Neighbor Advertisement messages received by the interface.
Redirect Messages	The number of Redirect messages received by the interface.
Group Membership Query Messages	The number of ICMPv6 Group Membership Query messages received by the interface.
Group Membership Response Messages	The number of ICMPv6 Group Membership Response messages received by the interface.
Group Membership Reduction Messages	The number of ICMPv6 Group Membership Reduction messages received by the interface.
<i>ICMPv6 Transmitted</i>	
Output	The total number of ICMP messages which this interface attempted to send. Note that this counter includes all those counted by icmpOutErrors.
Destination Unreachable Messages	The number of ICMP Destination Unreachable messages sent by the interface.
Packet Too Big Messages	The number of ICMP Packet Too Big messages sent by the interface.
Time Exceeded Messages	The number of ICMP Time Exceeded messages sent by the interface.
Echo Request Messages	The number of ICMP Echo (request) messages sent by the interface.
Echo Reply Messages	The number of ICMP Echo Reply messages sent by the interface.
Router Solicit Messages	The number of ICMP Router Solicitation messages sent by the interface.
Router Advertisement Messages	The number of ICMP Router Advertisement messages sent by the interface.
Neighbor Solicit Messages	The number of ICMP Neighbor Solicit messages sent by the interface.
Neighbor Advertisement Messages	The number of ICMP Router Advertisement messages sent by the interface.
Redirect Messages	The number of Redirect messages sent. For a host, this object will always be zero, since hosts do not send redirects.
Group Membership Query Messages	The number of ICMPv6 Group Membership Query messages sent by the interface.
Group Membership Response Messages	The number of ICMPv6 Group Membership Response messages sent.
Group Membership Reduction Messages	The number of ICMPv6 Group Membership Reduction messages sent.
Multicast Listener Discovery Version 2 Reports	The number of MLDv2 reports sent by the interface.
<b>UDP Statistics</b>	
Input	The total number of UDP datagrams delivered to UDP users.
No Port Errors	The total number of received UDP datagrams for which there was no application at the destination port.
Other Errors	The number of received UDP datagrams that could not be delivered for reasons other than the lack of an application at the destination port.
Output	The total number of UDP datagrams sent from this entity.

### Web Interface

To show the IPv6 statistics:

1. Click IP, IPv6 Configuration.
2. Select Show Statistics from the Action list.
3. Click IPv6, ICMPv6 or UDP.

**Figure 319: Showing IPv6 Statistics (IPv6)**

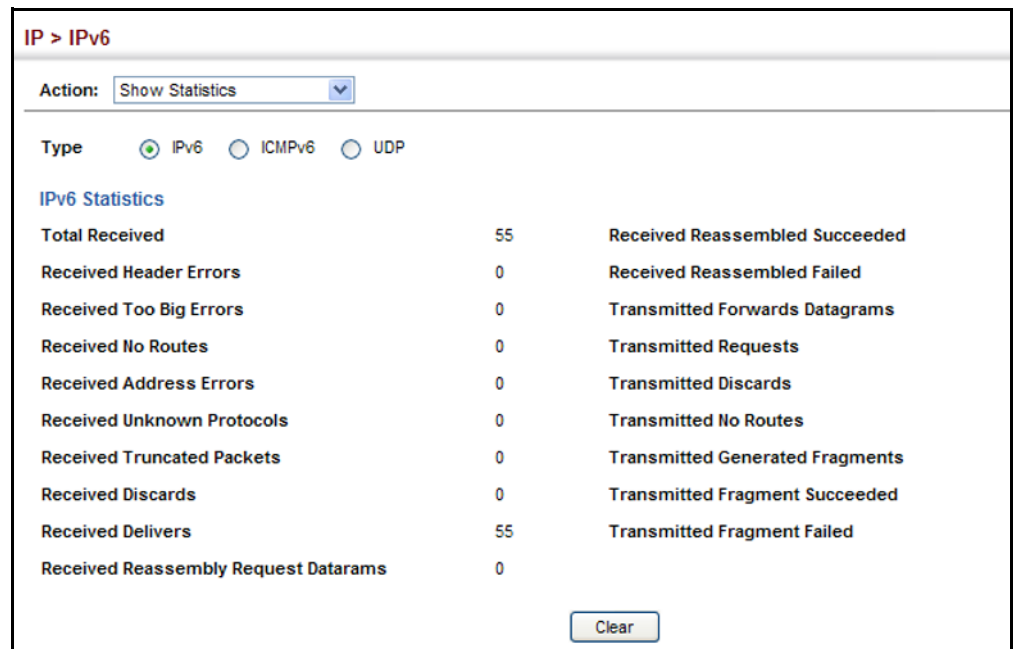


Figure 320: Showing IPv6 Statistics (ICMPv6)

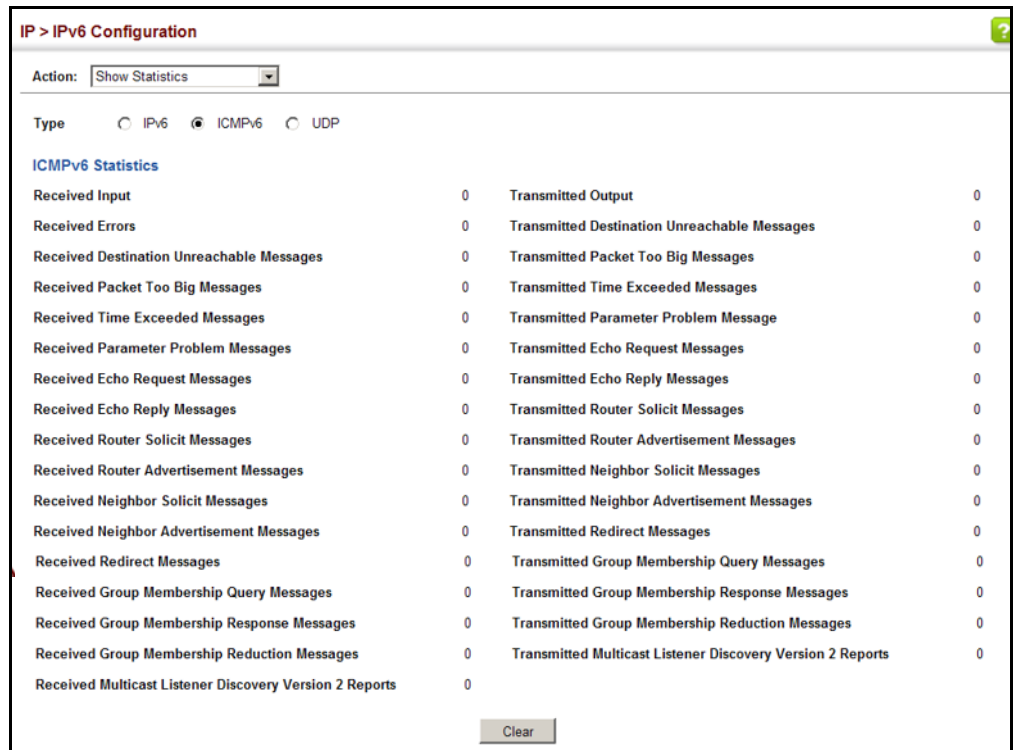
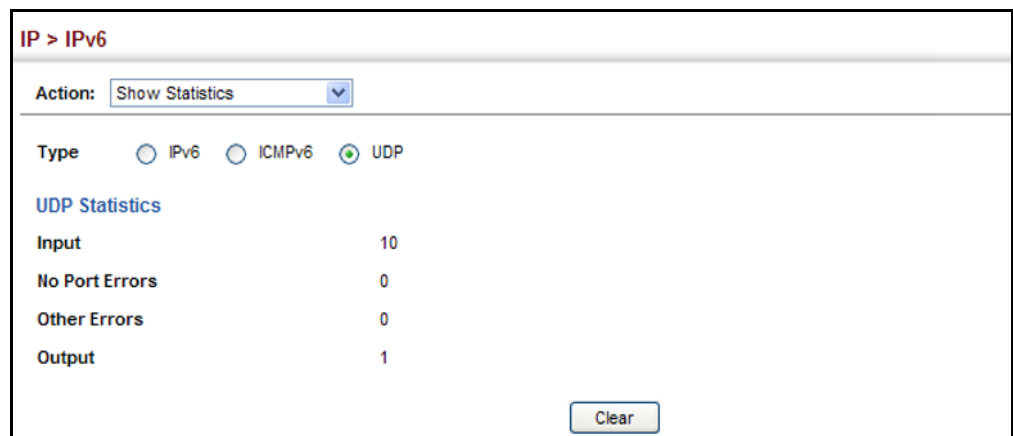


Figure 321: Showing IPv6 Statistics (UDP)



**Showing the MTU for Responding Destinations** Use the IP > IPv6 Configuration (Show MTU) page to display the maximum transmission unit (MTU) cache for destinations that have returned an ICMP packet-too-big message along with an acceptable MTU to this switch.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

**Table 31: Show MTU - display description**

Field	Description
MTU	Adjusted MTU contained in the ICMP packet-too-big message returned from this destination, and now used for all traffic sent along this path.
Since	Time since an ICMP packet-too-big message was received from this destination.
Destination Address	Address which sent an ICMP packet-too-big message.

### Web Interface

To show the MTU reported from other devices:

1. Click IP, IPv6 Configuration.
2. Select Show MTU from the Action list.

**Figure 322: Showing Reported MTU Values**

The screenshot shows the 'IP > IPv6' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'IP > IPv6'. Below it, an 'Action:' dropdown menu is set to 'Show MTU'. Underneath, there is a section titled 'MTU Table Total: 2' which contains a table with three columns: 'MTU', 'Since', and 'Destination Address'. The table has two rows of data.

MTU	Since	Destination Address
1400	00:04:21	5000:1::3
1280	00:04:50	FE80::203:A0FF:FED6:141D

---

# General IP Routing

This chapter provides information on network functions including:

- ◆ [Static Routes](#) – Configures static routes to other network segments.
- ◆ [Routing Table](#) – Displays routing entries learned through statically configured entries.

---

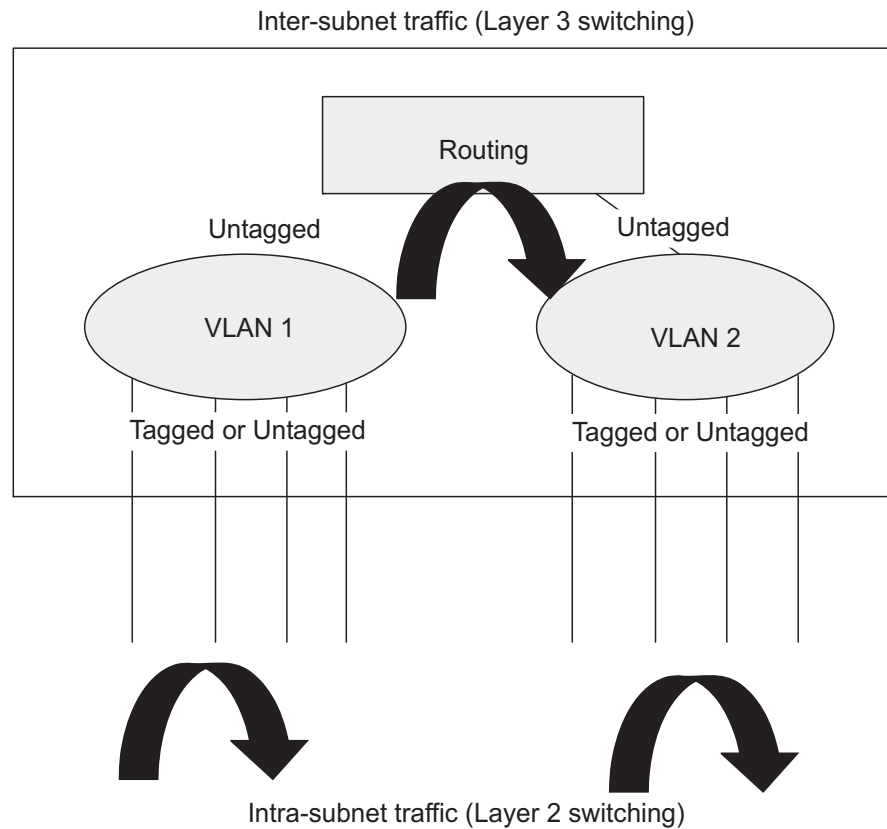
## Overview

This switch supports IP routing and routing path management via static routing definitions and dynamic routing protocols such as RIP. When IP routing is functioning, this switch acts as a wire-speed router, passing traffic between VLANs with different IP interfaces, and routing traffic to external IP networks. However, when the switch is first booted, default routing can only forward traffic between local IP interfaces. As with all traditional routers, static routing must first be configured to work.

**Initial Configuration** By default, all ports belong to the same VLAN and the switch provides only Layer 2 functionality. To segment the attached network, first create VLANs for each unique user group or application traffic ([page 149](#)), assign all ports that belong to the same group to these VLANs ([page 152](#)), and then assign an IP interface to each VLAN ([page 471](#) or [page 475](#)). By separating the network into different VLANs, it can be partitioned into subnetworks that are disconnected at Layer 2. Network traffic within the same subnet is still switched using Layer 2 switching. And the VLANs can now be interconnected (as required) with Layer 3 switching.

Each VLAN represents a virtual interface to Layer 3. You just need to provide the network address for each virtual interface, and the traffic between different subnetworks will be routed by Layer 3 switching.

**Figure 323: Virtual Interfaces and Layer 3 Routing**



## IP Routing and Switching

IP Switching (or packet forwarding) encompasses tasks required to forward packets for both Layer 2 and Layer 3, as well as traditional routing. These functions include:

- ◆ Layer 2 forwarding (switching) based on the Layer 2 destination MAC address
- ◆ Layer 3 forwarding (routing):
  - Based on the Layer 3 destination address
  - Replacing destination/source MAC addresses for each hop
  - Incrementing the hop count
  - Decrementing the time-to-live
  - Verifying and recalculating the Layer 3 checksum

If the destination node is on the same subnetwork as the source network, then the packet can be transmitted directly without the help of a router. However, if the MAC address is not yet known to the switch, an Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) packet with the destination IP address is broadcast to get the destination MAC address from the destination node. The IP packet can then be sent directly with the destination MAC address.

If the destination belongs to a different subnet on this switch, the packet can be routed directly to the destination node. However, if the packet belongs to a subnet not included on this switch, then the packet should be sent to the next hop router (with the MAC address of the router itself used as the destination MAC address, and the destination IP address of the destination node). The router will then forward the packet to the destination node through the correct path. The router can also use the ARP protocol to find out the MAC address of the destination node of the next hop router as necessary.



---

**Note:** In order to perform IP switching, the switch should be recognized by other network nodes as an IP router, either by setting it as the default gateway or by redirection from another router via the ICMP process.

---

When the switch receives an IP packet addressed to its own MAC address, the packet follows the Layer 3 routing process. The destination IP address is checked against the Layer 3 address table. If the address is not already there, the switch broadcasts an ARP packet to all the ports on the destination VLAN to find out the destination MAC address. After the MAC address is discovered, the packet is reformatted and sent out to the destination. The reformat process includes decreasing the Time-To-Live (TTL) field of the IP header, recalculating the IP header checksum, and replacing the destination MAC address with either the MAC address of the destination node or that of the next hop router.

When another packet destined to the same node arrives, the destination MAC can be retrieved directly from the Layer 3 address table; the packet is then reformatted and sent out the destination port. IP switching can be done at wire-speed when the destination address entry is already in the Layer 3 address table.

If the switch determines that a frame must be routed, the route is calculated only during setup. Once the route has been determined, all packets in the current flow are simply switched or forwarded across the chosen path. This takes advantage of the high throughput and low latency of switching by enabling the traffic to bypass the routing engine once the path calculation has been performed.

**Routing Path Management** Routing Path Management involves the determination and updating of all the routing information required for packet forwarding, including:

- ◆ Updating the routing table
- ◆ Updating the Layer 3 switching database

**Routing Protocols** The switch supports static routing.

- ◆ Static routing requires routing information to be stored in the switch either manually or when a connection is set up by an application outside the switch.

## Configuring Static Routes

You can enter static routes in the routing table using the IP > Routing > Static Routes (Add) page. Static routes may be required to force the use of a specific route to a subnet. Static routes do not automatically change in response to changes in network topology, so you should only configure a small number of stable routes to ensure network accessibility.

### Command Usage

- ◆ Up to 32 static routes can be configured.
- ◆ If more than one static routes have the same lowest cost, the first route stored in the routing table will be used.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Destination IP Address** – IP address of the destination network, subnetwork, or host.
- ◆ **Net Mask** – Network mask for the associated IP subnet. This mask identifies the host address bits used for routing to specific subnets.
- ◆ **Next Hop** – IP address of the next router hop used for this route.
- ◆ **Distance** – An administrative distance indicating that this route can be overridden by other routing information. (Range: 1-255, Default: 1)

### Web Interface

To configure static routes:

1. Click IP, Routing, Static Routes.
2. Select Add from the Action List.
3. Enter the destination address, subnet mask, and next hop router.
4. Click Apply.



**Figure 324: Configuring Static Routes**

IP > Routing > Static Routes

Action: Add ▾

Destination IP Address: 10.2.48.0

Net Mask: 255.255.255.0

Next Hop: 10.2.48.1

Distance (1-255): 5 (Optional)

Apply Revert

To display static routes:

1. Click IP, Routing, Static Routes.
2. Select Show from the Action List.

**Figure 325: Displaying Static Routes**

IP > Routing > Static Routes

Action: Show ▾

Static Table List Total: 2

<input type="checkbox"/>	Destination IP Address	Net Mask	Next Hop	Distance
<input type="checkbox"/>	10.2.48.0	255.255.255.0	10.2.48.1	5
<input type="checkbox"/>	10.5.0.0	255.255.0.0	10.5.36.1	2

Delete Revert

## Displaying the Routing Table

Use the IP > Routing > Routing Table (Show Information) page to display all routes that can be accessed via local network interfaces through static routes. If route information is available through more than one of these methods, the priority for route selection is local and then static. Also note that the route for a local interface is not enabled (i.e., listed in the routing table) unless there is at least one active link connected to that interface.

### Command Usage

- ◆ The Forwarding Information Base (FIB) contains information required to forward IP traffic. It contains the interface identifier and next hop information for each reachable destination network prefix based on the IP routing table. When routing or topology changes occur in the network, the routing table is updated, and those changes are immediately reflected in the FIB.

The FIB is distinct from the routing table (or, Routing Information Base – RIB), which holds all routing information received from routing peers. The FIB contains unique paths only. It does not contain any secondary paths. A FIB entry consists of the minimum amount of information necessary to make a

forwarding decision on a particular packet. The typical components within a FIB entry are a network prefix, a router (i.e., VLAN) interface, and next hop information.

- ◆ The Routing Table (and the “show ip route” command described in the *CLI Reference Guide*) only display routes which are currently accessible for forwarding. The router must be able to directly reach the next hop, so the VLAN interface associated with any route entry must be up. Note that routes currently not accessible for forwarding, may still be displayed by using the “show ip route database” command described in the *CLI Reference Guide*.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

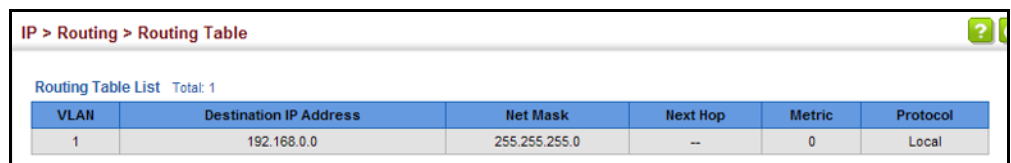
- ◆ **VLAN** – VLAN identifier (i.e., configured as a valid IP subnet).
- ◆ **Destination IP Address** – IP address of the destination network, subnetwork, or host. Note that the address 0.0.0.0 indicates the default gateway for this router.
- ◆ **Net Mask** – Network mask for the associated IP subnet. This mask identifies the host address bits used for routing to specific subnets.
- ◆ **Next Hop** – The IP address of the next hop (or gateway) in this route.
- ◆ **Metric** – Cost for this interface.
- ◆ **Protocol** – The protocol which generated this route information. (Options: Local, Static, RIP, Others)

### Web Interface

To display the routing table:

1. Click IP, Routing, Routing Table.

**Figure 326: Displaying the Routing Table**



VLAN	Destination IP Address	Net Mask	Next Hop	Metric	Protocol
1	192.168.0.0	255.255.255.0	--	0	Local

---

# Unicast Routing

This chapter describes how to configure the following unicast routing protocols:

[RIP](#) – Configures Routing Information Protocol.

---

## Overview

This switch can route unicast traffic to different subnetworks using Routing Information Protocol (RIP). It supports RIP and RIP-2 dynamic routing. These protocols exchange routing information, calculate routing tables, and can respond to changes in the status or loading of the network.

### *RIP and RIP-2 Dynamic Routing Protocols*

The RIP protocol is the most widely used routing protocol. RIP uses a distance-vector-based approach to routing. Routes are determined on the basis of minimizing the distance vector, or hop count, which serves as a rough estimate of transmission cost. Each router broadcasts its advertisement every 30 seconds, together with any updates to its routing table. This allows all routers on the network to learn consistent tables of next hop links which lead to relevant subnets.

### *Non-IP Protocol Routing*

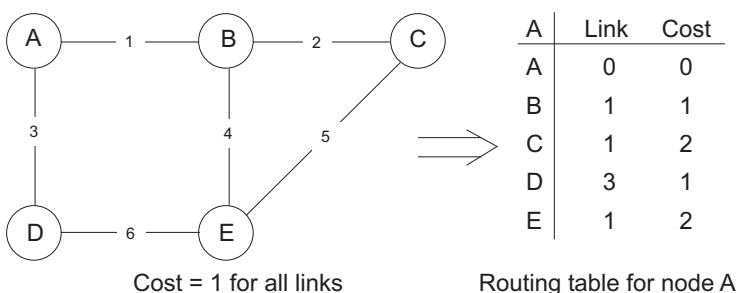
The switch supports IP routing only. Non-IP protocols such as IPX and Appletalk cannot be routed by this switch, and will be confined within their local VLAN group unless bridged by an external router.

To coexist with a network built on multilayer switches, the subnetworks for non-IP protocols must follow the same logical boundary as that of the IP subnetworks. A separate multi-protocol router can then be used to link the subnetworks by connecting to one port from each available VLAN on the network.

## Configuring the Routing Information Protocol

The RIP protocol is the most widely used routing protocol. The RIP protocol uses a distance-vector-based approach to routing. Routes are determined on the basis of minimizing the distance vector, or hop count, which serves as a rough estimate of transmission cost. Each router broadcasts its advertisement every 30 seconds, together with any updates to its routing table. This allows all routers on the network to learn consistent tables of next hop links which lead to relevant subnets.

Figure 327: Configuring RIP



### Command Usage

- ◆ Just as Layer 2 switches use the Spanning Tree Algorithm to prevent loops, routers also use methods for preventing loops that would cause endless retransmission of data traffic. RIP utilizes the following three methods to prevent loops from occurring:
  - Split horizon – Never propagate routes back to an interface port from which they have been acquired.
  - Poison reverse – Propagate routes back to an interface port from which they have been acquired, but set the distance-vector metrics to infinity. (This provides faster convergence.)
  - Triggered updates – Whenever a route gets changed, broadcast an update message after waiting for a short random delay, but without waiting for the periodic cycle.
- ◆ RIP-2 is a compatible upgrade to RIP. RIP-2 adds useful capabilities for plain text authentication, multiple independent RIP domains, variable length subnet masks, and multicast transmissions for route advertising (RFC 1723).
- ◆ There are several serious problems with RIP that you should consider. First of all, RIP (version 1) has no knowledge of subnets, both RIP versions can take a long time to converge on a new route after the failure of a link or router during which time routing loops may occur, and its small hop count limitation of 15 restricts its use to smaller networks. Moreover, RIP (version 1) wastes valuable network bandwidth by propagating routing information via broadcasts; it also considers too few network variables to make the best routing decision.

**Configuring General Protocol Settings** Use the Routing Protocol > RIP > General (Configure) page to configure general settings and the basic timers.

RIP is used to specify how routers exchange routing information. When RIP is enabled on this router, it sends RIP messages to all devices in the network every 30 seconds (by default), and updates its own routing table when RIP messages are received from other routers. To communicate properly with other routers using RIP, you need to specify the RIP version used globally by the router, as well as the RIP send and receive versions used on specific interfaces (see [“Configuring Network Interfaces for RIP” on page 512](#)).

### Command Usage

RIP is used to specify how routers exchange routing information. When RIP is enabled on this router, it sends RIP messages to all devices in the network every 30 seconds (by default), and updates its own routing table when RIP messages are received from other routers. To communicate properly with other routers using RIP, you need to specify the RIP version used globally by the router, as well as the RIP send and receive versions used on specific interfaces ([page 512](#)).

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

#### *Global Settings*

- ◆ **RIP Routing Process** – Enables RIP routing globally. RIP must also be enabled on each network interface which will participate in the routing process as described under [“Specifying Network Interfaces” on page 505](#). (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Global RIP Version** – Specifies a RIP version used globally by the router. (Version 1, Version 2, By Interface; Default: By Interface)

When a Global RIP Version is specified, any VLAN interface not previously set to a specific Receive or Send Version ([page 512](#)) is set to the following values:

- RIP Version 1 configures previously unset interfaces to send RIPv1 compatible protocol messages and receive either RIPv1 or RIPv2 protocol messages.
- RIP Version 2 configures previously unset interfaces to use RIPv2 for both sending and receiving protocol messages.

RIP send/receive versions set on the RIP Interface settings screen ([page 512](#)) always take precedence over the settings for the Global RIP Version. However, when the Global RIP Version is set to “By Interface,” any VLAN interface not previously set to a specific receive or send version is set to the following default values:

- Receive: Accepts RIPv1 or RIPv2 packets.
- Send: Route information is broadcast to other routers with RIPv2.

- ◆ **RIP Default Metric** – Sets the default metric assigned to external routes imported from other protocols. (Range: 1-15; Default: 1)

The default metric must be used to resolve the problem of redistributing external routes with incompatible metrics.

It is advisable to use a low metric when redistributing routes from another protocol into RIP. Using a high metric limits the usefulness of external routes redistributed into RIP. For example, if a metric of 10 is defined for redistributed routes, these routes can only be advertised to routers up to 5 hops away, at which point the metric exceeds the maximum hop count of 15. By defining a low metric of 1, traffic can follow an imported route the maximum number of hops allowed within a RIP domain. However, note that using a low metric can increase the possibility of routing loops. For example, this can occur if there are multiple redistribution points and the router learns about the same external network with a better metric from a redistribution point other than that derived from the original source.

The default metric does not override the metric value set in the Redistribute screen (see [“Configuring Route Redistribution” on page 509](#)). When a metric value has not been configured in the Redistribute screen, the default metric sets the metric value to be used for all imported external routes.

- ◆ **RIP Max Prefix** – Sets the maximum number of RIP routes which can be installed in the routing table. (Range: 1-24; Default: 24)
- ◆ **Default Information Originate** – Generates a default external route into the local RIP autonomous system. (Default: Disabled)

A default route is set for every Layer 3 interface where RIP is enabled. The response packet to external queries marks each active RIP interface as a default router with the IP address 0.0.0.0.

- ◆ **Default Distance** – Defines an administrative distance for external routes learned from other routing protocols. External routes are routes for which the best path is learned from a neighbor external to the local RIP autonomous system. Routes with a distance of 255 are not installed in the routing table. (Range: 1-255; Default: 120)

Administrative distance is used by the routers to select the preferred path when there are two or more different routes to the same destination from two different routing protocols. A smaller administrative distance indicates a more reliable protocol.

Use the Routing Protocol > RIP > Distance page (see [page 511](#)) to configure the distance to a specific network address, or to configure an access list that filters networks according to the IP address of the router supplying the routing information.

- ◆ **Number of Route Changes** – The number of route changes made to the IP route database by RIP.
- ◆ **Number of Queries** – The number of responses sent to RIP queries from other systems.

### Basic Timer Settings



**Note:** The timers must be set to the same values for all routers in the network.

- ◆ **Update** – Sets the rate at which updates are sent. This is the fundamental timer used to control all basic RIP processes. (Range: 5-2147483647 seconds; Default: 30 seconds)

Setting the update timer to a short interval can cause the router to spend an excessive amount of time processing updates. On the other hand, setting it to an excessively long time will make the routing protocol less sensitive to changes in the network configuration.

- ◆ **Timeout** – Sets the time after which there have been no update messages that a route is declared dead. The route is marked inaccessible (i.e., the metric set to infinite) and advertised as unreachable. However, packets are still forwarded on this route. (Range: 90-360 seconds; Default: 180 seconds)

- ◆ **Garbage Collection** – After the *timeout* interval expires, the router waits for an interval specified by the *garbage-collection* timer before removing this entry from the routing table. This timer allows neighbors to become aware of an invalid route prior to purging. (Range: 60-240 seconds; Default: 120 seconds)

### Web Interface

To configure general settings for RIP:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, General.
2. Select Configure Global from the Action list.
3. Enable RIP, set the RIP version used on unset interfaces to RIPv1 or RIPv2, set the default metric assigned to external routes, set the maximum number of routes allowed by the system, and set the basic timers.
4. Click Apply.

Figure 328: Configuring General Settings for RIP

**Routing Protocol > RIP > General**

Action:

**Global**

RIP Routing Process  Enabled

Global RIP Version

RIP Default Metric (1-15)

RIP Max Prefix (1-24)

Default Information Originate  Enabled

Default Distance (1-255)

Number of Route Changes

Number of Queries

**Basic Timer**

Update (5-2147483647)  sec

Timeout (90-360)  sec

Garbage Collection (60-240)  sec

**Clearing Entries from the Routing Table** Use the Routing Protocol > RIP > General (Clear Route) page to clear entries from the routing table based on route type or a specific network address.

### Command Usage

- ◆ RIP must be enabled to activate this menu option.
- ◆ Clearing "All" types deletes all routes in the RIP table. To avoid deleting the entire RIP network, redistribute connected routes using the Routing Protocol > RIP > Redistribute screen (page 509) to make the RIP network a connected route. To delete the RIP routes learned from neighbors, but keep the RIP network intact, clear "RIP" types from the routing table.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Clear Route By Type** – Clears entries from the RIP routing table based on the following types:
  - **All** – Deletes all entries from the routing table.
  - **Connected** – Deletes all currently connected entries.
  - **RIP** – Deletes all entries learned through the RIP.
  - **Static** – Deletes all static entries.



- ◆ **Clear Route By Network** – Clears a specific route based on its IP address and prefix length.
  - **Network IP Address** – Deletes all related entries for the specified network address.
  - **Prefix Length** – A decimal value indicating how many contiguous bits (from the left) of the address comprise the network portion of the address.

### Web Interface

To clear entries from the routing table RIP:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, General.
2. Select Clear Route from the Action list.
3. When clearing routes by type, select the required type from the drop-down list. When clearing routes by network, enter a valid network address and prefix length.
4. Click Apply.

Figure 329: Clearing Entries from the Routing Table

The screenshot shows the configuration page for the Routing Protocol > RIP > General. At the top, the breadcrumb is "Routing Protocol > RIP > General". Below this, there is an "Action:" dropdown menu set to "Clear Route". Underneath, there are two radio buttons for "Clear Route by": "Type" (unselected) and "Network" (selected). Below the radio buttons, there are two input fields: "Network IP Address" with the value "192.168.1.0" and "Prefix Length (1-32)" with the value "24". At the bottom right of the form, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

**Specifying Network Interfaces** Use the Routing Protocol > RIP > Network (Add) page to specify the network interfaces that will be included in the RIP routing process.

### Command Usage

- ◆ RIP only sends and receives updates on specified interfaces. If a network is not specified, the interfaces in that network will not be advertised in any RIP updates.
- ◆ No networks are specified by default.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **By Address** – Adds a network to the RIP routing process.
  - **Subnet Address** – IP address of a network directly connected to this router. (Default: No networks are specified)
  - **Prefix Length** – A decimal value indicating how many contiguous bits (from the left) of the address comprise the network portion of the address. This mask identifies the network address bits used for the associated routing entries. (Range 1-32)
- ◆ **By VLAN** – Adds a Layer 3 VLAN to the RIP routing process. The VLAN must be configured with an IP address. (Range: 1-4094)
  - **VLAN** – Select the VLAN to add to the RIP routing process from the drop down list of configured VLANs.

### Web Interface

To add a network interface to RIP:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, Network.
2. Select Add from the Action list.
3. Add an interface (by IP address or VLAN) that will participate in RIP.
4. Click Apply.

Figure 330: Adding Network Interfaces to RIP

Routing Protocol > RIP > Network

Action: Add

By  IP Address  VLAN

Subnet Address 10.1.0.0

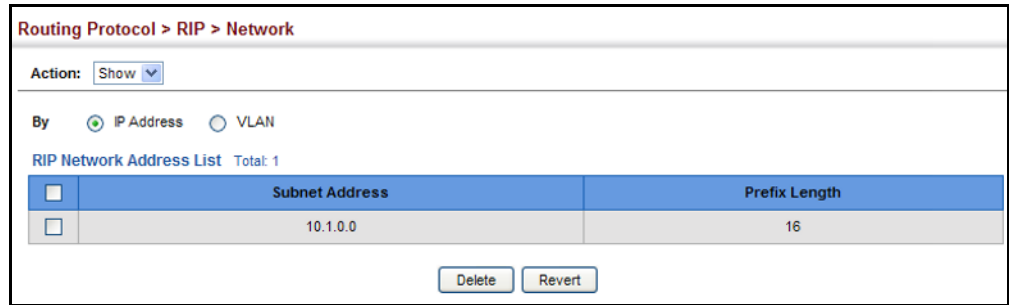
Prefix Length (1-32) 16

Apply Revert

To show the network interfaces using RIP:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, Network.
2. Select Show from the Action list.
3. Click IP Address or VLAN.

Figure 331: Showing Network Interfaces Using RIP



**Specifying Passive Interfaces** Use the Routing Protocol > RIP > Passive Interface (Add) page to stop RIP from sending routing updates on the specified interface.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ Network interfaces can be configured to stop RIP broadcast and multicast messages from being sent. If the sending of routing updates is blocked on an interface, the attached subnet will still continue to be advertised to other interfaces, and updates from other routers on the specified interface will continue to be received and processed.
- ◆ This feature can be used in conjunction with the static neighbor feature (described in the next section) to control the routing updates sent to specific neighbors.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN ID** – VLAN interface on which to stop sending RIP updates. (Range: 1-4094)

#### Web Interface

To specify a passive RIP interface:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, Passive Interface.
2. Select Add from the Action list.
3. Add the interface on which to stop sending RIP updates.
4. Click Apply.

Figure 332: Specifying a Passive RIP Interface

Routing Protocol > RIP > Passive Interface

Action: Add

VLAN ID (1-4094) 1

Apply Revert

To show the passive RIP interfaces:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, Passive Interface.
2. Select Show from the Action list.

Figure 333: Showing Passive RIP Interfaces

Routing Protocol > RIP > Passive Interface

Action: Show

VLAN ID List Total: 1

<input type="checkbox"/>	VLAN ID
<input type="checkbox"/>	1

Delete Revert

### Specifying Static Neighbors

Use the Routing Protocol > RIP > Passive Interface (Add) page to configure this router to directly exchange routing information with a static neighbor (specifically for point-to-point links), rather than relying on broadcast or multicast messages generated by the RIP protocol. This feature can be used in conjunction with the passive interface feature (described in the preceding section) to control the routing updates sent to specific neighbors.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **IP Address** – IP address of a static neighboring router with which to exchange routing information.

#### Web Interface

To specify a static RIP neighbor:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, Neighbor Address.
2. Select Add from the Action list.
3. Add the address of any static neighbors which may not readily be discovered through RIP.
4. Click Apply.

Figure 334: Specifying a Static RIP Neighbor

Routing Protocol > RIP > Neighbor Address

Action: Add

IP Address: 10.2.0.254

Apply Revert

To show static RIP neighbors:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, Neighbor Address.
2. Select Show from the Action list.

Figure 335: Showing Static RIP Neighbors

Routing Protocol > RIP > Neighbor Address

Action: Show

Neighbor Address List Total: 1

<input type="checkbox"/>	IP Address
<input type="checkbox"/>	10.2.0.254

Delete Revert

### Configuring Route Redistribution

Use the Routing Protocol > RIP > Redistribute (Add) page to import external routing information from other routing domains (that is, directly connected routes, protocols, or static routes) into this autonomous system.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Protocol** – The type of routes that can be imported include:
  - **Connected** – Imports routes that are established automatically just by enabling IP on an interface.
  - **Static** – Static routes will be imported into this routing domain.
- ◆ **Metric** – Metric assigned to all external routes for the specified protocol. (Range: 1-16; Default: the default metric as described under “[Configuring General Protocol Settings](#)” on page 501.)

A route metric must be used to resolve the problem of redistributing external routes with incompatible metrics.

When a metric value has not been configured on this page, the default-metric determines the metric value to be used for all imported external routes.

It is advisable to use a low metric when redistributing routes from another protocol into RIP. Using a high metric limits the usefulness of external routes redistributed into RIP. For example, if a metric of 10 is defined for redistributed routes, these routes can only be advertised to routers up to 5 hops away, at which point the metric exceeds the maximum hop count of 15. By defining a low metric of 1, traffic can follow an imported route the maximum number of hops allowed within a RIP domain. However, using a low metric can increase the possibility of routing loops. For example, this can occur if there are multiple redistribution points and the router learns about the same external network with a better metric from a redistribution point other than that derived from the original source.

### Web Interface

To import external routing information from other routing domains:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, Redistribute.
2. Select Add from the Action list.
3. Specify the protocol types (directly connected or static) from which to import external routes, and the metric to assign to these routes.
4. Click Apply.

Figure 336: Redistributing External Routes into RIP

Routing Protocol > RIP > Redistribute

Action: Add ▾

Protocol: Connected ▾

Metric (1-16): 3 (Optional)

Apply Revert

To show external routes imported into RIP:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, Redistribute.
2. Select Show from the Action list.

Figure 337: Showing External Routes Redistributed into RIP

Routing Protocol > RIP > Redistribute

Action: Show ▾

Redistribute List Total: 1

	Protocol	Metric
<input type="checkbox"/>	Connected	0

Delete Revert

## Specifying an Administrative Distance

Use the Routing Protocol > RIP > Distance (Add) page to define an administrative distance for external routes learned from other routing protocols.

### Command Usage

- ◆ Administrative distance is used by the routers to select the preferred path when there are two or more different routes to the same destination from two different routing protocols. A smaller administrative distance indicates a more reliable protocol.
- ◆ The administrative distance is applied to all routes learned for the specified network.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Distance** – Administrative distance for external routes. External routes are routes for which the best path is learned from a neighbor external to the local RIP autonomous system. Routes with a distance of 255 are not installed in the routing table. (Range: 1-255)
- ◆ **IP Address** – IP address of a route entry.
- ◆ **Subnet Mask** – This mask identifies the host address bits used for associated routing entries.

### Web Interface

To define an administrative distance for external routes learned from other routing protocols:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, Distance.
2. Select Add from the Action list.
3. Enter the distance, the IP address and the subnet mask.
4. Click Apply.

Figure 338: Setting the Distance Assigned to External Routes

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring RIP distance. The breadcrumb is "Routing Protocol > RIP > Distance". Below it is a form with the following elements:

- Action: Add (dropdown menu)
- Distance (1-255): 120 (text input)
- IP Address: 192.158.3.0 (text input)
- Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0 (text input)
- Buttons: Apply and Revert

To show the distance assigned to external routes learned from other routing protocols:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, Distance.
2. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 339: Showing the Distance Assigned to External Routes**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring RIP Distance. The breadcrumb is "Routing Protocol > RIP > Distance". There is a "Show" dropdown menu. Below it, a table titled "RIP Distance List" shows one entry with a distance of 120 for IP address 192.158.3.0 and subnet mask 255.255.255.0. There are "Delete" and "Revert" buttons at the bottom of the table.

	Distance	IP Address	Subnet Mask
<input type="checkbox"/>	120	192.158.3.0	255.255.255.0

## Configuring Network Interfaces for RIP

Use the Routing Protocol > RIP > Interface (Add) page to configure the send/receive version, authentication settings, and the loopback prevention method for each interface that participates in the RIP routing process.

### Command Usage

#### *Specifying Receive and Send Protocol Types*

- ◆ Specify the protocol message type accepted (that is, RIP version) and the message type sent (that is, RIP version or compatibility mode) for each RIP interface.
- ◆ Setting the RIP Receive Version or Send Version for an interface overrides the global setting specified in the RIP General Settings screen (see [“Configuring General Protocol Settings” on page 501](#)).
- ◆ The Send Version can be specified based on these options:
  - Use “RIPv1” or “RIPv2” if all routers in the local network are based on RIPv1 or RIPv2, respectively.
  - Use “RIPv1 Compatible” to propagate route information by broadcasting to other routers on the network using the RIPv2 advertisement list, instead of multicasting as normally required by RIPv2. (Using this mode allows older RIPv2 routers which only receive RIP broadcast messages to receive all of the information provided by RIPv2, including subnet mask, next hop and authentication information. (This is the default setting.)
  - Use “Do Not Send” to passively monitor route information advertised by other routers attached to the network.
- ◆ The Receive Version can be specified based on these options:
  - Use “RIPv1” or “RIPv2” if all routers in the local network are based on RIPv1 or RIPv2, respectively.



- Use “RIPv1 and RIPv2” if some routers in the local network are using RIPv2, but there are still some older routers using RIPv1. (This is the default setting.)
- Use “Do Not Receive” if dynamic entries are not required to be added to the routing table for an interface. (For example, when only static routes are to be allowed for a specific interface.)

#### *Protocol Message Authentication*

RIPv1 is not a secure protocol. Any device sending protocol messages from UDP port 520 will be considered a router by its neighbors. Malicious or unwanted protocol messages can be easily propagated throughout the network if no authentication is required.

RIPv2 supports authentication using a simple password or MD5 key encryption. When a router is configured to exchange authentication messages, it will insert the password into all transmitted protocol packets, and check all received packets to ensure that they contain the authorized password. If any incoming protocol messages do not contain the correct password, they are simply dropped.

For authentication to function properly, both the sending and receiving interface must be configured with the same password or authentication key.

#### *Loopback Prevention*

Just as Layer 2 switches use the Spanning Tree Algorithm to prevent loops, routers also use methods for preventing loops that would cause endless retransmission of data traffic. When protocol packets are caught in a loop, links will be congested, and protocol packets may be lost. However, the network will slowly converge to the new state. RIP supports several methods which can provide faster convergence when the network topology changes and prevent most loops from occurring.

#### **Parameters**

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN ID** – Layer 3 VLAN interface. This interface must be configured with an IP address and have an active link. (Range: 1-4094)
- ◆ **Send Version** – The RIP version to send on an interface.
  - **RIPv1**: Sends only RIPv1 packets.
  - **RIPv2**: Sends only RIPv2 packets.
  - **RIPv1 Compatible**: Route information is broadcast to other routers with RIPv2.
  - **Do Not Send**: Does not transmit RIP updates. Passively monitors route information advertised by other routers attached to the network.

The default depends on the setting for the Global RIP Version. (See [“Configuring General Protocol Settings” on page 501.](#))

- ◆ **Receive Version** – The RIP version to receive on an interface.
  - **RIPv1:** Accepts only RIPv1 packets.
  - **RIPv2:** Accepts only RIPv2 packets.
  - **RIPv1 and RIPv2:** Accepts RIPv1 and RIPv2 packets.
  - **Do Not Receive:** Does not accept incoming RIP packets. This option does not add any dynamic entries to the routing table for an interface.

The default depends on the setting for the Global RIP Version. (See [“Configuring General Protocol Settings” on page 501.](#))

- ◆ **Authentication Type** – Specifies the type of authentication required for exchanging RIPv2 protocol messages. (Default: No Authentication)
  - **No Authentication:** No authentication is required.
  - **Simple Password:** Requires the interface to exchange routing information with other routers based on an authorized password. (Note that authentication only applies to RIPv2.)
  - **MD5:** Message Digest 5 (MD5) authentication.

MD5 is a one-way hash algorithm that takes the authentication key and produces a 128 bit message digest or “fingerprint.” This makes it computationally infeasible to produce two messages having the same message digest, or to produce any message having a given pre-specified target message digest.
- ◆ **Authentication Key** – Specifies the key to use for authenticating RIPv2 packets. For authentication to function properly, both the sending and receiving interface must use the same password. (Range: 1-16 characters, case sensitive)
- ◆ **Instability Prevention** – Specifies the method used to reduce the convergence time when the network topology changes, and to prevent RIP protocol messages from looping back to the source router.
  - **Split Horizon** – This method never propagates routes back to an interface from which they have been acquired.
  - **Poison Reverse** – This method propagates routes back to an interface from which they have been acquired, but sets the distance-vector metrics to infinity. This provides faster convergence. (This is the default setting.)
  - **None** – No loopback prevention method is employed. If a loop occurs without using any prevention method, the hop count for a route may be gradually incremented to infinity (that is, 16) before the route is deemed unreachable.

### Web Interface

To network interface settings for RIP:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, Interface.
2. Select Add from the Action list.
3. Select a Layer 3 VLAN interface to participate in RIP. Select the RIP protocol message types that will be received and sent. Select the RIP authentication method and password. And then set the loopback prevention method.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 340: Configuring a Network Interface for RIP**

To show the network interface settings configured for RIP:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, Interface.
2. Select Show from the Action list.

**Figure 341: Showing RIP Network Interface Settings**

<input type="checkbox"/>	VLAN ID	Send Version	Receive Version	Authentication Type	Authentication Key	Instability Prevention
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	RIPv1 Compatible	RIPv1 and RIPv2	Simple Password	mighty	Poison Reverse
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	RIPv1 Compatible	RIPv1 and RIPv2	No Authentication		Poison Reverse

**Displaying RIP Interface Settings** Use the Routing Protocol > RIP > Statistics (Show Interface Information) page to display information about RIP interface configuration settings.

**Parameters**

These parameters are displayed:

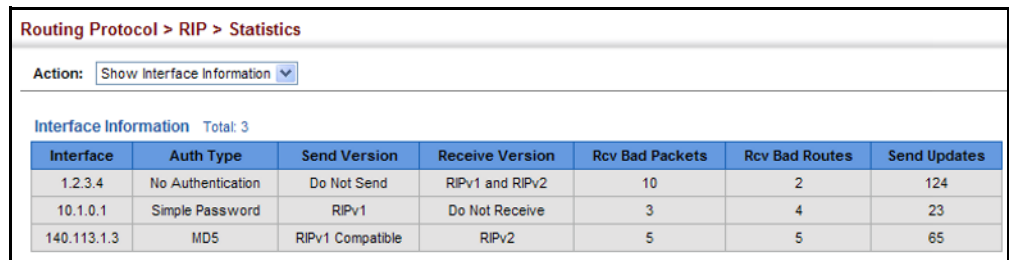
- ◆ **Interface** – Source IP address of RIP router interface.
- ◆ **Auth Type** – The type of authentication used for exchanging RIPv2 protocol messages.
- ◆ **Send Version** – The RIP version to sent on this interface.
- ◆ **Receive Version** – The RIP version accepted on this interface.
- ◆ **Rcv Bad Packets** – Number of bad RIP packets received.
- ◆ **Rcv Bad Routes** – Number of bad routes received.
- ◆ **Send Updates** – Number of route changes.

**Web Interface**

To display RIP interface configuration settings:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, Statistics.
2. Select Show Interface Information from the Action list.

**Figure 342: Showing RIP Interface Settings**



The screenshot shows a web interface for 'Routing Protocol > RIP > Statistics'. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail and an 'Action:' dropdown menu set to 'Show Interface Information'. Below this, a section titled 'Interface Information' indicates a total of 3 interfaces. A table with 7 columns follows: Interface, Auth Type, Send Version, Receive Version, Rcv Bad Packets, Rcv Bad Routes, and Send Updates. The table contains three rows of data.

Interface	Auth Type	Send Version	Receive Version	Rcv Bad Packets	Rcv Bad Routes	Send Updates
1.2.3.4	No Authentication	Do Not Send	RIPv1 and RIPv2	10	2	124
10.1.0.1	Simple Password	RIPv1	Do Not Receive	3	4	23
140.113.1.3	MD5	RIPv1 Compatible	RIPv2	5	5	65

**Displaying Peer Router Information** Use the Routing Protocol > RIP > Statistics (Show Peer Information) page to display information on neighboring RIP routers.

**Parameters**

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Peer Address** – IP address of a neighboring RIP router.
- ◆ **Update Time** – Last time a route update was received from this peer.

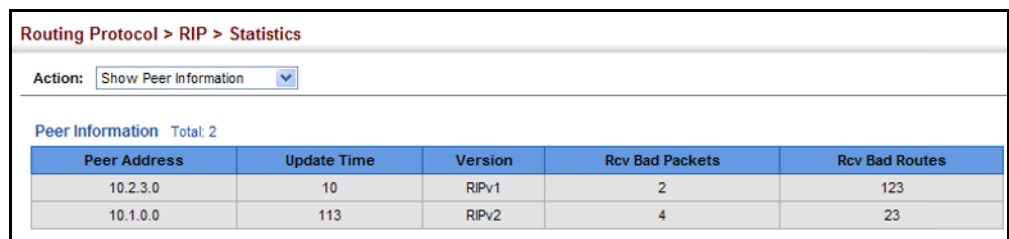
- ◆ **Version** – Shows whether RIPv1 or RIPv2 packets were received from this peer.
- ◆ **Rcv Bad Packets** – Number of bad RIP packets received from this peer.
- ◆ **Rcv Bad Routes** – Number of bad routes received from this peer.

### Web Interface

To display information on neighboring RIP routers:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, Statistics.
2. Select Show Peer Information from the Action list.

Figure 343: Showing RIP Peer Information



The screenshot shows the 'Routing Protocol > RIP > Statistics' page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail and an 'Action:' dropdown menu set to 'Show Peer Information'. Below this, a section titled 'Peer Information' indicates a total of 2 peers. A table displays the following data:

Peer Address	Update Time	Version	Rcv Bad Packets	Rcv Bad Routes
10.2.3.0	10	RIPv1	2	123
10.1.0.0	113	RIPv2	4	23

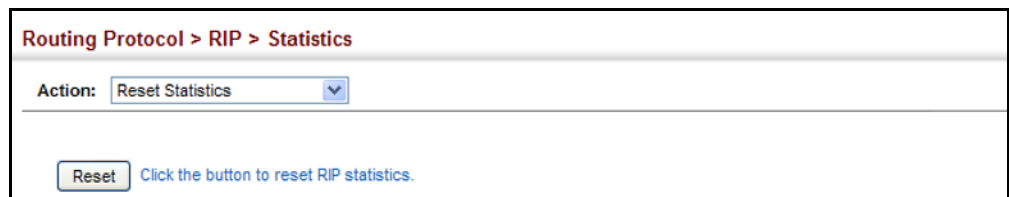
**Resetting RIP Statistics** Use the Routing Protocol > RIP > Statistics (Reset Statistics) page to reset all statistics for RIP protocol messages.

### Web Interface

To reset RIP statistics:

1. Click Routing Protocol, RIP, Statistics.
2. Select Reset Statistics from the Action list.
3. Click Reset.

Figure 344: Resetting RIP Statistics





This chapter describes the following IP services:

- ◆ **DNS** – Configures default domain names, identifies servers to use for dynamic lookup, and shows how to configure static entries.
- ◆ **Multicast DNS** – Configures multicast DNS host name-to-address mapping on the local network without the need for a dedicated DNS server.
- ◆ **DHCP** – Configures client, relay, and dynamic provisioning.

---

## Domain Name Service

DNS service on this switch allows host names to be mapped to IP addresses using static table entries or by redirection to other name servers on the network. When a client device designates this switch as a DNS server, the client will attempt to resolve host names into IP addresses by forwarding DNS queries to the switch, and waiting for a response.

You can manually configure entries in the DNS table used for mapping domain names to IP addresses, configure default domain names, or specify one or more name servers to use for domain name to address translation.

### Configuring General DNS Service Parameters

Use the IP Service > DNS - General (Configure Global) page to enable domain lookup and set the default domain name.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ To enable DNS service on this switch, enable domain lookup status, and configure one or more name servers (see [“Configuring a List of Name Servers” on page 522](#)).
- ◆ If one or more name servers are configured, but DNS is not yet enabled and the switch receives a DHCP packet containing a DNS field with a list of DNS servers, then the switch will automatically enable DNS host name-to-address translation.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Domain Lookup** – Enables DNS host name-to-address translation. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **Default Domain Name** – Defines the default domain name appended to incomplete host names. Do not include the initial dot that separates the host name from the domain name. (Range: 1-127 alphanumeric characters)

### Web Interface

To configure general settings for DNS:

1. Click IP Service, DNS.
2. Select Configure Global from the Action list.
3. Enable domain lookup, and set the default domain name.
4. Click Apply.

Figure 345: Configuring General Settings for DNS

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring DNS settings. At the top, the breadcrumb is 'IP Service > DNS > General'. Below this, there is an 'Action:' dropdown menu currently set to 'Configure Global'. The main configuration area contains two settings: 'Domain Lookup' which is checked and labeled 'Enabled', and 'Default Domain Name' which has a text input field containing 'my.site.com'. At the bottom right of the configuration area, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

### Configuring a List of Domain Names

Use the IP Service > DNS - General (Add Domain Name) page to configure a list of domain names to be tried in sequential order.

### Command Usage

- ◆ Use this page to define a list of domain names that can be appended to incomplete host names (i.e., host names passed from a client that are not formatted with dotted notation).
- ◆ If there is no domain list, the default domain name is used (see [“Configuring General DNS Service Parameters” on page 519](#)). If there is a domain list, the system will search it for a corresponding entry. If none is found, it will use the default domain name.
- ◆ When an incomplete host name is received by the DNS service on this switch and a domain name list has been specified, the switch will work through the domain list, appending each domain name in the list to the host name, and checking with the specified name servers for a match (see [“Configuring a List of Name Servers” on page 522](#)).



- ◆ If all name servers are deleted, DNS will automatically be disabled.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

**Domain Name** – Name of the host. Do not include the initial dot that separates the host name from the domain name. (Range: 1-127 characters)

### Web Interface

To create a list domain names:

1. Click IP Service, DNS.
2. Select Add Domain Name from the Action list.
3. Enter one domain name at a time.
4. Click Apply.

Figure 346: Configuring a List of Domain Names for DNS

IP Service > DNS > General

Action: Add Domain Name

Domain Name: sample.com.uk

Apply Revert

To show the list domain names:

1. Click IP Service, DNS.
2. Select Show Domain Names from the Action list.

Figure 347: Showing the List of Domain Names for DNS

IP Service > DNS > General

Action: Show Domain Names

Domain Name List Total: 2

<input type="checkbox"/>	Domain Name
<input type="checkbox"/>	google.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	hinet.net

Delete Revert

**Configuring a List of Name Servers** Use the IP Service > DNS - General (Add Name Server) page to configure a list of name servers to be tried in sequential order.

#### Command Usage

- ◆ To enable DNS service on this switch, configure one or more name servers, and enable domain lookup status (see [“Configuring General DNS Service Parameters” on page 519](#)).
- ◆ When more than one name server is specified, the servers are queried in the specified sequence until a response is received, or the end of the list is reached with no response.
- ◆ If all name servers are deleted, DNS will automatically be disabled. This is done by disabling the domain lookup status.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

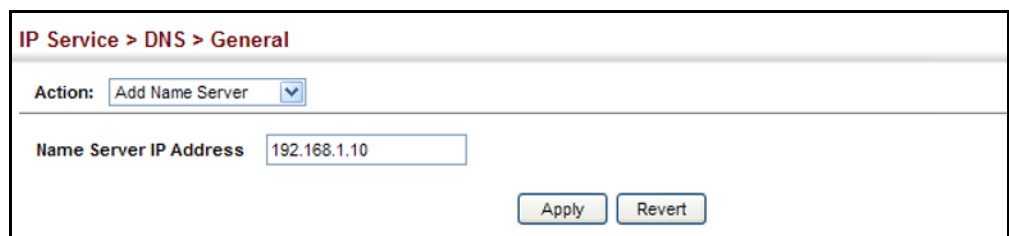
**Name Server IP Address** – Specifies the IPv4 or IPv6 address of a domain name server to use for name-to-address resolution. Up to six IP addresses can be added to the name server list.

#### Web Interface

To create a list name servers:

1. Click IP Service, DNS.
2. Select Add Name Server from the Action list.
3. Enter one name server at a time.
4. Click Apply.

**Figure 348: Configuring a List of Name Servers for DNS**

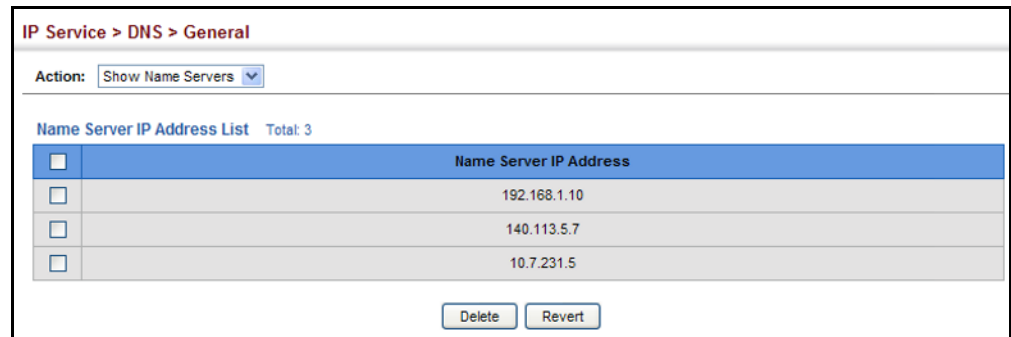


The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring DNS. At the top, the breadcrumb navigation reads "IP Service > DNS > General". Below this, there is a section for "Action:" with a dropdown menu currently set to "Add Name Server". Underneath, there is a "Name Server IP Address" label followed by a text input field containing the IP address "192.168.1.10". At the bottom right of the form, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Revert".

To show the list name servers:

1. Click IP Service, DNS.
2. Select Show Name Servers from the Action list.

**Figure 349: Showing the List of Name Servers for DNS**



### Configuring Static DNS Host to Address Entries

Use the IP Service > DNS - Static Host Table (Add) page to manually configure static entries in the DNS table that are used to map domain names to IP addresses.

#### Command Usage

Static entries may be used for local devices connected directly to the attached network, or for commonly used resources located elsewhere on the network.

#### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **Host Name** – Name of a host device that is mapped to one or more IP addresses. (Range: 1-127 characters)
- ◆ **IP Address** – IPv4 or IPv6 address(es) associated with a host name.

#### Web Interface

To configure static entries in the DNS table:

1. Click IP Service, DNS, Static Host Table.
2. Select Add from the Action list.
3. Enter a host name and the corresponding address.
4. Click Apply.

Figure 350: Configuring Static Entries in the DNS Table

IP Service > DNS > Static Host Table

Action: Add

Host Name: yahoo.com

IP Address: 10.2.78.3

Apply Revert

To show static entries in the DNS table:

1. Click IP Service, DNS, Static Host Table.
2. Select Show from the Action list.

Figure 351: Showing Static Entries in the DNS Table

IP Service > DNS > Static Host Table

Action: Show

IP Address List Total: 3

<input type="checkbox"/>	Host	IP Address
<input type="checkbox"/>	yahoo.com	10.2.78.3
<input type="checkbox"/>	hinet.net	124.29.31.155
<input type="checkbox"/>	google.com	133.45.211.18

Delete Revert

**Displaying the DNS Cache** Use the IP Service > DNS - Cache page to display entries in the DNS cache that have been learned via the designated name servers.

### Command Usage

Servers or other network devices may support one or more connections via multiple IP addresses. If more than one IP address is associated with a host name via information returned from a name server, a DNS client can try each address in succession, until it establishes a connection with the target device.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **No.** – The entry number for each resource record.
- ◆ **Flag** – The flag is always “4” indicating a cache entry and therefore unreliable.
- ◆ **Type** – This field includes CNAME which specifies the host address for the owner, and ALIAS which specifies an alias.
- ◆ **IP** – The IP address associated with this record.

- ◆ **TTL** – The time to live reported by the name server.
- ◆ **Host** – The host name associated with this record.

### Web Interface

To display entries in the DNS cache:

1. Click IP Service, DNS, Cache.

**Figure 352: Showing Entries in the DNS Cache**

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "IP Service > DNS > Cache". Below the title, it says "Cache Information Total: 3". There is a table with the following data:

No.	Flag	Type	IP	TTL	Host
1	4	CNAME	192.168.110.2	360	www.sina.com.cn
2	4	CNAME	10.2.44.3	892	www.yahoo.akadns.new
3	4	ALIAS	pointer to: 2	298	www.yahoo.com

Below the table is a "Clear" button.

## Multicast Domain Name Service

Use the IP Service > Multicast DNS page to enable multicast DNS host name-to-address mapping on the local network without the need for a dedicated DNS server.

### Command Usage

- ◆ Multicast DNS allows a network device to choose a domain name in the local DNS name space and announce it using a special multicast IP address. This allows any user to give their computers a link-local mDNS host name of the form "single-dns-label.local." Any name ending in ".local." is therefore link-local, and names within this domain are meaningful only on the link where they originate.
- ◆ When looking for the given host's IP address, the client sends a single-shot mDNS IP multicast query message to all the hosts sharing its local network. Any DNS query for a name ending with ".local." is sent to the mDNS multicast address 224.0.0.251 (or its IPv6 equivalent FF02::FB).

The corresponding host replies with a multicast message announcing itself. All machines in the subnet can then update their mDNS cache with the host's information sent in the reply message.

- ◆ To maintain an on-going cache of host names requires a process of continuous multicast DNS querying. This is done in several phases:
  - Probing – The DNS responder sends a probe message to the local network in order to verify that each entry its local cache is unique.

- Announcing – The responder sends an unsolicited mDNS Response containing all of its newly registered resource records (both shared records, and unique records that have completed the probing step).
- Updating – The responder repeats the Announcing step to update neighbor caches when the data for any local mDNS record changes.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

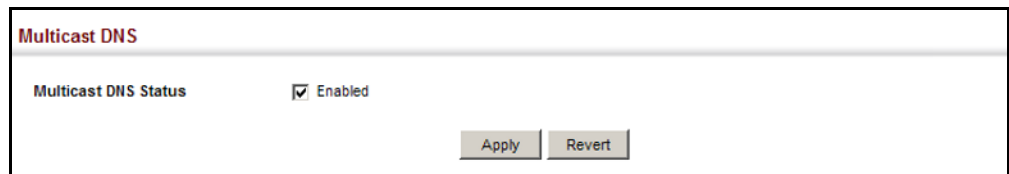
- ◆ **Multicast DNS Status** – Enables multicast DNS host name-to-address mapping on the local network. (Default: Enabled)

### Web Interface

To configure multicast DNS:

1. Click IP Service, Multicast DNS.
2. Mark the check box to enable or disable mDNS as required
3. Click Apply.

Figure 353: Configuring Multicast DNS



---

## Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) can dynamically allocate an IP address and other configuration information to network clients when they boot up. If a subnet does not already include a BOOTP or DHCP server, you can relay DHCP client requests to a DHCP server on another subnet.

**Specifying a DHCP Client Identifier** Use the IP Service > DHCP > Client page to specify the DHCP client identifier for a VLAN interface.

### Command Usage

- ◆ The class identifier is used identify the vendor class and configuration of the switch to the DHCP server, which then uses this information to decide on how to service the client or the type of information to return.
- ◆ The general framework for this DHCP option is set out in RFC 2132 (Option 60). This information is used to convey configuration settings or other identification

information about a client, but the specific string to use should be supplied by your service provider or network administrator. Options 60, 66 and 67 statements can be added to the server daemon's configuration file.

**Table 32: Options 60, 66 and 67 Statements**

Option	Statement	
	Keyword	Parameter
60	vendor-class-identifier	a string indicating the vendor class identifier
66	tftp-server-name	a string indicating the tftp server name
67	bootfile-name	a string indicating the bootfile name

- ◆ By default, DHCP option 66/67 parameters are not carried in a DHCP server reply. To ask for a DHCP reply with option 66/67 information, the DHCP client request sent by this switch includes a "parameter request list" asking for this information. Besides, the client request also includes a "vendor class identifier" that allows the DHCP server to identify the device, and select the appropriate configuration file for download. This information is included in Option 55 and 124.

**Table 33: Options 55 and 124 Statements**

Option	Statement	
	Keyword	Parameter
55	dhcp-parameter-request-list	a list of parameters, separated by "
124	vendor-class-identifier	a string indicating the vendor class identifier

- ◆ The server should reply with the TFTP server name and boot file name.
- ◆ Note that the vendor class identifier can be formatted in either text or hexadecimal, but the format used by both the client and server must be the same.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

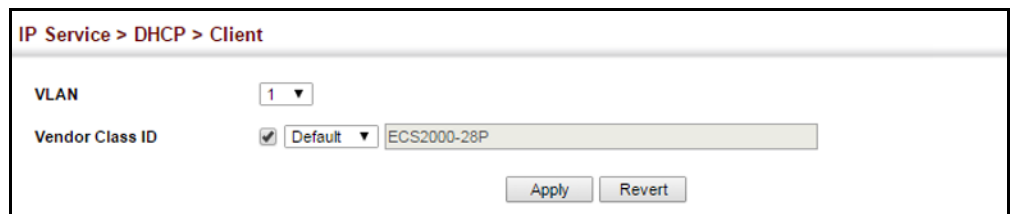
- ◆ **VLAN** – ID of configured VLAN.
- ◆ **Vendor Class ID** – The following options are supported when the check box is marked to enable this feature:
  - **Default** – The default string is the model number.
  - **Text** – A text string. (Range: 1-32 characters)
  - **Hex** – A hexadecimal value. (Range: 1-64 characters)

### Web Interface

To configure a DHCP client identifier:

1. Click IP Service, DHCP, Client.
2. Mark the check box to enable this feature. Select the default setting, or the format for a vendor class identifier. If a non-default value is used, enter a text string or hexadecimal value.
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 354: Specifying a DHCP Client Identifier**



The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring DHCP client settings. The breadcrumb path is 'IP Service > DHCP > Client'. There are two main configuration areas: 'VLAN' with a dropdown menu showing '1', and 'Vendor Class ID' which includes a checked checkbox, a dropdown menu set to 'Default', and a text input field containing 'ECS2000-28P'. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Revert'.

### Configuring DHCP Relay Agent Mode

Use the IP Service > DHCP > Relay page to configure the DHCP relay service mode as either a Layer 2 Relay Agent or a Layer 3 Relay Agent.

#### Command Usage

If the DHCP client subnet is different from the DHCP server subnet, configure the DHCP Relay Agent mode to L3. Otherwise, you can use the L2 option when both the client and server are located on the same subnet.

- ◆ You must specify the IP address for at least one active DHCP server. If not set, the switch's DHCP relay agent will not be able to forward client requests to a DHCP server.
- ◆ When using L2 Relay Agent Mode, the destination server/relay agent IP addresses and the option 82 parameters can be specified using the IP Service > DHCP > L2 Relay.
- ◆ In layer 3 mode the switch must be able to route traffic towards the server's subnet from the DHCP client subnet. Use IP Service > DHCP > L3 Relay to specify the DHCP server IP addresses.
- ◆ If DHCP relay is enabled, and this switch sees a DHCP request broadcast, it inserts its own IP address into the request so that the DHCP server will know the subnet where the client is located. The switch will then forward the packet to the DHCP server. When the server receives the DHCP request, it allocates a free IP address for the DHCP client from its defined scope for the DHCP client's subnet, and sends a DHCP response back to the DHCP relay agent (i.e., this switch). This switch then broadcasts the DHCP response received from the server to the client.



- ◆ DHCP relay configuration will be disabled if an active DHCP server is detected on the same network segment.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

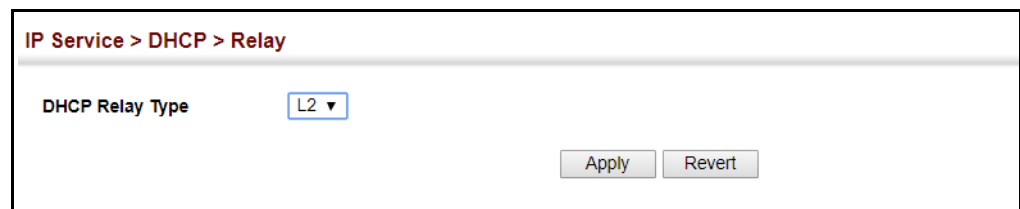
- ◆ **DHCP Relay Type** – L2 or L3

### Web Interface

To configure a DHCP client identifier:

1. Click IP Service, DHCP, Relay.
2. Select either L2 or L3 from the drop-down menu items.
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 355: Configuring the DHCP Relay Agent mode**



### Configuring DHCP L2 Relay Service

When DHCP L2 relay mode is enabled, use the IP Service > DHCP > L2 Relay page to configure DHCP Relay Agent destination server IP addresses and DHCP option 82 information. DHCP provides an option for sending information about its DHCP clients to the DHCP server (specifically, the interface on the relay server through which the DHCP client request was received). Also known as DHCP Relay Option 82, it allows compatible DHCP servers to use this information when assigning IP addresses, or to set other services or policies for clients

Option 82 information contains information which can identify both the relay agent and the interface through which the DHCP request was received:

- ◆ Option 82 information contains information The DHCP Relay Information Option Remote ID (RID) is the access node identifier – a string used to identify the switch to the DHCP server.
- ◆ The DHCP Relay Information Option Fields are the Option 82 circuit identification fields (CID – including VLAN ID, stack unit, and port). These fields identify the requesting device by indicating the interface through which the relay agent received the request.h can identify both the relay agent and the interface through which the DHCP request was received:

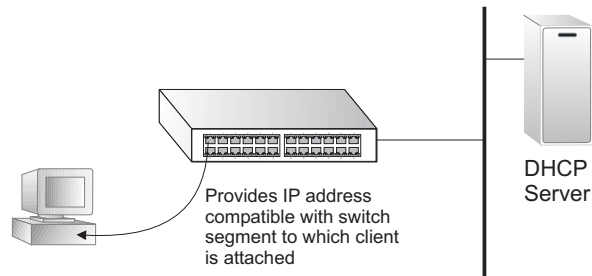
If DHCP relay is enabled, and this switch sees a DHCP client request, it inserts its own IP address into the request so that the DHCP server will know the subnet

where the client is located. Depending on the selected frame format set for the remote-id, this information may specify the MAC address, IP address, or an arbitrary string for the requesting device (that is, the relay agent in this context).

By default, the relay agent also fills in the Option 82 circuit-id field with information indicating the local interface over which the switch received the DHCP client request, including the VLAN ID, stack unit, and port. This allows DHCP client-server exchange messages to be forwarded between the server and client without having to flood them onto the entire VLAN.

The switch then forwards the packet to the DHCP server. When the server receives the DHCP request, it allocates a free IP address for the DHCP client from its defined scope for the DHCP client's subnet, and sends a DHCP response back to the DHCP relay agent (i.e., this switch). This switch then passes the DHCP response received from the server to the client.

### Layer 2 DHCP Relay Service



### Command Usage

- ◆ You must specify the IP address for at least one active DHCP server. Otherwise, the switch's DHCP relay agent will not be able to forward client requests to a DHCP server. Up to five DHCP servers can be specified in order of preference.
- ◆ If any of the specified DHCP server addresses are not located in the same network segment with this switch, specify the default router through which this switch can reach other IP subnetworks (see "Configuring IPv4 Interface Settings" or "Configuring the IPv6 Default Gateway").
- ◆ DHCP Snooping Information Option 82 (see page 306) and DHCP Relay Information Option 82 cannot both be enabled at the same time.
  - DHCP request packets received by the switch are handled as follows:
  - If a DHCP relay server has been set on the switch, when the switch receives a DHCP request packet without option 82 information from the management VLAN or a non-management VLAN, it will add option 82 relay information and the relay agent's address to the DHCP request packet, and then unicast it to the DHCP server.
  - If a DHCP relay server has been set on the switch, when the switch receives a DHCP request packet with option 82 information from the

management VLAN or a non-management VLAN, it will process it according to the configured relay information option policy:

- If the policy is “replace,” the DHCP request packet’s option 82 content (the RID and CID sub-option) is replaced with information provided by the switch. The relay agent address is inserted into the DHCP request packet, and the switch then unicasts this packet to the DHCP server.
  - If the policy is “keep,” the DHCP request packet’s option 82 content will be retained. The relay agent address is inserted into the DHCP request packet, and the switch then unicasts this packet to the DHCP server.
- ◆ If the policy is “drop,” the original DHCP request packet is flooded onto the VLAN which received the packet but is not relayed.
- DHCP reply packets received by the relay agent are handled as follows:
  - When the relay agent receives a DHCP reply packet with Option 82 information over the management VLAN, it first ensures that the packet is destined for it.
  - If the RID in the DHCP reply packet is not identical with that configured on the switch, the option 82 information is retained, and the packet is flooded onto the VLAN through which it was received.
    - If the DHCP packet’s broadcast flag is on, the switch uses the circuit-id information contained in the option 82 information fields to identify the VLAN connected to the requesting client and then broadcasts the DHCP reply packet to this VLAN.
    - If the DHCP packet’s broadcast flag is off, the switch uses the circuit-id information in option 82 fields to identify the interface connected to the requesting client and unicasts the reply packet to the client.
- ◆ DHCP packets are flooded onto the VLAN which received them if DHCP relay service is enabled on the switch and any of the following situations apply:
- There is no DHCP relay server set on the switch, when the switch receives a DHCP packet.
  - A DHCP relay server has been set on the switch, when the switch receives a DHCP request packet with a non-zero relay agent address field (that is not the address of this switch).
  - A DHCP relay server has been set on the switch, when the switch receives DHCP reply packet without option 82 information from the management VLAN.

- The reply packet contains a valid relay agent address field (that is not the address of this switch), or receives a reply packet with a zero relay agent address through the management VLAN.
- A DHCP relay server has been set on the switch, and the switch receives a reply packet on a non-management VLAN.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

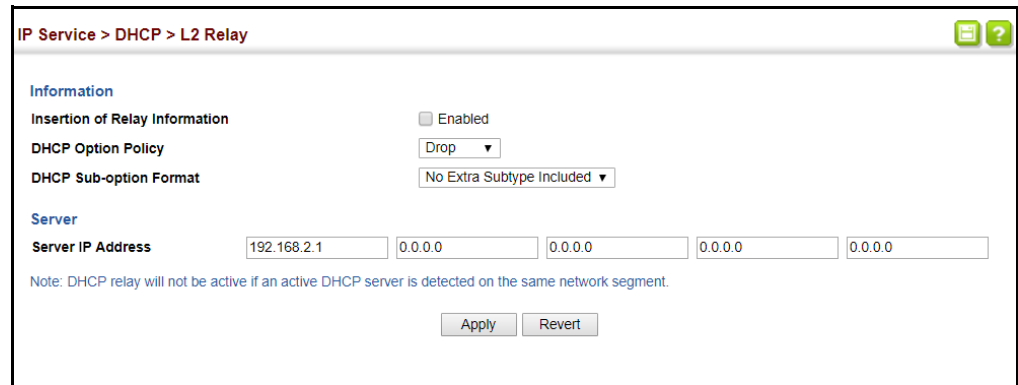
- ◆ **Insertion of Relay Information** – Enable DHCP Option 82 information relay. (Default: Disabled)
- ◆ **DHCP Option Policy** – Specifies how to handle client requests which already contain DHCP Option 82 information:
  - Drop** - Floods the original request packet onto the VLAN that received it instead of relaying it. (This is the default.)
  - Keep** - Retains the Option 82 information in the client request, inserts the relay agent's address, and unicasts the packet to the DHCP server.
  - Replace** - Replaces the Option 82 information circuit-id and remote-id fields in the client's request with information provided by the relay agent itself, inserts the relay agent's address, and unicasts the packet to the DHCP server.
- ◆ **DHCP Sub-option Format** – Specifies whether or not to use the sub-type and sub-length fields in the circuit-ID (CID) and remote-ID (RID) in Option 82 information. (Default: Included)
- ◆ **Server IP Address** – Addresses of DHCP servers or relay servers to be used by the switch's DHCP relay agent in order of preference.

### Web Interface

To configure DHCP relay service:

1. Click IP Service, DHCP, Relay Option 82.
2. Enable or disable Option 82.
3. Set the Option 82 policy to specify how to handle Option 82 information already contained in DHCP client request packets.
4. Specify whether or not include "type" and "length" sub-options. .
5. Enter up to five IP addresses for DHCP servers or relay servers in order of preference.
6. Click Apply.

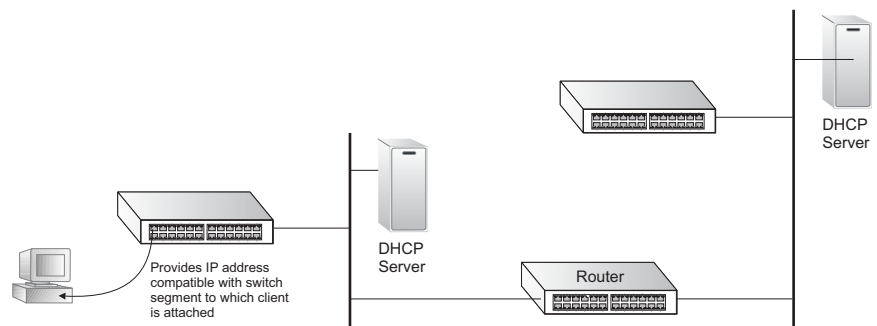
**Figure 356: Configuring DHCP L2 Relay**



### Configuring DHCP L3 Relay Service

Use the IP Service > DHCP > L3 Relay page to configure DHCP relay service for attached host devices. If DHCP L3 relay mode is enabled, and this switch sees a DHCP request broadcast, it inserts its own IP address into the request so that the DHCP server will know the subnet where the client is located. Then, the switch forwards the packet to the DHCP server. When the server receives the DHCP request, it allocates a free IP address for the DHCP client from its defined scope for the DHCP client's subnet, and sends a DHCP response back to the DHCP relay agent (i.e., this switch). This switch then passes the DHCP response received from the server to the client.

**Figure 357: Layer 3 DHCP Relay Service**



### Command Usage

- ◆ You must specify the IP address for at least one active DHCP server. Otherwise, the switch's DHCP relay agent will not be able to forward client requests to a DHCP server. Up to five DHCP servers can be specified in order of preference.

If any of the specified DHCP server addresses are not located in the same network segment with this switch, specify the default router through which this switch can reach other IP subnetworks using the IP > Routing > Static Routes (Add) page (see ["Configuring Static Routes" on page 496](#)) or the IP > IPv6 Configuration (Configure Global) page (see ["Configuring the IPv6 Default Gateway" on page 476](#)).

- ◆ DHCP relay configuration will be disabled if an active DHCP server is detected on the same network segment.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

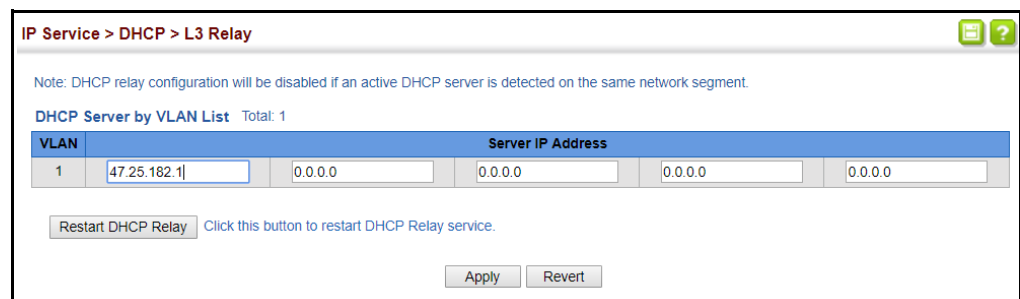
- ◆ **VLAN ID** – ID of configured VLAN.
- ◆ **Server IP Address** – Addresses of DHCP servers or relay servers to be used by the switch's DHCP relay agent in order of preference.
- ◆ **Restart DHCP Relay** – Use this button to re-initialize DHCP relay service.

### Web Interface

To configure DHCP relay service:

1. Click IP Service, DHCP, Relay.
2. Enter up to five IP addresses for DHCP servers or relay servers in order of preference for any VLAN.
3. Click Apply.

**Figure 358: Configuring DHCP L3 Relay Service**



### Enabling DHCP Dynamic Provision

Use the IP Service > DHCP > Add Dynamic Provision to enable dynamic provisioning via DHCP.

DHCPD is the daemon used by Linux to dynamically configure TCP/IP information for client systems. To support DHCP option 66/67, you have to add corresponding statements to the configuration file of DHCPD. Information on how to complete this process are described in ["Downloading a Configuration File and Other Parameters Provided by a DHCP Server"](#) as described in the *CLI Reference Guide*.

Some alternative commands which can be added to the DHCPD to complete the dynamic provisioning process are also described under the **ip dhcp dynamic-provision** command in the *CLI Reference Guide*.

By default, the parameters for DHCP option 66/67 are not carried by the reply sent from the DHCP server. To ask for a DHCP reply with option 66/67, the client can inform the server that it is interested in option 66/67 by sending a DHCP request that includes a 'parameter request list' option. Besides this, the client can also send a DHCP request that includes a 'vendor class identifier' option to the server so that

the DHCP server can identify the device, and determine what information should be given to requesting device.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

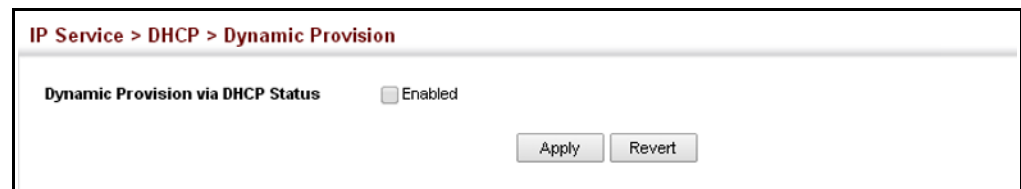
- ◆ **Dynamic Provision via DHCP Status** – Enables dynamic provisioning via DHCP. (Default: Disabled)

### Web Interface

To enable dynamic provisioning via DHCP:

1. Click IP Service, DHCP, Dynamic Provision.
2. Mark the Enable box if dynamic provisioning is configured on the DHCP daemon, and required for bootup.
3. Click Apply.

Figure 359: Enabling Dynamic Provisioning via DHCP



### Configuring DHCPv6 Relay Service

Use IP Service > DHCPv6 > Relay (Add) page to enable the switch as a DHCPv6 Relay Agent and configure destination addresses or VLAN IDs to which client DHCPv6 messages are forwarded. When the relay agent is enabled on a specified VLAN, the switch listens to UDP port 547 for DHCPv6 messages on that VLAN. The agent will forward the messages to the configured unicast addresses or to a multicast address on configured VLANs or all VLANs.

### Command Usage

- ◆ When the unicast addresses of the DHCPv6 servers or other relay agents are known, configure the addresses for each VLAN that will use the IPv6 DHCP relay service.
- ◆ Up to five DHCPv6 server or relay agent unicast addresses can be configured.
- ◆ Use the "Multicast mode", if you do not know the Unicast destination address of the DHCPv6 servers or other relay agents.
- ◆ All associated VLANs must have their L3 interface enabled using the VLAN > Static (Action:Modify) page.

- ◆ The relay agent is enabled when at least one configured VLAN has an entry is listed in the IP Service > DHCPv6 > Relay (Action: Show) page.
- ◆ The relay agent is disabled if there are no entries for all configured VLANs in the IP Service > DHCPv6 > Relay (Action: Show) page.

### Parameters

These parameters are displayed:

- ◆ **VLAN** – ID of the configured VLAN.
- ◆ **Mode:**
  - **Unicast** - To forward the client IPv6 DHCP messages to a specific destination address(es), select the Unicast mode.
  - **Multicast** - To forward the client IPv6 DHCP messages to all available servers on configured VLANs, select the Multicast mode. In this mode the DHCPv6 agent forwards DHCPv6 messages to the IPv6 DHCP multicast address known as “All\_DHCP\_Servers” (FF05::1:3) which both DHCPv6 servers and relay agents listen to.
- ◆ **Destination Address** - When Unicast mode is selected, enter an IPv6 address of a DHCPv6 server or relay agent (Maximum: 5 for each configured VLAN).
- ◆ **Destination VLAN** – When Multicast mode is selected, select a configured VLAN or “All” (all VLANs). The DHCPv6 messages will be forwarded on the configured VLANs or all VLANs using the “All\_DHCP\_Servers” address.

### Web Interface

To enable the switch’s DHCPv6 Relay Agent for Unicast mode:

1. Click IP Service, DHCPv6, Relay (Action: Add).
2. Select a VLAN from the VLAN drop-down list.
3. Select Unicast from the Mode drop-down list.
4. Input the server or relay agent’s IPv6 address in the destination IP field.
5. Click Apply



Figure 360: Enabling DHCPv6 Relay Agent for Unicast mode.

The screenshot shows the configuration page for the DHCPv6 Relay Agent in Unicast mode. The breadcrumb navigation is "IP Service > DHCPv6 > Relay". The "Action" dropdown is set to "Add". The "VLAN" dropdown is set to "1". The "Mode" dropdown is set to "Unicast". The "Destination IP" field contains the IPv6 address "2001:0db8:85a3:0000:0000:8a2e:0370:7334". At the bottom right, there are "Apply" and "Revert" buttons.

To enable the switch's DHCPv6 Relay Agent for Multicast mode:

1. Click IP Service, DHCPv6, Relay (Action: Add).
2. Select a VLAN from the VLAN drop-down list.
3. Select Multicast from the Mode drop-down list.
4. Select a destination VLAN or All (VLANs) from the Destination VLAN drop-down list.
5. Click Apply

Figure 361: Enabling DHCPv6 Relay Agent for Multicast mode.

The screenshot shows the configuration page for the DHCPv6 Relay Agent in Multicast mode. The breadcrumb navigation is "IP Service > DHCPv6 > Relay". The "Action" dropdown is set to "Add". The "VLAN" dropdown is set to "1". The "Mode" dropdown is set to "Multicast". The "Destination VLAN" dropdown is set to "All". At the bottom right, there are "Apply" and "Revert" buttons.

To show and delete the DHCP Relay Agent Unicast and Multicast entries:

1. Click IP Service, DHCPv6, Relay (Action: Show).
2. From the VLAN drop-down list, select a VLAN.
3. Either click the upper-left-most box to select all entries or click the box to the left of the specific entry(s).
4. Click Delete.

Figure 362: Enabling DHCPv6 Relay Agent for Multicast mode.

IP Service > DHCPv6 > Relay

Action: Show ▾

VLAN 300 ▾

DHCPv6 Relay Destination Total: 8

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Mode	DHCPv6 Relay Destination
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Unicast	2001:db8:85a3::8a2e:370:7334
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Unicast	2001:db8:85a3::8a2e:370:7336
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Unicast	2001:db8:85a3::8a2e:470:7334
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Unicast	2001:db8:85a3::8a2e:470:7336
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Unicast	2001:db8:85a3::8a2e:570:7334
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Multicast	VLAN 600
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Multicast	VLAN 610
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Multicast	VLAN 620

Delete Revert

# Section III

## Appendices

This section provides additional information and includes these items:

- ◆ [“Software Specifications” on page 541](#)
- ◆ [“Troubleshooting” on page 547](#)
- ◆ [“License Information” on page 549](#)





# Software Specifications

---

## Software Features

**Management Authentication** Local, RADIUS, TACACS+, Port Authentication (802.1X), HTTPS, SSH, Port Security, IP Filter

**General Security Measures** Access Control Lists (512 rules), Port Authentication (802.1X), MAC Authentication, Port Security, DHCP Snooping, IP Source Guard

**Port Configuration** 1000BASE-T: 10/100 Mbps at half/full duplex, 1000 Mbps at full duplex  
1000BASE-SX/LX/LHX/ZX: 1000 Mbps at full duplex (SFP)

**Flow Control** Full Duplex: IEEE 802.3-2005  
Half Duplex: Back pressure

**Storm Control** Broadcast, multicast, or unknown unicast traffic throttled above a critical threshold

**Port Mirroring** 3 sessions, one or more source ports to one destination port

**Rate Limits** Input/Output Limits  
Range configured per port

**Port Trunking** Static trunks (Cisco EtherChannel compliant)  
Dynamic trunks (Link Aggregation Control Protocol)

**Spanning Tree Algorithm** Spanning Tree Protocol (STP, IEEE 802.1D-2004)  
Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP, IEEE 802.1D-2004)  
Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP, IEEE 802.1D-2004)

**VLAN Support** Up to 4094 groups; port-based, protocol-based, tagged (802.1Q), voice VLANs, MAC-based, QinQ tunnel

**Class of Service** Supports four levels of priority  
Strict, Weighted Round Robin (WRR), or a combination of strict and weighted queuing  
Layer 3/4 priority mapping: IP DSCP

**Quality of Service** DiffServ<sup>10</sup> supports class maps, policy maps, and service policies

**Multicast Filtering** IGMP Snooping (Layer 2 IPv4)  
MLD Snooping (Layer 2 IPv6)

**IP Routing** ARP, CIDR (Classless Inter-Domain Routing)  
Static routes  
RIP, RIPv2 unicast routing

**Additional Features** BOOTP Client  
DHCP Client, Relay, Option 82  
DNS Client  
LLDP (Link Layer Discover Protocol)  
RMON (Remote Monitoring, groups 1,2,3,9)  
SMTP Email Alerts  
SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol)  
SNTP (Simple Network Time Protocol)

---

## Management Features

**In-Band Management** Telnet, web-based HTTP or HTTPS, SNMP manager, or Secure Shell

**Out-of-Band Management** RS-232 DB-9 console port

**Software Loading** HTTP, FTP, SFTP, TFTP in-band, or XModem out-of-band

**SNMP** Management access via MIB database  
Trap management to specified hosts

---

<sup>10</sup>. Only supported for IPv4.

**RMON** Groups 1, 2, 3, 9 (Statistics, History, Alarm, Event)

---

**Standards**

IEEE 802.1AB Link Layer Discovery Protocol  
IEEE 802.1D-2004 Spanning Tree Algorithm and traffic priorities  
Spanning Tree Protocol  
Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol  
Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol  
IEEE 802.1p Priority tags  
IEEE 802.1Q VLAN  
IEEE 802.1v Protocol-based VLANs  
IEEE 802.1X Port Authentication  
IEEE 802.3-2005  
Ethernet, Fast Ethernet, Gigabit Ethernet  
Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)  
Full-duplex flow control (ISO/IEC 8802-3)  
IEEE 802.3ac VLAN tagging  
ARP (RFC 826)  
DHCP Client (RFC 2131)  
DHCP Relay (RFC 951, 2132, 3046)  
HTTPS  
ICMP (RFC 792)  
IGMP (RFC 1112)  
IGMPv2 (RFC 2236)  
IGMP Proxy (RFC 4541)  
IPv4 IGMP (RFC 3228)  
MLD Snooping (RFC 4541)  
NTP (RFC 1305)  
RADIUS+ (RFC 2618)  
RIPv1 (RFC 1058)  
RIPv2 (RFC 2453)  
RIPv2, extension (RFC 1724)  
RMON (RFC 2819 groups 1,2,3,9)  
SNMP (RFC 1157)  
SNMPv2c (RFC 1901, 2571)  
SNMPv3 (RFC DRAFT 2273, 2576, 3410, 3411, 3413, 3414, 3415)  
SNTP (RFC 2030)  
SSH (Version 2.0)  
TELNET (RFC 854, 855, 856)  
TFTP (RFC 1350)

## Management Information Bases

Bridge MIB (RFC 1493)  
Differentiated Services MIB (RFC 3289)  
DNS Resolver MIB (RFC 1612)  
Entity MIB (RFC 2737)  
Ether-like MIB (RFC 2665)  
Extended Bridge MIB (RFC 2674)  
Extensible SNMP Agents MIB (RFC 2742)  
Forwarding Table MIB (RFC 2096)  
IGMP MIB (RFC 2933)  
Interface Group MIB (RFC 2233)  
Interfaces Evolution MIB (RFC 2863)  
IP MIB (RFC 2011)  
IP Forwarding Table MIB (RFC 2096)  
IP Multicasting related MIBs  
IPV6-MIB (RFC 2065)  
IPV6-ICMP-MIB (RFC 2066)  
IPV6-TCP-MIB (RFC 2052)  
IPV6-UDP-MIB (RFC2054)  
Link Aggregation MIB (IEEE 802.3ad)  
MAU MIB (RFC 3636)  
MIB II (RFC 1213)  
NTP (RFC 1305)  
P-Bridge MIB (RFC 2674P)  
Port Access Entity MIB (IEEE 802.1X)  
Port Access Entity Equipment MIB  
Power Ethernet MIB (RFC 3621)  
Private MIB  
Q-Bridge MIB (RFC 2674Q)  
QinQ Tunneling (IEEE 802.1ad Provider Bridges)  
Quality of Service MIB  
RADIUS Accounting Server MIB (RFC 2621)  
RADIUS Authentication Client MIB (RFC 2619)  
RIP1 MIB (RFC 1058)  
RIP2 MIB (RFC 2453)  
RIP2 Extension (RFC1724)  
RMON MIB (RFC 2819)  
RMON II Probe Configuration Group (RFC 2021, partial implementation)  
SNMP Community MIB (RFC 3584)  
SNMP Framework MIB (RFC 3411)  
SNMP-MPD MIB (RFC 3412)  
SNMP Target MIB, SNMP Notification MIB (RFC 3413)



SNMP User-Based SM MIB (RFC 3414)  
SNMP View Based ACM MIB (RFC 3415)  
SNMPv2 IP MIB (RFC 2011)  
TACACS+ Authentication Client MIB  
TCP MIB (RFC 2012)  
Trap (RFC 1215)  
UDP MIB (RFC 2013)





# Troubleshooting

## Problems Accessing the Management Interface

Table 34: Troubleshooting Chart

Symptom	Action
Cannot connect using Telnet, web browser, or SNMP software	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◆ Be sure the switch is powered on.</li><li>◆ Check network cabling between the management station and the switch. Make sure the ends are properly connected and there is no damage to the cable. Test the cable if necessary.</li><li>◆ Check that you have a valid network connection to the switch and that the port you are using has not been disabled.</li><li>◆ Be sure you have configured the VLAN interface through which the management station is connected with a valid IP address, subnet mask and default gateway.</li><li>◆ Be sure the management station has an IP address in the same subnet as the switch's IP interface to which it is connected.</li><li>◆ If you are trying to connect to the switch via the IP address for a tagged VLAN group, your management station, and the ports connecting intermediate switches in the network, must be configured with the appropriate tag.</li><li>◆ If you cannot connect using Telnet, you may have exceeded the maximum number of concurrent Telnet/SSH sessions permitted. Try connecting again at a later time.</li></ul>
Cannot connect using Secure Shell	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◆ If you cannot connect using SSH, you may have exceeded the maximum number of concurrent Telnet/SSH sessions permitted. Try connecting again at a later time.</li><li>◆ Be sure the control parameters for the SSH server are properly configured on the switch, and that the SSH client software is properly configured on the management station.</li><li>◆ Be sure you have generated both an RSA and DSA public key on the switch, exported this key to the SSH client, and enabled SSH service. Try using another SSH client or check for updates to your SSH client application.</li><li>◆ Be sure you have set up an account on the switch for each SSH user, including user name, authentication level, and password.</li><li>◆ Be sure you have imported the client's public key to the switch (if public key authentication is used).</li></ul>
Cannot access the on-board configuration program via a serial port connection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◆ Check to see if you have set the terminal emulator program to VT100 compatible, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, no parity, and the baud rate set to 115200 bps.</li><li>◆ Verify that you are using the DB-9 null-modem serial cable supplied with the switch. If you use any other cable, be sure that it conforms to the pin-out connections provided in the Installation Guide.</li></ul>
Forgot or lost the password	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◆ Contact your local distributor.</li></ul>

## Using System Logs

If a fault does occur, refer to the Installation Guide to ensure that the problem you encountered is actually caused by the switch. If the problem appears to be caused by the switch, follow these steps:

1. Enable logging.
2. Set the error messages reported to include all categories.
3. Enable SNMP.
4. Enable SNMP traps.
5. Designate the SNMP host that is to receive the error messages.
6. Repeat the sequence of commands or other actions that lead up to the error.
7. Make a list of the commands or circumstances that led to the fault. Also make a list of any error messages displayed.
8. Set up your terminal emulation software so that it can capture all console output to a file. Then enter the “show tech-support” command to record all system settings in this file.
9. Contact your distributor’s service engineer, and send a detailed description of the problem, along with the file used to record your system settings.

For example:

```
Console(config)#logging on
Console(config)#logging history flash 7
Console(config)#snmp-server host 192.168.1.23
:
```



---

# License Information

This product includes copyrighted third-party software subject to the terms of the GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), or other related free software licenses. The GPL code used in this product is distributed WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY and is subject to the copyrights of one or more authors. For details, refer to the section "The GNU General Public License" below, or refer to the applicable license as included in the source-code archive.

---

## The GNU General Public License

GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

Version 2, June 1991

Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc.  
59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

### Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Library General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software.

Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

## GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

1. This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The "Program", below, refers to any such program or work, and a "work based on the Program" means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) Each licensee is addressed as "you".

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

2. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

3. You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:
  - a) You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
  - b) You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
  - c) If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

4. You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following:
  - a). Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,

- b) Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
- c) Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.)

The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

- 5. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.
- 6. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.
- 7. Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.
- 8. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

9. If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.
10. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.  
  
Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.
11. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

#### NO WARRANTY

1. BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.
2. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

#### END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS



---

# Glossary

**ACL** Access Control List. ACLs can limit network traffic and restrict access to certain users or devices by checking each packet for certain IP or MAC (i.e., Layer 2) information.

**ARP** Address Resolution Protocol converts between IP addresses and MAC (hardware) addresses. ARP is used to locate the MAC address corresponding to a given IP address. This allows the switch to use IP addresses for routing decisions and the corresponding MAC addresses to forward packets from one hop to the next.

**BOOTP** Boot Protocol. BOOTP is used to provide bootup information for network devices, including IP address information, the address of the TFTP server that contains the devices system files, and the name of the boot file.

**CoS** Class of Service is supported by prioritizing packets based on the required level of service, and then placing them in the appropriate output queue. Data is transmitted from the queues using weighted round-robin service to enforce priority service and prevent blockage of lower-level queues. Priority may be set according to the port default, the packet's priority bit (in the VLAN tag), TCP/UDP port number, IP Precedence bit, or DSCP priority bit.

**DHCP** Dynamic Host Control Protocol. Provides a framework for passing configuration information to hosts on a TCP/IP network. DHCP is based on the Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP), adding the capability of automatic allocation of reusable network addresses and additional configuration options.

**DHCP Option 82** A relay option for sending information about the requesting client (or an intermediate relay agent) in the DHCP request packets forwarded by the switch and in reply packets sent back from the DHCP server. This information can be used by DHCP servers to assign fixed IP addresses, or set other services or policies for clients.

**DHCP Snooping** A technique used to enhance network security by snooping on DHCP server messages to track the physical location of hosts, ensure that hosts only use the IP addresses assigned to them, and ensure that only authorized DHCP servers are accessible.

- DiffServ** Differentiated Services provides quality of service on large networks by employing a well-defined set of building blocks from which a variety of aggregate forwarding behaviors may be built. Each packet carries information (DS byte) used by each hop to give it a particular forwarding treatment, or per-hop behavior, at each network node. DiffServ allocates different levels of service to users on the network with mechanisms such as traffic meters, shapers/droppers, packet markers at the boundaries of the network.
- DNS** Domain Name Service. A system used for translating host names for network nodes into IP addresses.
- DSCP** Differentiated Services Code Point Service. DSCP uses a six-bit tag to provide for up to 64 different forwarding behaviors. Based on network policies, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different kinds of forwarding. The DSCP bits are mapped to the Class of Service categories, and then into the output queues.
- EAPOL** Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN. EAPOL is a client authentication protocol used by this switch to verify the network access rights for any device that is plugged into the switch. A user name and password is requested by the switch, and then passed to an authentication server (e.g., RADIUS) for verification. EAPOL is implemented as part of the IEEE 802.1X Port Authentication standard.
- EUI** Extended Universal Identifier is an address format used by IPv6 to identify the host portion of the network address. The interface identifier in EUI compatible addresses is based on the link-layer (MAC) address of an interface. Interface identifiers used in global unicast and other IPv6 address types are 64 bits long and may be constructed in the EUI-64 format. The modified EUI-64 format interface ID is derived from a 48-bit link-layer address by inserting the hexadecimal number FFFE between the upper three bytes (OUI field) and the lower 3 bytes (serial number) of the link layer address. To ensure that the chosen address is from a unique Ethernet MAC address, the 7th bit in the high-order byte is set to 1 (equivalent to the IEEE Global/Local bit) to indicate the uniqueness of the 48-bit address.
- GARP** Generic Attribute Registration Protocol. GARP is a protocol that can be used by endstations and switches to register and propagate multicast group membership information in a switched environment so that multicast data frames are propagated only to those parts of a switched LAN containing registered endstations. Formerly called Group Address Registration Protocol.
- GMRP** Generic Multicast Registration Protocol. GMRP allows network devices to register end stations with multicast groups. GMRP requires that any participating network devices or end stations comply with the IEEE 802.1p standard.
- GVRP** GARP VLAN Registration Protocol. Defines a way for switches to exchange VLAN information in order to register necessary VLAN members on ports along the Spanning Tree so that VLANs defined in each switch can work automatically over a Spanning Tree network.

- ICMP** Internet Control Message Protocol is a network layer protocol that reports errors in processing IP packets. ICMP is also used by routers to feed back information about better routing choices.
- IEEE 802.1D** Specifies a general method for the operation of MAC bridges, including the Spanning Tree Protocol.
- IEEE 802.1Q** VLAN Tagging—Defines Ethernet frame tags which carry VLAN information. It allows switches to assign endstations to different virtual LANs, and defines a standard way for VLANs to communicate across switched networks.
- IEEE 802.1p** An IEEE standard for providing quality of service (QoS) in Ethernet networks. The standard uses packet tags that define up to eight traffic classes and allows switches to transmit packets based on the tagged priority value.
- IEEE 802.1s** An IEEE standard for the Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) which provides independent spanning trees for VLAN groups.
- IEEE 802.1w** An IEEE standard for the Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) which reduces the convergence time for network topology changes to about 10% of that required by the older IEEE 802.1D STP standard. (Now incorporated in IEEE 802.1D-2004)
- IEEE 802.1X** Port Authentication controls access to the switch ports by requiring users to first enter a user ID and password for authentication.
- IEEE 802.3ac** Defines frame extensions for VLAN tagging.
- IEEE 802.3x** Defines Ethernet frame start/stop requests and timers used for flow control on full-duplex links. (Now incorporated in IEEE 802.3-2002)
- IGMP** Internet Group Management Protocol. A protocol through which hosts can register with their local router for multicast services. If there is more than one multicast switch/router on a given subnetwork, one of the devices is made the “querier” and assumes responsibility for keeping track of group membership.
- IGMP Proxy** Proxies multicast group membership information onto the upstream interface based on IGMP messages monitored on downstream interfaces, and forwards multicast traffic based on that information. There is no need for multicast routing protocols in a simple tree that uses IGMP Proxy.

**IGMP Query** On each subnetwork, one IGMP-capable device will act as the querier — that is, the device that asks all hosts to report on the IP multicast groups they wish to join or to which they already belong. The elected querier will be the device with the lowest IP address in the subnetwork.

**IGMP Snooping** Listening to IGMP Query and IGMP Report packets transferred between IP Multicast Routers and IP Multicast host groups to identify IP Multicast group members.

**In-Band Management** Management of the network from a station attached directly to the network.

**IP Multicast Filtering** A process whereby this switch can pass multicast traffic along to participating hosts.

**IP Precedence** The Type of Service (ToS) octet in the IPv4 header includes three precedence bits defining eight different priority levels ranging from highest priority for network control packets to lowest priority for routine traffic. The eight values are mapped one-to-one to the Class of Service categories by default, but may be configured differently to suit the requirements for specific network applications.

**LACP** Link Aggregation Control Protocol. Allows ports to automatically negotiate a trunked link with LACP-configured ports on another device.

**Layer 2** Data Link layer in the ISO 7-Layer Data Communications Protocol. This is related directly to the hardware interface for network devices and passes on traffic based on MAC addresses.

**Layer 3** Network layer in the ISO 7-Layer Data Communications Protocol. This layer handles the routing functions for data moving from one open system to another.

**Link Aggregation** *See Port Trunk.*

**LLDP** Link Layer Discovery Protocol is used to discover basic information about neighboring devices in the local broadcast domain by using periodic broadcasts to advertise information such as device identification, capabilities and configuration settings.

**MD5** MD5 Message-Digest is an algorithm that is used to create digital signatures. It is intended for use with 32 bit machines and is safer than the MD4 algorithm, which has been broken. MD5 is a one-way hash function, meaning that it takes a message and converts it into a fixed string of digits, also called a message digest.

**MIB** Management Information Base. An acronym for Management Information Base. It is a set of database objects that contains information about a specific device.

**MRD** Multicast Router Discovery is a A protocol used by IGMP snooping and multicast routing devices to discover which interfaces are attached to multicast routers. This process allows IGMP-enabled devices to determine where to send multicast source and group membership messages.

**MSTP** Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol can provide an independent spanning tree for different VLANs. It simplifies network management, provides for even faster convergence than RSTP by limiting the size of each region, and prevents VLAN members from being segmented from the rest of the group.

**Multicast Switching** A process whereby the switch filters incoming multicast frames for services for which no attached host has registered, or forwards them to all ports contained within the designated multicast VLAN group.

**NTP** Network Time Protocol provides the mechanisms to synchronize time across the network. The time servers operate in a hierarchical-master-slave configuration in order to synchronize local clocks within the subnet and to national time standards via wire or radio.

**Out-of-Band Management** Management of the network from a station not attached to the network.

**Port Authentication** *See IEEE 802.1X.*

**Port Mirroring** A method whereby data on a target port is mirrored to a monitor port for troubleshooting with a logic analyzer or RMON probe. This allows data on the target port to be studied unobstructively.

**Port Trunk** Defines a network link aggregation and trunking method which specifies how to create a single high-speed logical link that combines several lower-speed physical links.

**QoS** Quality of Service. QoS refers to the capability of a network to provide better service to selected traffic flows using features such as data prioritization, queuing, congestion avoidance and traffic shaping. These features effectively provide preferential treatment to specific flows either by raising the priority of one flow or limiting the priority of another flow.

- RADIUS** Remote Authentication Dial-in User Service. RADIUS is a logon authentication protocol that uses software running on a central server to control access to RADIUS-compliant devices on the network.
- RMON** Remote Monitoring. RMON provides comprehensive network monitoring capabilities. It eliminates the polling required in standard SNMP, and can set alarms on a variety of traffic conditions, including specific error types.
- RSTP** Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol. RSTP reduces the convergence time for network topology changes to about 10% of that required by the older IEEE 802.1D STP standard.
- SMTP** Simple Mail Transfer Protocol is a standard host-to-host mail transport protocol that operates over TCP, port 25.
- SNMP** Simple Network Management Protocol. The application protocol in the Internet suite of protocols which offers network management services.
- SNTP** Simple Network Time Protocol allows a device to set its internal clock based on periodic updates from a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server. Updates can be requested from a specific NTP server, or can be received via broadcasts sent by NTP servers.
- SSH** Secure Shell is a secure replacement for remote access functions, including Telnet. SSH can authenticate users with a cryptographic key, and encrypt data connections between management clients and the switch.
- STA** Spanning Tree Algorithm is a technology that checks your network for any loops. A loop can often occur in complicated or backup linked network systems. Spanning Tree detects and directs data along the shortest available path, maximizing the performance and efficiency of the network.
- TACACS+** Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus. TACACS+ is a logon authentication protocol that uses software running on a central server to control access to TACACS-compliant devices on the network.
- TCP/IP** Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. Protocol suite that includes TCP as the primary transport protocol, and IP as the network layer protocol.
- Telnet** Defines a remote communication facility for interfacing to a terminal device over TCP/IP.

- TFTP** Trivial File Transfer Protocol. A TCP/IP protocol commonly used for software downloads.
- UDP** User Datagram Protocol. UDP provides a datagram mode for packet-switched communications. It uses IP as the underlying transport mechanism to provide access to IP-like services. UDP packets are delivered just like IP packets – connection-less datagrams that may be discarded before reaching their targets. UDP is useful when TCP would be too complex, too slow, or just unnecessary.
- UTC** Universal Time Coordinate. UTC is a time scale that couples Greenwich Mean Time (based solely on the Earth's rotation rate) with highly accurate atomic time. The UTC does not have daylight saving time.
- VLAN** Virtual LAN. A Virtual LAN is a collection of network nodes that share the same collision domain regardless of their physical location or connection point in the network. A VLAN serves as a logical workgroup with no physical barriers, and allows users to share information and resources as though located on the same LAN.
- XModem** A protocol used to transfer files between devices. Data is grouped in 128-byte blocks and error-corrected.







